ALADWAA
Gem

مذاكرتك ديجيتال

الكتاب والمسرحية معًا

New

HELLO

First Term

ENGLISH

2022

LANGUAGE

2nd Secondary

Contents

Unit 1 Staying healthy 6
Test 1 59

Unit 2 Eating around the world 62
Test 2 117

Unit 3 The future of food 120
Test 3 175

Revision 1: Units 1, 2 & 3 178
Test on Units 1, 2 & 3 187

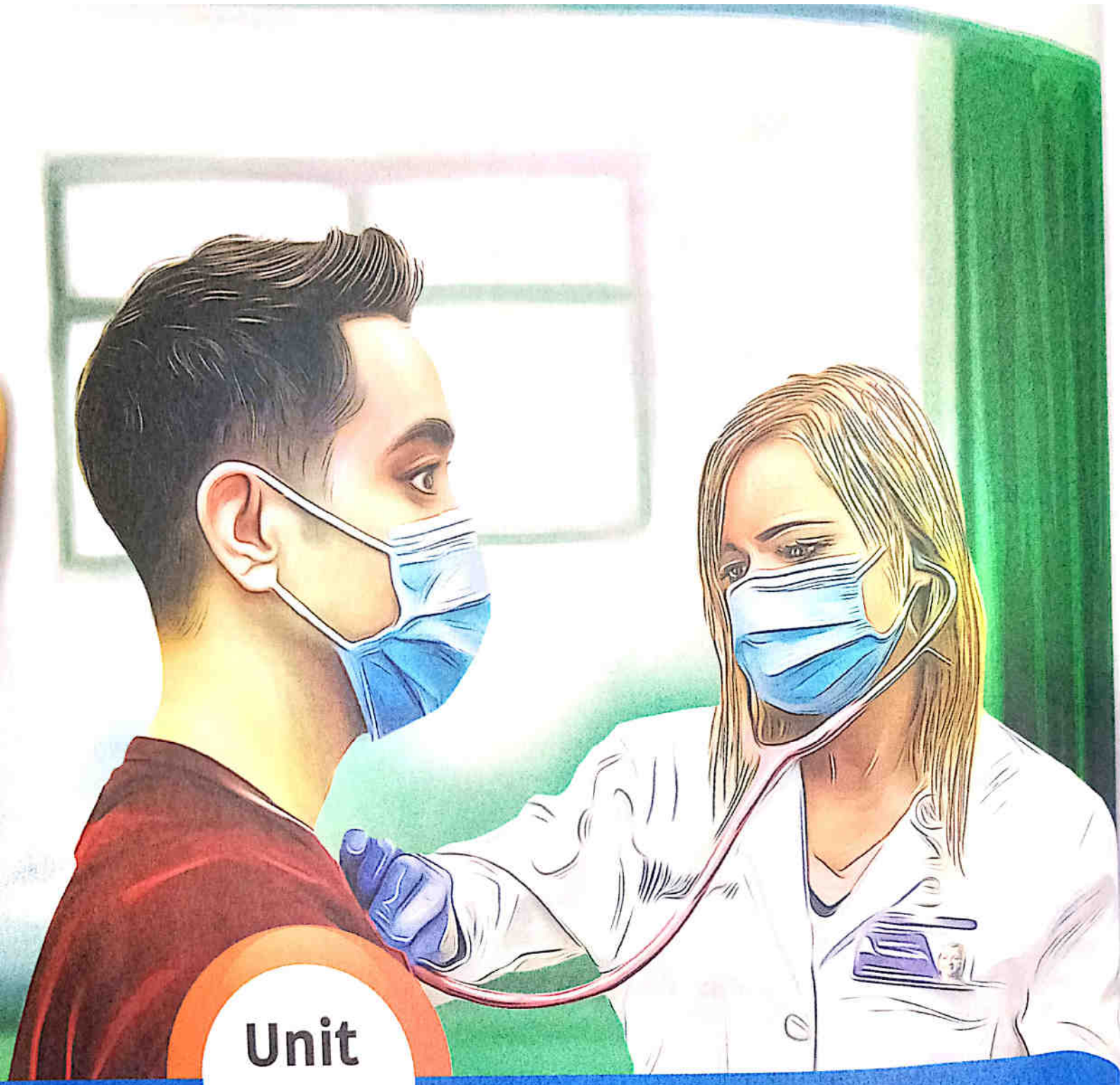
Unit 4 Changing English 190
Test 4 247

Unit 5 Being smart online 250
Test 5 299

Unit 6 Learning from our mistakes 302
Test 6 355

Revision 2: Units 4, 5 & 6 358
Test on Units 4, 5 & 6 367

King Lear
Act I, Scene i 375
Act I, Scenes i–ii 385
Act I, Scenes iii–iv 393
Act II, Scenes i–ii 401
Act II, Scene iii / Act III, Scene i 411
Act III, Scenes ii–iv 420
Irregular Verbs 430
قاموس بمعانى الكلمات الواردة فى قطع الفهم 434
Advanced & Open General Exercises Answers 441



Unit 1

Staying healthy

Objectives

- **Reading** : A poster about how to perform first aid
- **Writing** : A persuasive email to a friend
- **Listening** : A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system
- **Speaking** : Suggesting solutions to problems; Persuading
- **Language** : Present and past necessity and lack of necessity
- **Life skills** : Resilience

Part 1

Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary

شاهد فيديو الشرح
تطبيق الأضواء

Key Vocabulary

CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى	react (v) (ed)	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل
infection (n)	عدوى	severe (adj)	شديد/خطير
perform (v) (ed)	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	technique (n)	طريقة/أسلوب

Vocabulary on Reading

allow (v) (ed)	يسمح	flat (adj)	مسطح/مستوٍ
area (n)	منطقة	immediately (adv)	فورًا
awake (adj)	مستيقظ	injury (n)	إصابة
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا	instructions (n)	تعليمات
bleed (v) (ed)	ينزف	lock (v) (ed)	يغلق/يحبس
breathing (n)	التنفس	normal (adj)	طبيعى
call (v) (ed)	يتصل/ينادى	place (v) (d) (n)	يضع/مكان
chest (n)	صدر	press (v) (ed)	يضغط
disease (n)	مرض	rise (v)	يرتفع
else (adv)	آخر	sign (n)	علامة
emergency services (n)	خدمات الطوارئ	skill (n)	مهارة
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	surface (n)	سطح (الجزء الأعلى من الشيء)

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

ambulance (n)	عربة الإسعاف
athlete (n)	رياضى (شخص)
athletic (adj)	رياضى/متعلق بألعاب القوى
base (n)	أساس/قاعدة (أسفل الشىء)
bone (n)	عَظم/ عظمة
championship (n)	بطولة
check (v) (ed)	يفحص/يراجع
collaboration (n)	تعاون/اشتراك
competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة
damage (v) (d)	يفسد/يتلف
detail (n)	تفصيل
educate (v) (d)	يعلم/يدرس
examination (n)	فحص/اختبار
executive director (n)	مدير تنفيذى
expert (n)	خبير
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
handball (n)	كرة اليد
heart centre (n)	مركز القلب
major (adj)	رئيسى
pioneer (n)	رائد
regular (adj)	منتظم
repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
respond (v) (ed)	يستجيب
responsibility (n)	مسئولية
sudden (adj)	مفاجئ
survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
train (v) (ed)	يدرب/يتدرب
trophy (n)	كأس

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

act (v) (ed)	يتصرف/يمثل
bandage (n)	ضمادة (للجرح)
blood (n)	دم
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
gloves (n)	قفازات
guide (v) (d)	يوجه/يرشد
kit (n)	عدة/طقم أدوات
label (n)	ملصق
muscle (n)	عضلة
operation (n)	عملية
performance (n)	أداء
prohibition (n)	منع/حظر
pump (v) (ed)	يضخ
regularly (adv)	بانتظام
tight (adj)	محكم/مشدود/ضيق
wrap (v) (ped)	يلف/يغلف

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

do an action	يقوم بالتصرف
perform/do CPR	يجرى عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى
do sport	يمارس رياضة
have an infection	يصاب بعدوى
care about	يهتم بـ
come off	يسقط/يخرج من مكانه
disagree about	لا يوافق (يعترض) على
lock together	يغلق معًا
make sure	يتأكد
perform a play	يمثل مسرحية
stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
take up a new sport	يمارس (يتخذ) لعبة جديدة
look at	ينظر إلى/يفحص
reply to	يرد على/يستجيب لـ
rise up	يرتفع لأعلى
wrap around	يلف حول

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف	action	عمل/فعل	acting	قائم بعمل (فعل)
				active	نشيط
allow	يسمح	allowing	سماح	allowed	مسموح
bleed	ينزف	bleeding	نزيف	----------	
collaborate	يتعاون/يشارك	collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	collaborative	تعاونى
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
guide	يوجه/يرشد	guidance	توجيه/إرشاد	guiding	إرشادى/توجيهى
		guide	مرشد		
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected	مصاب بعدوى
				infectious	مُعدٍ
injure	يصيب/يجرح	injury	إصابة/جرح	injured	مصاب/مجروح
operate	يقوم بعملية/يشغل	operation	عملية جراحية	operative	جراحى/مشغل
perform	يؤدى	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدٍ
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	ذو رد فعل

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	participation/partnership	isolation/disunion عزلة/عدم اتحاد
disease	مرض	illness/sickness	health/well-being صحة
examination	فحص/اختبار	observation/checking	disregard/negligence إهمال
flat	مسطح/مستو	straight/plane	rough/broken خشن/غير مستقيم
guide	يوجه/يرشد	advise/direct	misguide/abandon يسيء التوجيه/يهجر
immediately	فورًا	instantly/soon	later/eventually فيما بعد/فى النهاية
infection	عدوى	contagion/ contamination	sterility/sanitation تعقيم/الصحة العامة
injury	إصابة	wound /harm	remedy/cure علاج
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	act/operate	halt/fail يتوقف/يفشل
press	يضغط	squeeze/compress	release/extend يطلق/يمد
react	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	proceed/respond	cease يتوقف
responsibility	مسئولية	duty/liability	irresponsibility/distrust عدم مسئولية/عدم ثقة
severe	شديد/خطير	acute/extreme	gentle/mild بسيط/لطيف/معتدل
skill	مهارة	proficiency/craft	incompetence/inability عدم كفاءة/عدم قدرة

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Antibiotics المضادات الحيوية are used to treat the in most parts of the body.
 a) injection b) infection c) operation d) reflection
2. We must keep any wound clean and dry to prevent the growth of
 a) plants b) pains c) organs d) bacteria
3. The squash player fell and suffered a/an to her arm.
 a) treatment b) break c) injury d) drug
4. Teachers should apply various for dealing with weak students.
 a) devices b) techniques c) kits d) jokes
5. The old man's stopped suddenly and he was taken to intensive care unit وحدة الرعاية المركزة.
 a) disease b) temperature c) breathing d) pressure

Answers 1 b) 2 d) 3 c) 4 b) 5 c)

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Did you help an injured person before? How?

HOW TO PERFORM FIRST AID

1 If you find an ill or injured person, you must check the area around them first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer to the person and look carefully at him/her. Does he/she seem to be very ill? Does he/she have severe[1] injuries?

2 If the person is awake but not bleeding[2], you have to ask him/her how he/she feels and what happened. Check his/her body for signs of injury or infection[3]. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

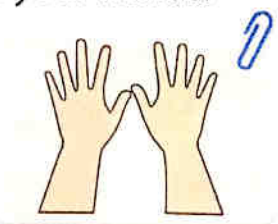
3 If the person doesn't reply, touch his/her shoulder or foot and shout to see if he/she reacts[4], and remember to check for normal breathing.

4 If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency services[5] immediately (123).

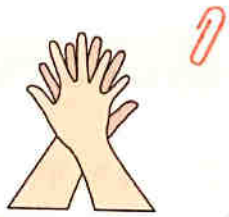
5 If you know how to perform CPR[6], you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying on their back on a flat surface such as the floor.

6 Place your hand on the centre of the person's chest[7]. Put your other hand on top of the first hand and lock your fingers together. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.

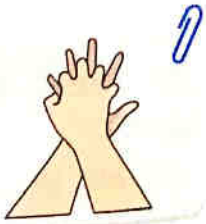
(1) شديد
(2) ينزف
(3) عدوى
(4) يقوم برد فعل
(5) خدمات الطوارئ
(6) عملية التنفس الصناعى
(7) الصدر
(8) يضغط



Step 1



Step 2



Step 3

7 You don't have to press[8] down on the person's chest very much - only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on their chest and allow it to rise up again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again.

Post-reading question: - Who should you call if a person isn't breathing well?



Listening Text (1)

Pre-listening question:

- Do you think healthy athletes must have heart examinations? Why?

Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young athletes[1] believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. However, health experts agree that athletes must get a special heart examination[2] before they can be completely sure that they don't have a problem.

For example, in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian footballer from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab fell down while he was training[3]. Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive[4].

Fortunately[5], Egypt became a pioneer[6] in athletic heart care in 2018 when it established the first Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every detail[7] of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes abroad.

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the Executive Director[8] of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national handball[9] team take full tests of their hearts before major[10] competitions[11], such as the World Handball Championships[12].

And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have published a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy heart. It's called Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death. Young athletes, and their families, mustn't miss this chance to learn about the importance of heart examinations to stay fit and healthy.

(1) رياضيون
(2) فحص/اختبار
(3) يتدرب
(4) ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
(5) لحسن الحظ
(6) رائد
(7) تفصيل
(8) مدير تنفيذى
(9) كرة اليد
(10) رئيسى
(11) منافسات
(12) بطولات

Post-listening question: - In your opinion, how can Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital help athletes in Egypt?

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So what should parents do to help their children stay free from heart disease?

Your heart pumps[1] about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle[2] in your body. That is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise – that means Mum and Dad as well as the children. Try to walk, cycle, swim or play games outside as often as you can. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to take up a new sport[3], send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably be fine, but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat healthily, too. Show your children that they need to look at the labels[4] before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it.

Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts for life!

(1) يضخ
(2) عضلة
(3) يتخذ/يمارس لعبة (رياضة) جديدة
(4) ملصقات

Video Script

Have you heard of CPR? It's short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and it's a technique you perform on a person who isn't responding[1] and isn't breathing. CPR can help someone to stay alive until an ambulance[2] arrives.

So, before you start performing CPR on someone, you need to call an ambulance. Then while you're waiting for the ambulance, you can start performing CPR with your hands. This is the easiest way of performing CPR and the technique that's used the most often.

Start by getting down on the floor next to the person and putting the base[3] of your hand on the bone[4] in the centre of their chest. Then put your other hand on top of that hand and put the fingers from both hands together.

Move so that your shoulders are above your hands and press 5 or 6 centimetres down onto the person's chest. Then keep your hands on the person's chest, but stop pressing on it. The chest will come back up again.

Repeat[5] this one hundred, or one hundred and twenty times a minute, every minute until the ambulance arrives.

(1) يستجيب
(2) عربة الإسعاف
(3) أساس/قاعدة
(4) عظمة
(5) يكرر

0:00

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most people feel proud when from their country do well in the Olympics.
 a) graduates b) athletes c) servants d) reporters
2. McDonald's and Pizza Hut are two companies in the food industry.
 a) bad b) unimportant c) major d) minor
3. Nabwiya Musa was a/an of education for women. She was the first one to go to high school.
 a) employee b) director c) assistant d) pioneer
4. There was a/an change in the weather. It changed from cool weather to very cold one.
 a) sudden b) regular c) exciting d) available
5. We have to very hard before taking part in a competition.
 a) gain b) train c) entertain d) complain

Answers 1) b 2) c 3) d 4) a 5) b

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

CPR عملية انعاش رئوى قلبى	breathing air into the mouth of an unconscious person and pressing on their chest to keep them alive by sending air around their body
infection عدوى	a disease that affects a particular part of your body and is caused by bacteria or a virus
perform يقوم بـ/يؤدى	to do something, especially something difficult or useful
react يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	to behave in a particular way or show a particular emotion because of something that has happened
severe شديد/خطير	very bad or very serious
technique طريقة/أسلوب	a special way of doing something

Notes on Vocabulary

1 another آخر (للمفرد)

- There's another news programme at ten o'clock.

another + مسافات/كميات/أموال/أوقات

- I want to stay in Paris for another 3 days.
- I lent my friend another ten pounds.

other + اسم — أخرى (للجمع/اسم لا يُعد)

- I suggested a camping holiday, but Omar had other ideas.

the other الآخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط)

- You gave me only one pen, where is the other (one)?

others الآخرون (يأتى بعدها فعل ووضعت "s" بعد حذف الاسم)

- One boy fell off his chair and the others laughed.

else

١- آخر/أيضًا تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ some - any - every - no ولا يأتى بعدها اسم

- There's something else I'd like to talk about as well.
- I'll give you the report, but don't tell anybody else.
- He is awake now, like everyone else.
- Who else was at the party yesterday?

٢- آخر/أيضًا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)

- What else would you like to buy?

2 sign

١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/تحذير/تعليمات

٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)

- You must take care of traffic signs while driving on the road.
- Do you see any signs of improvement in the patient's condition?

signal

١- إشارة (تليفون/إذاعة/تليفزيون)

٢- إشارة (ضوئية/صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشىء

- The satellite is used for transmitting signals around the world.
- The siren was a signal for everyone to leave the building.

landmark علامة بارزة (تميز مكانًا) مثل برج أو مبنى

- The Eiffel Tower is probably the most famous landmark in Paris.

3 **athlete**
رياضى (شخص يمارس رياضة وخاصة ألعاب القوى)

- Athletes are all happy to take part in the Olympic Games.

athletic
رياضى (صفة لوصف شخص أو شىء رياضى)

- He can play any sport, he's naturally athletic.
- School athletic competitions are encouraged to help students live healthily.

athletics
ألعاب القوى (مجموعة من الألعاب تشمل الجرى والقفز والرمى)

- Athletics is considered the most important competitions in the Olympic Games.

4 **kit**
عدة/طاقم أدوات (مجموعة من أدوات تستخدم لغرض معين)

- Every school clinic must have a first-aid kit to use in emergencies.

tool
آلة (غالبًا يدوية) تستخدم لإصلاح أو تركيب أو العمل على شىء

- My uncle runs a shop selling carpentry and garden tools.

5 **operation**
١- عملية جراحية
٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة

- The famous surgeon has done this operation hundreds of times.
- Connecting the water supply to some villages isn't a simple operation.

process
١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شىء
٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شىء)

- Birth and ageing may be man's most important natural processes.
- Getting a visa can be a complex process.



Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- If the person doesn't reply, touch their shoulder or their foot

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر (touch) فى جواب الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (If) ولاحظ أيضًا استخدام ضمير الجمع (their) للإشارة إلى الاسم (person).

- If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency services immediately.

- لاحظ استخدام زمن المضارع المستمر (isn't breathing) بدلًا من المضارع البسيط فى فعل الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (If).

- You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again.

- لاحظ استخدام أداة الربط (until) للربط بين جملتين فى زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن تسلسل حدثين.

- Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive.

- يستخدم الظرف عادة لوصف الفعل ويأتى بعده ولكن عند البدء به يكون انطباعًا عن الجملة كلها كما فى (Sadly).

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Children need to be taught to have respect for people's property.
 a) another b) other c) others d) the other
2. There was a big above the entrance of the metro station.
 a) signal b) mark c) sign d) message
3. We love to watch the Olympic competitions - especially the
 a) athlete b) athletic c) authentic d) athletics
4. My friend Sally always keeps her make-up in her bag.
 a) kit b) tool c) device d) machine
5. Doctors say that the injured footballer may need a/an on his knee.
 a) process b) operation c) option d) intention

Answers 1 b) 2 c) 3 d) 4 a) 5 b)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 My friend was given by a doctor, which I think saved his life.
a) VCR b) PCR c) CPR d) MRI

2 The young lady suffered head injuries after the accident and was in hospital for three months.
a) gentle b) severe c) simple d) comfortable

3 Ahmed was given a small part in the school play which will be on the school theatre.
a) performed b) designed c) made d) decided

4 Firefighters must be trained to quickly when they hear the alarm to save lives.
a) review b) react c) reflect d) reverse

5 At karate lessons, students learn basic in self-defence.
a) diseases b) horrors c) techniques d) breakers

6 The policeman was from a wound in his shoulder.
a) breeding b) feeding c) treating d) bleeding

7 You should always read the before you start using any new electrical set you buy.
a) inspections b) instructions c) licences d) chapters

8 Several people ignored the no-smoking and the police fined them.
a) mark b) signal c) message d) sign

9 I had an appointment at the dentist's for a routine on Monday afternoon.
a) examination b) importation c) intention d) ingestion

10 The present my sister got for her birthday was beautifully in gold paper.
a) wrapped b) pulled c) dumped d) removed

11 By midday, the sun had high in the sky and it was very hot.
a) risen b) increased c) decreased d) descended

12 Omar's mother did not him to take boxing lessons because she believed that this was a dangerous sport.
a) cause b) prohibit c) allow d) cancel

13 Dr Farouk El Baz is definitely one of the world's greatest in remote sensing.
a) indicators b) explorers c) employers d) experts

14 You mustn't tell anyone – it's a secret between you and me.
a) other b) else c) another d) others

15 A doctor's first is to take care of the patients.
a) ability b) potential c) responsibility d) ambition

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

16 The audience was clearly delighted with the of the actors.
a) perform b) performance c) informative d) reform

17 I'm busy now; I'll phone you again later. The word "later" is an antonym of the word
a) immediately b) regularly c) gradually d) latter

18 Factories and building companies must provide safety equipment and sure it is used carefully.
a) do b) make c) design d) devise

19 Husbands and wives usually disagree the best way to spend their money.
a) about b) to c) with d) for

20 The research for COVID-19 vaccine is done in with the University of Oxford.
a) collaborate b) collaboration c) collaborative d) elaboration

21 The young actress usually replies immediately comments on her posts.
a) at b) for c) about d) to

22 Many young women stop sports when they get married.
a) going b) letting c) doing d) making

23 To healthy, you should exercise at least three times a week.
a) design b) avoid c) stay d) remove

24 Some governments forced people to stay home to stop the spread of the Corona disease
a) infect b) infected c) infectious d) infection

25 The officer died of his gunshot wounds. The word "wound" is similar in meaning to the word
a) respiration b) injury c) health d) inquiry

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 He suffered a severe head injury and he can't remember anything. The synonyms of the word "severe" are
a) acute b) easy c) simple d) extreme e) strange

27 A young man pulled the child out of the swimming pool and CPR for him saving his life.
a) performed b) made c) did d) applied e) trained

28 The environment authority uses an environmentally friendly for treating waste and rubbish from houses.
a) experiment b) result c) technique d) method e) profit

29 Did you any new sports when you started high school this year?
a) make b) do c) give d) design e) take up

30 Mary's family with horror when they knew about their daughter's accident.
a) refused b) reacted c) pleaded d) responded e) agreed

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

Present and past necessity and lack of necessity

1 Necessity

Present		Past		Future	
must	It's necessary for ... to + Inf.	had to	It was necessary for ... to + Inf.	will have to	It will be necessary for ... to + Inf.
have to					
has to					
have got to		no past			
has got to					
need to / needs to		needed to		will need to	

- It is necessary for all of us to economise on water.

All of us must/have to/have got to/need to economise on using water.

- It was necessary for him to train hard before the match.

He had to train hard before the match.

- It will be necessary for the government to build more houses for youth.

The government will have to build more houses for youth.

must - have to/has to الفرق بين

- كلاهما يفيد الضرورة والاضطرار لفعل شيء ولكن الاختلاف فيمن يفرض الضرورة.

- تفيد must الضرورة الشخصية (ظروف شخصية تضطره لذلك) والشخص يكون موافقًا لهذه الضرورة وراضيًا عنها.

- وتفيد have to ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لديك اختيار فى فعلها ولا رأى فيها.

- I have to get up early on school days.
- I must visit Ramy on Saturday as I promised to visit him.

ولبيان الفرق الكامل بينهم يجب دراسة الجدول الآتى:

must	have/has to
(1)	
يعتقد المتحدث أنه ضرورى (شعور داخلى) .	شخص آخر يعتقد أنه ضرورى (مفروض من الخارج).
These pants don't fit me anymore. I must lose weight.	My doctor told me I'm overweight and I have to go on a diet.
(2)	
تستخدم فى المضارع لوصف ضرورة عامة ودائمة أو ضرورة فى المستقبل القريب وعندما تكون الأوامر رسمية أو عامة فى مستندات أو إشعارات.	تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة ويمكن استخدامها فى الماضى والمضارع والمستقبل.
When you drive, you must wear a seatbelt. Passengers must keep their bags with them at all times.	She has to take two trains and a bus to get to work every day. I had to visit my uncle yesterday. I will have to book the ticket tomorrow.
(3)	
لا تتغير «must» مع كل الضمائر فى الجملة الخبرية أو الاستفهام.	تستخدم مثل أى فعل عادى فى التصريف مع استخدام has للضمائر he/she/it وفى السؤال do/does
I/He/They must be healthy. Must I go to the party? I don't really want to. Must he make so much noise? It's really annoying.	Does he have to wear a suit to work? Do I have to bring some forms of ID?
(4)	
فى النفى إضافة not المختصرة ثم المصدر.	فى النفى نضيف doesn't/don't ثم have to ثم المصدر.
They mustn't use their mobile phones during lessons. We mustn't stand up while the plane is taking off.	She doesn't have to come to the meeting if she doesn't want to. We don't have to read all these books.

(5)

تستخدم don't/doesn't have to للشىء غير الضرورى وأن الشخص لديه اختيار وغير مضطر لفعله.

- He don't have to work on Fridays so he can do what he wants.
- You don't have to pay to visit the Pyramids in Egypt. It's free.

تستخدم mustn't فى النفى للمنع والحظر (قوانين) والنصيحة القوية.

- When the traffic lights are red, you mustn't go.
- I mustn't drink any more coffee, otherwise I won't sleep tonight.

(6)

تستخدم had to للحديث عن الضرورة فى الماضى.

- Did you have to pay a fine when the police stopped you?
- Did he have to get up early yesterday?
- The doctor told her she had to lose weight.

لا تستخدم must فى الماضى.

- Present simple = must/have to
- Future simple = must/will have to
- Past simple = had to
- Present perfect = have/has had to

have got to

- You can use have got to instead of have to:

- تستخدم have got to بنفس معنى have to

- I've got to work tomorrow. OR I have to work tomorrow.
- When has Hala got to go? OR When does Hala have to go?

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Answer all the questions. You write your answers in ink."
 a) need
 b) had to
 c) didn't have to
 d) must
2. Did your brother pay a fine when the police stopped him?
 a) had to
 b) must
 c) have to
 d) has to
3. Since his car was being repaired, he go to Alex by train.
 a) has to
 b) had to
 c) didn't have to
 d) must

4 You have a lot of work tomorrow. You be late.
a) mustn't b) must c) have to d) don't have to

5 You show your passport when you visit another country.
a) don't have to b) needn't c) have to d) had to

Answers 1 d) 2 c) 3 b) 4 a) 5 c)

2 Lack of Necessity

Present		Past		Future	
don't have to	It isn't necessary for ... to	didn't have to لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء فلم نفعله	It wasn't necessary for ... to	won't have to won't need to	It won't be necessary for ... to
doesn't have to		needn't have + P.P لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله			
needn't (to بدون)					
don't / doesn't need to		didn't need to			

- It isn't necessary for her to buy more dresses.
- She doesn't have to/needn't/doesn't need to buy more dresses.
- It wasn't necessary for me to phone Ahmed After midnight.
- I didn't have to phone Ahmed After midnight لم يكن واجبًا فلم أفعل.
- I needn't have phoned Ahmed After midnight لم يكن واجبًا ولكنى فعلت.

didn't have to

- didn't have to + Inf. = It wasn't necessary to do something.
لم يكن واجبًا فعل شيء فى الماضى فلم نفعله.
- She didn't have to buy a dress for the party. It wasn't necessary.

needn't have done

- He needn't have done something. = He did it, but now we know that it was not necessary.
- هو لم يكن فى حاجة أن يفعل شيئًا ما = هو فعله ولكن عرفنا الآن أنه كان غير ضرورى.
- Why did he get up at 5 o'clock? He needn't have got up so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.

didn't need to

- He didn't need to do something = it was not necessary to do it. It doesn't matter whether he did it or not:

- تعبر didn't need to عن عدم الضرورة فى الماضى ولا يهم إذا كان فعل الحدث أو لا وتبين الجملة ذلك وكلاهما صحيح.

- He didn't need to get up early, so he didn't.

- لم يكن ضروريًا أن يستيقظ مبكرًا لذلك لم يفعل.

- He didn't need to get up early, but it was a beautiful morning, so he did.

- لم يكن ضروريًا أن يستيقظ مبكرًا ولكنه كان صباحًا جميلًا لذلك استيقظ.

3 Prohibition

mustn't = can't

- mustn't/can't = it's forbidden to do something/you aren't allowed to do something/ it's against the law/rules.

- شىء محظور وممنوع أو ضد القانون.

- You mustn't/can't smoke in hospitals. It's forbidden.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I this furniture yesterday. It was really unnecessary.
 a) needn't have bought b) had to buy
 c) shouldn't buy d) needn't buy
2. Mona take her sunglasses because it was cloudy.
 a) had to b) needn't have c) mustn't d) didn't need to
3. We use our passports. They accepted our ID cards.
 a) had to b) didn't have to c) have to d) have got to
4. We've got plenty of time. We hurry.
 a) have to b) must c) needn't d) don't need
5. You go shopping with us, you can stay at home if you want.
 a) don't have to b) mustn't c) must d) have to

Answers 1 a) 2 d) 3 b) 4 c) 5 a)

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You put on gloves before helping someone who's bleeding.
 a) mustn't b) had to c) must d) don't have to
2. My children study ancient history at school next year.
 a) have to b) must c) needn't d) don't have to
3. My grandfather work six days a week when he was young.
 a) doesn't have to b) needn't c) has to d) had to
4. I take this book back to the library or I'll pay a fine.
 a) mustn't b) have got to c) can't d) needn't
5. Your injury wasn't serious, you a doctor.
 a) had to see b) needn't have seen
 c) must see d) don't need to see
6. We couldn't find a hotel room, so we sleep in the car.
 a) need to b) have to c) didn't have to d) had to
7. **Son:** work next weekend?
 Mother: If you're free, let's go out.
 a) Do you have to b) Can you
 c) Mustn't you d) Have you to
8. My father work today because it is a holiday.
 a) must b) had to c) has to d) doesn't have to
9. We call for the doctor when my father fainted last night.
 a) have to b) had to c) needn't d) will have to
10. It started raining heavily, so I water the flowers.
 a) didn't have to b) have to c) mustn't d) had to
11. We visit our grandfather. He hasn't been well lately.
 a) can't b) needn't c) must d) don't have to
12. We give our homework to the teacher until next week.
 a) had to b) mustn't c) don't have to d) were to
13. Our school bus broke down, so the pupils walk to school.
 a) had to b) ought c) must d) would

14 We talk to each other because it was an exam.

a) shouldn't b) ought to

c) mustn't d) weren't allowed to

15 I really phone Mazen. I promised I'd phone him as soon as I had any news.

a) must b) have to c) need d) needn't

16 It was my day off yesterday, that's why I get up early.

a) needed to b) didn't have to c) mustn't d) had to

17 Office staff wear a suit, but they should look smart.

a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) can't

18 I didn't have much money when I was young. I be careful how much I spent.

a) had to b) must have c) must d) should

19 You phone him because I have already talked to him.

a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have to d) hadn't to

20 We give him our answer today or we will lose out on the contract.

a) needn't b) have to c) shouldn't d) don't have to

21 You phone me at work. We aren't allowed to make personal calls.

a) needn't b) have to c) need to d) mustn't

22 New drivers take a test in order to get a driver's licence. It's the law.

a) mustn't b) must c) don't have to d) had to

23 She about going to the dentist's. He was very kind.

a) must worry b) had to worry

c) needn't have worried d) needn't worry

24 You mustn't take photos near military places. This means that

a) you can't b) you are allowed

c) it's unnecessary d) it isn't good

25 You mustn't park here. It means that

a) it is necessary to park here b) it isn't necessary to park here

c) it's against the law d) parking isn't forbidden here

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 Two of the following express lack of necessity.

"She cook food today. There is enough food in the fridge."

a) needn't to b) mustn't c) doesn't have to

d) needn't e) has to

27 Two of the following choices are grammatically correct.

"It's a free-smoking area. You smoke."

a) may b) mustn't c) can

d) should e) can't

28 Two of the following choices give the same meaning to the following sentence.

"We didn't have to wear coats yesterday as it was so hot."

a) It is necessary for us to wear coats today.

b) It wasn't necessary for us to wear coats yesterday.

c) We didn't need to wear coats yesterday as it was so hot.

d) We needn't have worn coats yesterday as it was so hot.

e) It wasn't advisable for us to wear coats yesterday.

29 Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect.

a) Yasser needs to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

b) Yasser had to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

c) Yasser has got to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

d) Yasser needn't go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

e) Yasser has to go the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

30 Necessity is expressed in two of the following sentences.

a) Osama didn't have to find another job.

b) Osama had to find another job.

c) Osama has got to find another job.

d) Osama doesn't have to find another job.

e) Osama needn't find another job.

General Exercises
(Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Lifeguards are trained on CPR as they save people from drowning.
a) doing b) making c) inventing d) designing

2 My father has a large carpentry and he always fixes things at our house.
a) tool b) device c) kit d) trauma

3 The government insists on an action to prevent people from polluting the Nile.
a) making b) encouraging c) avoiding d) doing

4 We went to a special course to learn how to give first to accident victims.
a) help b) aid c) drug d) operation

5 The doctors said that the boy was and didn't need medicine.
a) average b) hurt c) common d) normal

6 Children are advised to visit a dentist to keep their teeth healthy.
a) gradually b) regularly c) scarcely d) rarely

7 We'll have to wait for three weeks for the results.
a) another b) other c) others d) else

8 Mohamed Salah became the first Egyptian footballer to win a major European
a) match b) trophy c) reward d) present

9 I arrive at work at 9 sharp. My boss is very strict.
a) need b) needn't c) mustn't d) have to

10 Soha work such long hours. She can complete her work tomorrow.
a) doesn't have to b) must c) has to d) mustn't

11 She home yesterday because her little son was sick.
a) needn't stay b) had to stay
c) needn't have stayed d) didn't have to stay

12 You ride a bicycle in this park. It's forbidden.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) aren't allowed

13 The windows looked clean. I wash them.
a) mustn't b) can't c) didn't have to d) am not to

14 You go when the traffic lights are red.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have to d) had to

15 Does he type these letters now?
a) has to b) had to c) must d) have to

16 We pay for the tickets because my dad won them.
a) didn't have to b) can't c) have to d) had to

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyone knows that running is a great way to get into shape, but it also can benefit almost every part of your body and boost your mood. Whether it's your favourite part of the day or something you have to push yourself through, the benefits are undeniable.

1. Running improves your health
2. It prevents disease
3. You might lose weight
4. Running boosts your confidence
5. It relieves stress
6. Running has the power to eliminate depression

One of the coolest things about the sport of running is that you don't need expensive equipment. All you need is a good pair of running shoes and a safe environment.

No one wakes up and decides to run a marathon without training. Running requires discipline, perseverance, and concentration. It's a sport that's good for your body and mind.

Running strengthens your heart, lungs, and muscles. It develops coordination and makes you more aware of your body. Running also gives you energy by increasing your oxygen intake, and it improves your immune system so you don't get sick as easily. It can even help you stay more focused in school because exercise helps you to think more clearly.

Most schools offer cross-country and track programs, but there are also running clubs open to all ages. A simple Internet search can help you find some in your area. The programs show you how running can offer competition or just be for fun. They also teach runners to set realistic goals and take care of their bodies.

If you're looking for more than just a sport, running may be the perfect choice for you.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What is the main idea of the fourth paragraph in this article?

a) Running is one way to keep your body healthy.
b) You don't need expensive equipment to be a runner.
c) Running for fun is better than running in a competition.
d) There are many running clubs and teams you can become involved in.

2 What is the author's main purpose for writing this passage?

a) To give historical information about runners.
b) To teach readers how to become great runners.
c) To persuade readers to try running.
d) To compare and contrast running and watching television.

3 Running strengthens your
a) heart, lungs, and muscles b) hearing
c) hair d) weakness

4 The words "protects your body from bacteria and disease" refer to
a) lungs b) immune system c) heart d) marathon

B) Answer the following questions:

5 Running requires many things. Mention two at least.

6 Find four benefits of running for the health and mind.

7 How does running boost the person's mood? Give two examples.

8 Why do you think the writer thinks that running is not an easy sport? Give two reasons.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. A healthy lifestyle has become more important with the spread of new diseases. Healthy food and sport are the most important factors of it.

.....

2. Coronavirus, known as Covid-19, has caused great changes to our lifestyle and countries' economies. These changes are expected to remain with us for many years to come.

.....

3. Tourism is the second most important source of hard currency in Egypt. It also adds much to our national income. Therefore, the government gives due care to it.

.....

4. Egypt's youth are renewable energy that must be invested and benefited from. With their efforts, we can have a great nation and achieve progress in various fields.

.....

5. The World Health Organisation regards clean water and food as one of the primary rights for human beings. Thus, it calls for fighting pollution.

.....

6. Youth are not only the partners of today but also the leaders of tomorrow. Youth are full of energy and enthusiasm to learn, act and achieve.

.....

B) Translate into English:

١- يؤكد العلماء أن الالتزام بالإجراءات الاحترازية هو أنجح الوسائل للتغلب على فيروس كورونا حتى مع وجود اللقاحات التى قد تستغرق فترة طويلة للتأكد من فاعليتها للقضاء على الفيروس.

.....

٢- نفخر جميعًا بعلمائنا المتميزين أمثال أحمد زويل وفاروق الباز اللذين قاما بإنجازات علمية كبيرة ساهمت فى تقدم البشرية فى مجالات عديدة فى كل إنحاء العالم.

.....

٣- أصبحت كرة القدم صناعة كبيرة تجذب الكثير من الاستثمارات وتدر أرباحًا أكثر من العديد من الصناعات الأخرى، كما أنها تلقى اهتمامًا إعلاميًا أكبر من الرياضات الأخرى.

.....

٤- الكتاب صديق الإنسان وهو واحد من أفضل الطرق لتوسيع المعرفة وإشباع رغبات المثقفين، لذا يجب تشجيع الأطفال والشباب على القراءة فى مختلف المجالات.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

achievements	إنجازات
attract	تجذب
brilliant	المتميزون
cautionary measures	الإجراءات الاحترازية
effectiveness	فاعلية
enthusiasm	حماس
factors	عوامل
hard currency	العملة الصعبة
humanity	البشرية
invest	يستثمر
knowledge	المعرفة
leader	قائد
national income	الدخل القومى
profits	أرباح
vaccine	اللقاح
youth	الشباب

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How the internet has changed the world of work nowadays."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary

شاهد فيديو الشرح
تطبيق الأضواء

Vocabulary on Reading

brilliant (adj)	بارع/رائع	perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
champion (n)	بطل رياضى	persuasive (adj)	مقنع
course (n)	مقرر (منهج) تعليمى	reason (n)	سبب
join (v) (ed)	ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ	situation (n)	موقف
mistake (n)	خطأ	video games (n)	ألعاب الفيديو
Olympic (adj)	أوليمبى		

Vocabulary on Listening

boost (v) (ed)	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	ordinary (adj)	عادى
brain (n)	المخ	organ (n)	عضو
cell (n)	خلية	protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
cough (n) (v) (ed)	سعال/كحة/يسعل/يكح	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
cover (v) (ed)	يغطى	separate (adj) (v) (d)	منفصل/يفصل
explanation (n)	شرح/تفسير	spend (v)	يقضى
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى	stay up (v) (ed)	يسهر ليلًا
improve (v) (d)	يحسن	virus (n)	فيروس
lung (n)	الرئة		

Workbook Vocabulary

add (v) (ed)	يضيف
advertisement (n)	إعلان
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف
diet (n)	نظام غذائى
flu (n)	الإنفلونزا
label (n) (v) (led)	ملصق/يضع كلمة (مسمى) فى مكانه
microscope (n)	ميكروسكوب
persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
pleasure (n)	سعادة/سرور
remind (v) (ed)	يُذكر
simple (adj)	بسيط
support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم/يساند
toy (n)	لعبة (طفل)
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at any time	فى أى وقت
do the course	يدرس منهجًا تعليميًا
feel strong and healthy	يشعر بالقوة والصحة
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن
get better	يتحسن
complete with	يكمل بـ
great at	رائع (عظيم) فى
interested in	مهتم بـ
get ill	يصاب بمرض
have the flu	يصاب بالإنفلونزا
in the first place	فى المقام الأول
make notes	يدون ملاحظات
sound perfect	يبدو رائعًا (ممتازًا)
look forward to	يتطلع إلى
think of/about	يفكر فى
worried about	قلق عن

Special Collocations

become an expert	يصبح خبيرًا
do first aid	يقوم بالإسعافات الأولية
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
stay calm	يبقى هادئًا
think fast	يفكر بسرعة
take a first aid course	يحصل على دورة فى الإسعافات الأولية

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
add	يضيف	addition additive	إضافة مادة مضافة	additional	إضافى
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
explain	يشرح/يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	تفسيرى
immunise	يحصن/يوفر مناعة	immunity	مناعة	immune	منيع/مناعى
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	متحسن
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
support	يدعم/يساند	support supporter	دعم/مساندة داعم	supporting supportive	داعم/مساند داعم

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
behave	يتصرف	act/react	misbehave يسىء التصرف
boost	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	push/improve/support	hinder/decrease يعوق/يقلل
brilliant	بارع/رائع	excellent/magnificent	ordinary/common عادى
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	advance/enhance	decline/deteriorate يتدهور
persuasive	مقنع	convincing/conclusive	discouraging/unconvincing مثبط/غير مقنع
pleasure	سعادة/سرور	enjoyment/delight	sadness/sorrow حزن/أسى
separate	منفصل	isolated/disconnected	connected/combined متصل
simple	بسيط	plain/easy	vague/complicated غامض/معقد
support	دعم	assistance/aid	hindrance/discouragement إعاقة/تثبيط
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily/sadly	fortunately/favorably لحسن الحظ

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I tried hard to my elder brother to lend me his laptop, but he refused.
a) persuade
b) attack
c) order
d) assist

2 The president always writes notes to him of the important points he will speak about.
a) remember
b) memorise
c) remind
d) forget

3 It was a great to be invited to the important conference in Alexandria Library.
a) sorrow
b) pleasure
c) relaxation
d) concentration

4 Our school will give a on first aids during the summer vacation.
a) game
b) course
c) match
d) trip

5 I think you should a health club to improve your fitness.
a) avoid
b) ignore
c) tie
d) join

Answers 1) a 2) c 3) b 4) b 5) d



Reading Text (1)

Pre-reading question:

- If you are to choose a course to study, what would it be? Why would you choose it?

Hi Fares,

How are you?

It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course[1] next week! I really think you should join[2] them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will injure themselves and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, Right?

I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast[3] and you know how to stay calm[4] in difficult situations. You don't have to become an expert[5], just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect.

Talk to you soon!

Mahmoud

(1) منهج تعليمي

(2) ينضم/يلتحق بـ

(3) يفكر بسرعة

(4) يبقى هادئًا

(5) يصبح خبيرًا

Post-reading question:

- Why does Mahmoud think that Fares should take the course?



Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

To : healthtoday@mail.com

From : shady@mail.com

Dear Health Today,

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a pleasure[1] to see them. Unfortunately[2], because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to keep clean and stay healthy. At the moment, many people in my area have the flu[3] and so these things are even more important than usual. What can I do to persuade [4] my cousins to change how they behave? They often come very close to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found. And when they cough[5], they do not cover their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot.

I'm also worried when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and getting dirty. They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to remind[6] them to do it.

I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu and so they don't give the flu to older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,

Shady

(1) سعادة/سرور

(2) لسوء الحظ

(3) الإنفلونزا

(4) يقنع

(5) يسعل/يكح

(6) يُذكر



Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- What do you think the immune system's main function?

Our organs[1] are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the brain[2] that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The immune system[3] comes from the cells[4] and organs that work together to protect[5] us from diseases.

The immune system does this by destroying[6] things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus [7] is a very, very small thing that causes a disease. The disease could be something ordinary[8], like the kind of cold we all get sometimes, or it could be something serious like COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

When a virus gets into a part of the body, a message is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system reacts by sending cells to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate[9] living things in our bodies and they are small enough to fight against a disease.

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can boost[10] our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green leaves. We also need to exercise regularly[11]. We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as active as possible.

We also need to make sure that we get enough sleep. For most people that means at least seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to avoid getting a virus or an infection in the first place.

We also need to do things like covering[12] our mouths when we cough[13] to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

(1) أعضاء
(2) مخ
(3) الجهاز المناعى
(4) خلايا
(5) يحمى
(6) تدمير
(7) فيروس
(8) عادى
(9) منفصل
(10) يدع/يعزز
(11) بانتظام
(12) تغطية
(13) يسعل/يكح

Post-listening question:

- How can we boost our immune system to fight diseases?

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mother is the only person who believes in my abilities and always tries to me to be better.
 a) pull b) hinder c) boost d) discourage
2. Iron is important because we need it to make new blood that carry oxygen around the body.
 a) beings b) cells c) bones d) races
3. Bacteria and are too small for the human eye to see.
 a) viruses b) flies c) tissues d) diseases
4. Doctors can now replace a damaged human such as the heart and the kidney.
 a) member b) organ c) limb d) artery
5. There are toilets for men and women in all public places.
 a) joint b) strange c) demolished d) separate

Answers 1) c 2) b 3) a 4) b 5) d

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

boost يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	help someone or something to improve or get better
cell خلية	the smallest separate part of a plant or animal
immune system الجهاز المناعى	a way that your body protects you from disease
organ عضو	a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain or heart
virus فيروس	a very small living thing that causes disease



Notes on Vocabulary

1 **advertisment**
إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أو وظيفة

- The organisers of the concert had taken out a full page advertisement in the newspaper.

announcement
إعلان عن/إذاعة خبر

- The minister وزير made an important announcement at a news conference.

2 **spend**
ينفق (مالًا) على

- The young boy spends all his pocket money on buying new video games.

spend
يقضى الوقت فى شىء أو أداء شىء

- Father doesn't have much free time as he spends his time in his office.
- Mrs Reda spent all the day preparing for her daughter's birthday party.

لاحظ أن يأتى (verb + ing) بعد spend.

3 **organ** عضو من أعضاء الجسم

- The brain organises the work of other organs in your body.

member
عضو/فرد فى مجموعة كناد أو فريق

- To achieve success, everyone must work as a member of a team.

4 **champion** بطل رياضى

- Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian champion who won an Olympic medal in Taekwondo.

hero
بطل فى المجتمع أو فى قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية

- The young actor was chosen as the hero of the new series about space.

5 **two-day course**
منهج تعليمى لمدة يومين

لاحظ أن استخدام كلمة (two-day) فى صيغة المفرد فى مثل هذه التعبيرات أى اتباعها باسم (course)

وإذا أردنا الجمع نجمع ما بعدها من أسماء.

two-way streets	شوارع كل منها ذو اتجاهين
ten-minute breaks	فسح/استراحات كل استراحة منها عشر دقائق

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- I really think you should join them because ...
 - لاحظ عدم استخدام حرف جر بعد الفعل (join) مثل بعض الأفعال الأخرى التى يتضمن معناها حرف الجر مثل (enjoy - admire)
- You never know when someone you know will injure themselves.
 - لاحظ استخدام ضمير الجمع (themselves) عند الإشارة إلى (someone) رغم أن الفعل بعدها يكون فى صيغة المفرد
- you can help someone until the emergency services arrive.
 - لاحظ استخدام أداة الربط (until) للتعبير عن المستقبل فيسبقها مستقبل (can help) ويتبعها مضارع بسيط (arrive)
- Unfortunately, because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget
 - غالبًا ما يستخدم الظرف لوصف الفعل ويأتى بعده ولكن إذا بدأت الجملة بالظرف (Unfortunately) يكون وصفًا للجملة بعده
- I look forward to hearing from you.
 - لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) بعد (look forward to)

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Al Ahram newspaper is full of for cars especially on Friday.
 a) advertisements b) announcements c) advancements d) disappointments
2. You aren't allowed to enter. You are not a/an in the club.
 a) part b) individual c) member d) organ
3. My grandfather used to spend most of the afternoon to songs by Om Kalthoum.
 a) listen b) listened c) listens d) listening
4. We all wanted to do the course to learn about gardening.
 a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'
5. The soldiers who fight for their countries should be honoured as real
 a) champions b) heroes c) actors d) organs

Answers 1) a 2) c 3) d 4) a 5) b

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 All charitable organisations count on the of people to help the poor.
a) support b) risk c) neglect d) disagreement

2 The patient's white blood count is low, so she needs immediate treatment.
a) organ b) molecule c) cell d) atom

3 The little child inhaled استنشق the smoke and started badly.
a) coughing b) training c) smiling d) smelling

4 The system is the system by which your body protects itself against disease.
a) digestive b) immune c) respiratory d) nerve

5 The evidence was not enough for the judge to condemn يدين the accused man.
a) affecting b) impressive c) persuasive d) moving

6 People can fight infection more easily if they have a healthy and lifestyle.
a) plight b) right c) fight d) diet

7 The mother was embarrassed because her children very badly in the party.
a) treated b) behaved c) punished d) rewarded

8 Before the plane takes off, the passengers are that smoking is not allowed on the plane.
a) reminded b) remembered c) affected d) applauded

9 The two big cities, Cairo and Giza, are by the River Nile.
a) united b) separated c) damaged d) planned

10 The why I like my job is that I meet all kinds of people.
a) reason b) explanation c) purpose d) cause

11 The article discusses a number of ways people can their immune systems to fight diseases.
a) repair b) mend c) damage d) boost

12 It would be difficult to him to leave his job for a new one.
a) persuade b) make c) let d) employ

13 I want to my English so that I can get a job in the multi-national petroleum company working in Egypt.
a) prove b) improve c) qualify d) train

14 The which Ola made was not very serious. So, she was not punished by her family.
a) achievement b) ambition c) favour d) mistake

15 All Egyptian squash champions are sorry that their game is not included in the Games.
a) Athletic b) Olympic c) Advanced d) Competitive

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

16 Students who aren't hard workers are always worried exams.
a) about b) for c) with d) in

17 Mona read the whole research and notes of the main points.
a) did b) made c) performed d) acted

18 Please, read the notes at the front of the book. They will help you a lot.
a) explain b) explanation c) explanatory d) explained

19 The manager wouldn't give you the job in the first if he didn't think you could do it.
a) place b) location c) position d) area

20 The students were all very interested the history lecture.
a) at b) in c) for d) with

21 He can only walk with the assistance of crutches عكاز . The word "assistance" is similar in meaning to the word
a) export b) import c) report d) support

22 You shouldn't try to first aid to anyone unless you are trained well.
a) make b) devise c) do d) explore

23 The air hostess asked the passengers not to leave their seats and calm.
a) behave b) smile c) sleep d) stay

24 We have made an important to our fashion collection recently.
a) add b) addition c) additional d) added

25 The high cost of the drug can hinder its use. The word "hinder" can be the opposite to the word
a) agree b) force c) boost d) impose

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 The meal which we had at the new restaurant was delicious and absolutely
a) terrible b) perfect c) brilliant d) awful e) strange

27 The company needs to find ways to the level of confidence of its staff.
a) boost b) defect c) damage d) improve e) affect

28 Father smiled with pleasure when mother walked in. The antonyms of the word "pleasure " are
a) enjoyment b) happiness c) sadness d) delight e) sorrow

29 My little daughter ill after eating a bad meal at the restaurant.
a) cured b) did c) became d) got e) made

30 I lay awake in bed for hours thinking the trip I am going on the next day.
a) for b) at c) in d) about e) of

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح
تطبيق الأضواء

Necessity/lack of necessity/prohibition (Extra points)

- نستخدم need للضرورة وهى أكثر أدبًا من must أو have to وتستخدم كفعل أساسى بعدها to ثم المصدر وتأخذ s مع He/ She/ It وفى السؤال تسبق بـ does/do وتستخدم أيضًا كـ modal verb فى السؤال والنفى ليس بعدها to.

1 need/needs

a main verb	**Affirmative** الإثبات	• I need to buy the newspaper today. • He needs to buy the newspaper today.
	Negative النفى	• I don't need to buy the newspaper today. • He doesn't need to buy the newspaper today.
	Questions الأسئلة	• Do you need to buy the newspaper today? • Does he need to buy the newspaper today?
a modal verb	**Questions**	• Need I book a room in advance?
	Negative	• You needn't give me a lift home.
need + v.ing	شىء + need + v.ing	• Your car needs repairing. = needs to be repaired

2 must/mustn't

استخدامات أخرى لـ

must	**strong advice** نصيحة قوية	• You must wash your hands before you eat.
	a warm invitation دعوة حارة	• You must come and see us at the weekend.
	a strong reminder تذكرة قوية	• We mustn't forget that tourism is important.
mustn't	**prohibition** المنع والحظر والتحريم	• You mustn't drive fast on this road. The maximum speed limit is 60 k/h.
	strong negative advice للنصيحة القوية المنفية	• You mustn't play football in the flat. You may break something.

3 must and have to are equal متساويان

You can use must or have to to give your own opinion (to say what you think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something):

نستخدم must أو have to لإبداء الرأى وما نراه ضروريًا أو نوصى شخصًا بفعل شىء.

- It's later than I thought. I must go. or I have to go.
- I haven't spoken to Noha for ages. I must phone her. I have to phone her. (= I say this is necessary).
- Samir is a really nice person. You must meet him. You have to meet him. (I recommend this).

لاحظ

It's a must تعبير يفيد الضرورة ويساوى It's necessary.

- You have to prepare yourself well for the next match. It's a must.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You see a doctor. Your leg is bleeding.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) can't
2. You spend too much money. You'll want some for your holiday.
 a) mustn't b) have to c) can't d) must
3. Yasmin be careful with what she eats because she has diabetes.
 a) needn't b) could c) shouldn't d) needs to
4. You wash these fruits. I've already washed them.
 a) mustn't b) can't c) needn't d) had to
5. **Son:** Mum, I don't want to clean my room. it right now?
 Mother: Yes, right now.
 a) Have I to clean b) Must I clean c) Do I must clean d) Must I have to clean

Answers 1 c) 2 a) 3 d) 4 c) 5 b)

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You take that book back to the library yet. You can keep it for another week.
 a) have to b) should c) don't need to d) can
2. You be late. It's the most important meeting of the year.
 a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have to d) must
3. I want to go to university. I apply before the end of the week.
 a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) had to d) need to
4. You buy that book. You can borrow mine.
 a) mustn't b) needn't c) shouldn't d) can't
5. You speak so loudly on your mobile phone. It's very annoying.
 a) needn't b) should c) don't have to d) mustn't
6. I help my father with repairing things in the house yesterday.
 a) have to b) had to c) need to d) must
7. We finish now as somebody else needs this room.
 a) have got to b) needn't c) don't have to d) can't
8. In some countries, children wear school uniform.
 a) has to b) mustn't
 c) don't need to d) doesn't need to
9. We leave now. The train leaves in five minutes.
 a) needn't b) need to c) don't need to d) shouldn't
10. Young athletes miss this chance to learn and complete education.
 a) must b) have to c) don't have to d) mustn't
11. You walk up the hill because there's a bus.
 a) don't have to b) must c) mustn't d) have to
12. Athletes get a special heart examination; it is safer to do this.
 a) mustn't b) must c) don't have to d) didn't have to
13. As you've already phoned Mona, I phone her myself.
 a) can't b) wouldn't c) mustn't d) needn't
14. Yesterday, I work for 12 hours.
 a) had to b) have to c) will have to d) must
15. You drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.
 a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to
16. We buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.
 a) mustn't b) had to c) must d) didn't have to
17. **A:** Does Ahmed study very much tonight? **B:** No, he doesn't.
 a) have to b) must c) has to d) allowed to

18 **A:** Why do they overtime? **B:** Because their deadline is tomorrow.
a) have to b) need to c) have d) need

19 I'm sorry, but you eat in the classroom. This is forbidden.
a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) oughtn't d) aren't allowed

20 Do you know if we have visas to visit the Sudan?
a) don't need b) needn't c) have to d) need

21 We forget to take the chicken out of the freezer.
a) don't have to b) haven't to c) don't need to d) mustn't

22 I wear a tie; I do it because I like wearing ties.
a) don't have to b) have to c) must d) mustn't

23 The flight is at 6 in the morning, so we get up very early.
a) don't have to b) had to c) have to d) mustn't

24 We fill up with petrol. The tank is almost empty.
a) needn't b) had to c) mustn't d) need to

25 You put salt in her food; the doctor said she can't eat salty food.
a) can't b) mustn't c) must d) have to

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 You have to see the head teacher at 3 o'clock. It has the same meaning as
a) You must see the head teacher at 3 o'clock
b) You could see the head teacher at 3 o'clock
c) It's necessary for you to see the head teacher at 3 o'clock
d) You needn't have seen the head teacher at 3 o'clock
e) You aren't allowed to see the head teacher at 3 o'clock

27 Two of the following express lack of necessity.
You go there with me. I can handle it; it's not difficult.
a) needn't to b) mustn't
c) don't have to d) needn't
e) had better not

28 Two of the following sentences are incorrect.
He didn't go to the park with us yesterday because he a report.
a) needn't have written b) didn't have to write
c) was obliged to write d) had to write
e) needed to write

29 Strong necessity is expressed in two of the following sentences.
a) We can't just go away! We must help him!
b) You aren't allowed to borrow more than two books at a time.
c) I mustn't forget to call him today.
d) She needn't buy more oil. There is enough.
e) They didn't have to buy another flat. Theirs was large.

30 You're not supposed to park your car here.
a) It's public parking only b) It is not allowed
c) It is necessary d) It is forbidden
e) It is permitted

(C) Communication Skills

Note

لمزيد من التدريبات على المهارات يرجى الرجوع الى ملحق المهارات الجزء الخاص بـ Integrated Skills

(I) Language Skills

Asking for help and advice	Responding to advice
- I feel very hot and tired, what should I do?	- You should go to hospital immediately.
- My little brother has cut his finger, could you help me in the first aid?	- Of course, I will come to see him now.
- Do you mind calling the ambulance, please?	- No problem. I will call now.
- If I know somebody who is infected by Coronavirus, what shall I do?	- You must stay away from him. Call 105. Tell all those who mixed with them to be very careful.

(II) Writing

Think of something that might help to be healthier. Make notes on three persuasive reasons why your friend should do this.

Tips for writing the e-mail

Introduction	What do you think can help you to be healthier? State briefly how this can help you.
Main body (1)	What is the first reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Main body (2)	What is the second reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Conclusion	How can your friend benefit from your advice? Conclude and clear your point of view briefly.

To : yasser100@mail.com

From: medhat100@mail.com

Dear Yasser,

Fitness and health seem to be the same for everyone, but they have two different meanings. Fitness is the physical ability to perform work, sports, etc. While health is a condition in which the body should have resistance capacity from all illnesses and all parts of the body should work well without any problem. Your body should possess both fitness as well as health.

Health can be maintained by a proper diet, exercise, and hygiene. To keep your body healthy, you need to do proper exercise. Usually, sportspeople have a fit body. They shape their body in such a way that it will be fit for their sport. But coming to healthy body is just a matter of controlling weight and making your body immune to diseases.

For a healthy and fit body walking is very good exercise which helps in burning the excess fat in your body. A fit body doesn't mean that it should look good from outside. A fit and healthy body should be physically active and energetic and smart enough to accept any tasks given to them.

Due to more demand for a fit and healthy body, many gyms and workout centres are opened. To maintain a healthy and fit body, this requires self-control and will power. Many factors can divert us from achieving our goal of having a fit and healthy body. But try to focus on it to achieve your health as all know "Health is wealth".

Look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,

Medhat

(III) Speaking Skills

Suggesting solutions to problems; Persuading:

Many people in our society don't have the minimal knowledge or awareness of health care. This is a great problem because they can't bear the responsibility to stay healthy and aren't able to help their family members in the time of crises, either. So, it's the role of aware people to persuade them to start learning about such issues like boosting their immune system.

A) First, you should create a group of 5 persons in your neighbourhood and then log onto some websites that are concerned with the health awareness.

B) Second, collect information about the people who need to be taught about health measures.

C) Third, arrange regular visits to those people and speak to them in a suitable way about what they should do to protect themselves and their family members from diseases and pandemics.

- Try to find answers to the following questions.

1. What are the results of health awareness shortage?

2. How could we persuade people to raise their health awareness?

3. What is the role of mass media in fighting unhealthy habits?

Practice

Complete the following dialogue:

Emad and Ayman are discussing a problem.

Emad : Hello! Ayman. Do you think health care can help in fighting Coronavirus pandemic?

Ayman : Of course. Health care can help ordinary people to boost their immune system and this will help their bodies to resist the virus.

Emad : How can we get the right information about health care?

Ayman : (1)..... .

Emad : What is the suitable way to make people learn about health care?

Ayman : (2)..... .

Emad : (3).....?

Ayman : I think so; we will be able to persuade them to follow the health habits.

Emad : How?

Ayman : (4)..... .

General Exercises
(Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The economic in Egypt and Arab countries is better now.
a) location b) occasion c) situation d) site

2 It is hoped that the wounded soldier will better soon.
a) turn b) go c) get d) fall

3 Working in this luxurious hotel really sounds for a fresh graduate.
a) worse b) terrible c) perfect d) vague

4 The liver الكبد is an extremely complex which needs special care.
a) member b) organ c) individual d) place

5 Karam Gaber is a former Olympic wrestling who won a gold medal in 2004.
a) companion b) partner c) champion d) trainee

6 I'm taking a in graphic design because I have a good job opportunity.
a) coarse b) syllabus c) course d) centre

7 My sister couldn't go out with us as she the flu and was staying in bed.
a) did b) had c) made d) felt

8 The receptionist asked me to complete the form my personal data.
a) with b) over c) on d) in

9 You get off the bus before it stops. It's dangerous.
a) shouldn't b) oughtn't to c) can't d) mustn't

10 They to come early. They can come whenever they're ready.
a) don't need b) needn't c) have d) didn't have

11 You come to see us at the weekend. We miss you very much.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) must

12 Omar finish the report quickly because the deadline is today at 4 pm.
a) had to b) needn't c) has got to d) have to

13 Marwa email her homework to her teacher because she forgot to take it to class yesterday.
a) doesn't have to b) must to c) had to d) needn't

14 **A:** Does Ramy study very much tonight?
B: No, he doesn't. He reviewed a lot last night and he understood everything well.
a) has to b) have to c) must d) needs to

15 Judy go to the supermarket because she doesn't have enough food for dinner.

a) needn't b) doesn't have to c) has to d) mustn't

16 **Friend :** pay to see the doctor?

Brother: No, she because she has medical insurance.

a) Does your sister have to/doesn't b) Do your sister have to/don't

c) Must your sister/mustn't d) Is it necessary for your sister to/isn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Don't eat just before going to bed!" my mother used to tell me. "You might get a nightmare." I never believed her until it happened to me. It was on a night when I felt hungry just as I was about to go to bed. So I made myself a peanut-butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk. After consuming them, I went to bed.

Soon I drifted off into a troubled sleep. I dreamt that I was with a group of people looking for an old woman. I was not sure why we were looking for her but we all seemed afraid of her. Somehow we had to find her. So there I was, searching high and low for her in frightful places I had never been before. Sometimes I seemed to be flying while at other times I seemed unable to move. The whole atmosphere was like a dreadful horror-movie.

After some searching, I entered a darkened room and saw a figure sleeping on a bed. As I got nearer, the figure suddenly threw away the blanket, got up, and stared at me. It was an ugly old woman with shiny golden teeth. She raised her claw-like fingers and walked towards me.

I wanted to run but was unable to. I tried to scream but found that I could not. In horror, I struggled and struggled to get away from the frightful woman.

The next moment I gave a **muffled** yell and found myself panting on my bed. My goodness, what a horrible nightmare it was! For a minute or so I lay on my bed not daring to close my eyes for fear of falling asleep again and continuing the nightmare. From then on I never eat just before going to sleep.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The writer's mother warned him not to

a) eat before going to sleep b) go with the group of people anywhere

c) search for the old woman d) scream on facing dangers

2 The result of a peanut-butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk was

a) a high bill b) a nightmare

c) an attack from an old woman d) a mother's anger from her son

3 The synonym of the word "muffled" is

a) a loud speech
b) a loud voice
c) a very pure sound
d) a quiet and less clear sound

4 The best title to the passage is

a) nightmares
b) mothers' experiences
c) much eating and good sleep
d) an adventure during the night

B) Answer the following questions:

5 During the nightmare, the writer faced contradicting experiences. Show how.

.....

6 In two sentences, describe the old woman.

.....

7 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) to gradually start to sleep.
b) search everywhere for something.

.....

8 Why do you think the person isn't always happy during nightmares?

.....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The best way to combat viruses and bacteria is to boost your immune system. This can be done in simple ways such as a healthy diet and good exercise.

.....

2. The crisis of Coronavirus caused great economic losses in many countries of the world. People lost their jobs and the demand for many products decreased a lot.

.....

3. School plays an important role in teaching young people the values of discipline, hard work, and teamwork. These are best acquired at an early age.

.....

4. Writers are all affected by the experiences they have in their life and the problems they face. Their works are the mirror of their age.

.....

5. Unemployment and illiteracy are two major causes that lead to crimes and violence. That's why we all should try to fight them.

.....

6. Fortunate people are those who can balance their work requirements and having time to read and enjoy their free time.

.....

B) Translate into English:

١- يتضمن إصلاح التعليم طرقًا جديدة لدمج الطلاب ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة مع زملائهم بنفس المناهج التعليمية، مما يساعدهم على الاندماج فى المجتمع بشكل أفضل.

.....

٢- يهدف التعليم إلى تنمية مهارات الطلاب وإعدادهم لتلبية سوق العمل فى ظل التطور التكنولوجى المتزايد، وهذا أدى إلى إنشاء مدارس وكليات جديدة فى السنوات الأخيرة القليلة.

.....

٣- يعد تلوث الهواء من أخطر المشكلات فى الوقت الحالى فى جميع أنحاء العالم وخاصة فى المدن الكبيرة بسبب المستوى الكبير للتصنيع.

.....

٤- مـع أزمـة فيروس كورونا بـرزت أهمية التعليم عبر الإنترنت؛ حيث أصبح الحل الوحيـد لإكمال الطلاب تعليمهم بعد غلق المدارس والجامعات فى كثير من دول العالم.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

aim	يهدف	online education	التعليم عبر الإنترنت
balance	توازن/يوازن	progress	التطور
combine	يدمج	reform	إصلاح
crimes	جرائم	requirements	متطلبات
crisis	أزمة	role	دور
curriculums	المناهج	solution	حل
discipline	الانضباط	teamwork	العمل الجماعى
faculties	كليات	unemployment	البطالة
fortunate	محظوظ	values	قيم
illiteracy	الأمية		

4 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:
"Your friend has gained much weight and you want to advise him about the best ways to lose weight."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

King Lear Exercises
(Act 1 – scene i)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The United, England, is actually ruled by the Prime Minister not the Queen.
 a) Republic b) Kingdom c) Council d) Empire
2. The judge asked the lawyer a simple question and he gave a long and confusing
 a) quiz b) puzzle c) riddle d) answer
3. After Al Qanater, the River Nile into two channels, Damietta and Rosetta.
 a) divides b) shares c) spares d) unifies
4. The divers were impressed by the of the coral reefs.
 a) ugliness b) wealth c) beauty d) position
5. The hopes of future draws many young people into professional sports especially football.
 a) struggle b) affection c) poverty d) riches
6. The discount is a to a half of the full price during Black Friday.
 a) once b) third c) twice d) share
7. A wife has a/an to her husband and to her children.
 a) duty b) invention c) mission d) work
8. The present duke inherited the from his father.
 a) location b) address c) title d) state
9. The young man gave most of his old clothes to charity.
 a) away b) off c) in d) for
10. A is a weapon with a short handle and a long sharp blade.
 a) gun b) sword c) canon d) stick
11. My friends Amany and Adel plan to next month and invite all their friends to the wedding.
 a) separate b) engage c) meet d) marry
12. Hitler was known to be a dictator.
 a) merciful b) simple c) cruel d) humble
13. It was a very thing to leave my old job in these hard times.
 a) persuasive b) innovative c) smart d) foolish
14. My parents always advise me to be and avoid lies.
 a) vague b) honest c) tricky d) blushing
15. My uncle to buy his son a new bicycle on passing his exams.
 a) promised b) expected c) graduated d) puzzled

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

1. You should wash the dress in cold water so the colours don't
 a) fade b) bleed c) vanish d) cut
2. If you keep on lifting those heavy weights, you'll do yourself a/an
 a) attention b) benefit c) injury d) loss
3. The Americans established a naval on the Japanese island in the 1950s.
 a) space b) table c) column d) base
4. El Maraei is a leading manufacturer of own-..... dairy products.
 a) label b) origin c) source d) publicity
5. Our old neighbour her husband by ten years.
 a) attached b) deceased c) survived d) divorced
6. Nowadays, many young people against traditional values.
 a) refer b) reject c) react d) reform
7. Our prep school headmistress was a woman who rarely smiled.
 a) severe b) dangerous c) creative d) collaborative
8. It will take about an hour to get there, ... for traffic delays.
 a) allow b) allowing c) allowed d) allowance
9. The students learned how to calculate the of a triangle.
 a) region b) distance c) district d) area
10. She gives the impression of being rather conventional, but under the she is creative.
 a) roof b) well c) surface d) wall
11. Meeting Sally changed the whole of Samy's life. They are a successful couple.
 a) road b) course c) technique d) coarse
12. The magazine functions as the official of the fashion industry.
 a) part b) member c) player d) organ
13. According to law, no one is from legal punishment.
 a) immune b) respiratory c) prohibited d) allowed
14. The young man spent a night in a prison because of driving without a licence.
 a) well b) cell c) organ d) box
15. I decided to go on a before my holiday to look smarter on the beach.
 a) trip b) business c) deal d) diet

16 He spends his free time in the garden.
a) to digging b) dug c) to dig d) digging

17 He cut the bread a knife.
a) by b) from c) with d) of

18 I saw someone a stone at the window and run away.
a) is throwing b) threw c) to throw d) throw

19 you ride a bike when you were six years old?
a) Could b) Can c) Might d) May

20 He prefers watching TV listening to the radio.
a) than b) to c) rather d) from

21 you mind turning the volume down a little, please?
a) Could b) Should c) Would d) Must

22 Dina have been at school yesterday. The list of the absentees didn't include her name.
a) must b) can't c) needn't d) mustn't

23 Do you object to Hurgada? Where else can we go?
a) be taken b) being taken
c) to be taken d) to being taken

24 I'm eager to know your routine.
a) week b) weeks c) week's d) weekly

25 He was offered the job because he was candidate.
a) the best b) better c) best d) good

26 I'm taking the umbrella. It rain.
a) should b) must c) may d) has to

27 Sherook was cooking dinner in the kitchen while Shady the dog.
a) was feeding b) is feeding
c) has been feeding d) had been feeding

28 You can't leave the table until you your dinner.
a) had finished b) finish c) will finish d) finished

29 a good boy, he helped his mother in the kitchen.
a) Is b) Be c) Being d) Been

30 Arabic, John found life in Egypt difficult.
a) Don't speak b) Doesn't speak
c) Speaking d) Not speaking

Test 1
Based on Unit 1

40

لترجمة الكلمات الصعبة يرجى الرجوع إلى القاموس فى نهاية الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a piece of paper that gives information about a product.
 a) flavour b) manufacturer c) advertisement d) label
2. Doctors say that exercise can you against heart disease.
 a) endanger b) protect c) predict d) promise
3. Our local bakery uses a special to make the bread which it makes tasty.
 a) avenue b) form c) technique d) note
4. In the workplace, some people can best under pressure.
 a) perform b) design c) revise d) reform
5. As she is very sick, Mona taught her children to call the services if something bad happened to her.
 a) accuracy b) infection c) emergency d) inquiry
6. A score of 80 or more is a that you are doing very well.
 a) sign b) signal c) symptom d) note
7. Passengers talk to the driver while the bus is in motion.
 a) must b) have to c) mustn't d) don't have to
8. When I saw the new car, I knew I it.
 a) had to buy b) must have bought
 c) need to buy d) can buy
9. I all these shirts, but I did.
 a) should have bought b) didn't have to buy
 c) needn't have bought d) must have bought
10. I see the head teacher, she has called me to her office.
 a) needn't b) have to c) didn't have to d) can't
11. Is it for us to send the research as an e-mail attachment, sir?
 a) necessary b) must c) have to d) need to
12. Before you buy a house, you consider all the costs.
 a) needn't b) have got c) don't have to d) need to
13. Fahmy is not here. He leave early.
 a) must b) had to c) has to d) needs to
14. I to look my best as I'm going to have a job interview.
 a) should b) must c) need d) needn't
15. It's late and the baby is asleep. You make so much noise.
 a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) have to
16. I finish this essay today. It has to be handed in by tomorrow.
 a) had to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Obesity (being very fat) is one of the greatest public health challenges of the 21st century. Its prevalence has tripled in many countries of the World Health Organisation since the 1980s, and the numbers of those affected continue to rise at an alarming rate. In addition to causing various physical disabilities and psychological problems, excess weight drastically increases a person's risk of developing a number of non-communicable diseases, including cardiovascular disease, cancer and diabetes.

Obesity is a condition that is associated with having an excess amount of body fat, defined by genetic and environmental factors that are difficult to control when dieting. Obesity is classified as having a Body Mass Index (BMI) of 30 or greater. BMI is a tool used to measure obesity.

There are many causes that directly and indirectly contribute to obesity. Behaviour, environment and genetics are among the main contributors to obesity. The Centres for Disease Control has identified these three as the main causes to the complexity of the obesity epidemic.

In today's fast-paced environment, it is easy to adopt unhealthy behaviours. Behaviour, in the case of obesity, relates to food choices, the amount of physical activity you get and the effort to maintain your health.

Environment plays a key role in shaping an individual's habits and lifestyle. There are many environmental influences that can impact your health decisions. Today's society has developed a more sedentary lifestyle. Walking has been replaced by driving cars, physical activity has been replaced by technology and nutrition has been overcome by convenience foods.

Science shows that genetics plays a role in obesity. Genes can cause certain disorders which result in obesity. However, not all individuals who are predisposed to obesity become affected by obesity. Research is currently underway to determine which genes contribute most to obesity.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main idea of the passage is

a) the dangers of obesity in the poor countries

b) how can the rich countries solve the problem of obesity

c) the advantages and disadvantages of obesity

d) obesity and our health

18 Obesity has increased since 1980s in many European countries.
a) three times b) twice c) four times d) once

19 Which of the following ideas is not mentioned in the passage?
a) Food choices and the amount of physical activity are causes of obesity.
b) Obesity affects the level of intelligence of all people.
c) Sedentary lifestyle is one of the causes of obesity.
d) Scientists don't know which genes are responsible for obesity.

20 What does the underlined word "epidemic" mean?
a) Decrease. b) Control. c) Health. d) Outbreak.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Explain how obesity is defined and classified.
.....

22 Infer the causes that directly and indirectly contribute to obesity. Mention two.
.....

23 How do you think the environment affects the individual's habits?
.....

24 Do you think that people can overcome obesity and have a good health especially in this technological age? If yes, how?
.....

25 Translate into English:

- القراءة هواية مفيدة جدًا لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا يمكن أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء، فضلًا عن كونها تُـثرى ثقافتك.

.....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Spare time can be useful if it is employed for developing one's character physically and mentally. So we should all realise its importance.
.....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How to protect your environment and preserve it for future generations."
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....









Unit 2

Eating around the world

Objectives

- Reading : An excerpt from *Old Jo's Scrap-Bag. An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving* by Louisa M. Alcott; Two articles about ways of eating around the world
- Writing : A questionnaire
- Listening : Descriptions of international meals
- Language : Comparative and superlative adjectives
- Speaking : Communicating opinions and beliefs
- Life skills : Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation

Warm up

Different Types of Breakfast.

English Breakfast

It is a big meal. It includes sausages, eggs, tomatoes. Some people have milk and cereal. They like toast, pancakes, jam or honey. They drink orange juice and coffee.



Hawaiian Breakfast

It includes eggs, meat (steak or sausage and rice. They eat tropical fruits, for example papayas.
They drink papaya or orange juice.



What does the Egyptian breakfast consist of?

Egyptian Breakfast

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 1

Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

amount (n)	مقدار/كمية	occasion (n)	مناسبة
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
eat out (v)	يأكل بالخارج	serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعامًا
get together (v)	يتجمع/يتقابل	traditional (adj)	تقليدى

Vocabulary on Reading

arrive (v) (d)	يصل	native (adj)	أصلى
customer (n)	زبون/عميل	old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
decide (v) (d)	يقرر	passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر
delicious (adj)	لذيذ/شهى	quantity (n)	كمية
dessert (n)	تحلية (بعد الطعام)	snow (n)	جليد
event (n)	حدث	special (adj)	خاص
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	surprised (adj)	مندهش
extract (n) (v) (ed)	مقتبس/يقتبس	survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
feed (v)	يُطعم/يغذى	Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
fun (n)	مرح	turkey (n)	ديك رومى
gather (v) (ed)	يتجمع/يجمع	wake (v)	يوقظ/يستيقظ
laugh (v) (ed)	يضحك	whatever	مهما/أيًا كان
meal (n)	وجبة		

Vocabulary on Listening

chips (n)	شيبسى (شرائح البطاطس)
cornbread (n)	خبز الذرة
curious (adj)	فضولى
Europe (n)	أوروبا
festival (n)	مهرجان
fry (v) (~~y~~ied)	يقلى
noodles (n)	شرائح المكرونة
oyster (n)	محار
popular (adj)	محبوب/مشهور
prawn (n)	جمبرى
pumpkin pie (n)	فطيرة اليقطين (القرع العسلى)
rare (adj)	نادر
recent (adj)	حديث
roast lamb (n)	لحم ضأن مشوى
roasted (adj)	مشوى
salty (adj)	مالح/كثير الملح
shellfish (n)	المحار
spicy (adj)	حار (بالتوابل)
spring rolls (n)	ملفوفات الربيع (أكلة)
sweet potatoes (n)	البطاطا
takeaway (n)	طعام جاهز

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

curry (n)	كارى (بهار هندى)
dish (n)	طبق
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
grapes (n)	عنب
herring (n)	سمك الرنجة
Indonesian (adj)	إندونيسى
jar (n)	إناء/برطمان
menu (n)	قائمة طعام
nut (n)	بندق
probably (adv)	من المحتمل
seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية
smell (n) (v) (ed)	رائحة/يشم
taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق
the countryside (n)	الريف
welcome (v) (d)	يرحب بـ
whale (n)	حوت/لحم الحوت

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

around the country	فى كل أنحاء البلد	fall asleep	ينام فجأة
at least	على الأقل	for example	على سبيل المثال
catch up with	يجارى/يعرف أحوال	get ready	يجهز/يعد
by that time	بحلول ذلك الوقت	have a meal	يتناول وجبة
amount of	كمية من	take place	يحدث
keep out of	يبتعد عن	tell about	يخبر عن
look after	يعتنى بـ	travel to	يسافر إلى
made from	مصنوع من	wait for	ينتظر

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrive	يصل	arrival	وصول	arriving	قادم
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالى
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
exist	يوجد/يتواجد	existence	وجود	existing	موجود
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
popularise	يعمم	popularity	شهرة	popular	محبوب/مشهور
prepare	يجهز	preparation	إعداد	prepared	معد/جاهز
serve	يخدم	service servant	خدمة خادم	serving	خادم
survive	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة	survival	النجاة/البقاء على قيد الحياة	surviving	ناجٍ/باقٍ على قيد الحياة
wake	يوقظ/يستيقظ	waking	الاستيقاظ	awake	مستيقظ

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	commemorate/honour	reproach/ignore يعاتب/يوبخ/يتجاهل
delicious	لذيذ	tasty/appetising	tasteless/disagreeable بلا طعم/غير مستساغ
exist	يوجد	live/remain	depart/cease يغادر/يتوقف
fun	مرح	amusement/enjoyment	sorrow/sadness أسى
gather	يتجمع	assemble/collect	separate/scatter يفصل
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated/old	fashionable/modern ذو طراز حديث
popular	محبوب	attractive/famous	unpopular/unknown غير محبوب/غير معروف
probably	من المحتمل	possibly/likely	unlikely/improbably من غير المحتمل
rare	نادر	scarce/unique	common/ordinary شائع/عادى
surprised	مندهش	astonished/amazed	unsurprised غير مندهش
survive	ينجو	remain/exist	die/perish/pass away يموت
traditional	تقليدى	conventional/classical	modern/new حديث
welcome	يرحب بـ	greet/entertain	exclude/deny يستبعد/يستنكر

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Computers are very useful as they can store a vast of information.
 a) account b) quality
 c) weight d) amount
2. The two brothers have just finished their exams and have gone out to
 a) celebrate b) reward
 c) accept d) report
3. The couples are the birth of their third child.
 a) lamenting b) forgetting
 c) celebrating d) avoiding
4. This expensive dress is perfect for a special
 a) accident b) occasion
 c) prohibition d) intention
5. My grandfather's house was built in a/an style as he doesn't like modern ones.
 a) updated b) technological
 c) inventive d) traditional
6. The complained that he still hadn't received the book he had ordered several weeks ago.
 a) customer b) producer
 c) servant d) seller
7. Desert plants can on very little water.
 a) endanger b) survive
 c) leave d) absorb
8. The kids had a lot of with that old tent. They were very excited.
 a) sorrow b) tiredness
 c) fun d) acceptance

Answers

1 d) 2 a) 3 c) 4 b) 5 d) 6 a) 7 b) 8 c)

Reading Text (1)

Pre-reading question: - Mention 2 Egyptian celebrations that include specially prepared foods.

An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving



In September 1620, a ship called *the Mayflower* arrived in North America with 102 passengers.

Many died, but some were able to grow food and survive with help from Native Americans.

Thanksgiving is a day when families get together(1) to remember these events. It is celebrated(2) in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.



In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called *An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving*. Here is an extract:

When they woke, there was still a large amount(3) of snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

"Now, about dinner," she said as they all finished eating. "Ma said that we could have whatever we liked, but she didn't expect us to have a traditional(4) Thanksgiving dinner."

"Have you ever cooked a turkey?" asked Roxy.

"Ma said I should decide what to do," replied Tilly.

All you children have to do is keep out of the way and let Prue and me work."

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare(5) the big meal, they got out all the spoons, dishes, pots and pans that they could find.



"Now, sister, we'll have dinner at five," said Tilly. "Pa will be here by that time and he'll be surprised to find us ready to serve(6) the food. There's such a lot to do, and I'm a bit worried about the turkey. It's so big!"

"I know," said Prue. "I fed it all summer and now it will feed me," she laughed.

(1) يتجمع/يتقابل

(2) يحتفل بـ

(3) مقدار/كمية

(4) تقليدى

(5) يعد/يجهز

(6) يخدم/يقدم طعامًا

Post-reading question: - When is Thanksgiving celebrated in the USA? Why?



Reading Text (2)

Pre-reading question:

- What do Egyptians eat for special celebrations?

As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to celebrate the start of the New Year with special food. However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the occasion.

In Mexico, for example, many people eat out at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular(1) dish is always tamales, which is made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they get together with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.

In Spain, it is traditional to eat twelve grapes(2) to welcome(3) the New Year. The Spanish people eat this particular amount of grapes late at night, when the clock reaches midnight, or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to prepare a fish called 'herring(4)' at least five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar(5) with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of whale(6) for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and people say the smell(7) is very strong.

(1) محبوب/مشهور
(2) عنب
(3) يرحب بـ
(4) سمك الرنجة
(5) إناء/برطمان
(6) لحم الحوت
(7) رائحة

Post-reading question:

- Which is the strangest food people eat to celebrate the New Year?

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is preferable that we reduce the of energy we use at home to help the environment.
 a) account
 b) quality
 c) weight
 d) amount
2. The whole family usually together to have fun at Christmas.
 a) go
 b) make
 c) get
 d) intend
3. The printing house المطبعة sells cards and notepaper for all
 a) occasions
 b) accidents
 c) prohibitions
 d) intentions
4. After a long stay abroad, the old man is back to his land.
 a) foreign
 b) native
 c) occupied
 d) imprisoned
5. The poor girl's clothes are so plain and as she can't buy expensive ones.
 a) modern
 b) stylish
 c) old-fashioned
 d) fashionable

Answers 1 d) 2 c) 3 a) 4 b) 5 c)





Listening Text (1)

Pre-listening question:

- Do you think that all Americans eat turkey only on Thanksgiving?

Amy : So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Hoda?

Hoda : Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very curious[1] about the food you eat.

Amy : You'll love the food at Thanksgiving, Hoda. Have you had turkey before? It's a lot like chicken but it's very big.

Hoda : Well, I like chicken, so that should be okay. What else do you have?

Amy : We have a special kind of bread, called cornbread. It's delicious. And we have sweet potatoes[2]. They're like normal potatoes, but much nicer.

Hoda : That sounds great. What do you have for dessert[3]?

Amy : My mum makes the most wonderful pumpkin pie[4]. It's very sweet and heavy. Sometimes I fall asleep after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much.

Hoda : Now I'm feeling hungry.

Amy : Me, too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and catch up with friends and family. That's why we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

Hoda : Great. I can't wait!

(1) فضولى

(2) بطاطا

(3) تحلية

(4) فطيرة اليقطين (القرع العسلى)

Post-listening question:

- What does Amy think the best thing about Thanksgiving?



Listening Text (2)

Pre-listening question: - Would you like to try food from another country?

Nasi goreng is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words nasi goreng mean 'fried rice' in Indonesian. Many people believe that nasi goreng is one of the spiciest meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by frying[1] rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns[2] to the pan. It's a bit saltier than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

(1) يقلى
(2) جمبرى
(3) المحار
(4) نادر
(5) قائمة طعام

Oysters are a type of shellfish[3] that people dig out of the earth under the sea. They're rarer[4] than most other types of seafood and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu[5] in French restaurants.

Mochi are sweet, round rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good luck. Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat, white mocha is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

Post-listening question:

- Which of the dishes mentioned above would you like to try?

Listening Text (3) (Workbook)

The UK did not use to be known for its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent[1] years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and chips[2]. The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips are usually cheaper than most other takeaway[3] food, too. The British also like spicy food. Indian food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular. One of the most traditional dishes in the UK is roast lamb[4], which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice creams. They mostly eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.

(1) حديث
(2) شيبسى
(3) طعام جاهز
(4) لحم ضأن مشوى

Video Script

People in different countries celebrate different festivals, but they all cook special meals for their families when they're celebrating together. Let's look at three examples of special meals from around the world.

Many Egyptians celebrate the festival of Eid-al-Adha[1] every year. The most popular meal to eat on this occasion[2] is a traditional fattah[3]. Egyptian families usually eat fattah for breakfast.

In Britain, Christmas is the most popular festival of the year. British families come together on this occasion to eat a special meal, which is usually roasted[4] turkey with potatoes and other vegetables.

And, finally, let's go to China where the New Year is the most important festival[5] of the year. Families like to have lots of different things on the table when they get together to eat at Chinese New Year. This usually includes spring rolls[6], noodles[7], fish and chicken.

(1) عيد الأضحى
(2) مناسبة
(3) فتة
(4) مشوى
(5) مهرجان
(6) ملفوفات الربيع
(7) مكرونة سريعة التحضير

0:00

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mother is too tired to cook today. Let's have a/an tonight.
 a) take-in b) overtake
 c) takedown d) takeaway
2. The movie won an award at the Cairo Film last year.
 a) Race b) Competition
 c) Festival d) Examination
3. We were to know who won the game that we didn't watch on TV.
 a) detected b) curious c) exciting d) proud
4. The chef added hot pepper to give the dish a flavour.
 a) spicy b) solid c) cool d) cooked
5. are a long thin piece of pasta, used especially in Chinese and Italian cooking.
 a) Prawns b) Chips c) Noodles d) Lambs

Answers 1 d) 2 c) 3 b) 4 a) 5 c)

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

amount (n) مقدار/كمية	a quantity of something
celebrate (v) يحتفل بـ	do something fun to show that an event is special
eat out (v) يأكل بالخارج	have a meal outside your home

get together (v) يتجمع/يتقابل	meet people and spend time with them
occasion (n) مناسبة	a time when something special happens
prepare (v) (d) يعد/يجهز	get something ready to eat or use
serve (v) (d) يخدم/يقدم طعامًا	give people food or drink
traditional (adj) تقليدى	old ways of doing things that don't change



Notes on Vocabulary

1 arrive (in/at)

١- يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول)

٢- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بعد حروف الجر in/at)

- When does the Paris plane arrive?
- We arrived in Cairo late at night.
- The passengers arrived at the airport just before the plane takes off.

reach

١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر)

٢- يصل إلى شيء معنوى

- We reached Cairo late at night.
- Ministers must reach a decision before next month.

2 decide to + inf.

يقرر أن (يتبعه المصدر)

- Wafaa decided to stay in the hotel for two days.

decide that + a sentence

يقرر أن (يتبعه جملة كاملة)

- I decided that it would be best to tell my father the truth.

decide on + n/v-ing

يستقر على (يتبعه اسم أو صيغة verb + ing)

- We decided on going to Sharm El-Sheikh for our holiday this year.

3 **event**
١- حدث مهم
٢- حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى/ مؤتمر سياسى)
- One of the most important events in our history is 6th October Victory.
- The charity raises money by organising concert events.

incident
١- حدث (عارض/غير معتاد)
٢- حدث (فى فيلم/قصة/مسرحية)
- The fire shooting is one of the incidents of the day.
- He thought the film was boring without many incidents.

accident
- حادث (شىء خاطئ أو مؤذٍ حدث بغير ترتيب)
- Over 70,000 people are seriously injured every year in road accidents.

4 **special**
خاص (من نوع خاص)
- I only wear this suit on special occasions like weddings.

private
خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)
- My grandfather didn't want to discuss his private life with anyone.

5 **menu**
١- قائمة طعام (فى مطعم)
٢- قائمة (مهام/إعدادات) فى جهاز
- He looked at the menu and decided to have chicken with rice.
- The menu bar with its windows is one of the features of the desktop.

list
قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)
- I made a list of all the jobs I had to do in the house.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- let Prue and me work.
 - لاحظ استخدام صيغة المصدر (work) بدون to بعد الفعل (let).
- I'm a bit worried about the turkey.
 - تستخدم (a bit) قبل الصفات أو الصفات المقارنة للتعبير عن معنى قليلًا.
- It's so big!
 - تستخدم (so) قبل الصفات بمعنى جدًا.
- The British also like spicy food.
 - تستخدم (the) قبل الجنسية لتعنى الشعب بشكل عام.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Hosting the World Men's Handball Championship was the most important sporting in Egypt in 2021.
a) event
b) accident
c) operation
d) process

2 I was put on a waiting to see a specialist at the hospital.
a) menu
b) list
c) title
d) leaflet

3 I've decided blue for painting the bedroom.
a) for
b) to
c) at
d) on

4 It was almost midnight when I home, so my father was angry.
a) sailed
b) sent
c) reached
d) painted

5 Experts take in handling very old books as they are soft and valuable.
a) private
b) special
c) general
d) obvious

Answers 1 a) 2 b) 3 d) 4 c) 5 b)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. The call centre handles a huge of complaints every day.
 a) quality b) account c) amount d) pile
2. Liverpool their Premier League win after 30 years in their stadium, Anfield.
 a) shared b) celebrated c) saddened d) collaborated
3. Samy together with some friends to plan a party for their friend who won the gold medal for swimming.
 a) got b) went c) made d) performed
4. The opening of the parliament is really a historic in any country.
 a) accident b) situation c) occasion d) affection
5. All the dancers and musicians at the festival wore clothes.
 a) updated b) ragged c) gradual d) traditional
6. Suzan speaks French fluently, but it isn't her language.
 a) health b) native c) modern d) dead
7. It is a miracle معجزة that the 5-year-old boy the train accident.
 a) served b) affected c) survived d) flashed
8. The children had a lot of at the movie theatre watching their favourite film.
 a) sorrow b) fight c) quarrel d) fun
9. Universities should do more to young people for the world of work.
 a) make b) prepare c) recommend d) advise
10. My brother dreams of joining the navy to his country and travels at sea.
 a) serve b) deny c) condemn d) employ
11. We finished our meal with a of honey and nuts.
 a) desert b) dessert c) recipe d) receipt
12. The poet read several from his new poems in his television interview.
 a) marks b) volumes c) extracts d) scripts
13. The three shared a taxi as they don't have enough money.
 a) voters b) passengers c) sellers d) drivers
14. Most Indian dishes usually taste very as they use the hottest pepper in them.
 a) sweet b) tasteful c) warm d) spicy
15. Science gives us hope that many diseases will not in our future world.
 a) damage b) disappear c) exist d) cure
16. The chef said that we need to use fresh herbs أعشاب to get the good Italian
 a) scene b) sight c) test d) taste
17. Hesham is always the first to at work in the morning.
 a) go b) get c) arrive d) reach

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18 You must have at five years' experience to get the job.
a) last b) lost c) list d) least

19 It is common for children to be afraid of the dark. The adjective "common" can be the opposite of the adjective "..... ".
a) useful b) strange c) available d) rare

20 The criminal was arrested on his at the airport.
a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived

21 Mother always asks my little brother to out of the kitchen.
a) sleep b) take c) keep d) give

22 The manager says that the next meeting will take on Thursday.
a) place b) part c) up d) in

23 Unfortunately, the factory didn't achieve the profits and we had to close it.
a) expect b) expectance c) expected d) expecting

24 The Pyramids are one of the most touristic places with tourists in Egypt.
a) popularise b) popularity c) popular d) unpopular

25 The fire could possibly have been caused by accident. The adverb "possibly" is similar in meaning to the adverb "..... ".
a) regularly b) probably c) terribly d) fantastically

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 During the school picnic, we gathered the children around us and sang songs. The synonyms of the word " gather " are
a) divide b) assemble c) scatter d) separate e) collect

27 Egyptian farmers grow large of wheat, however we have to export some.
a) amounts b) qualities c) spaces d) quantities e) recipes

28 The hotel restaurant a wonderful meal to more than fifty members at the conference.
a) fed b) served c) did d) wasted e) prepared

29 The menu at this restaurant includes a wide selection of French
a) components b) tools c) recipes d) dishes e) designs

30 We would welcome any advice or suggestions with open arms. The antonyms of the word "welcome" are
a) agree b) deny c) accept d) exclude e) reply

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح
تطبيق الأضواء

1 Adjectives الصفات

الصفة: هى كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تجمع حتى ولو كان الاسم الموصوف جمعًا.

الصفة تأتى قبل الاسم وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ v. to be

- He is a tall boy. The boy is tall.

تأتى الصفة بعد الأفعال الآتية:

be, look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.

- She is beautiful.
- The food tastes good.

الصفات الآتية لا يأتى بعدها أسماء:

afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, etc.

- They are still alive. I like outdoor activities such as skiing, climbing and hiking.

الصفات الآتية يأتى بعدها اسم:

chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.

بعض الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.

- The rich (rich people) should help and support the poor (poor people).

2 Order of Adjectives ترتيب الصفات

Opinion		Fact adjectives							Noun
		Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	Used for	
It's a	nice	small	old	square	brown	Italian	wooden	dinner	table.

وفى الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنتين أو ثلاث صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

a beautiful, white wedding dress.



3 One-syllable Adjectives

صفات المقطع الواحد

Positive		Comparative	Superlative	
tall	طويل	taller than	the tallest	في المقارنة نضع
young	صغير السن	younger than	the youngest	adj. + er + than
soft	ناعم	softer than	the softest	في التفضيل نضع
short	قصير	shorter than	the shortest	the + adj. + est
cheap	رخيص	cheaper than	the cheapest	
large	واسع	larger than	the largest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف e نضع r/st
wide	عريض	wider than	the widest	

Positive		Comparative	Superlative	
big	كبير الحجم	bigger than	the biggest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضعف الساكن
hot	ساخن	hotter than	the hottest	
low	منخفض	lower than	the lowest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف W قبله o او e نضع er/est دون تضعيف
few	قليل	fewer than	the fewest	

Two or more syllable-adjectives ending in y

ugly	قبيح	uglier than	the ugliest	إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهى بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/iest
easy	سهل	easier than	the easiest	
heavy	ثقيل	heavier than	the heaviest	
happy	سعيد	happier than	the happiest	
lucky	محظوظ	luckier than	the luckiest	

Examples

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Shady is a young boy.	Shady is younger than Ehab.	Shady is the youngest boy in class/of all students.

4 More than one-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطع

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
	more + adj + than	the most + adj
modern حديث/عصرى	more modern than	the most modern
careful حريص	more careful than	the most careful
expensive غالٍ	more expensive than	the most expensive
wonderful رائع	more wonderful than	the most wonderful
exciting مثير	more exciting than	the most exciting
difficult صعب	more difficult than	the most difficult
interesting شيق	more interesting than	the most interesting
beautiful جميل	more beautiful than	the most beautiful

Examples

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
English is an interesting subject.	English is more interesting than Spanish.	English is the most interesting subject of all languages.

5 Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives الصفات الشاذة

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good جيد/حسن	better than	the best
bad سيئ/ردىء	worse than	the worst
little قليل	less than	the least
much/many/a lot of كثير	more than	the most
far بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/furthest

Examples

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Addiction is a bad habit.	Addiction is worse than smoking.	Addiction is the worst habit in anyone's life.

لاحظ

نستخدم المقارنة:

١) لبيان المقارنة الضمنية لشيئين حتى مع عدم ذكر أحد طرفى المقارنة.

- We need a bigger house.
- He wants a more expensive car.

٢) بين شيئين أو شخصين مع ذكر طرفى المقارنة.

- My brother is older than me.
- My car is more modern than my neighbour's.

٣) لوصف كيف يتغير الشىء وبيان الفرق بين شىء قديم وآخر حديث.

- Hala is getting taller.
- Ali is getting older and more intelligent.

لاحظ

١) استخدام هذه الصيغة comparative + comparative لبيان الزيادة المطردة فى التغيير.

- Cars are getting faster and faster.
- Computers are getting cheaper and cheaper.

٢) يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل much/a lot/a bit/a little/far/rather/even قبل صفات المقارنة سواء er أو more لبيان درجة ومقدار المقارنة.

- Gold is much/a lot more expensive than salt.
- Travelling by train is a little/a bit cheaper than travelling by car.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The blue whale makes a sound than the polar bear.
 a) loud
 b) loudest
 c) louder
 d) more loud
2. Jupiter is planet in the solar system.
 a) the biggest
 b) the bigger
 c) the most big
 d) the big
3. In my opinion, the tiger is animal of all.
 a) danger
 b) more dangerous
 c) a dangerous
 d) the most dangerous
4. This tree is than the building over there.
 a) more taller
 b) a bit taller
 c) very tall
 d) the tallest
5. As it was raining heavily, the driver saw nothing and the car went down the hill.
 a) fast and faster
 b) fast and fast
 c) faster and faster
 d) faster and fast

Answers 1 c) 2 a) 3 d) 4 b) 5 c



Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My sister thinks she's than me, but I don't agree!
a) the most intelligent b) much intelligent
c) intelligent d) more intelligent

2 Who is person in your country?
a) powerful b) more powerful
c) the most powerful d) much powerful

3 How far is railway station from here?
a) the nearest b) the nearer c) the near d) nearer

4 He is than all of his four brothers.
a) more taller b) the tallest c) the taller d) taller

5 Mona was not as intelligent as the others, but she was
a) more prettier b) pretty c) the prettiest d) most pretty

6 China is than any other country in the world.
a) most populated b) more populated c) populated d) as populated

7 Although we aren't rich, my children go to schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better

8 The blue whale is animal in the world.
a) more heavy b) heavy c) heavier d) the heaviest

9 A falcon has got a eyesight than a human.
a) good b) better c) best d) bad

10 Unfortunately, her illness was we thought at first.
a) serious b) more serious
c) more serious than d) the most serious

11 Vegetables are than meat if you want to go on a diet.
a) healthier b) more healthier c) healthy d) more healthy

12 It is more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain.
a) very b) few c) little d) far

13 The film we saw last night was interesting of all I have seen this month.
a) more b) the least c) less d) the lesser

14 The second exercise is more difficult than the first.
a) rather b) so c) as d) many

15 Health and happiness are than money.
a) important b) more important
c) the least important d) as important

16 We live in a house, but my uncle lives in a one.
a) big/big b) big/biggest c) big/bigger d) bigger/biggest

17 I cannot walk any
a) farther b) further c) farthest d) both a and b

18 It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere?
a) more quiet b) much quiet c) quieter d) most quiet

19 What's important decision you've ever had to make?
a) the more b) the most c) most d) the much most

20 My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something interesting.
a) much b) most c) less d) more

21 You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look today.
a) happier b) more happy c) much happy d) happiest

22 English is to study than Chinese.
a) easy b) more easier c) much easier d) less easier

23 I think air pollution is more dangerous than sound pollution.
a) so b) a lot c) many d) a lot of

24 As I ran, my leg got tired.
a) less and more b) most and most
c) more and more d) many and much

25 The last exam was quite easy and I began to feel confident about my results.
a) most b) more c) less d) many

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 Two of the given words are adjectives:
"The sun in our solar system will eventually become a red giant."
a) system b) solar c) giant d) sun e) red

27 Two sentences give the same meaning as:
"To me, Physics is a difficult subject, but English is easy."
a) I find physics more difficult than English.
b) I find physics much easier than English.
c) I find physics as difficult as English.
d) I find English much easier than physics.
e) I find English more difficult than physics.

28 Two sentences are grammatically correct:
a) What is the world's popular sport?
b) What is the world's most popular sport?
c) What is the world's better sport?
d) What is the world's best sport?
e) What is the world's more popular sport?

29 Two sentences don't give the same meaning as:
The red dress costs 250 pounds, the blue dress costs 200 pounds.
a) The blue dress costs less than the red dress.
b) The red dress is more expensive than the blue dress.
c) The blue dress is cheaper than the red dress.
d) The blue dress costs more than the red dress.
e) The red dress costs less than the blue dress.

30 Two sentences are grammatically correct:
a) I bought a nice, Italian red dress.
b) The young people should help the old ones.
c) I bought a nice, red Italian dress.
d) All society should take care of the disabled.
e) I like this food as it tastes nicely.

General Exercises
(Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Some teachers still think of computers as useless toys.
a) modern b) dated c) updated d) traditional

2 By winter, the ground was covered with deep and it was hard to drive.
a) snow b) metal c) plastic d) sponge

3 The aeroplane that crashed in the mountains was carrying over 500
a) pilots b) hosts c) passengers d) hostesses

4 It's natural to be nervous before an important such as a wedding.
a) accident b) plan c) event d) feast

5 I can't eat this fish or shrimps because I'm allergic to
a) seafood b) dairy c) poultry d) legumes

6 It's Dad's birthday and we're going out for a meal to
a) separate b) commemorate c) celebrate d) relate

7 Make sure that you add the correct of water to the food recipe.
a) quality b) quantity c) equality d) equity

8 The complained that he still hadn't received the book he had ordered several weeks ago.
a) customer b) producer c) servant d) seller

9 I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed than usual.
a) earlier b) much early c) later d) more early

10 Travelling by train is cheaper than travelling by plane.
a) more b) much c) many d) most

11 This dress is of all you've tried on yet.
a) nicer b) nice c) the nicest d) as nice

12 I regret selling my car. It was decision I've ever made.
a) a bad b) the worst c) as bad d) worse

13 I talked to the new boss, and he seems to be a person.
a) nicer b) nicest c) nice d) nicely

14 He got the best marks in the class. This means that he got marks than anyone else.
a) good b) better c) best d) most

15 My car is more modern than Ali's car, but Yasser's is
a) the most modern b) more modern
c) most modern d) moderner

16 Hany had three plates of food. He was of all his friends.
a) hungrier b) hungry c) the hungriest d) much hungrier

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People love to chew gum. In fact, people around the world have been chewing gum for thousands of years. But have you ever wondered how gum is made? You may not believe this, but gum comes from trees. Ancient Greeks got it from the bark of mastic trees. People in South America chewed chiclet, which is very rubbery. It is made from the sap of the sapodilla tree. The people of North America chewed the sap from spruce trees.

In 1871, the chemist Thomas Adams created chewing gum made out of chiclet. He manufactured it. Chiclet was used to make gum for many years. Then he sold it to many people. Then in 1928, Walter Diemer invented modern bubble gum. Today, pink is still the most popular colour for bubble gum. Chemists figured out ways to create artificial gum. Everything could be made in a lab. Chemists discovered other things too. For example, they figured out how to make the gum's taste last longer. That made people happy! But people who chew gum need to remember something. Gum is not meant to be swallowed.

However, our bodies cannot digest gum. Some people believe the gum sticks together in our stomachs and blocks everything. Others even believe that gum stays there for seven years. This is not true. If you swallow gum, it will just come out when you go to the bathroom. There are many ingredients in today's bubble gum. There is sugar, corn syrup, softeners, flavoring, and latex. The latex makes the gum stretch. That way, you can blow bubbles.

Chad Fell from the United States blew the biggest bubble in the world. In 2004, he blew a bubble 20 inches wide and he didn't even use his hands! That's pretty impressive. You can also practice blowing big bubbles. But be prepared to get some gum sticking to your face once the bubble pops!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 According to the information you read in the article, which statement is true about bubble gum?

a) Gum was first invented by Thomas Adams in 1871.

b) Walter Diemer called his modern day bubble gum, "Hubba Bubba."

c) People in ancient times, such as the Greeks chewed different types of tree sap as a form of gum.

d) Modern day bubble gum only has one or two ingredients in it.

2 Based on the information in the article, what did Chad Fell do?
a) He made bubble gum out of resin.
b) He manufactured chewing gum made out of chiclet.
c) He invented modern bubble gum in a lab.
d) He blew a 20-inch bubble in 2004.

3 What ingredient in modern day bubble gum makes it stretch?
a) Corn syrup. b) Latex. c) Flavoring. d) Sugar.

4 The word "swallow" means
a) cause food or drink to pass down the throat
b) the body's way of breaking down food
c) make a large quantity of something using machinery
d) putting bad food in dust bins

B) Answer the following questions:

5 Is chiclet still used to make bubble gum? Why or why not?
.....

6 A myth is a popular belief that isn't true. What are two myths about bubble gum that some people believe?
.....

7 Find words from the passage that mean:
a) Worthy of admiration. b) Expert in chemistry.
.....

8 What do you think the benefits of chewing gums are?
.....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Food festivals are quickly becoming part of a vast food tourism industry. Food tourism itself has become an important part of the tourism industry worldwide.
.....

2. In the past, people only ate food made of local and available ingredients. Now, they can eat food made in many parts of the world due to the growth of international trade.
.....

3. Doctors advise office clerks to do more exercises. Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration of the workplace.
.....

4. Most countries face problems because of the lack of job opportunities for young people. So, governments try hard to solve the unemployment problem.
.....

5. We live in the age of tremendous speed where there is no room for laziness. This speed also increases stress and leads to serious diseases.
.....

6. Many people believe that art can play a role in enhancing social values. Films and plays can also fight value deterioration among young men.
.....

B) Translate into English:

١- يحذر الخبراء الشباب من أن الطعام السريع يمثل خطرًا على صحتهم، فبالرغم من مذاقه اللذيذ فهو يحتوى على كمية كبيرة من الدهون والمكونات الأخرى التى تسبب زيادة الوزن.

.....

٢- نأمل أن تسهم جهود المنظمات الخيرية فى مصر، مثل: جمعية رسالة وبنك الطعام المصرى، فى تخفيف معاناة الناس والقضاء على الفقر فى كل مكان.

.....

٣- إن استصلاح الصحراء أهم طرق حل مشكلة نقص الغذاء فى كثير من الدول النامية؛ لذا تخطط الحكومة المصرية لاستصلاح مليون ونصف فدان من صحراء مصر.

.....

٤- علينا أن نرعى كبار السن حتى يشعروا بالراحة بعد عملهم الشاق من أجلنا، فالكثير منهم بذلوا صحتهم ووقتهم من أجل الأجيال القادمة.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

art	الفن	lack	نقص
desert reclamation	استصلاح الصحراء	poverty	الفقر
deterioration	تدهور	society	جمعية
enhancing	تعزيز	stress	الضغط
food shortage	نقص الغذاء	suffering	معاناة
frustration	الإحباط	trade	التجارة
get rid of	يتخلص من	tremendous	هائل
ingredients	مكونات		

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The role of charitable organisations in helping society."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary

شاهد فيديو الشرح على تطبيق الأضواء

Vocabulary on Reading

article (n)	مقال	phrase (n)	عبارة
beef (n)	لحم بقرى	plate (n)	طبق
belief (n)	اعتقاد/إيمان	relatives (n)	أقارب
chopstick (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية	respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام/يحترم
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	rest (n) (v) (ed)	باقٍ/راحة/يرتاح
foreigner (n)	أجنبى	rude (adj)	وقح/غير مؤدب
general (adj)	عام	rule (n)	قاعدة
introduce (v) (d)	يقدم	share (v) (d)	يشارك
light (adj)	خفيف	tradition (n)	تقليد
mean (v)	يعنى/يقصد	vertically (adv)	عموديًا
personally (adv)	شخصيًا		

Vocabulary on Listening

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق	mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية
attractive (adj)	جذاب	name (n)	اسم/يسمى/يذكر
complicated (adj)	معقد	options (n)	اختيارات
confused (adj)	مرتبك	products (n)	منتجات
design (v) (ed)	يصمم/تصميم	questionnaire (n)	استبيان/استطلاع رأى
details (n)	تفاصيل	simple (adj)	بسيط
distant (adj)	بعيد	type (n)	نوع

Workbook Vocabulary

abroad (adv)	بالخارج
climate (n)	مناخ
comfortable (adj)	مريح
confuse (v) (d)	يربك
fried (adj)	محمر/مقلى
include (v) (d)	يشمل/يتضمن/يشتمل
prefer (v) (red)	يفضل
repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
suitable (adj)	مناسب
windy (adj)	عاصف

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

achieve a great deal of	يحقق قدرًا كبيرًا من
around the world	حول العالم
at all	أبدًا/مطلقًا
(be) careful	يكون حريصًا
ask about	يسأل عن
happy with	سعيد بـ
spend on	ينفق على
go abroad	يسافر للخارج
make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
show respect	يظهر الاحترام
sound nice	يبدو لطيفًا
start with	يبدأ بـ
write about	يكتب عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
attract	يجذب	attraction	جذب	attractive	جذاب
believe	يعتقد	belief	اعتقاد	believable	يمكن تصديقه
		believer	مؤمن		
confuse	يربك	confusion	ارتباك	confused	مرتبك
				confusing	مربك
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي

produce	ينتج	product production	منتج إنتاج	productive	منتج
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respected respectable respectful	محترم بسبب إنجازاته محترم من الآخرين محترم لغيره

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
belief	اعتقاد	concept/faith	doubt/disbelief شك
confuse	يربك	distract/bewilder	comfort/clarify يريح/يوضح
design	يصمم	plan/devise	ruin/mix up يدمر/يخلط
distant	بعيد	isolated/remote	close/near قريب
light	خفيف	lightweight/moderate	heavy/large ثقيل/كبير
respect	احترام	appreciation/esteem	disrespect/dishonor عدم احترام
share	يشارك	distribute/participate	gather/combine يجمع
suitable	مناسب	appropriate/convenient	inconvenient/improper غير مناسب

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There were many interesting on Al Ahly's Bronze Medal in FIFA World Club Cup in the paper today.
 a) leaflets b) brochures c) articles d) searches
2. Collecting money for the new cancer was a noble effort that deserves
 a) disrespect b) rudeness c) power d) respect
3. All our close were invited to my sister's wedding.
 a) enemies b) relatives c) heroes d) opponents
4. You should follow safety which apply to your workplace.
 a) rules b) roles c) rolls d) rollers
5. In China, it is impolite to put your chopsticks into your food bowl.
 a) gradually b) carefully c) usefully d) vertically

Answers 1 c) 2 d) 3 b) 4 a) 5 d)

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- How do you show respect for elder people?

A Personally, I think it's important to respect[1] our older relatives. When South Korean families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest[2] of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this shows your respect for the most important people in your family.

B As you probably know, people in China usually use chopsticks[3] to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is considered very rude to put your chopsticks vertically[4] into your bowl of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese tradition[5], but for me, foreigners who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

C In my opinion, lunchtime isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some light[6] food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

(1) يحترم

(2) باقٍ

(3) عصا الطعام الصينية

(4) عموديًا

(5) تقليد

(6) خفيف

Post-reading question:

- Do you agree with the Russian to eat your meal at 1? Why/Why not?



Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - Why do you think people design a questionnaire?

When you're writing a questionnaire[1], you need to ask the right questions. Some questions are a lot more useful than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of difference.

Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always helpful to use simple[2] language. If you use complicated[3] language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear meanings. Words like 'most' and 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as 'almost all' and 'almost none' instead.

Thirdly, don't have too many options[4]. People get confused[5] when there are more than six options to choose from.

Don't ask personal questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

Remember to ask one question at a time. Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family?' Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember. Don't ask about events in the distant[6] past, especially if they are about something that was boring[7].

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.

(1) استطلاع رأى
(2) بسيط
(3) معقد
(4) اختيارات
(5) مرتبك
(6) بعيد
(7) ممل

Post listening question: - If you are asked to write a questionnaire, what topic will you chose to write it about?

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sons have both great results for the final exams.
 a) deceived b) removed c) hindered d) achieved
2. Some of the maths questions were too for your average 10-year-old.
 a) simple b) complicated c) easy d) obvious
3. The question with too many will confuse the young student.
 a) answers b) papers c) options d) letters
4. Shopping on the internet can be safe if you follow a few rules.
 a) simple b) confused c) astonishing d) interested
5. In the past, dinosaurs controlled the earth before they became extinct.
 a) near b) distant c) strange d) odd

Answers 1) d 2) b 3) c 4) a 5) b

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

mind map خريطة ذهنية	diagram that presents information with a central idea in the middle and connected ideas arranged around it
questionnaire استبيان/استطلاع رأى	a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information
option اختيار	a choice you can make in a particular situation
phrase عبارة	a group of words that have a particular meaning when used together
belief اعتقاد/إيمان	the feeling that something is definitely true or definitely exists



Notes on Vocabulary

1 share
١- يشترك (فى شىء) بدون تقسيم
٢- يشارك (شىء/رأى/شعور)
- My brother shares a room with one of his colleagues at university.
- We shared the pizza between the four of us.

divide
١- يقسم/ينقسم
٢- يقسم على رقم (فى الرياضيات)
- The children are divided into three teams.
- Thirty divided by six is five.

2 include
يشمل/يتضمن (ما بعده يشكل جزءًا مما قبله)
- The price of the computer includes 500 pounds worth of free software.

contain يحتوى على (بداخله)
- There were four or five boxes containing toys and books.

consist of
يتكون من (ما بعده يشكل كل ما قبله)
- A football team consists of ten players and a goalkeeper.

3 introduce يقدم (شخصًا) / يقدم (شيئًا جديدًا)
- I introduced my family to all my friends at the school party.
- Russia is the first country to introduce a new vaccine for the Novel Coronavirus.

present يقدم (شيئًا)
- It was the school headmaster who presented the prizes at the party.

4 abroad خارج البلاد
- My father travelled abroad last year.

aboard = on board
على متن السفينة/الطائرة
- The check-in desk announced that it's time to get aboard the plane to London.

broad عريض/واسع
- My friend Ali is of medium height, but has very broad shoulders.

5 climate (المناخ) فترة طويلة
- Egypt is popular with tourists because of its mild climate all the year.

weather (الطقس) فترة قصيرة
- The weather today is hot and humid.

atmosphere الغلاف الجوى
- Pollution is really damaging the atmosphere of the Earth.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doctors say that we should avoid foods which a lot of fat.
 a) consist b) include
 c) enclose d) contain
2. Father said that I had to myself at the beginning of a job interview.
 a) introduce b) present
 c) invite d) initiate
3. We don't have enough books, so you'll have to
 a) share b) divide
 c) spill d) unite
4. The was fantastic for a picnic, but father had to go to his office.
 a) climate b) atmosphere
 c) weather d) ozone
5. Most young men dream of travelling to find good jobs.
 a) board b) abroad
 c) aboard d) broad

Answers 1) d 2) a 3) a 4) c 5) b



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. Most villagers in Egypt are keen to preserve local customs and
 a) directions b) traditions c) faults d) searches
2. The Best Actor award in Cannes film festival is a great honour .
 a) accepted b) researched c) considered d) denied
3. As a rule, shorter sentences are easier to understand.
 a) general b) public c) private d) strange
4. The aluminium bars are quite and easy to lift than other metals.
 a) heavy b) modern c) light d) old-fashioned
5. Your brother's tough behaviour doesn't that he doesn't like you.
 a) mean b) search c) report d) advertise
6. Some of Sameer's will be waiting for him at the station when he arrives.
 a) officers b) relatives c) passengers d) reporters
7. My friend has worked hard to her goal and become a doctor.
 a) defy b) achieve c) fight d) astonish
8. The old man often has to ask people to what they said because he has hearing difficulties.
 a) report b) announce c) repeat d) cancel
9. The city's old streets most visitors as they are similar to each other.
 a) refuse b) confuse c) diffuse d) reject
10. Can you give me more about these English courses, please?
 a) times b) plots c) chances d) details
11. The movie is not for children as it has violent scenes.
 a) suitable b) reusable c) reputable d) avoidable
12. The conditions in the desert made it difficult to put the tent up.
 a) rainy b) sunny c) dry d) humid
13. This kind of trees only grow in humid
 a) climate b) atmosphere c) soil d) depth
14. I do my work in an office that I with some other teachers.
 a) divide b) build c) design d) share
15. A is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information.
 a) licence b) degree c) permission d) questionnaire
16. The factory in our city is able to most of the cooking oil we need.
 a) produce b) consume c) buy d) spoil

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 You must read the of the novel to understand it better.
a) introduce b) introduction c) introductory d) introduced

18 Father always says that he is happy what he achieved in life so far.
a) at b) in c) over d) with

19 You must always have the that you can succeed.
a) belief b) believe c) believable d) believed

20 If you travel to isolated areas, make sure you have a good guide. The adjective "isolated" is similar in meaning to the adjective
a) distant b) connected c) joined d) planned

21 This camera has many features at a very good price.
a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted

22 My friend Alaa spends a lot of his money fast food.
a) in b) at c) on d) with

23 Every now and then, the citizens noises about the high cost of living.
a) make b) do c) reply d) apply

24 There is no doubt that smoking is bad for your health. The noun "doubt" can be the opposite to the noun
a) denial b) belief c) tiredness d) acceptance

25 Schools must teach children to respect towards elderly people.
a) avoid b) sell c) show d) teach

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 As a manager of a multi-national company, Mr. Ibrahim often abroad on business
a) arrives b) comes c) goes d) plans e) travels

27 Mohamed Salah is to be one of the best players in the world.
a) considered b) regulated c) arranged d) believed e) moved

28 The stars are more distant from the earth than the sun. The antonyms of the adjective " distant " are
a) remote b) close c) far d) near e) light

29 About sixty-five close friends and attended Mariam and Jack's wedding.
a) relations b) hosts c) clerks d) opponents e) relatives

30 I have the greatest respect for my parents. The synonyms of the noun " respect " are
a) belief b) doubt c) appreciation d) denial e) esteem

(B) Language

Important Notes

١ لتساوى الصفات نستخدم as+ adj + as

as + adj. + as	عند تساوى الصفات	Chemistry is as difficult as biology.
not as/so + adj + as	عدم تساوى الصفات	Arabic isn't as/so difficult as biology.

٢ نستخدم no/never دائمًا فى صيغة المقارنة.

- No river in the world is longer than the Nile.
- I've never bought a faster car than Mercedes.

٣ نستخدم ever فى صيغة التفضيل آخر الجملة.

- Mercedes is the fastest car I've ever bought.

٤ نستخدم less+ adjective + than للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع استخدام الصفة بدون إضافات.

- Silver is less expensive than gold.
- This book is less interesting than that one.
- Fiat is less cheap than Toyota.

٥ مع التركيبة الآتية نستخدم صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلما كلما)

The + صفة مقارنة + اسم, the + صفة مقارنة + اسم

- The more books you read, the more information you get.
- The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.

٦ هناك صفات مشتركة فى النوعين فتأخذ er/est or more/the most وهى:

- Clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, shallow, simple, stupid, quiet, etc.

simple- simpler- simplest (more simple- the most simple)

٧ هناك مقارنة نستخدم فيها the بين شيئين من نوع واحد:

The + صفة مقارنة (....er/more + adjective)

- Of the two cars this is the faster.
- Noha is the younger of two girls.

٨ نستخدم most بدون the بمعنى very قبل صفة أو حال.

- We attended a most interesting lecture. The question that is asked most often.

٩ نستخدم (of) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها أشخاص أو فترة زمنية.

- He is the cleverest of his friends in electronics.

١٠ نستخدم (in) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها مكان .

- Cairo is the biggest city in Egypt.

١١ لاحظ استخدام (from) مع (farthest) واستخدام (nearest) مع (to).

- Luxor is the farthest city from Cairo.
- Benha is the nearest city to Cairo.

١٢ لاحظ استخدام الصيغة الآتية the same + noun + as.

- Adel is the same age as Sameer.

١٣ الفرق بين later/latter/last.

later (بعد ذلك/لاحقًا)

- تشير كلمة «later» إلى وقت فى المستقبل

- Right now I'm studying my lesson, and I'll visit you later. (in the future from this moment)

- ودائمًا عندما نقول مع السلامة لشخص مع المقابلة مرة أخرى فى وقت لاحق نقول **"See you later!"**

latter (الثانى/الأخير)

- نستخدم كلمة «latter» عندما نشير إلى الثانى من شخصين أو شيئين يتم ذكرهما.

- I have fans on both Facebook and YouTube, and I have more fans on the latter.

- الأخير يعنى الثانى من الشيئين اللذين ذكرتهما للتو وهو اليوتيوب.

last (الأخير)

- آخر شىء أو شخص ولا شىء أو شخص بعده/أقرب شىء للوقت الحاضر

- The next meeting will be held in the last week in June.
- The guard was the last person to see his boss alive.

١٤ الفرق بين older/elder.

elder

- نستخدم elder عندما يتعين علينا مقارنة أقدمية شخصين فيما يتعلق بالعمر وخاصة بين أفراد العائلة.
- ولا يأتى بعدها than.

- My elder sister couldn't go to school today because she missed the bus.
- Oh, so you are 3 years elder to me!

- لاحظ أن كلمة elderly صفة بمعنى كبار السن من منتصف الخمسينيات وأكثر.

- Nowadays, elderly people are healthier and more active than youngsters.

older

- تستخدم older لتشير إلى الأكبر سنًا أو الأقدم زمنًا ويمكن أن يتبعها than أو تفهم المقارنة ضمنيًا بدون than.

- We start understanding many things as we grow/get older.
- My parents are older than your parents.
- The older version of the software had many useful features than this one.

استخدام How + adjective or adverb أو What + adj. + noun للتعجب

How + adjective/adverb.

- How polite he is!
- How fast she types!

What + (adjective) + uncountable/plural noun.

- What horrible news!
- What lovely earrings!

What + a(n) + (adjective) + singular countable noun.

- What a beautiful girl she is!
- (Also: How beautiful a girl she is!)

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's to learn a language in a country where it is spoken
 a) much easy b) the easiest
 c) more easier d) a lot easier
2. The tired you are, the harder to concentrate.
 a) much b) most
 c) more d) many
3. Riding a horse is not riding a bike.
 a) easier b) as easy as
 c) the easiest d) so easy
4. The weather is better today. It's yesterday.
 a) as cold as b) not as cold as
 c) colder than d) much colder than
5. Ahmed and Ashraf are the same age. This means that
 a) Ahmed is as old as Ashraf b) Ahmed is older than Ashraf
 c) Ashraf isn't as old as Ahmed d) Ashraf is older than Ahmed

Answers 1 d) 2 c) 3 b) 4 b) 5 a)

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Amazon isn't the Nile. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
 a) longer b) long c) as long as d) so long
2. That's the least interesting book I've read.
 a) ever b) never c) yet d) hardly
3. The slower you drive, the you are.
 a) safe b) safest c) safer d) most safer
4. Lamiaa is the of the two sisters.
 a) young b) as young as c) youngest d) younger
5. The I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.
 a) longer b) long c) longest d) most long
6. I like to travel light. The luggage, the better.
 a) little b) fewer c) more d) less
7. She is not as her mother.
 a) more beautiful b) most beautiful c) as beautiful d) beautifully
8. I'm very clever at cooking, but my mother is cook I've ever known.
 a) cleverer b) clever c) the cleverest d) less clever
9. Sara is the same as Mona.
 a) age b) old c) young d) older
10. If I had to choose between Gamal and Hany, Gamal is
 a) funny b) funniest c) funnier d) the funny
11. After three weeks of studying, I began to understand English
 a) good b) best c) the better d) much better
12. Who is the person you have ever spoken to?
 a) most intelligent b) more intelligent c) intelligent d) as intelligent
13. The you study for these exams, the you will do.
 a) hard – better b) harder – better
 c) more - good d) much - better
14. Osama tells his doctor that he has been feeling tired lately.
 a) the most b) more and more c) such a d) many
15. The lecture halls at my university are the same those at State University.
 a) as b) from c) with d) at
16. Badr was laughing hard, but his wife was laughing even!
 a) hard b) hardness c) harder d) the hardest
17. He is of the two brothers.
 a) cleverer b) the cleverer c) the cleverest d) the clever
18. I like living in the country. It's peaceful than living in a town.
 a) fewer b) most c) much d) more
19. The chapter is very interesting.
 a) late b) last c) latest d) latter

20 Of the two sisters, Magda is the
a) old b) oldest c) older d) eldest

21 Shimaa is my sister.
a) elder b) older c) old d) both a and b

22 You must act without any delay.
a) farther b) further c) farthest d) furthest

23 Out of all the students, Hany studied, but got the best grade.
a) least b) less c) the less d) the least

24 Both the tiger and the leopard are cats, but the former is much larger than the
a) last b) latest c) latter d) later

25 she is! All her students respect her.
a) What a good teacher b) What good teacher
c) What good a teacher d) What a good a teacher

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 Pick out two adjectives in the following sentence:
"I always see my friendly neighbours running fast in the spacious club near our village."
a) neighbours b) friendly c) spacious d) village e) fast

27 Two of the following sentences give the same meaning as:
"I live 2 km from my mother. My sister lives 1 km from her."
a) I live nearer my mother than my sister.
b) My sister lives nearer my mother than me.
c) I live further from my mother than my sister.
d) My sister lives farther my mother than me.
e) My sister and I are the same distance from my mother.

28 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct:
a) My brother is as tall as my father.
b) My father is tallest than my brother.
c) My father and my brother are the same height.
d) My brother is more shorter than my father.
e) My brother is shorter as my father.

29 Two sentences are grammatically incorrect:
a) The poor people always wish to live as comfortable as the rich people.
b) The poor always wish to live as comfortable as the rich.
c) Poor people always wish to live as comfortable as rich people.
d) Poor people always wish to live as comfortable as the rich people.
e) The poor always wish to live as comfortable as rich people.

30 Two sentences don't give the same meaning as:
"No person is more intelligent than Bassem in my class."
a) Bassam is the most intelligent person in my class.
b) Bassam is more intelligent than any person in my class.
c) Bassam is as intelligent as every person in my class.
d) Bassam is not as intelligent as any person in my class.
e) No person is as intelligent as Bassem in my class.

(C) Communication Skills

(I) Language Skills

Note

لمزيد من التدريبات على المهارات
يرجى الرجوع الى ملحق المهارات
الجزء الخاص بـ integrated skills

Expressing personal beliefs/opinions and general beliefs/opinions

Expressing personal beliefs	Expressing general beliefs
• In my opinion, ...	• It is believed
• Personally, ...	• As you probably know, ...
• For me, ...	• It is thought that, ...
• I understand that, ...	• It's obvious that, ...
• As far as I'm concerned,	

(II) Writing

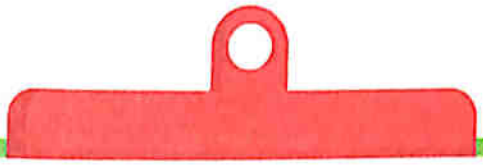
Questionnaire Writing

- **You're going to write a questionnaire to find out what young people like to eat and where they prefer to eat in your country:**

Tips for preparing the questionnaire:

- Discuss things to ask about and make the mind map.
- Design your own questionnaire.
- Think about how long it will take to ask all your questions.
- Make your questionnaire look attractive.

Model Questionnaire



Read the questions and Tick (✓) your answer:

1. Where do you like to eat your food?

- ◯ At home.
- ◯ At restaurants.

2. What kind of food do you like?

- ◯ Fast food.
- ◯ Well cooked food.

3. What do you care more about your food?

- ◯ Taste.
- ◯ Ingredients.

4. What kind of snacks do you like?

- ◯ Fruit and vegetables.
- ◯ Biscuits and soft drink.
- ◯ Sandwiches and juice.

5. Do you care about the natural ingredients of the food you eat?

- ◯ Yes.
- ◯ No.

6. Do you like canned food?

- ◯ Yes.
- ◯ No.

7. How much fresh juice do you have?

- ◯ Much.
- ◯ A little.
- ◯ None.

8. Do you care about healthy or unhealthy food?

- ◯ Yes.
- ◯ No.

(III) Speaking Skills

Communicating opinions and beliefs:

It's no doubt that, everyone or every group of people have their own opinions and beliefs. But don't forget that other people have their own beliefs, too. So, we must respect the other people's opinions and beliefs and we must be calm while discussing our beliefs or opinions. In civilised societies, there is no problem to be different from the others, but it's a must to respect each other.

Some rules to understand:

(A) Diversity التنوع and difference among people is natural.
(B) You don't have to accept my opinion but respect it.
(C) Discussion not quarrelling الشجار may lead to agreement.

- Try to find answers to the following questions:

1. How will you express your opinion to people who are different from you?
2. If you couldn't persuade someone with your opinion, what would you do?
3. What are the polite expressions should a person say to express his/her opinion?

Practice

Complete the following dialogue:

Maher and Samir are discussing a matter.

Maher : Hi, Samir. I think social media is not a good way of communication.
Samir :?
Maher : Because most of the stories on social media are fake.
Samir : I respect your opinion but, ...
Maher : Like what?
Samir : You can know the current events immediately, and you can make friends from all over the world.
Maher :
Samir : Of course, I really have made friends from other countries and I enjoy chatting with them.
Maher : OK, I will think about it, goodbye.
Samir : Good bye.

General Exercises
(Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We should what our ancestors أسلافنا had written and said.
a) reflect b) benefit c) affect d) respect

2 This section of the hypermarket sells meat like hot dogs and burgers.
a) examples b) goods c) items d) products

3 You can avoid home accidents by following some simple of safety which are easy for children.
a) rails b) rolls c) roles d) rules

4 The price of the room at this hotel doesn't lunch.
a) consist b) contain c) include d) enclose

5 The rich man made great efforts to be a member of society.
a) disrespected b) respect c) respecting d) respected

6 Scientists new ideas and inventions to make our life better.
a) introduce b) reject c) invite d) prevent

7 It can be difficult to a room with a noisy or naught companion.
a) share b) divide c) spill d) unite

8 Experts warn of a great change in the world's due to global warming.
a) climate b) atmosphere c) economy d) ozone

9 Aswan is sunny. Do you know place in Egypt?
a) the sunnier b) the sunniest c) the sunny d) more sunnier

10 Have you visited the old castle? It was the one we visited during our holidays.
a) oldest b) eldest c) elder d) older

11 Maher isn't friendly as Hussein.
a) than b) so c) far d) much

12 Water is the expensive, but the most needful, of all liquids.
a) most b) least c) less d) more

13 The shorter the queue is, the the service is.
a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) less fast

14 Most other metals aren't as gold.
a) precious b) the most precious c) more precious d) as precious

15 In a basketball match, there are players than in a football match.
a) fewer b) fewest c) less d) few

16 My sister and my brother are not as happy as me. This means that I'm
a) the happier of all b) happier than them
c) happiest d) happy

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You don't need to be an adult to help others. In November 2009, when she was just thirteen years old, Nahla was looking for the sports section in the newspaper. A story about a girl by the name of Karima El-Said caught her eye. Karima El-Said, who lived in Siwa, had been forced to work long days in a carpet factory. She had worked fourteen hours a day, seven days a week from the time she was six years old until she escaped. Her job was to tie small knots in the carpets. The article shocked Nahla. Karima El-Said was the same age as Nahla. Nahla just couldn't imagine what it was like to work all day seven days a week and never have a chance to attend school or play. Nahla tore the article out of the newspaper and put it in her rucksack. But she couldn't get Karima El-Said out of her mind. Riding the bus to school, she took the article out of her rucksack and read it again and again. After school, she went to the local library and got as much information as she could find on child labour and exploitation. The next morning, with the teacher's permission, she told the class about Karima and about the thousands of children who were forced to work in plantations, mines, and factories.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 One of the following isn't true.

a) Nahla is about 23 years now.
b) Nahla never had a chance to attend school.
c) Nahla and Karima are the same age.
d) Nahla was sorry for Karima.

2 This story shows that you to help others.

a) don't have to be old
b) must be old
c) need to be courageous
d) have to be a student

3 The best title to the passage is "..... ".

a) How to help others.
b) Children are more useful than adults.
c) Children in plantations.
a) Child employment and manipulation.

4 The underlined word "plantations" means

a) shops
b) schools
c) farms
d) markets

B) Answer the following questions:

5 When did Nahla know about Karima El-Said's story?

.....

6 Why was Nahla shocked when she read the story?

.....

7 What do you think the reasons for the child labour and exploitation in societies?

.....

8 In your opinion, what should the government do to stop child labour?

.....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Eating habits differ from one country to another. Some people are characterised by their healthy food whereas others prefer the tasty food whether it is healthy or not.

.....

2. Food shortage is one of the most serious problems which the world faces nowadays. Experts say that it is due to misdistribution of food and not lack of it.

.....

3. Most governments impose strict laws to assure food safety for their peoples. Yet, we should all be responsible for obeying these laws strictly everywhere.

.....

4. Learning problems happens because of the way the brain takes in and processes information. That's why, it's important to understand how it works.

.....

5. Achieving good economic developments requires good planning and caring about scientific progress. Hence, governments should invest in scientific institutions.

.....

6. Our deserts are one of our chief sources of wealth which we should give due care to. In this way, they will add much to the economy.

.....

B) Translate into English:

١- يحتفل المصريون مثل باقى شعوب العالم بالأعياد المختلفة التى يتميز كل منها بنوع معين من الطعام، فاللحوم تؤكل فى عيد الأضحى، والحلويات المختلفة تؤكل فى عيد الفطر وعيد الميلاد المجيد.

.....

٢- مع انتشار فيروس كورونا فى العالم ينصحنا الأطباء بالحرص على الطعام الصحى الذى يحتوى على الفيتامينات التى تساعد أجسادنا على الوقاية من هذا الفيروس الخطير.

.....

٣- لم تمنع صعوبات التعلم بعض المشـاهير من النجاح فى حياتهم واسـتثمار قدراتهم ومواهبهم، بل اسـتطاعوا الوصول للنجاح بالمثابرة والعمل الجاد.

.....

٤- رغـم معارضة البعض لاسـتخدام الحيوانات فى التجارب يعتقد الكثيرون أنه لو لم نسـتخدمها لمـا كان لدينا الكثير من الأدوية التى تنقذ حياة الناس.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

abilities	قدرات	persistence	المثابرة
assure	يؤكد على	process	يجرى عملية
development	تنمية/تطور	responsible	مسئول
economy	الاقتصاد	sources	مصادر
fats	الدهون	strict	صارم/حازم
institutions	معاهد/مؤسسات	talents	مواهب
oppose	يعارض		

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

How can education help in solving many social problems in Egypt?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

King Lear Exercises
Act I Scenes i-ii

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is a fact that some people such as criminals express their through violence.
 a) triumph b) anger c) heritage d) inspection
2. My elder brother gets very angry when I him at chess.
 a) beat b) win c) practise d) rehearse
3. My father punished my younger brother for trying to him about his exam results.
 a) inform b) tell c) award d) deceive
4. A good business person can quickly make an important
 a) consumption b) sale c) decision d) affection
5. After five hours on his feet, the poor worker a break.
 a) reserves b) deserves c) observes d) empowers
6. Essam is a nice boy, so his teacher usually his occasional bad behaviour.
 a) forgives b) awards c) shows d) breaks
7. Tourism is a major source of for people in Hurghada and South Sinai.
 a) pension b) income c) pride d) loyalty
8. Samy began his own business with the he got from his grandfather.
 a) degree b) certificate c) inheritance d) letter
9. In the past, all important people had to swear their to the King or Queen of England.
 a) revenge b) disobedience c) treason d) loyalty
10. In Japan , after the emperor dies, the passes to his eldest son.
 a) business b) power c) army d) parliament
11. The King decided to send his former minister as he was very angry with him.
 a) at b) in c) to d) away
12. I believe that the young man won't in his business as he doesn't have any previous experience.
 a) succeed b) pass c) agree d) argue
13. I believe that my wife will do the right thing because I her.
 a) betray b) accept c) trust d) trick
14. We finally learned the shocking about our company's great losses.
 a) truce b) truth c) fight d) dispute
15. I would never to my parents about the exam results.
 a) lay b) imagine c) lie d) apply

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I watched a good movie the life and work of Nelson Mandela.
 a) writing b) devastating c) celebrating d) disrespecting
2. The police can really help you in the of an emergency.
 a) event b) accident c) incident d) story
3. Police officers were able to useful information from the company's financial records.
 a) exert b) tie c) extract d) deny
4. In fact, I it a rule never to make any friend who could not be useful to me.
 a) did b) devised c) damaged d) made
5. It is believed that the tiger is to India.
 a) kept b) native c) availed d) distracted
6. Unfortunately, internet websites are full of improper stories about famous people's life.
 a) spicy b) sweet c) successful d) valid
7. We need to create a/an in which business can prosper.
 a) air b) breath c) climate d) location
8. I have to say, with all due, that I don't think your solution will work.
 a) case b) cause c) design d) respect
9. Hussein's fluency of English and German him well in getting the job.
 a) played b) presented c) served d) rewarded
10. A parent can, on, help his/her son with his homework, but not all the time.
 a) event b) occasion c) accident d) incident
11. The waiter said our bill would to 1000 pounds.
 a) amount b) qualify c) clarify d) intensify
12. There is a shop which sells toilet such as soap and shampoo near our house.
 a) brochures b) articles c) essays d) accessories
13. The first lecture of Professor Michael his students to the main topics of the course.
 a) summarises b) explains c) introduces d) forces
14. Although my parents left my hometown, some of my relatives still live there.
 a) far b) foreign c) strange d) distant

15 A sunroof was one of the extra that you could get with the car.
a) choices b) machines c) options d) items

16 A taxi can take you you want to go in the city.
a) whatever b) whenever c) wherever d) however

17 You've got a camera with you, ...?
a) haven't you b) don't you c) have you d) do you

18 I didn't see I recognised at the conference.
a) everyone b) no one c) someone d) anyone

19 Soha works a receptionist in a telecommunication company.
a) in b) as c) by d) like

20 I haven't been to the beach the summer.
a) every b) all c) whole d) each

21 of what you say, I still believe Zamalek can win this game.
a) In spite b) Despite c) Although d) No matter

22 I have an appointment with the doctor later afternoon.
a) those b) that c) these d) this

23 he been invited, he would have come to the party.
a) Should b) Had c) Were d) Would

24 That suitcase over there belongs to
a) myself b) mine c) me d) my

25 Galal asked me him hang the picture.
a) to help b) help c) to be helping d) helped

26 I would have that mobile if I enough money.
a) had had b) had c) have had d) would have

27 I've been working all day and I'm exhausted.
a) the hardest b) hardly c) harder d) hard

28 to wake my father, I left the house silently.
a) Wanting b) Wanting not
c) Not being wanted d) Not wanting

29 **A:** Where is Judy? **B:** She won't be here 8 o'clock.
a) after b) until c) by the time d) on

30 The guide showed the tourists the house Charles Dickens died.
a) that b) which c) where d) when

Test 2
Based on Unit 2

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young doctor's death from the COVID-19 should as a warning to other young people.
a) cook b) serve c) mend d) show

2 You can hardly a child of three to know the difference between right and wrong.
a) accept b) except c) respect d) expect

3 An estimated 200 people had attended the food in the local park.
a) gallery b) conference c) festival d) seminar

4 A/An is a type of shellfish that has a rough shell with two parts and that is eaten both cooked and raw.
a) sponge b) shrimp c) owl d) oyster

5 My elder brother often gets with his friends after work on Thursday.
a) together b) on c) over d) through

6 The surgeon asked the two nurses to the patient for surgery.
a) appear b) disappear c) prepare d) repair

7 Of the two shirts, this is the
a) more cheap b) cheaper c) cheapest d) cheap

8 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be
a) more expensive b) much expensive c) cheaper d) cheap

9 The younger you are, the freedom you have.
a) most b) best c) more d) much

10 Your grades are not so good, but I know you can do the next exam.
a) best b) good c) the best d) better

11 Box A is bigger than box B, box C is bigger than box A.
a) Box B is the smallest box. b) Box A is the biggest box.
c) Box C is the smallest box d) Box B is the biggest box.

12 Robert is never on time. He always arrives than the rest of us.
a) the latest b) later c) last d) latter

13 I thought this test would be difficult, but it's test I've ever taken.
a) much easier b) easier c) the easiest d) easy

14 Out of all the films I've seen, this one is
a) sadly b) a sad c) sadder d) the saddest

15 Your answer is not complete, but it's than the other students' answers.
a) more correctly b) more correct c) the most correct d) much correct

16 Carrots are good for you, cakes are bad for you. This means

a) Carrots are worse for you than cakes.
b) Cakes are good for you.
c) Cakes are better for you than carrots.
d) Carrots are better for you than cakes.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some people argue that the pressures on international sportsmen and sportswomen kill the essence of sport—the pursuit of personal excellence. Children kick a football around for fun. When they get older and play for local school teams, they become competitive but they still enjoy playing. However, the individual representing his/her country cannot afford to think about enjoying him/herself; he has to think only about winning. He/She is responsible for an entire nation's hope, dreams and reputation.

A good example is the football World Cup. Football is the world's most important sport. It is even more important now that the United States is seriously taking it up. Winning the World Cup is perhaps the summit of international sporting success. Mention "Argentina or Brazil" to someone and chances are that he/she'll think of football. In a sense, winning the World Cup "puts Argentina or Brazil on the map."

Sports fans and supporters get quite irrational about the World Cup. People in England felt that their country was somehow important after they won in 1966. Years ago thousands of Scots sold their cars, and even their houses, and spent all their money travelling to Argentina, where the finals were played.

So, am I arguing that international competition kills the idea of sport? Certainly not! Do the Argentineans really believe that because eleven of their men proved the most skillful at football, their nation is in every way better than all others? Not really. But it's nice to know that you won, and that in one way at least your country is best.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 According to the passage, the United States

a) has begun to give much attention to football
b) is fond of playing football
c) has won the football World Cup
d) is getting sick of football

18 In the second paragraph, the word "summit" means the

a) highest point
b) mountain top
c) award
d) summary

19 According to the passage, if a sportsman only thinks about winning, he will

a) fail to succeed
b) be successful
c) lose enjoyment
d) be irrational

20 What is the author's attitude towards international games?

a) Nations that meet on a football field are unlikely to meet on a battlefield.
b) Nations that win the football World Cup are regarded as best in all aspects.
c) Nations that win in international games prove best on the sports field at least.
d) Nations that give much attention to international competitions are world-famous in many ways.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What can "Winning an international game" do to the winning country?

.....

22 What did the Scots do for the sake of their country?

.....

23 How do you think international games can help solve many global problems?

.....

24 What sport do you like best? Why?

.....

25 Translate into English:

- البطالة مشكلة خطيرة جدًا، فهى لا تؤثر فقط على الأفراد، ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًا على النمو الاقتصادى والاجتماعى، وتساعد فى انتشار الجريمة فى المجتمع.

.....

26 Translate into Arabic:

One must carefully weigh the positives and the negatives before engaging excessively in social media. If used in the correct way, social media can be a boon for mankind.

.....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

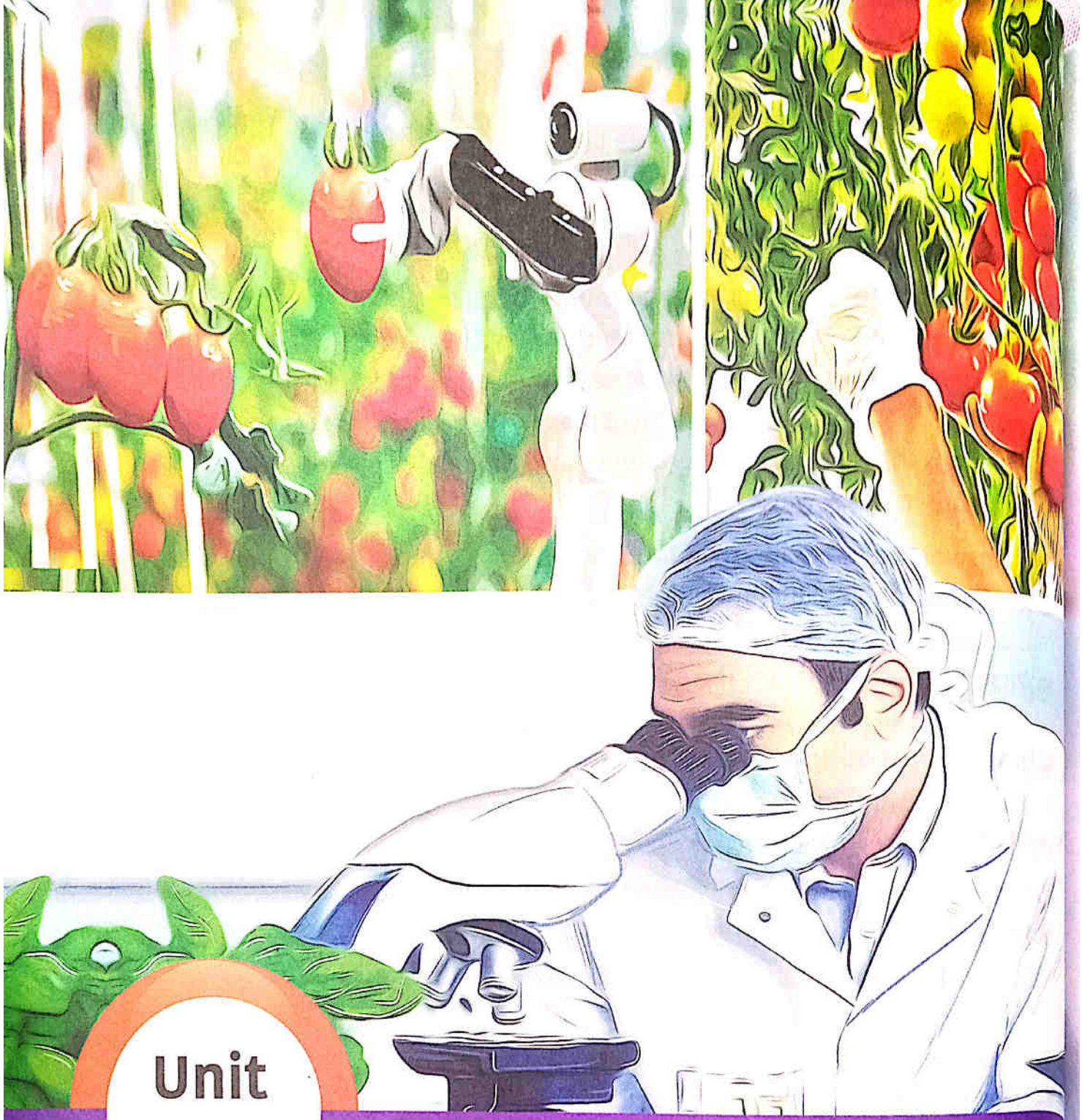
"Sports and their good impact on man's health."

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 3

The future of food

Objectives

- **Reading** : Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming
- **Writing** : Essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future; writing a summary
- **Listening** : An interview with an expert on sustainable farming
- **Speaking** : Speculating about the future
- **Language** : Will/Be going to; Future continuous
- **Life skills** : Problem solving

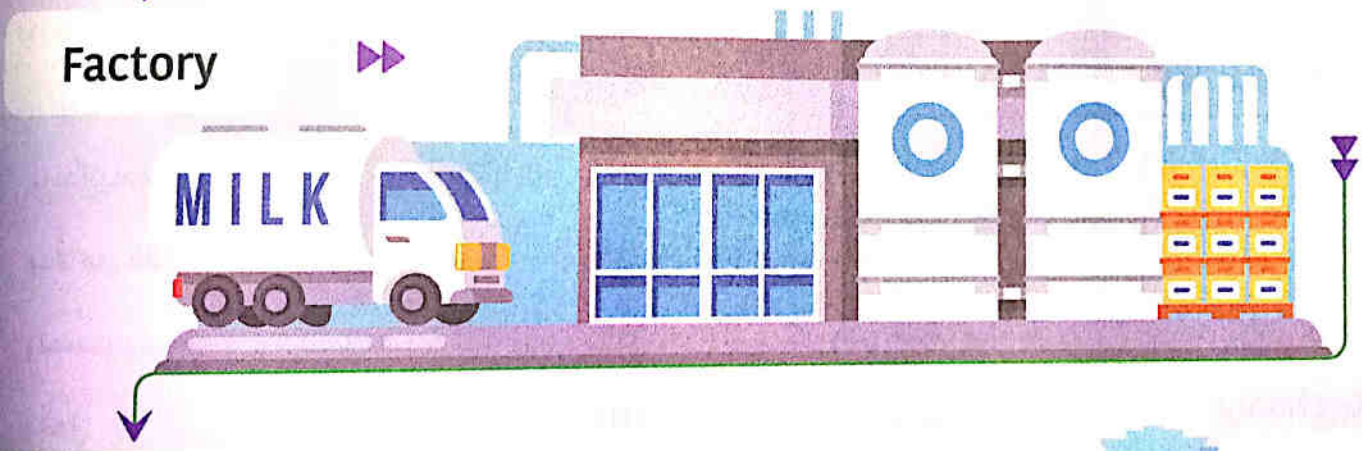
Warm up

Look and think, what should be next?

THE FOOD PRODUCTION CHAIN



Factory



Distribution



.....



.....

Part 1 Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

agriculture (n)	الزراعة
crop (n)	محصول
Earth (n)	الكرة الأرضية
innovation (n)	إبداع/ابتكار/فكرة مبتكرة
livestock (n)	ماشية
production (n)	إنتاج
sustainable (adj)	مستدام
source (n)	مصدر
variety (n)	تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة

Vocabulary on Reading

burger (n)	شريحة هامبورجر
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى
continue (v) (d)	يستمر
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج
damage (n) (v) (d)	تلف/يتلف
dry (n) (v) (~~y~~ied)	جاف/يجف/يجفف
effect (n)	تأثير
electric (adj)	كهربى
electricity (n)	كهرباء
energy (n)	طاقة
environment (n)	البيئة
increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة
instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/يتورط
laboratory (n)	معمل
land (n)	أرض
level (n)	مستوى
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
negative (adj)	سلبى
percent	بالمائة
real (adj)	حقيقى
remove (v) (d)	يزيل
researcher (n)	باحث
save (v) (d)	ينقذ/يوفر

seriously (adv)	بجدية/بخطورة	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
solution (n)	حل	the United Nations	الأمم المتحدة
southern (adj)	جنوبى	vehicle (n)	مركبة
space (n)	مساحة/فراغ/فضاء		

Vocabulary on Listening

destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر	island (n)	جزيرة
education (n)	التعليم	organisation (n)	منظمة
environment (n)	البيئة	project (n)	مشروع
gas (n)	غاز	rainforest (n)	غابات استوائية (مطيرة)
grow (v)	ينمو/يزداد	stuff (n)	أشياء/مواد
guest (n)	ضيف	vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتى (لا يأكل اللحوم)
invest (v) (ed)	يستثمر		

Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مساحة	furniture (n)	أثاث
capital (n)	عاصمة	local (adj)	محلى
central (adj)	وسط/متوسط	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية	petrol (n)	بنزين
cotton (n)	قطن	population (n)	السكان
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)	rainfall (n)	هطول المطر
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	station (n)	محطة
exam (n)	اختبار	success (n)	نجاح
extraordinary (adj)	مميز/رائع		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

according to	طبقًا لـ
as a result	نتيجة لذلك
get worse	يسوء/يزداد سوءًا
cut down	يقطع/يزيل
difference between	اختلاف بين
hope for	أمل لـ
increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة
instead of	بدلًا من
kind of	نوع من
learn about	يعرف عن
make more money	يدر مالًا/يكسب المزيد من المال
tell the difference	يميز الفرق (الاختلاف)
years to come	لسنوات قادمة
look for	يبحث عن
remove from	يزيل من
solution to/for	حل لـ
taste of	مذاق لـ
variety of	تنوع من
work with	يعمل مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
produce	ينتج	production	إنتاج	productive	منتج
innovate	يبدع/يبتكر	innovation	إبداع/ابتكار	innovative	مبدع/إبداعى/ابتكارى
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	مختلف/متنوع
sustain	يدعم/يتحمل/يمدد	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation creator	خلق/إنتاج مبدع/خالق	creative	مبدع
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
destroy	يدمر	destruction	دمار/تدمير	destroyed destructive	مدمَّر (تم تدميره) مدمِّر
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظَّم
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
continue	يستمر	proceed/resume	stop/cease يتوقف
destroy	يدمر	smash/ruin	construct/create يشيد
extraordinary	مميز/رائع	amazing/incredible	ordinary/common عادى
increase	يزيد	raise/expand	decrease/reduce يخفض
mention	يذكر	name/point out	ignore/neglect يتجاهل
negative	سلبى	adverse/contradictory	positive/favourable إيجابى
source	مصدر	origin	outcome ناتج
success	نجاح	achievement/ accomplishment	failure/defeat فشل
sustainable	مستدام	continuous/tenable	temporary/brief مؤقت
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation	similarity تشابه

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Unfortunately, a big area of forests was cleared to be used for and produce crops.
 a) economy **b)** agriculture **c)** literature **d)** culture
2. We all believe that cycling is a totally form of transport.
 a) believable **b)** noticeable **c)** avoidable **d)** sustainable
3. The company where I work sells a of gardening products.
 a) mixture **b)** variety **c)** combination **d)** collocation
4. The government should punish any factory that throws waste in the river.
 a) chemical **b)** useful **c)** plentiful **d)** valuable
5. The farmer bought a good horse at a market where is bought and sold.
 a) livestock **b)** dairy **c)** household **d)** poultry

Answers 1) b 2) d 3) b 4) a 5) a

Reading Text (1)

Pre-reading question:
- What do you think the impact of overpopulation on Earth is?

1) New solutions for our growing world



According to the United Nations, there will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050. As a result, we will have to increase our food production[1] by about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have space to keep more livestock[2] and grow more crops[3]. Instead, they'll need to look for more sustainable[4] solutions and this will involve producing a wider variety[5] of food.

(1) إنتاج
(2) ماشية
(3) محاصيل
(4) مستدام
(5) تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة
(6) الزراعة
(7) أفكار مبتكرة

How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference between the new burgers and real meat.

2) Changes in agriculture that can save the land



Researchers from the United Nations have found that some kinds of agriculture[6] are seriously damaging the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to farmers using too many chemicals, so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow without having to use so many chemicals. In southern Africa, the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can expect that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations[7] in technology to remove water from the land and use it elsewhere.

Post-reading question: - Why does farming cause damage to the land?

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Pre-reading question: - How do we benefit from trees?

The future of forests

The world has been losing millions of trees from the rainforests[1] every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down so that we have wood to make furniture, and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas[2].



Changes started a long time ago in Costa Rica. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central[3] American country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s, the government started working with local[4] farmers and persuaded them to look after the rainforest instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged[5] tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from tourism[6] than from cutting down trees.

It was a great success[7], but things got worse in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees cut down there has been getting smaller every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected[8] and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this extraordinary[9] place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.

(1) غابات استوائية (مطيرة)
(2) مناطق
(3) الوسطى
(4) محلى
(5) يشجع
(6) السياحة
(7) نجاح
(8) يحمى
(9) مميز/رائع

Post-reading question:
- How did Costa Ricans make money after they stopped cutting down trees?



Listening Text (1)

Pre-listening question:

- What do you know about the importance of rainforests?

(1) ضيف

(2) جزيرة

(3) هطول المطر

Interviewer : Hello, everyone. In today's show, I'll be talking to my guest[(1)], Dr Sarita Parker, who's an expert on the rainforests in Borneo. Welcome to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker : It's great to be with you, John.

Interviewer : Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Dr Parker : A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different types of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.

Interviewer : And what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker : Well, Borneo is a large island[(2)] in South-East Asia, and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual. And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall[(3)] on the island in the next few years.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Dr Parker : Unfortunately, some farmers are cutting down trees and starting fires so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even hotter, you see. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest over the next few decades. That would be terrible for the animals and plant life in the rainforest, and Borneo would heat up even more.

Interviewer : Do you think those farmers will keep cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker **:** Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to feed their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming techniques and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My organisation[4] will be running an education[5] programme next month to help them.

(4) منظمة

(5) تعليم

Interviewer **:** Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.

Post-listening question:

- Why are the rainforests in danger?

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

The population[1] of Egypt is growing[2] by nearly two percent a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent[3] of its population live on about four percent of its land. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around 128 million by 2030. So what are the solutions[4] to these problems? One plan is to invest[5] billions of pounds in a new capital city outside Cairo. This is one of the big projects[6] that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

(1) السكان

(2) ينمو/يزداد

(3) بالمائة

(4) حلول

(5) يستثمر

(6) مشروعات

Video Script

Would you like to do more to help the environment[1] by living a more sustainable life? It's actually easier than you might think. There are many small changes you can make that will help to protect the Earth. Here are three of them.

Let's start with food. You don't have to become a vegetarian[2], but eating less meat will help the environment. Livestock produce dangerous gases[3] and they can damage the land they live on.

When you need to travel, think about whether you really need to go in the car or take the bus. It's often possible to walk or ride a bike instead[4] and these are more sustainable ways of travelling.

Everyone likes to get new things, but before you ask your parents to buy you new clothes or new games, ask yourself if you really need them. It isn't sustainable for people to continue buying so much stuff[5]!

(1) البيئة
(2) شخص نباتى
(3) غازات
(4) بدلًا من
(5) أشياء/مواد

0:00

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most big cities are rapidly which results in serious problems.
 a) planting b) making c) growing d) revealing
2. A/An is a person who does not eat meat or fish.
 a) vegetarian b) inspector c) sociologist d) architect
3. The government will millions of dollars in new schools and new hospitals.
 a) inspire b) invest c) move d) respect
4. Australia has a low density. That's why they welcome immigrants المهاجرين there.
 a) devastation b) invention c) pollution d) population
5. Before joining the university, I received my at private schools.
 a) exercise b) education c) training d) degree

Answers 1 c) 2 a) 3 b) 4 d) 5 b)

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

agriculture الزراعة	the practice or science of farming
crop محصول	a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food
earth الكرة الأرضية	the planet that we live on
innovation إبداع	the introduction of new ideas or methods
livestock ماشية	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
production إنتاج	the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities
sustainable مستدام	able to continue without causing damage to the environment
source مصدر	a thing, place, activity, etc. that you get something from
variety تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة	the differences within a group, set of actions, etc. that make it interesting



Notes on Vocabulary

1 **cause**

١- سبّب (يتبعها حرف الجر of)

٢- يسبب

- The major cause of these accidents is the high speed of drivers.
- What caused you to change your mind?
- The fire caused serious damage to the factory.

reason

١- سبب/تبرير (يتبعها حرف الجر for)

٢- يفكر/يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير

- People have different reasons for wanting to change jobs.
- We reasoned that they would not leave before dark.

reason why + جملة سبب لـ

- I don't know the reason why he was absent.

2

earth	الكرة الأرضية/تراب	The earth is not flat as most people believed in the past.
ground	أرض فضاء/أرضية	On my way home, my bag dropped on the ground.
land	اليابسة	The earth consists of water and land.
soil	تربة (زراعية/رملية)	This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil, not sandy soil.
floor	طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	The floor of the flat needs cleaning. My flat is on the fourth floor.

3

local

١- محلى (خاص بمنطقة/قرية/مدينة)

٢- أحد السكان المحليين

- Alaa worked in the local newspaper before he travelled to the city.
- We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.

national (قومى (خاص ببلد)

- Tourism helps to increase the national income of many countries.

international

دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)

- The United Nations is the most important international organisation.

4

south
southern

الجهات الأصلية هى:
(north – south – east – west)
ولتحويل هذه الكلمات إلى صفات نضيف (ern).

- My cousins live in the south of Egypt.
- In summer, temperatures are so hot in southern Egypt.



Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

..... so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow.

تستخدم (will need to) بمعنى سيتوجب عليه بنفس استخدام (will have to).

Many trees get cut down so that we have wood to make furniture.

تستخدم (get) بدلًا من (verb to be) فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول مع بعض الأفعال.

But in the 1990s, the government started working with local farmers.

تستخدم صيغة (المصدر to + inf.) أو (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (start).

..... and the number of trees cut down there has been getting smaller every year.

الجملة أصلها.

..... and the number of trees which are cut down there has been getting smaller every year.

وتم حذف (which are) لأنها فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On 6th October, our army began the attacks on the enemy by and sea.
 a) earth **b)** land **c)** floor **d)** soil
2. The anthems الأناشيد of different teams are played at the beginning of big football matches.
 a) national **b)** local **c)** global **d)** international
3. My grandmother is very ill. Her joints her a great pain.
 a) reason **b)** apply **c)** cause **d)** share
4. The part of Egypt such as Aswan has very hot weather.
 a) southern **b)** southerly **c)** soon **d)** shortest

Answers 1) b 2) a 3) c 4) a

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. The COVID-19 pandemic proved the importance of to provide food for people if exports were stopped or delayed.
 a) fishing b) agriculture c) invention d) researching
2. Cotton has always been an important in Egypt for a long time.
 a) discovery b) drop c) crop d) exploration
3. The government hopes to achieve economic growth which can eventually lead to prosperity.
 a) sustainable b) avoidable c) unreliable d) unavailable
4. Students are offered a wide of courses in languages and computer software in this training centre.
 a) team b) mixture c) region d) variety
5. A network of wind turbines were built in the area to supply it with power.
 a) electric b) electronic c) updated d) vague
6. The government is making great efforts to encourage in industry.
 a) excitement b) loss c) redundancy d) innovation
7. Scientists fear that there won't be much land available for food in the future.
 a) affection b) intention c) production d) inspection
8. The President has announced a plan of great national projects which can thousands of jobs.
 a) explore b) end c) waste d) create
9. The water of the factory is heated using from the sun.
 a) atom b) reactor c) energy d) wind
10. The test will answering questions about a photograph.
 a) consist b) examine c) involve d) result
11. The COVID-19 pandemic had a/an influence on international trade which was decreased greatly.
 a) positive b) negative c) impressive d) oppressive
12. A/A is a person who studies something carefully and tries to discover new facts about it.
 a) graduate b) explorer c) researcher d) conductor
13. The company decided that 2% of its profit goes to the for cancer patients.
 a) newspaper b) station c) shop d) charity
14. We should make more and more efforts to money for our new project.
 a) spend b) attribute c) save d) waste

15 Scientists are working hard to find new for our environmental problems.
a) solutions b) causes c) designs d) plots

16 When we cut down rainforests, some of the animal habitats مواطن are totally
a) constructed b) placed c) designed d) destroyed

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 Some of the problems were mentioned in his report. The word "mention" is similar to the word
a) name b) neglect c) ignore d) invent

18 Cooperation and teamwork are two necessary qualities for the and progress of any society.
a) succeed b) success c) successful d) successfully

19 The population of Egypt increased about 2% last year.
a) out b) in c) by d) of

20 Eating fast food will eventually have a bad on your health.
a) affect b) effect c) effective d) affection

21 Due to the COVID-19 pandemic, online shopping is more money nowadays.
a) doing b) printing c) making d) accepting

22 I decided to try tennis instead volleyball in the sports club.
a) in b) at c) of d) for

23 Unfortunately, as time passed, things worse in the shop until it was closed.
a) made b) got c) done d) devised

24 Success was achieved as a result of the good of the new manager.
a) organise b) organisation c) organised d) disorganise

25 The desired outcome of most services is a satisfied customer. The noun "outcome" is an antonym to the noun
a) source b) result c) explanation d) purpose

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 The bomb destroyed the building. The synonyms of the word "destroy" are
a) repair b) construct c) smash d) devastate e) touch

27 The market is full of farm fresh and the vegetables are not very expensive today.
a) affection b) produce c) innovation d) protection e) production

28 There are no simple solutions the problem of overpopulation.
a) to b) in c) at d) for e) by

29 The number of students at the college has from 2000 to over 5000.
a) grown b) increased c) reduced d) decreased e) planted

30 The new movie is supposed to be much better than the old one, but I can't the difference.
a) report b) say c) tell d) repeat e) ask

(B) Language

Future Forms

1 Future simple المستقبل البسيط

A will/won't + inf.

e.g. I think it will be fine tomorrow.

Form : (will/won't + inf.)

(Will + inf.) is used with the following:

1 On-the-spot decisions (Quick decisions) القرارات الفورية

- I like these shoes. I'll buy them.
- Father: I'm thirsty. Son: I'll get you some water.

2 Future facts حقائق المستقبل (شيء لا نتحكم فيه)

- Mazen will be 9 years old next month.
- Today is the 10th of Sept. Tomorrow will be the 11th.

3 Predictions based on what we think (without evidence)

التنبؤ القائم على الاعتقاد (بدون دليل)

- Egypt will win the next World Cup.
- It will rain heavily tomorrow.

4 Some verbs, expressions and adverbs:

- **Verbs : think/ believe/ expect/ promise/ hope/ predict**
- **Expressions : be sure/ be afraid**
- **Adverbs : perhaps/ certainly/ probably/ possibly**

- I promise I will get higher marks on the next exam.
- I hope my brother will pass his driving test.
- My parents think that I'll become an artist one day.
- I'm sure Osama will win the race.
- Perhaps, my boss will punish me for being late.
- The police will probably find the criminal.

5 Offer العرض

- I see that you have difficulty with these questions. Wait a minute and I'll help you.
- Since you're tired, I'll cook dinner tonight.

6 Request الطلب

- Will you help me with my homework, Hazem?
- Will you get me two kilos of sugar when you go to the market?

7 Threats التهديد

- If you make these mistakes again, I'll punish you.
- Behave well or I'll tell your father.

8 Warning التحذير

- Factories must stop polluting the air or we won't be able to breathe.
- If we don't arrive early, we won't find a place to park.



hoped, thought + would	I thought (didn't expect) that she would visit us.
promise + to + inf.	I have promised them to come early tonight.
just decided قرار سريع	He has just decided that he won't join this club.
فعل امر + or + will (won't)	Get up early or you won't catch the train.

B) be going to (am/ is/ are going to + inf.)

e.g. There are black clouds in the sky. It's going to rain.

Form: (am/ is/ are (not) going to + inf.)

(be going to) is used with the following:

1 For plans and decisions we have already made
للخطط والنوايا والقرارات التى اتخذناها بالفعل

- He's going to employ more staff. (plan خطة/ intention نية)
- I'm going to move to a bigger house next year. (decision قرار)

2 To make predictions with present reality or evidence:
التنبؤ بدليل (شىء نراه أو نعرفه)

- Look at him! He is going to win the race. (He is ahead of the other runners).
- The wall is moving. It is going to fall.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The milk is boiling. I the gas off.
 a) turn
 b) am going to turn
 c) am turning
 d) will turn
2. The wind is getting stronger. I think there a sandstorm.
 a) is being
 b) will be
 c) is going to be
 d) going
3. **A:** What would you like to have, sir? **B:** I a cup of coffee.
 a) am going to have
 b) will have
 c) have
 d) am having
4. Look! That boy It seems he can't swim.
 a) is going to drown
 b) will drown
 c) is drowning
 d) drowns
5. Somebody is knocking on the door. I and open it.
 a) am going
 b) have gone
 c) will go
 d) go

Answers 1 d) 2 c) 3 b) 4 a) 5 c)

2 Future continuous المستقبل المستمر

Form التكوين	Negative النفى	Interrogative الاستفهام
will be + v-ing • I'll be playing at 7 p.m. tomorrow.	won't be + v-ing • I won't be waiting for you at 10 p.m. tomorrow.	Will + subj. + be + v-ing? • Will you be painting your room at this time next week?



Usage
الاستخدام

1. **For actions that will be in progress at a stated future time.**
يستخدم للأحداث التى ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد فى المستقبل.

- Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be sleeping at this time.

2. **For actions that will definitely happen in the future as a result of a routine or arrangement (instead of the present continuous).**
يستخدم للأحداث التى سوف تحدث بالتحديد فى المستقبل كنتيجة لروتين أو ترتيب. (بدلًا من المضارع المستمر).

- I'll be playing golf on Friday.
 (I play golf every Friday - it's part of my routine.)
- I'll be seeing Fathy tomorrow.
 (We work in the same office so we will definitely meet.)

3. **When we ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them.**
يستخدم عندما نسأل بأدب عن ترتيبات الأشخاص لنرى ما إذا كانوا يستطيعون فعل شىء لنا أو لأننا نريد أن نفعل شيئًا لهم.

- Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

4. **We use may be + v-ing to refer to future events or trends which are possible but not certain:**
نستخدم may be + v-ing للتعبير عن الأحداث التى من الممكن أن تحدث ولكن لسنا متأكدين منها.

- Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.

5. **The future continuous is used with the following time expressions:**
نستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية.

- All night/ day tomorrow/ next week, etc.
- This time tomorrow/ next week - At + مدة tomorrow/next week -
 From to tomorrow.
- In an hour's time

Advanced Points

1. هناك أفعال لا تستخدم فى الاستمرار ومنها أفعال الحب والكراهية والرأى والملكية فلا تستخدم مع المستقبل المستمر بل تستخدم مع المستقبل البسيط أو المستقبل التام ولكن إذا تغير معناها يمكن استخدامها فى الاستمرار.

- This time next year, I will have had my graduation certificate.

2. لا يمكن استخدام will be having لأن الفعل يملك لا يستخدم مستمرًا.

- This time tomorrow, I will be having my dinner with my family.

3. الفعل have هنا ليس بمعنى يملك بل بمعنى يتناول لذلك استخدم فى الاستمرار.

4. لو وجد رابط زمنى نستخدم بعده المضارع البسيط أو المستمر ولا نستخدم المستقبل .

- I'll be studying my lessons while my father is watching the match tomorrow.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In an hour's time, Ola home on the train.
 a) will travel
 b) travels
 c) has travelled
 d) will be travelling
2. Between now and next Thursday, I for an English exam.
 a) 'll revise
 b) may revise
 c) 'll be revising
 d) was revising
3. This time next week, I on a beach.
 a) will be lying
 b) will lie
 c) may lie
 d) lie
4. At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She
 a) is going to work
 b) will work
 c) works
 d) will be working
5. In 20 years, Khaled his own business.
 a) will be running
 b) will run
 c) runs
 d) ran

Answers 1) d 2) c 3) a 4) b 5) a

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Someone is at the door. I who it is.
 a) am going to see b) will see c) am seeing d) would see
2. I'm sure my friend win the next school championship in swimming.
 a) should b) would c) does d) will
3. Will you the phone for long? I want to make some calls.
 a) be using b) use c) be used d) have used
4. I think it hot tomorrow.
 a) is going to be b) will be c) is being d) would be
5. I the summer holiday in Marsa Matrouh as planned.
 a) am going to spend b) will spend c) am spending d) would spend
6. I'll tell Hesham about the party. I him at work anyway.
 a) will see b) will be seeing c) may see d) was seeing
7. I can't visit you because I for my sister's wedding all next afternoon.
 a) might have b) going to prepare
 c) will prepare d) will be preparing
8. I feel terrible with a severe stomachache. I think I be sick.
 a) should b) am going to c) am to d) will
9. From 6 to 8 tomorrow, I the final match on TV.
 a) will watch b) am going to watch
 c) watch d) will be watching
10. My brother has decided to immigrate يهاجر. He next month.
 a) will travel b) travels
 c) is going to travel d) is travelling
11. I'm looking for my e-book reader. I an e-book on it.
 a) will be read b) am going to read c) will read d) read
12. This time next week, I on the beach.
 a) will have sunbathed b) will be sunbathing
 c) will have been sunbathing d) will be sunbathed
13. There are a lot of people in the room. It difficult to find a chair.
 a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) will have been
14. Will you into town this afternoon? Can you give me a lift?
 a) be driving b) drive c) be driven d) have driven
15. I predict that in the future mobile phones much smaller.
 a) are going to be b) are c) will have been d) will be
16. The fridge is empty. and get some food, please?
 a) Will you go b) You will go c) Do you go d) Are you going
17. Magdy in the school concert all next week.
 a) will perform b) will be performing
 c) performed d) has performed
18. Look, there's a sandstorm. I the windows.
 a) am closing b) will be closing c) close d) will close

19 The players of the other team are very big. It a difficult match.
a) is
b) is going to be
c) will be
d) will have been

20 I can't visit you because I my homework this evening.
a) will do
b) will have done
c) will be doing
d) do

21 If you are too tired to cut the grass, I it for you.
a) will cut
b) am going to cut
c) cut
d) am cutting

22 Marwa and I have decided to have a party. We lots of people.
a) will invite
b) are going to invite
c) invite
d) may invite

23 I'm sorry, I was late for your lesson today. I promise that I late again.
a) am never
b) am never being
c) will never be
d) would never be

24 Watch out! You bang your head on the door frame.
a) are going to
b) will
c) shall
d) should

25 You have no chance of getting the job. You your time if you apply for it.
a) be wasting
b) will be wasting
c) waste
d) won't waste

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct:
a) It's cold in here. I will close the window.
b) It's cold in here. I will have closed the window.
c) It's cold in here. I will be closing the window.
d) It's cold in here. Shall you close the window?
e) It's cold in here. Will you close the window?

27 Choose the best two correct answers:
a) I will be helping you with your homework if you want.
b) I will help you with your homework if you want.
c) I will have helped you with your homework if you want.
d) Shall I help you with your homework?
e) I won't have helped you with your homework if you want.

28 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct:
a) Liverpool is winning the next match.
b) Liverpool will win the next match.
c) Liverpool will have won the next match.
d) Liverpool is going to win. They're three-nil up already.
e) Liverpool will be winning the next match.

29 Choose two correct answers to the following sentence:
As it's cold and rainy, I
a) won't go out today
b) am going out today
c) will have gone out today
d) will stay at home today
e) will be going out today

30 Two of the following questions are grammatically incorrect:
a) What are you going to do next weekend?
b) What do you do next weekend?
c) What are your plans for next weekend?
d) What do you intend to do next weekend?
e) What will you do next weekend?

General Exercises
(Lessons 1&2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Scientists always think of new ways to help farmers to promote agriculture.
a) sustainable b) avoidable c) unreliable d) unavailable

2 Toyota's latest car has just gone into for the Japanese market.
a) produce b) production c) productive d) produced

3 The battery of the new mobile I bought can store for one or two days.
a) gas b) atom c) chemical d) energy

4 The study about COVID-19 vaccine was carried out by at Oxford University.
a) researchers b) farmers c) helpers d) officers

5 There was a lot of rainfall this winter. As a, floods happened in the country.
a) reason b) result c) purpose d) cause

6 Scientists warn us that cutting rainforests has a bad effect on the planet.
a) in b) at c) for d) down

7 The space project took a whole from 2010 to 2020 and it was successful.
a) reign b) area c) decade d) century

8 Many tourists visit Spain because of the beautiful Mediterranean beaches.
a) south b) southern c) southerly d) southward

0. 9 We the meeting as soon as he arrives.
a) start b) have started c) started d) will start

10 There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it very hot.
a) will be b) will have been c) is going to be d) is

11 Quick! Give me a paper tissue, I again!
a) will sneeze b) am going to sneeze
c) sneeze d) sneezed

12 Sayed thinks that his team next week's competition.
a) may be winning b) will be winning c) will be won d) will win

13 This time next week, Hamid in a school football match.
a) will play b) may play c) will be playing d) will have played

14 The programme predicts what life in 20, 30 or 40 years' time.
a) will be like b) will be liking c) will have liked d) may be liking

15 In five years' time, Ali will probably with his parents.
a) be lived b) still live c) be still living d) still living

16 'Anna is in hospital.' 'Oh really? I didn't know. I and visit her.'
a) will go b) am going c) am going to go d) will be going

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You are a citizen of the country you were born in. Usually, citizens live in their country as loyal members of society. Many countries also have options so people who are not natural-born citizens can become citizens of that country. When they complete the requirements, they are called naturalised citizens. As a citizen of your country, you have some rights, duties, and responsibilities. The law of any country should guarantee the rights of all citizens and the rights should be the same for all citizens. The rights of citizens are protected in the constitution. A citizen has the right to speak freely and the right to religious freedom. A citizen who is accused of a crime has a right to a fair trial.

In exchange for their rights, citizens have duties and responsibilities. They have a duty to serve in the army when asked. They should obey all laws. In wartime, they must serve in the armed forces when required to. They must pay taxes to support the services and programs of the government. Good citizens vote in elections to express their opinion on how the government should be run.

In addition to national citizenship, people are citizens of a state and a city. They have similar rights and responsibilities in each level of citizenship.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What protects the rights of the citizen in any country?

a) The citizenship. b) The responsibilities.
c) The constitution. d) The trial.

2 The best title to the passage is "……".

a) Asking for the rights
b) Paying taxes
c) The responsibilities of the citizenship
d) The citizen's rights and responsibilities

3 "Doing as you are told" means …… .

a) obeying b) agreement c) voting d) exchanging

4 People who vote in elections to express their opinion are …… .

a) volunteers b) respectable and noble
c) greedy d) selfish

B) Answer the following questions:

5 What is a naturalised citizen?

……

6 Describe two of the duties and responsibilities of a citizen.

……

7 Mention two rights that should be guaranteed to citizens.

.....

8 What rights do you think people in your country should have?

.....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. In the last fifty years, technology has really changed the way farmers produce food. Agriculture is now developed with the help of machines that save time and effort.

.....

2. Cutting down rainforests is a real threat to our existence on earth. This will also lead to disastrous effects on climate change.

.....

3. Organising your life is a necessity if you want to achieve your most valuable goals. Well-organised people are the most successful and effective members in life.

.....

4. The migration from the countryside to the city has its negative effects on the Egyptian society. That's because it leads to many serious economic problems.

.....

5. Egypt had its leading role in the economic, political, and educational fields, especially in the Middle East. Thus we should try to help restore this role.

.....

6. Mass media play an important role in forming public opinion and effective awareness in our country. Therefore, they should be used properly for useful purposes.

.....

B) Translate into English:

١- من المهم أن يدرك المزارعون أهمية الحفاظ على الزراعة المستدامة للمحافظة على إمدادات الطعام لنا وللأجيال القادمة وهكذا نستطيع حل مشكلة نقص الطعام.

.....

٢- إن مشاهد العنف والقسوة فى الأفلام والمسلسلات تؤثر على سلوك الأطفال والمراهقين الذين يشاهدونها، لذا يجب منع الأطفال من مشاهدة الكثير منها حفاظًا على سلوكياتهم.

.....

٣- أحد أهم عيوب الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول توسيع الفجوة بين الشباب ووالديهم، حيث يقضون ساعات طويلة فى استخدامهم دون التواصل مع الوالدين والعائلة لذا لابد من التصدى لتلك الظاهرة الخطيرة.

.....

٤- عرفت مصر على مر التاريخ بأنها أرض التسامح الدينى والتعايش بين المسلمين والمسيحيين الذين عاشوا بسلام لقرون عديدة مما يشكل عاملًا هامًا للوحدة بين شعبها.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

awareness	الوعى	migration	الهجرة
coexistence	التعايش	negative	سلبى
cruelty	القسوة	political	سياسى
disastrous	كارثى	public opinion	الراى العام
factor	عامل	tolerance	التسامح
gap	الفجوة	valuable	قيّم/نفيس
mass media	وسائل الإعلام	violence	العنف

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Our duty towards the people with special needs (the disabled)"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary

شاهد فيديو الشرح على تطبيق الأضواء

Vocabulary on Reading

algae (n)	طحالب	heat up (v)	يزداد حرارة
available (adj)	متوفر/متاح	introduction (n)	مقدمة
boring (adj)	ممل	link (n)	رابط
chance (n)	فرصة	lose (v)	يفقد/يخسر
conclude (v) (d)	يستنتج/يختتم/ينهى	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام	ocean (n)	المحيط
continent (n)	قارة	replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	seaweed (n)	الأعشاب البحرية
evidence (n)	دليل	several (adj)	عديد
fact (n)	حقيقة	suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
factual (adj)	واقعى/حقيقى	tasty (adj)	ذو مذاق جيد
fashion (n)	موضة	topic (n)	موضوع
giant (adj) (n)	عملاق	unusual (adj)	غير عادى

Vocabulary on Listening

argument (n)	جدال/حجة	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
description (n)	وصف	summary (n)	ملخص
gap (n)	فجوة/فراغ	underline (v) (d)	ضع خطًا تحت
include (v) (d)	يشمل	word (n)	كلمة
original (adj)	أصلى		

Workbook Vocabulary

Antarctica (n)	القارة القطبية الجنوبية
argue (v) (d)	يجادل
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على
control (v) (led)	يسيطر على
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب
flow (n) (v) (ed)	انسياب/ينساب
focus (v) (ed)	يركز
fresh (adj)	طازج
fruit (n)	ثمرة/فاكهة
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية
insect (n)	حشرة
leaves (n)	أوراق شجر
main (adj)	أساسى
outdoor (adj)	خارج المنزل
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
produce (n) (v) (d)	إنتاج زراعى/ينتج
reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام
roof (n)	سقف/سطح المنزل
specific (adj)	محدد
surprisingly (adv)	من المدهش
urban (adj)	مدنى/حضرى

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

to conclude	وفى الختام
in fact	فى الحقيقة/الواقع
in my view	فى رأيى
available for	متوفر لـ
based on	معتمد (مرتكز) على
focus on	يركز على
good for	جيد لـ
make sense	ذو معنى
over the next few decades	عبر العقود القليلة القادمة
grow to	ينمو إلى
link to	رابط لـ
opinion on/about	رأى عن
source of	مصدر لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative	جدلى
bore	يضجر/يمل	boredom	الملل	boring bored	ممل متضجر
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفى
predict	يتنبأ بـ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال/بديل	replaced	مستبدل
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد	specific	محدد
suggest	يقترح	suggestion	اقتراح	suggestive	اقتراحى

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
available	متوفر/متاح	handy/reachable	unavailable/unobtainable غير متاح
boring	ممل	uninteresting/dull	interesting/exciting شيق
conclude	يستنتج/يختم	sum up/wrap up	begin/continue يبدأ
control	يسيطر على/يتحكم	dominate/command	neglect/obey يتجاهل/يطيع
factual	حقيقى/واقعى	real/actual	fictional/false خيالى/غير حقيقى
notice	يلاحظ	observe/regard	ignore/overlook يهمل/يتغاضى عن
predict	يتنبأ بـ	forecast/anticipate	disbelieve/misunderstand لا يصدق/يسىء فهم
specific	محدد	definite/particular	common/ambiguous شائع/غامض
suggest	يقترح	propose/advise	oppose/deny يعارض/ينكر
urban	مدنى/حضرى	civil	rural ريفى

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new iPhone mobile is now only in America.
 a) avoidable **b)** suitable **c)** available **d)** reliable
2. Europe and Asia are two which lie next to each other.
 a) continents **b)** places **c)** islands **d)** areas
3. Workers should work in order to increase production.
 a) lazily **b)** efficiently **c)** negatively **d)** passively
4. Police officers are trying hard to find which proves the criminal's guilt.
 a) a law **b)** a case **c)** an invention **d)** evidence
5. One of the new methods of farming is farming. There are many spaces to use such as gardens and roofs.
 a) urban **b)** rural **c)** ocean **d)** desert

Answers 1 c) 2 a) 3 b) 4 d) 5 a)

Reading Text (1)

Pre-reading question:
- What is the strangest type of food have you heard about? Would you like to try it?

Is algae the future of food?



We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?

Algae[1] are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed[2], and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the ocean[3]. In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we breathe because algae makes a lot of oxygen.

But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even notice[4]. Scientists are already using seaweed to replace[5] salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.

(1) طحالب
(2) أعشاب بحرية
(3) المحيط
(4) يلاحظ
(5) يستبدل

Post-reading question:
- What are the benefits of growing algae for food?

Reading Text (2)

Pre-reading question:
- What are the factors that you think will affect farming the land?

This essay will focus on the future of agriculture.



First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that, we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future.

The Earth's surface is heating up and soon there will be less land that farmers can use.

In the case of Africa, the continent[1] could lose up to 18 percent of its farmland in the next fifty years. As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently[2].

Due to the fact that there will be less land available[3] for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence[4] suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food, like algae, instead.

(1) قارة

(2) بكفاءة

(3) متوفر/متاح

(4) دليل

(5) يستنتج

In my view, farmers should see this is as a chance to try new things and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they're prepared for the future.

To conclude[5], agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades and farmers will need to change the way they farm, too.

Post-reading question:
- What should farmers do to meet the demands of the future?

Reading Text (3)

Pre-reading question:

- Suggest 2 solutions for the problem of overpopulation and mention 2 effects on the environment.

Hydroponics

With the population of the world predicted to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production. A possible solution to this problem is using something called hydroponics[1].

Hydroponics is a way to grow plants without using any soil. Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which contains[2] all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil[3]. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and, surprisingly, it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is reused. There are also fewer problems with insects[4]. Almost, any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit[5] and leaves[6] this way.

Some people argue that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to control the flow[7] of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could offer the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future; we will be using hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as deserts, Antarctica[8] or even space.

(1) الزراعة المائية
(2) يحتوى على
(3) تربة
(4) حشرات
(5) ثمرة
(6) أوراق شجر
(7) انسياب
(8) القارة القطبية الجنوبية

Post-reading question:

- What are the benefits of hydroponics and can we use it on a large scale?

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Urban farming

This essay will focus[1] on something my uncle is planning to do to help food production: something called urban[2] farming.

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends. Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using flat roofs[3], gardens and open spaces to grow what they can.

In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh[4] fruit and vegetables from these spaces.

In my view, urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn[5] money. They hope they will be selling some of the produce[6] to local restaurants and markets.

To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea. All the evidence suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much outdoor[7] space.

(1) يركز
(2) مدنى
(3) أسطح
(4) طازج
(5) يكسب
(6) إنتاج زراعى
(7) خارج المنزل





Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Do you usually need help from a friend when you do your homework?

Amir : Is that your homework, Hany?
Hany : Yes. What's wrong with it? It took me ages.
Amir : I can see that. It's very long.
Hany : So what?
Amir : Well, we were asked to write a summary(1), and yours looks longer than the text we're summarising(2)! You know it should be shorter, right?
Hany : Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to miss anything important.
Amir : So, what was the text about?
Hany : I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.
Amir : My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading the whole text and try to understand as much as you can. Ask yourself: What's the main idea? How would I explain it to a friend quickly? Don't start writing anything until you've done that.
Hany : But you know me. I always forget something important.
Amir : Then you should read the text again. But the second time, underline(3) the most important words or phrases in it. These are usually nouns for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important actions, or phrases for times and places.
Hany : Okay.
Amir : After that, try to only look at the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write complete sentences that fill in the gaps(4) between those words.
Hany : I see.
Amir : It's also helpful to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like 'first', 'after that' or 'finally'.
Hany : And then?
Amir : When you've finished writing your summary, read it again. Check that it's clear, and then look back at the original(5) text to see if you've included(6) all the important information.

(1) ملخص
(2) يلخص
(3) يضع خطًا تحت
(4) فجوات
(5) أصلي
(6) يشمل

Post-listening question:

- What are the most important points to follow on summarising a long text?

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We need to provide a convincing as to why the system should be changed.
 a) debate b) argument c) agreement d) disagreement
2. A report is generally a/an rather than a statement of opinion.
 a) description b) prescription c) deception d) infection
3. Their idea was to fix their old car, but they decided to buy a new one instead.
 a) back b) original c) dispensing d) infecting
4. I the essay's main points in the final paragraph.
 a) assimilated b) expected c) summarised d) divided
5. The child had a between his two front teeth.
 a) dig b) block c) well d) gap

Answers 1 b) 2 a) 3 b) 4 c) 5 d)

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

conclusion خاتمة/استنتاج	the end or final part of something
algae طحالب	a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water
link رابط	a way in which two things or ideas are related to each other
summary ملخص	a short statement that gives the main information about something, without giving all the details
argument حجة	a set of reasons that show that something is true or untrue, right or wrong

Notes on Vocabulary

1 **tasty** ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)
- My sister makes a really tasty dish with chicken and rice.

tasteful ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)
- The hotel lobby is filled with tasteful furniture and original artwork.

2 **earn** يكسب (مالاً عن طريق العمل غالبًا)
- She was earning good money during her work at the bank.

gain يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)
- In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager.
- I have gained a lot of weight because of eating fast food.

لاحظ: gain (speed - weight)

win يفوز بـ (مباراة/جائزة/مسابقة)
- It's supposed to be easier to win your home games.
- How does it feel to have won the gold medal?

beat يهزم/يتغلب على
- I always beat my friend at tennis; he gets annoyed.

3 **lose** يفقد/يخسر
- I lost my handbag at the airport because it was overcrowded.
- Our team lost the final match of the championship last year.

miss يفتقد/يفوته شيء
- I really missed my family when I was abroad last month.
- I missed the train because I got up very late.

4 **fresh**
- I like to have fresh juice with my breakfast. طازج
- Our teacher always encourages having fresh ideas about science. جديد وشيق
- The marks on the shirt are fresh. You should wash it immediately. حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير)
- The players of the team still look fresh after the first half. They are very fit. نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية

5 **outdoor (adj)**

بالخارج/خلوى (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) يأتى بعدها اسم.

Father has liked outdoor activities like camping and hiking since he was a child.

outdoors (adv)

بالخارج (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) تصف فعلًا ولا يأتى بعدها اسم.

I asked my wife to have breakfast outdoors. It was sunny and nice.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

..... and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future.

- تستخدم (a lot - much) قبل صفات المقارنة للتعبير عن الاختلاف الكبير بين طرفى المقارنة.

Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and

All the evidence suggests that it could help us grow our own food

- تستخدم جملة كاملة بعد (suggest) ويمكن استخدام (verb + ing) أيضًا.

- I suggested going to the cinema tonight.

..... one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production.

- صيغة الفعل (finding) بعد (is) ليس المضارع المستمر فصيغة (verb + ing) بمفردها تعنى الاسم (إيجاد).

This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil.

- هذه الجملة أصلها:

- This is a big help for farmers who live in areas with poor soil.

- حذف ضمير الوصل (who) واستخدمت صيغة (verb + ing) لأن الجملة مبنية للمعلوم.

I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends.

- استخدمت صيغة الجملة (فاعل+ فعل) بعد أدوات الاستفهام (what - why) لأن الجملة فى صيغة غير المباشر.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 At least 600 employees will their jobs if the factory closes.
a) miss
b) gain
c) increase
d) lose

2 Fouad wants a job that will let him work He doesn't like staying in offices.
a) indoor
b) indoors
c) outdoor
d) outdoors

3 With the new players, our local team will be a tough team to
a) win
b) beat
c) earn
d) gain

4 Fast food can be, but it contains a lot of fat.
a) tasty
b) tasteful
c) tasteless
d) taste

5 The manager encourages all and creative ideas for products.
a) fresh
b) vague
c) traditional
d) customary

Answers 1 d) 2 d) 3 b) 4 a) 5 a)



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Seaweed and other are eaten in China and Japan especially by people who live near the ocean.
a) algae b) insects c) fruits d) meat

2 Tickets for the new movie are from the box office of most cinemas.
a) readable b) acceptable c) available d) probable

3 I think you have a good of getting the job because you have good qualifications.
a) journey b) chance c) study d) subject

4 The police came to the that the criminal was not telling the truth.
a) study b) experience c) attention d) conclusion

5 There is real that the economy is improving in Egypt.
a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

6 The shop assistant told me that long skirts are still in this winter.
a) wave b) fashion c) flood d) trend

7 The morning started out cold, but it up gradually.
a) heated b) speeded c) hurried d) descended

8 The Panama Canal provides a between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.
a) method b) travel c) space d) link

9 The tie my friend wore at the interview was simple, but very
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste

10 The of our research this month will be the new space stations.
a) topic b) reason c) object d) clause

11 At the end of the news programme, they often give you a of the main stories.
a) theory b) research c) summary d) document

12 Although he practised hard, he couldn't the race, but came fourth.
a) beat b) win c) earn d) gain

13 Scientists are trying to what the Amazon will look like in 20 years' time.
a) protect b) prohibit c) predict d) remove

14 I've always wanted to live in the countryside to enjoy the air and the beautiful views.
a) old b) dull c) renewed d) fresh

15 is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
a) Agriculture b) Hydroponics c) Industry d) Botany

16 Children's television programmes are aimed at a/an age group.
a) public b) private c) specific d) accepted

17 The doctor tried to stop the of blood from the wound that was bleeding.
a) end b) downpour c) flow d) storm

18 In my, new ways of farming are very important for us.
a) view b) sight c) scene d) scenery

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19 I really find some science books very
a) bore b) boredom c) bored d) boring

20 The film is based a true story of an American soldier during the Second World War.
a) at b) for c) on d) about

21 The bank guard was punished for neglecting his duty. The word "neglect" is an antonym of the word "....."
a) expect b) control c) employ d) dismiss

22 You must rewrite this sentence as it doesn't any sense to me.
a) do b) notice c) accept d) make

23 I asked my friends to give me their opinions my new watch.
a) for b) at c) about d) over

24 Dreams can sometimes seem very real. The word "real" is similar in meaning to the word "....."
a) fictional b) factual c) imaginary d) advised

25 The woman gave an accurate of the man who stole her bag.
a) describe b) description c) described d) descriptive

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 Newspapers predicted that the President would be re-elected. The synonyms of the noun "predict" are
a) develop b) forecast c) control d) anticipate e) ignore

27 The sports group will discuss a number of important about new sports in their meeting.
a) topics b) reasons c) subjects d) items e) searches

28 The police think they may have found some evidence that links him to the murder.
a) gradual b) fainting c) fresh d) faraway e) new

29 I noticed that he was rather quiet during dinner. The antonyms of the verb "notice" are
a) note b) attend c) ignore d) interest e) overlook

30 At the of the meeting of the two groups, little progress has been made.
a) conclusion b) venue c) end d) place e) procedure

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح على تطبيق الأضواء

Important Notes

هناك طرق أخرى للتعبير عن المستقبل:

1 Present simple — المضارع البسيط

e.g. The train to Assuit leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.
Form : He/ She/ It + v. + (s, es, ies). I/ They/ We/ You + inf.
(Present simple) is used with the following:

When we refer to programmes or timetables (planes/ trains/ busses, etc.).

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الجداول المحددة والبرامج والمواعيد الثابتة، مثل: مواعيد الطائرات والأتوبيسات والقطارات والسينما والمسرح والتليفزيون والامتحانات ... إلخ.

- The film starts at 9 p.m. (cinema programme)
- The plane arrives at Cairo Airport at 7:30. (timetable)

2 Present continuous (am/ is/ are + v-ing) — المضارع المستمر

e.g. I am meeting Mr Ibrahim at his office at 10 a.m. tomorrow.
Form : (am/ is/ are + v-ing)
(Present continuous) is used with the following:

For fixed arrangements in the near future.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل القريب.

- I'm flying to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket.)
- We're giving a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged.)

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The band Denmark next May. They have already made arrangements.
 a) will visit b) are going to visit c) visit d) are visiting
2. He is flying to London at the weekend. His flight at 5:30.
 a) leaving b) left c) leaves d) leave
3. We to Alex in July. All things are okay.
 a) will be moved b) are moving c) move d) will move
4. My English lesson at ten tomorrow morning.
 a) starts b) is starting c) will start d) will be starting
5. It's arranged. We Sharm El-Shiekh this summer.
 a) are going to b) are going to go c) go to d) will go to

Answers 1) d 2) c 3) b 4) a 5) a

3 The time conjunctions used with future simple and perfect الروابط الزمنية

The future simple is used with the following time conjunctions:

Future simple (will/ be going to + inf.)	after, before, till/until, when, as soon as	Present simple Present perfect

- After Ahmed finishes/ has finished his exams, I'll take him for a picnic.
- The manager is going to see you as soon as he comes out of the meeting.
- Call me as soon as you get back.

لاحظ: أن الفعل الأمر يحل محل المستقبل.

- I won't touch (Don't touch) anything before the police arrive.
- He won't say anything until the boss tells him.

Additional Notes

1 الفعل think يأخذ will ولكن إذا كان هناك دليل نستخدم be going to.

- Bahaa is a careless driver. I think he will have an accident one day.
- Look! Bahaa is driving dangerously fast. I think he is going to have an accident.

تدل جمل التحذير (Be careful! – Look out! – Take care!) غالبًا على قرب حدوث الفعل.
فالشخص يرى شيئًا قريب الحدوث فيحذر منه لذلك نستخدم بعد هذه الأفعال be going to.

- Look out! We are going to crash! There is a car coming.

- وأما إذا كان التحذير عام نستخدم will.

- Be careful or you will fall in the newly dug hole on your way to the market.

2 بعد الأفعال think/ expect/ predict/ be sure نستخدم will.
أما بعد الأفعال thought/ expected/ predicted/ (was/ were) sure نستخدم would.

- I thought they would phone me that evening.

3 لو كان الحدثان سيستمران فى المستقبل ووجد رابط زمنى فالحدث الذى بعد الرابط الزمنى يكون مضارعًا مستمرًا أو بسيطًا وليس مستقبلًا مستمرًا.

مضارع مستمر أو بسيط	+	رابط زمنى	+	مستقبل مستمر

- I'll be studying for my lessons while my father is watching the match tomorrow.

4 عند التحدث عن الآمال والطموحات الشخصية يمكن أن نستخدم be going to.

- I think I'm going to be a good football player.

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.
a) will leave b) am leaving c) going to leave d) shall leave

2 My elder son says he a doctor. This is his ambition.
a) is being b) is c) will be d) is going to be

3 Tomorrow a cold sunny day, according to the weather forecast.
a) will be b) was going to be c) is being d) is

4 I want to buy a new villa, so I save a lot of money.
a) going to b) will c) am going to d) will be

5 I can't meet you tonight as I for the exam.
a) going to revise b) will have been revised
c) will revise d) am revising

6 They've got the tickets; they to London.
a) will have flown b) are going to fly c) are flying d) will fly

7 The basketball team two games next week.
a) play b) are playing c) have played d) plays

8 The programme at seven o'clock this evening.
a) starts b) is starting c) will start d) will be starting

9 This flat is very hot, so we a flat that is far from the beach next time.
a) will rent b) aren't going to rent
c) are renting d) don't rent

10 Our last lesson at two o'clock this afternoon.
a) will be finishing b) is finishing c) will finish d) finishes

11 The train to Cairo is on platform No. 4 and it in thirty minutes.
a) will be leaving b) will leave c) leaves d) is leaving

12 When he next week, he will give me some money.
a) come b) will come c) is coming d) comes

13 We a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
a) are having b) have c) will have had d) have had

14 Our manager dinner with the Minister next Thursday as appointed.
a) has b) had c) is having d) is going to have

15 The boys will watch the new film after they their pocket money.
a) are going to get b) get c) will get d) are sure to get

16 **A:** to the dentist this afternoon? **B:** Yes, why?
A: Can you make an appointment for me to see him?
a) Will you be going b) Will you have gone
c) Do you go d) Shall you go

17 She is flying to Italy next week, her flight off at 7 a.m.
a) took b) taking c) take d) takes

18 I think one day every new book as an e-book.
a) publish b) will publish
c) will be published d) will have published

19 Don't worry. I'm sure you them again soon.
a) see b) are seeing c) would see d) will see

20 She to Spain next spring.
a) is travelling b) travels c) has travelled d) would travel

21 My wife's parents for dinner tomorrow, so we're preparing something special.
a) will come b) are coming
c) come d) are going to come

22 Your shoelaces are undone. You over and hurt yourself!
a) may fall b) will fall c) are falling d) are going to fall

23 Half an hour from now, the cinema will be full. Everyone the film.
a) will watch b) watch
c) will be watching d) will have watched

24 Look out! A car towards you.
a) is coming b) is going to come c) will be coming d) will come

25 They predicted that the price of petrol, but they were wrong.
a) will increase b) would increase
c) increased d) is going to increase

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 Choose the best two correct answers:
a) I will meet my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
b) I am meeting my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
c) I will have met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
d) I will be meeting my friends for dinner at 7 p.m. tomorrow.
e) I shall meet my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.

27 Choose two correct answers to the following sentence:
"Just a minute, please. I will be with you as soon as I this."
a) will do b) have done c) do
d) will be doing e) will have done

28 Choose two correct answers to the following sentence:
A: Let's meet at eleven o'clock tomorrow. **B:** Sorry, I my boss at this time.
a) will have met b) will be meeting c) will meet
d) meet e) am meeting

29 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct:
A: Have you made plans for tonight?
B: Yes. I my sister after work. We need to discuss some family matters.
a) am going to visit b) am visiting c) will have visited
d) will visit e) will be visited

30 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct:
a) This time tomorrow, I will watch the new film.
b) This time tomorrow, I will be watching the new film.
c) I'm watching the new film at the cinema tomorrow.
d) This time tomorrow, I watch the new film.
e) This time tomorrow, I will have been watching the new film.

(C) Communication Skills

Note

لمزيد من التدريبات على المهارات يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المهارات الجزء الخاص بـ Integrated Skills

(I) Life Skills

The Problem Solving Process

Step	Characteristics
1 Define the problem	• Differentiate fact from opinion. • Specify underlying causes. • Consult each faction involved for information. • State the problem specifically. • Identify what standard or expectation is violated. • Determine in which process the problem lies. • Avoid trying to solve the problem without data.
2 Generate alternative solutions	• Postpone evaluating alternatives initially. • Include all involved individuals in the generating of alternatives. • Specify alternatives consistent with organisational goals. • Specify short- and long-term alternatives. • Brainstorm on others' ideas. • Seek alternatives that may solve the problem.
3 Evaluate and select an alternative	• Evaluate alternatives relative to a target standard. • Evaluate all alternatives without bias. • Evaluate alternatives relative to established goals. • Evaluate both proven and possible outcomes. • State the selected alternative explicitly.
4 Implement and follow up on the solution	• Plan and implement a pilot test of the chosen alternative. • Gather feedback from all affected parties. • Seek acceptance or consensus by all those affected. • Establish ongoing measures and monitoring. • Evaluate long-term results based on the final solution.
Reference	https://asq.org/quality-resources/problem-solving

(II) Writing

- **Write an essay about how to feed people sustainably in the future.**

Tips for writing the essay

Introduction	Reasons for keeping sustainable food: - Increase in the population. - Decrease of food production.
Main body (1)	- A modern way to grow food. - Aeroponics, definition, and basic rules.
Main body (2)	- Benefits of aeroponics to keep sustainable food.
Conclusion	- How aeroponics can secure food sustainable food. - How it is better than traditional methods of agriculture.

There is a big shortfall between the amount of food we produce today and the amount needed to feed everyone in 2050. There will be nearly 10 billion people on Earth by 2050. Moreover, as incomes rise, people will consume more and more. At the same time, we urgently need to decrease greenhouse gas emissions from agricultural production and stop the destruction of remaining forests on earth. Hence, we need innovative and new ways to keep sustainable food in the future.

One of the most innovative ways to grow food is aeroponics. It is the process of growing plants in an air or mist environment without the use of soil. The seeds are planted in pieces of foam stuffed into tiny pots, which are exposed to light on one end and nutrient mist on the other. The foam also holds the stem and root mass in place as the plants grow. The plant's roots are sprayed by nutrient-rich water solution.

Aeroponics is suitable for growing most many kinds of food. Tomatoes and herbs are the best examples. It enables us to grow food in all available spaces. Besides, the environment is kept free from pests and diseases so that the plants may grow healthier and more quickly. Last, it helps us save water resources.

Aeroponics is a better method of agriculture than the traditional soil-based ones. It provides faster growths, higher yields and also minimises or eliminates the need for herbicides and pesticides. It doesn't need special skills, so everyone can grow food wherever they find available space. In short, aeroponics is one of the most modern ways that can help us keep sustainable food in the future.

(III) Speaking Skills

Speculating about the future:

No one can claim that he knows the future, but there are some expectations or predictions that may help us to deal wisely with future events.

For example, if we expect that the number of people will increase to a certain number after 10 years, so it's the rule of scientists and experts to find a solution to grow more food and provide big numbers of livestock which will live to continue.

- The benefits of speculating about the future:

A) It will help people to avoid bad things that might happen.

B) It may protect the environment by raising awareness to stop cutting down the forests or hunting rare animals.

C) It will help humanity by making new inventions and technologies.

- Try to find answers to the following questions.

1. How could speculating about the future be useful in the field of agriculture?

2. Is there a dark side concerning speculating about the future?

3. Give an example that helped you because of speculating about the future.

Practice

Complete the following dialogue:

Waleed and Salem are talking about a future issue.

Waleed : Hello! Salem. Do you have plans or dreams for the future?

Salem : Of course I have. I am looking forward to a bright future.

Waleed :?

Salem : I think I will work in the field of computer programming.

Waleed :?

Salem : Because this will help me to create new ideas.

Waleed : To what extent do you think computer technology will develop?

Salem :

Waleed : What are your predictions about the science of space exploration?

Salem :

General Exercises
(Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You would have another to succeed in the test if you tried again and again.
a) duty b) chance c) study d) subject

2 On hearing about losing his job, Sameh was so angry that his speech didn't sense.
a) do b) notice c) accept d) make

3 The report's main was that global warming was a serious threat.
a) study b) conclusion c) attention d) experience

4 At present, we have no of life on other planets.
a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

5 Calvin Klein, Diesel and Christian Dior's shows attract a lot of attention as they are world-famous clothes designers.
a) wave b) fashion c) flood d) trend

6 The roof of the farmer's yard was in such bad condition that it needed to be completely
a) replaced b) placed c) renewed d) destroyed

7 The research shows a between high cholesterol and an increased risk of heart attacks.
a) method b) link c) space d) travel

8 I thanked my friend for the meal she cooked for us.
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste

9 **A:** Have you got any plans for tomorrow? **B:** Yes, I my grandparents.
a) would visit b) visit
c) am going to visit d) will visit

10 This time next year, Salma for her final exam.
a) will revise b) will be revising c) may revise d) revises

11 **A:** Why do you want so many oranges? **B:** I make an orange juice.
a) am going to b) will c) would d) won't

12 A baby its mother's voice soon after its birth.
a) is going to recognise b) recognise
c) is recognising d) will recognise

13 **A:** Oh! I haven't got enough money to pay! **B:** Don't worry. I you some.
a) am lending b) am going to lend c) will lend d) lend

14 If you don't take a taxi, you on time.
a) won't arrive b) aren't going to arrive
c) aren't arriving d) don't arrive

15 Ahmed is a terrible driver. He an accident one day.
a) is having b) will have c) is going to have d) will be having

16 I have made a decision. I the weekend in my village.
a) will spend b) will be spending c) am spending d) am going to spend

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

African lions are larger than other big wild cats, including leopards, cheetahs, and jaguars. In fact, only Asian tigers are bigger. The African lion is the only cat to live in cooperative groups. These groups are called prides. A pride usually has no more than three unrelated adult males. Together with adult females (lionesses) and young cubs, a pride has from three to over 30 members. The females are related, and they usually stay together for life.

Living in a pride gives African lions benefits other cats don't have. Other cats live alone, coming together only to mate. This means the mother must raise the young and provide all protection and food. African lion mothers, however, have a pride of lions to help. Pride members communicate vocally, by roaring, meowing, and snarling. They also use facial expressions, scent, and touch, including rubbing and licking.

The largest male lion's job is to protect the pride, especially the cubs. Males are usually gentle with cubs in their own pride, but not with the cubs in other prides.

Females, meanwhile, do most of the hunting. With their smaller size, they can sneak closer to **prey** through tall savannah grasses. They hunt mostly during the night and in the early morning when light is poor. Large, fast animals like zebras, buffalo, wildebeest, wild hogs, and gazelles are the lions' favourite prey. However, these fast animals often escape. So lions also hunt smaller animals such as hares, birds, and reptiles. They also use their size and numbers to steal dead prey from other predators, including cheetahs and leopards. That's why cheetahs drag their kills to hiding places and leopards pull theirs into trees.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 According to the article, how are lions different from any other wild cats?
a) Lions are the largest wild cat species on earth.
b) Lions are the only wild cats that live in Africa.
c) Lions are the only wild cats that are endangered.
d) Lions are the only wild cats to live in cooperative groups.

2 What is one reason why female lions, the lionesses, do the hunting instead of the males?
a) The females run faster than the males and can catch up to their prey quicker.
b) The females are stronger than the males and can take down their prey easier.
c) The females are smaller than the males and can sneak closer to their prey in the tall savannah grasses.
d) The females have better eyesight than the males to spot prey easier.

3 Lions hunt
a) large, fast animals only
b) smaller animals only
c) dead animals
d) both a and b

4 The synonym of the word "**prey**" is
a) friend
b) victim
c) companion
d) mate

B) Answer the following questions:

5 According to the article, what is one benefit of living in groups that mother lions have over other wild cat mothers?

6 Why do cheetahs and leopards hide their prey or drag it into trees?

7 Give two ways by which pride members communicate?

8 **Find words from the passage that mean:**
a) working together
b) advantages

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Scientists are always researching new methods of food production. They believe that without new and creative ways, the world will face severe hunger.

.....

2. Many people believe that producing food in laboratories is only science fiction. They can't stand eating meat or fruit made in an artificial way.

.....

3. The United Nations regards using humans in laboratory experiments as a crime. It is also one of the most important medical ethics.

.....

4. Nobody is born perfect or ideal. Parents and teachers need to double efforts to bring out the hidden potential in a child.

.....

5. Disabled people may amaze ordinary ones by the marvelous things they themselves can't achieve. They can even score amazing records.

.....

6. Society must look after homeless children to help them have a better future. That's why most charities try to raise more money to help them.

.....

B) Translate into English:

١- تحاول الأمم المتحدة من خلال منظماتها توفير الدواء والغذاء الكافى لكل سكان الدول الفقيرة التى تعانى نقصًا حادًا، خاصة مع تزايد انتشار فيروس كورونا المستجد.

.....

٢- يزخر التاريخ بالكثير من الكتاب العرب البارزين الذين أثروا الأدب العالمى مثل طه حسين ونجيب محفوظ الكاتب العربى الوحيد الحائز على جائزة نوبل فى الأدب.

.....

٣- تمثل الزيادة السكانية أحد أهم عوائق التنمية فى المجتمع؛ لذا تعمل الحكومة على البحث عن حلول مناسبة لهذه المشكلة، من أهمها برامج تنظيم الأسرة.

.....

٤- لابد من وجود قوانين صارمة لمعاقبة كل المصانع التى تتلاعب بتاريخ الصلاحية على عبوات منتجات الأغذية المختلفة؛ لما تمثله من خطر على صحة الموطنين وسلامة الغذاء.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

creative	مبدع	ordinary	عادى
ethics	أخلاقيات	overpopulation	الزيادة السكانية
expiry date	تاريخ الصلاحية	potential	إمكانيات
family planning	تنظيم الأسرة	science fiction	خيال علمى
food safety	سلامة الغذاء	severe	شديد
homeless	مشرد	strict laws	قوانين صارمة
manipulate	تتلاعب	outstanding	بارز
obstacles	عوائق		

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Trees are very useful. As well as giving us food, what are their other benefits?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

King Lear Exercises
(Act I, Scenes iii–iv)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We'll have a/an with our sick son 24 hours a day to keep an eye on him.
a) adviser b) attendant c) consultant d) guide

2 I hope the children will well during my brother's wedding.
a) behave b) relieve c) fight d) shout

3 The criminals who robbed the bank were in post office uniforms.
a) disliked b) discouraged c) disguised d) dissented

4 I still feel about bad things I said to my mother when I was a teenager.
a) guilty b) happy c) pleased d) proud

5 Mum always us to discuss our problems with her.
a) discourages b) recognises c) realises d) encourages

6 The man was a large package in his arms when he fell down the stairs.
a) kicking b) pulling c) holding d) tying

7 When we entered the restaurant, I that my friend was sitting at the next table.
a) ignored b) dissolved c) abused d) noticed

8 It's to keep people waiting outside your house for a long time.
a) rude b) polite c) nice d) honourable

9 The rich businessman treats his home kindly and also pays them well.
a) servants b) members c) masters d) partners

10 There were several guarding the main gate of the army camp.
a) revolvers b) sailors c) soldiers d) instructors

11 The medicine had a slightly bitter, so the child refused to take it.
a) shape b) effect c) paste d) taste

12 Grandmother was a/an old woman, and we all valued her advice.
a) lazy b) wise c) unreasonable d) tough

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Saline is a mixture of salt and water which has many medical uses.
 a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction
2. 5,000 new flats are to be built, but this is just a drop in the for such a vast country.
 a) ocean b) lake c) sea d) rain
3. If you click on this, it will make you able to get to your bank account.
 a) connection b) contact c) link d) way
4. No doctor at the hospital was for comment about the accident as they were all busy.
 a) replaceable b) available c) helpful d) acceptable
5. These days, poor people find it very difficult to their keep.
 a) win b) award c) apply d) earn
6. I accepted the job after I read its job and found it suitable for me.
 a) interview b) prescription c) description d) division
7. Competition between the two companies is up.
 a) warning b) cooling c) decreasing d) heating
8. The firefighters the fire in the building after three hours.
 a) contained b) involved c) enclosed d) included
9. The nursery teacher gets ready for a new of students every year.
 a) flock b) team c) crop d) line
10. The news of the promotion had a/an effect on the employees who were waiting for us.
 a) electronic b) electric c) shocked d) exclusive
11. The company is unable to buy modern machines due to cash problems.
 a) flow b) fault c) current d) blow
12. We all admire Safia Zaghloul for her efforts which served the of women's rights in the Arab World.
 a) reason b) cause c) opinion d) neglect
13. Water and insects can be of infectious diseases such as malaria.
 a) results b) effects c) vehicles d) planes
14. My uncle doesn't have the to start a new business, so he is going to get a loan from the bank.
 a) suggestion b) intention c) place d) capital

15 A data show is a machine which can motion pictures, presentations and videos onto a screen.
a) invent b) design c) project d) reject

16 I that boy standing there a true story, but he didn't believe it.
a) told b) said c) asked d) warned

17 It's warmer today than yesterday.
a) very b) much c) more d) many

18 They have lived in Benha 2001.
a) in b) for c) since d) ago

19 I was hungry, so I made a sandwich.
a) mine b) my c) me d) myself

20 **A:** I'm not going to work tomorrow. **B:** am I. I've taken the day off.
a) Such b) So c) Neither d) None

21 She can't read write.
a) not b) but c) and d) or

22 You things! Please be more careful.
a) are always dropping b) always dropped
c) have always dropped d) had always dropped

23 Omar in Alexandria for ten years, then he moved to Assuit.
a) lived b) have lived c) live d) have been living

24 too many sweets is bad for your teeth.
a) Having eaten b) Eating c) Ate d) Eaten

25 interesting idea to visit Aswan this winter!
a) How b) What c) Which d) What an

26 I am going to the shops to get some tennis shoes.
a) yourselves b) myself c) herself d) themselves

27 A security guard checked the and let them in.
a) passengers bags b) passengers' bags
c) passenger's bags d) passenger bags

28 Everyone respects you, ...?
a) don't they b) do they c) does he d) doesn't he

29 She went to doctor's because she had a pain in her stomach.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

30 I prefer using a keyboard with a pen.
a) to writing b) to write c) rather write d) than write

Test 3
Based on Unit 3

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The economic crisis which the world faced during coronavirus showed the importance of to assure food supply.
a) industry b) agriculture c) exploration d) deportation

2 We must look for new ways to keep our land and make farming
a) sustainable b) avoidable c) unreliable d) unavailable

3 The fans of our team attended all the qualifying matches to the World Cup.
a) universal b) international c) national d) valid

4 Antarctica is the least populated because of the climate there.
a) district b) content c) region d) continent

5 Scientists are still searching for real about the start of COVID-19 outbreak.
a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

6 Our teacher mixed two different chemicals with water to prepare the wanted
a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction

7 **A:** What are you going to do this evening? **B:** I don't know. Maybe, I golf.
a) am playing b) may play c) will play d) play

8 I in the Alps this time next week.
a) will ski b) will be skiing c) may ski d) was skiing

9 **A:** Why are you switching on the TV? **B:** I a football match.
a) will watch b) watch
c) am watching d) am going to watch

10 When I see you tomorrow, I you my new book.
a) will show b) will be showing c) am showing d) show

11 I can't come shopping on Monday morning because I
a) will work b) may work c) will be working d) will be worked

12 The population of the world to around ten billion by the year 2100.
a) will increase b) will be increasing c) may be increasing d) increases

13 Ali a good job when he finishes his education.
a) may be getting b) will probably be getting
c) gets d) will probably get

14 Nader is going on holiday. This time tomorrow, he in the sea.

a) should swim
b) will be swimming
c) will swim
d) may swim

15 I'm sorry, but you need to stay in the office until you your work.

a) have finished
b) will finish
c) are finishing
d) had finished

16 When you off the train, I for you by the ticket machine.

a) get/will wait
b) get/will be waiting
c) have got/will wait
d) get/am going to wait

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The weather forecast predicts what the temperature and air conditions will be in the near future. There is a wide variety of types of the weather. The weather can be sunny or stormy. It can be warm or cool. It also can be rainy, cloudy or windy. Sometimes, the weather is severe.

A blizzard, a thunderstorm or a hurricane may happen quickly. When we get information ahead of time, we can prepare for it. Being prepared helps us stay safe.

A meteorologist is a person whose job is to forecast the weather. There are many tools available to help the meteorologist do his job. A common tool for getting an accurate measurement of the temperature is a thermometer. A high temperature probably means plenty of sunshine for everyone.

In the rainy weather, a meteorologist uses a rain gauge. A rain gauge gives numerical data about how much rain is falling outdoors. After it rains, you may be able to see a rainbow. A rainbow appears when the sun **comes out** and there is still rain in the air.

The wind brings us the weather. It blows clouds from one place to another. It is helpful to know which direction the wind is blowing. A wind vane provides this information. Knowing the wind direction helps a meteorologist know what weather is coming.

Weather forecasts are not always right. As our knowledge about the weather gets better, the forecasts become more accurate.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 When we are prepared for the forthcoming blizzard, we will be

a) happy
b) safe
c) in danger
d) strong

18 The person whose job it is to forecast the weather is called a
a) psychologist b) philologist
c) monologist d) meteorologist

19 When the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air, we can see a
a) rainbow b) blizzard
c) thunderstorm d) hurricane

20 The other meaning of "**comes out**" is
a) hides b) disappears c) appears d) eclipses

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What is the weather forecast?

.....

22 Name one weather tool and tell what it is used for.

.....

23 What is your favourite kind of the weather? Why?

.....

24 Why do you think people believe in weather forecasts although they predict the weather?

.....

25 Translate into English:

- لقد فشلت كل محاولات هدم المجتمع المصرى بسبب الوحدة الوطنية التى تمثل عقبة كبيرة فى وجه كل من يحاول العبث باستقرار الشعب المصرى.

.....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the good signs of a civilised society.

.....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"There have been several scientific inventions from time to time and these have made life more comfortable for human beings. Choose some of these inventions to talk about."

.....

.....

.....

Revision (1)
Units 1, 2 & 3

Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

activity (n)	نشاط
amount (n)	كمية
athlete (n)	رياضى
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب
boost (v) (ed)	يدعم/يعزز
boxer (n)	ملاكم
boxing (n)	ملاكمة
certificate (n)	شهادة
college (n)	كلية
competition (n)	منافسة
course (n)	مقرر دراسى
distance (n)	مسافة
fantastic (adj)	رائع
fatty (adj)	دهنى
fight (v) (n)	يقاتل/قتال
foods (n)	أطعمة
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى
injured (adj)	مصاب
interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية
local (adj)	محلى
meals (n)	وجبات
prepare (v) (d)	يعد
register (v) (ed)	يسجل
regularly (adv)	بشكل منتظم
runner (n)	عدّاء
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضى
teenager (n)	مراهق
training (n)	تدريب
understand (v)	يفهم
variety (n)	تشكيلة
wide (adj)	واسع

Reading Text (1)

Kareem

I'm a runner who regularly runs very long distances. I need to eat large amounts of pasta, fruit, potatoes and other vegetables so I have enough energy to run for 30 or 40 kilometres each day. I also need to eat a lot of different foods that will make me stronger, such as meat, fish, and eggs. I drink a lot of orange juice to boost my immune system, which means that I'm less likely to get ill and have to stop training. I usually prepare my own food at home but when I want to eat out with my friends or family, I usually go to an Italian restaurant!

Amr

I'm a boxer, so I need to eat larger amounts of food than other athletes. When I started boxing, I started eating in a different way. Instead of three large meals a day, I usually eat six smaller meals, but I don't eat a wide variety of food. I usually eat eggs or white meat, like chicken, for almost every meal. Eating like this helps me to be stronger than the people I fight, which means I'm less likely to be injured. Before a big fight, I have to do a lot of training and I eat as much as possible, without eating unhealthy, fatty food, such as cakes and chocolate.

Reading Text (2)

To : aya@gmail.com
From : hadeer@gmail.com

Hi Aya,

How are you today? I think it's great that you're going to start cooking healthier food. I'm sure it will give you more energy and make you feel a lot better. I'd also like to learn how to cook meals that are healthier than the fast food that I usually eat. Do you want to do a cooking course with me so we can learn together? There's a new course that's going to start in two weeks' time at the local college. It's every Tuesday evening from 6 p.m. to 8 p.m. And it's only for teenagers!

You don't need to go to the college to register, you can do it on their website. Just search for the cooking courses and it's the first course you'll see. I can do the course on my own if you can't make it, but it would be a lot more fun to learn with a friend.

Talk to you soon!

Hadeer

Listening Text

Interviewer : Hello and welcome back to the show. Next, we're going to talk to Mariam Mohamed from Gizeh who has just started to do an interesting hobby. Could you tell us what you do, Mariam?

Mariam : Yes, sure. In my free time, I'm learning to help people who are ill or who have had an accident.

Interviewer : That sounds great. So you can learn new skills and help other people at the same time.

Mariam : Exactly. I'm doing a first aid course with about twenty other young people at our sports centre.

Interviewer : And will you receive a certificate at the end of the course?

Mariam : Yes. I have to go to at least fifty hours of lessons. Then I'll get my first certificate which shows that I can perform basic first aid.

Interviewer : Great! So you're learning simple techniques to start with and then you'll learn more techniques, is that right?

Mariam : Yes. At the start, you need to learn simple things like how to put a bandage on someone. You don't have to know how to perform CPR, for example. I'm sure I'll be taking courses for the next few years so I can learn as much as possible.

Interviewer : And why do you enjoy learning first aid so much? What's so interesting about it?

Mariam : Well, it's great to learn something you can use to help people in the future, and the course is really fun, too. You don't need to sit at a desk and read books to learn first aid, you need to do it. Our teacher understands that and he makes sure that the lessons are fun.

Interviewer : So you can learn something useful and have fun at the same time. Fantastic!

Workbook Exercises (Units 1-3)

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1 Which is the most boys' name in your class?
a) healthy b) immune c) popular d) athletic

2 This book was than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it.
a) good b) best c) worst d) worse

3 It is my sister's eighteenth birthday today, so my family are going to this evening.
a) boost b) celebrate c) repeat d) serve

4 I to go to a specialist hospital because I had a heart attack.
a) have to b) must c) had to d) didn't have to

5 The doctors are worried because the man has a illness.
a) past b) severe c) spicy d) wise

6 They to build a new hospital in the city next year.
a) will b) going c) are going d) will be

7 Your system works better if you eat healthy food.
a) immune b) emergency c) athletic d) injured

8 I think it rain this afternoon.
a) will b) going to c) is going d) will be

9 You need strong to lift that box!
a) brain b) heart c) lungs d) muscles

10 Let's together this weekend. It would be nice to see you!
a) have b) get c) make d) do

11 The farmer keeps a lot of such as goats and sheep.
a) agriculture b) livestock c) production d) crops

12 My little sister isn't allowed to play this game because she to be more than eight years old to play it, and she's four!
a) has b) must c) should d) don't have

13 In some areas, fishing is not because one day there will be no fish left.
a) sustainable b) delivered c) destroyed d) changing

14 You bring your sun hat today because it is cloudy.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) have to

15 Our class working in the laboratory all this afternoon.
a) will b) going to c) will be d) won't

16 Some scientists believe that more people seaweed in the future.
a) eat b) ate c) will be eating d) are eating

2 Fill in the gap with one word:
(have – illness – lungs – must – rare – worst)

Coronavirus is a severe(1)..... . In 2020, a new coronavirus called COVID-19 made many people very ill. It is the(2)..... illness that we have had this century. For many people, COVID-19 affected their(3)..... so badly that they found it difficult to breathe. It is(4)..... to be seriously ill with COVID-19 for a long time. Most people who get COVID-19 feel better after about a week, but if you have it, you(5)..... stay home for many days.

We all(6)..... to be careful to keep clean and wash our hands so we do not catch illnesses like COVID-19.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

1. These shoes are the (expensive) in the shop.
2. It is (believe) that the Ancient Egyptians did not eat meat very often.
3. Alexandria is a big city, but it is (small) than Cairo.
4. The museum (not be) open tomorrow because it is a holiday.
5. Haytham is (not go) to the park because he has to study this afternoon.
6. In a few years' time, I think that all my friends (study) at university!
7. Do you think people (have) holidays in space one day?
8. What will you (do) at this time tomorrow?

4 Translate the following into Arabic:

Sports play an important role in making our minds and bodies stronger. However, athletes should have regular checks to make sure they have no serious health problems.

5 Translate the following into English:

- يعتقد العلماء أن ارتفاع أسعار الغذاء، وتزايد أعداد السكان يستلزمان إعادة التفكير فيما يجب أن نفعله من أجل التخطيط لمواجهة نقص الطعام فى المستقبل.

6 Read the text and answer the questions:

There always seems to be new types of food in the supermarket. But what do we know about the food that we eat? Do we always know where it comes from, and can we trust it to make us strong and healthy?

Some experts worry that although we are living longer, many people are less healthy than in the past. This might be because we do not always eat healthy food.

Food producers all want to sell us their delicious produces, but how healthy are they? Scientists tested food that we can buy in supermarkets and the results might surprise you. We all know that you mustn't drink water from the sea, but did you know that there are some types of soup that are saltier than seawater?

Scientists also found that some fruit juice is worse for you than fizzy drinks because although it is natural, it contains a lot of sugar. And it is thought that some sports drinks have eight teaspoons of sugar ill them!

If you want to buy healthier food, you should check the labels on any food you buy at the supermarket. Personally, I will be cooking my own food from now on. In this way, I will always know the amount of sugar and salt in my meals. That must be a healthier way to eat!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1 According to the text, many people today than people in the past.
a) are healthier b) live longer
c) eat nicer food d) use supermarkets more

2 What is the problem with some types of soup?
a) They are made from seawater. b) They are fizzy.
c) They are very salty. d) They have a lot of sugar in them.

3 What do you think a teaspoon can hold?
a) A small amount. b) A very large amount.
c) Only water. d) Only tea.

4 According to the text, why is it a good idea to check the labels of food at a supermarket?
a) To check the date. b) To find the amount of sugar and salt in it.
c) To check the price. d) To see what it is.

B) Answer the following questions:

5 Do you check the labels on the food that you buy? Why? Why not?
6 Why is it important to eat healthy food?
7 In future, will you make your own meals when you can? Why? Why not?

7 Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

1 Everyone should learn how to make first aid.
2 Be careful. That is the spicier meal on the menu!
3 She doesn't have to get up early yesterday because it was a holiday.
4 My mother usually repairs lunch before we return home from school.
5 There is a various of goods in a new store near my house.
6 The new wonderful hotel near the tourist site is going to boast tourism.
7 Will you be taken the bus to school next week?
8 Take a coat to London next week because it's going be cold.
9 I can't come to the sports club next week because I will travelling to Aswan.
10 He can't speak well as he has a throat infect.

8 Choose one of the two topics. Write about (150) words on the topic:

1 Compare your favourite and least favourite meals. Say why you like and dislike them and if they are healthy or unhealthy.
2 Describe why the immune system is important and what you can do to boost it.

King Lear: Act 1 SB

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The of Kent was a powerful person in England.
a) Riches b) Title c) Kingdom d) Duke

2 When you have a to do something, you must do it.
a) scene b) disguise c) title d) duty

3 If you did something bad, then you are of doing it.
a) guilty b) angry c) rude d) honest

4 A is something you can use to cut things or fight people.
a) stick b) cart c) sword d) gun

5 When someone your heart, they hurt your feelings and make you unhappy.
a) breaks b) deserves c) sends d) succeeds

6 Many old people are because they have more experience than young people do.
a) rude b) wise c) honest d) foolish

7 That house was his when his parents died.
a) title b) kingdom c) inheritance d) disguise

8 If you are a/an, it is your job to do things to help someone else.
a) king b) servant c) enemy d) duke

9 King Lear decides to give his to his daughters.
a) duke b) title c) kingdom d) sword

10 is very important to me, so I want friends who will always stand by my side.
a) Loyalty b) Inheritance c) Riches d) Beauty

11 Edmund wants his father to believe something that isn't true, so he him.
a) attacks b) deserves c) deceives d) succeeds

12 King Lear thinks that Goneril will have a taste of her own if her child is cruel to her.
a) riches b) loyalty c) inheritance d) medicine

2 Match the things that happen in Act (1-5) with the reasons why they happen (a-e):

1. King Lear decides not to give Cordelia a third of his kingdom because	**a)** he loves her more now that she is poor.
2. The King of France asks Cordelia to be his wife because	**b)** he wants to continue working for King Lear as his servant.
3. Edmund gives his father a letter which he says is from his brother Edgar because	**c)** he's trying to get a large inheritance.
4. Edmund tells his brother Edgar that their father is angry with him because	**d)** she won't tell him how much she loves him.
5. Kent disguises himself in different clothes because	**e)** he wants his brother to go away so he can get more money.

3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentence:

1. Goneril is King Lear's daughter.
 a) oldest **b)** youngest
2. Cordelia tells her father that she is young but
 a) clever **b)** honest
3. Kent tells King Lear that he is not afraid to make the King
 a) angry **b)** cruel
4. Cordelia believes that everyone discovers the in the end.
 a) loyalty **b)** truth
5. Edmund says that he the letter that he shows his father.
 a) found **b)** sent

6 Edmund tells his brother to take his with him if he goes out.
a) sword b) trust

7 Oswald is a
a) duke b) servant

8 The fool thinks that King Lear will want back one day.
a) everything b) to go

4 Read the quotations and answer the questions:

1 ***"I must speak honestly when my king is being foolish. Your youngest daughter does not shout about her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least."***
a) What do you think Kent thinks about King Lear at this point of the story?
b) How does King Lear react to Kent's advice and what does this tell us about him?

2 ***"My brother and father trust me, which makes them easy to deceive. I need these two fools to make my plan work."***
a) What is Edmund's plan?
b) What does his brother, Edgar, think has happened?

3 ***"If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!"***
a) Who says this?
b) How do people behave differently with King Lear now he has less power?

5 Read all four scenes from *King Lear* again and write a summary of what happens:

Think about the following:
- The story: what happens?
- The main characters: what are they like?



Test on Units 1, 2 & 3

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Archaeologists now use modern such as ultrasonic rays.
 a) tricks b) magics c) techniques d) designs
2. I strongly the view that education should be available to everyone.
 a) support b) risk c) disrespect d) disagree
3. Most Egyptian families gather to important feasts such as Eid El Fitr and Christmas.
 a) share b) celebrate c) sadden d) collaborate
4. About sixty-five close friends and attended the wedding.
 a) officers b) enemies c) relatives d) passengers
5. Sugarcane is an important in the south of Egypt such as Luxor and Aswan.
 a) dairy b) product c) dish d) crop
6. All people around the world are working hard to the COVID-19 pandemic.
 a) contain b) involve c) enclose d) include
7. She is a really nice person- one of people I know.
 a) the nicer b) the nice c) the most nice d) the nicest I
8. I have to talk to Osama. I forget to call him.
 a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) don't have to
9. **A:** Osama phoned while you were out. **B:** Yes, I know. I him back.
 a) am calling b) will call c) am going to call d) will be calling
10. It's a very valuable painting. It's painting in the gallery.
 a) the most valuable b) more valuable c) the more valuable d) a valuable
11. There's plenty of time for you to make up your mind. You decide now.
 a) don't need to b) have to c) mustn't d) will have to
12. Tomorrow afternoon, we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4:30. So at 4 o'clock, we tennis.
 a) are going to play b) will play c) will be playing d) play
13. The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't I thought.
 a) near b) far as c) farthest d) as far as
14. This is a valuable book. You take good care of it and you lose it.
 a) must/don't need to b) needn't/mustn't
 c) must/mustn't d) needn't/don't have to
15. Right now, I'm working in a café. In 10 years' time, I hope I one of my own.
 a) run b) will be running
 c) am going to run d) ran
16. There are people at this meeting than at the last one.
 a) fewer b) fewest c) few d) the fewest

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Failure is probably one of the most discouraging moments in our lives. Failure should not, however, break our spirit. Instead, we should use the lesson learnt from our defeat to spur us on to greater achievements.

It is understandably humiliating to admit you have failed. Yet, this is an essential criterion to success. To overcome the main barrier to your success, you have to admit that you are not the great person you envision yourself to be. Overconfidence can easily be mistaken for confidence. There is but a thin boundary between the two. Yet, the results can be shockingly different. While one can help you achieve your goal, the other can dash your dreams to pieces.

Confidence is a good trait to have where a person is sure about his course of action or activity and it comes from past success and right decisions. Overconfidence is excessive belief in their own abilities ignoring the fact that their decision can be wrong.

There is, therefore, a need to be modest and unassuming. The fruits of success will be sweeter. Using confidence and knowledge, strike firmly towards your goal, and never be diverted from it by a mild success. A premature celebration can easily obscure the task to be performed.

After you have succeeded, use that confidence to improve yourself. Then personal progress can be guaranteed.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

17 Learning from our defeat is something good to

a) frustrate us
b) blame others
c) commit suicide
d) motivate us to do well

18 In order to achieve success, you should

a) admit your failure
b) insist on your failure
c) change your career
d) depend on all people

19 What do we need to succeed?

a) Overconfidence.
b) Confidence.
c) Failure.
d) Forgetting goals

20 The main idea in the passage is "..... ".

a) Failure and its benefits
b) Overconfidence is the key to success
c) How to achieve success
d) Failure leads to success

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Mention two things a person needs to achieve success.

.....

22 What can a premature celebration do to your work?

.....

23 What is the difference between confidence and overconfidence?

.....

24 Do you think that success depends on the kind of education? Why? Why not?

.....

25 Translate into English:

- لكل بلد أسلوبه فى الطهى والمكونات التى يستخدمها الطهاة فى أطباقهم، فما يبدو غريبًا فى بلد ما يصبح مألوفًا ومحبوبًا فى بلد آخر.

.....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Food shortage is one of the most important problems that the world is expected to face in the next few years. That's why scientists are working on innovative ways to overcome it.

.....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can man's diet affect his health in general?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 4

Changing English

Objectives

- **Reading** : An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post
- **Writing** : A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects
- **Listening** : A speaker talking about messaging tips on how to write a successful blog post
- **Speaking** : A debate
- **Language** : Reported speech: could/should have + past participle; reporting orders, requests and advice; abbreviations
- **Life skills** : Communication

Warm up

Why should you learn English?

I need it for my future job.



Part 1 Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

abbreviation (n)	اختصار	linguist (n)	عالم لغويات
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى	misunderstand (v)	يسىء الفهم
formal (adj)	رسمى	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/لا يستحسن	tone (n)	نبرة صوت
innovator (n)	مبدع		

Vocabulary on Reading

app	تطبيق	messaging	المراسلة
actually (adv)	بالفعل	punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
adults (n)	كبار/ بالغون	require (v) (d)	يتطلب
appear (v) (ed)	يظهر	spelling (n)	الهجاء
basic (adj)	أساسى	suitable (adj)	مناسب
communication (n)	اتصالات	teenager (n)	مراهق
correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
everyday (adj)	يومى	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

acronym (n)	أوائل حروف الكلمات	example (n)	مثال
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف	expression (n)	تعبير
advantage (n)	ميزة	face-to-face	وجهًا لوجه
apply (v) (~~y~~ ied)	يتقدم بطلب	facial (adj)	وجهى (بالوجه)

arrangement (n)	ترتيب
author (n)	مؤلف
basically (adv)	أساسًا
chat (v) (ted)	يدردش
conversation (n)	محادثة
deal (v)	يتناول/يتعامل
disadvantage (n)	عيب
immediate (adj)	فورى
increase (v) (d)	يزيد
lovely (adj)	جميل
message (v) (d)	يرسل رسالة
personal (adj)	شخصى
positive (adj)	إيجابى
response (n)	رد/استجابة

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة
blog (n)	مدونة
care (v) (d)	يهتم
copy (n) (v) (y ied)	ينسخ
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل
fantastic (adj)	رائع
gift (n)	هدية
mark (n)	درجة/علامة
meeting (n)	اجتماع
online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت
parcel (n)	طرد بريدى
post (v) (ed) (n)	ينشر/نشر (على صفحات التواصل)
regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
reply (v) (y ied)	يرد
request (n)	طلب
selfie (n)	صورة شخصية أمامية
voice (n)	صوت بشرى

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

get upset	يصبح منزعجًا	pass an exam	يجتاز اختبار
have much fun	يستمتع كثيرًا	post personal information	ينشر معلومات شخصية
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارًا جديدة	stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
make communication quicker	يجعل الاتصالات أسرع	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية (أمامية)
advice about	نصيحة بشأن	go back	يرجع
apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة	talk to	يتحدث إلى
chat with	يدردش مع	thank for	يشكر على
deal with	يتعامل مع		

Messages Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Full Form	Meaning
1. LOL	Laugh out loud	اضحك عاليًا
2. cul8r	See you later	أراك فيما بعد
3. gr8	Great!	رائع
4. plz	Please	من فضلك
5. idk	I don't know	لا أعرف
6. 2moro	Tomorrow	غدًا
7. thx	Thank you	شكرًا
8. ASAP	As soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصالات	communicative	اتصالى
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
fail	يفشل	failure	فشل/شخص فاشل	failing	فاشل
innovate	يبدع	innovation innovator	إبداع مبدع	innovative	إبداعى
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	أسف/ندم	regretful regrettable	نادم يؤسف عليه
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب	required	مطلوب
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
adult	بالغ	grownup/mature	adolescent/infant مراهق/طفل
appear	يظهر	come out/arrive	abandon/disappear يغادر/يختفى
basic	أساسى	main/primary	minor/extra فرعى/غير أساسى
care	يهتم	pay attention/consider	ignore/disregard يتجاهل
deal	يتعامل	handle/negotiate	refuse/deny يرفض/ينكر
frown	يكشر/لا يستحسن	disapprove/dislike	approve/encourage يستحسن
misunderstand	يسىء الفهم	misjudge/misinterpret	understand/perceive يفهم
regret	يأسف/يندم	repent/lament	praise/delight يمدح/يفرح
request	طلب	demand/seek	reply/answer يرد
require	يتطلب	involve/desire	offer/dislike يعرض/لا يرغب
response	رد/استجابة	reaction/feedback	request/question طلب/تساؤل
warn	يحذر	alert/notify	mislead/ignore يخدع/يتجاهل

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In English 'Dr' is written as a/an of 'Doctor'.
 a) form b) type
 c) abbreviation d) replacement
2. The minister will be the host at a/ an dinner to welcome the new ambassadors tonight.
 a) normal b) formal
 c) occasional d) feast
3. A/An is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.
 a) linguist b) botanist
 c) astrologist d) biologist
4. The money the poor family earned did not even cover their most needs such as food and clothes.
 a) fictional b) extra
 c) additional d) basic
5. My grandfather is very sick and continuous health care.
 a) requires b) acquires
 c) inquires d) protects

Answers 1 c) 2 b) 3 a) 4 d) 5 a)



Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

1. Have you used anything other than the alphabet to write?
2. Did others understand your writing?

Plz read this article ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u 👍 it! 🙂

For any readers who can't understand the language of text messaging, the translation is: *Please read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.*

In text messages, abbreviations(1), emojis(2) and numbers are all used to make communication quicker. The language of text messages doesn't require(3) correct spelling, or difficult grammar and punctuation.

Messaging language is appearing in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis 😂. Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!!!!!

So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable in formal emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers(4) are no longer able to speak or write using English correctly.

However, some linguists(5) suggest that people who use messaging language are actually language innovators(6), introducing new ideas into English.

They argue that messaging language is quick, short and communicates a lot in a small space.

Whether or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic(7) abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

(1) اختصارات

(2) رموز تعبيرية

(3) يتطلب

(4) مراهقون

(5) لغويون

(6) مبدعون

(7) رئيسى/أساسى

Post-reading question:

- Is messaging language damaging the English language?



Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Do you prefer talking and meeting your friend or just messaging them?

Presenter : Hello everyone, thanks for joining me today on Afternoon Talktime. And today we are talking about messaging. My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy. She is the author[1] of the book *A Guide to Messaging* which encourages us to use messaging positively. Welcome to the programme, Magda.

Dr Magda : Thank you. It's lovely[2] to be here.

Presenter : So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very upset. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually, she admitted[3] that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL - laugh out loud - in response[4] to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo. She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

Dr Magda : This is a good example of why we need to be aware of the advantages[5] and disadvantages of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter : Because messaging is different to speaking face-to-face[6], isn't it?

Dr Magda : Exactly! Sometimes face-to-face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more confusing. And this is basically[7] because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she smiling or frowning[8]? And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they making a joke? Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body movements. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we notice all these things; facial expressions, body movements, and the tone[9] of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often misunderstand what the other person is trying to communicate.

(1) مؤلف
(2) جميل
(3) اعترف
(4) رد فعل
(5) مميزات
(6) وجهًا لوجه
(7) أساسًا
(8) يكشر
(9) نبرة صوت

أوائل حروف الكلمات (10)

Presenter : So, that's the negative side of messaging. Is there a positive side?

Dr Magda : Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with friends but remember that messaging is designed to be short and quick so don't expect to have long conversations, and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation or acronym(10) as a response to your message.

Presenter : So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda : Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an immediate reply does not necessarily mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said, 'Can I call you?'

Presenter : So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more traditional communication is important.

Dr Magda : I am! Absolutely. Messaging is one form of communication, not the only form of communication.

Presenter : Great – thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme

Post-listening question:

- What are the disadvantages of messaging?



Video Script

Smartphones are changing the way we choose to communicate with each other. More people use their phones to send and receive messages than they do to make phone calls. Messaging is quick and cheap. We can keep in contact with friends, make and check arrangements(1), send photos, ask questions and receive answers within seconds.

(1) ترتيبات
(2) يزيد
(3) اتصال
(4) محادثة

Messaging is now more popular than emails, especially between friends and family. Messaging increased(2) by 7,000% in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still rising. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that teenagers send more than most adults.

Staying in contact(3) with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation(4) or spending time with someone: that's important too.



Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The lazy student finally that he made a lot of mistakes.
 a) cancelled b) hid c) disbelieved d) admitted
2. When Samy behaved badly, his mother and shook her head.
 a) frowned b) laughed c) cheered d) pleaded
3. One of this new city is the lack of public transport.
 a) advantage b) merit c) disadvantage d) form
4. You are so lucky to live here with all this countryside around you.
 a) hateful b) lovely c) confusing d) hatred
5. We must take steps to deal with the problem of water pollution.
 a) passive b) reflexive c) negative d) positive

Answers 1 d) 2 a) 3 c) 4 b) 5 d)

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

abbreviation اختصار	a short form of a word or expression
innovator مبدع	someone who introduces changes and new ideas
formal رسمى	made or done officially or publicly
emoji رمز تعبيرى	an icon, similar to an emotion, used in electronic messages and on websites, originally in Japan
linguist عالم لغويات	someone who studies or teaches linguistics
tone نبرة صوت	the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking
not necessarily ليس بالضرورة	a response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct
frown يكشر	to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy
misunderstand يسىء الفهم	to not understand properly



Notes on Vocabulary

1

everyday (adj) يومى (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم)

- Doing exercises should be part of your everyday activities.

every day (adv) كل يوم (ظرف)

- My father drives us to school every day.

2

communicate يتواصل/يتفاهم

- People use more than words when they communicate with each other.

contact يتصل بـ/يحتك بـ/اتصال

- As my friend is abroad, we contact by email.
- There is very little contact between the two cities.

connect يصل/يربط بين شيئين

- The railway connects Cairo with most cities in Egypt.

3

meeting اجتماع (لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد)

- The staff are having a meeting next week to discuss the company's problems.

conference مؤتمر (لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة)

- The Arab Summit Conference is held in March every year.

interview مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة/صحافة/إذاعة)

- Mary has an interview next week for a teaching job in Paris.
- A famous reporter is having an interview with the president tonight.

appointment موعد (مع صديق/طبيب)

- I'd like to make an appointment to see the doctor.

4

make يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل بأكثر من صيغة:

1. make + مفعول + (to) المصدر بدون
- We make our children read simple stories.

2. make + مفعول + adjective
- The actor's new film made him famous.

3. Make + مفعول + adjective + (to) + المصدر
- The internet makes it easy to communicate with our friend.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

1 Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!

- تستخدم (others) بمعنى الآخرين وتشير إلى الاسم المذكور قبلها (people).

2 people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, introducing new ideas into English.

- الجملة أصلها

people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, who introduce new ideas into English.

- حذف الضمير واستخدمت صيغة (verb + ing) لأن الجملة مبنية للمعلوم.

3 Talia couldn't understand what the problem was

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الجملة (فاعل + فعل) بعد أداة الاستفهام (الربط) (what) لأن الجملة فى الصيغة الخبرية وليست الاستفهامية.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 An international medical was established for the interchange of new ideas and concepts.

a) meeting b) conference c) interview d) appointment

2 Most villages in Upper Egypt are now by roads.

a) connected b) contacted c) communicated d) chattered

3 The internet has become part of all young people's life.

a) every day b) everyday c) day d) days

4 My parents always me do my homework before I go to bed.

a) make b) advise c) blame d) attract

5 I have to look my best as I'm having a/an for a new job.

a) review b) conference c) interview d) meeting

Answers 1 b) 2 a) 3 b) 4 a) 5 c)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 A/An is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites.
a) picture b) emoji c) number d) intent

2 Our boss is very, he doesn't call anyone by their first name.
a) normal b) cheerful c) patient d) formal

3 Mrs Ashraf at her children, who were getting mud all over their clothes.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

4 Sayed Darwish was one of the greatest of the 20th century music.
a) poets b) editors c) explorers d) innovators

5 Our neighbour is an excellent who teaches French at Cairo University.
a) linguist b) astronomer c) astronaut d) biologist

6 Education must be about skills learning as well as development.
a) unlikely b) improbably c) necessarily d) excitedly

7 The couple were sitting close together, talking in low
a) sounds b) tones c) intentions d) notes

8 Most people nowadays are aware of some of the rules of healthy living.
a) improper b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic

9 Television, radio and other forms of mass have made the world a global village.
a) link b) connection c) affection d) communication

10 People whose job staying up late suffer a lot in life.
a) acquires b) inquires c) requires d) expires

11 A is a young person between thirteen and nineteen years old.
a) kid b) teenager c) grown up d) toddler

12 Some recent studies against drinking too much caffeine.
a) recommend b) intend c) expect d) warn

13 The cost of the trip is 100 pounds for and 50 pounds for children.
a) sons b) friends c) adults d) doctors

14 Being tall gave the young player a/an over the other players.
a) disadvantage b) danger c) advantage d) experience

15 I drank coffee with my friend and about our experiences at work.
a) shouted b) chatted c) yelled d) read

16 Choosing a new car is a matter of preference which differs from one to another.
a) personal b) personnel c) public d) general

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 She warned us not to go too close to the fire. The verb "warn" is a synonym for the verb "……".
a) apply b) ignore c) deny d) alert

18 There was an …… of fear on the child's face when she saw the lion.
a) express b) expression c) expressive d) excessive

19 I usually use Facebook and Twitter to …… in touch with all my friends.
a) lose b) miss c) pass d) stay

20 I really …… upset when father cancelled our trip to Alexandria because he had to go to work.
a) went b) turned c) got d) grew

21 The police fired a number of …… shots to make the people move away.
a) warn b) warning c) warring d) cautious

22 A customer service clerk must be good at dealing …… people of different ages.
a) in b) at c) with d) of

23 My daughter is in the habit of …… a selfie in each place she visits for the first time.
a) taking b) doing c) drawing d) making

24 Working hard all the year round will help you …… all exams.
a) succeed b) pass c) fail d) degrade

25 He seemed to approve of my choice. The verb "approve" is an antonym for the verb "……".
a) agree b) accept c) frown d) expire

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 She lacks the most basic skills necessary for the job. The synonyms for the word "basic" are …… .
a) minor b) primary c) extra d) unnecessary e) main

27 It was obvious from her …… that she didn't like my idea.
a) tone b) sound c) breathing d) voice e) shout

28 When I was in Paris, I …… a selfie in front of the Eiffel Tower.
a) did b) took c) made d) leave e) had

29 Most people now accept that computers are a part of our …… life.
a) yearly b) everyday c) daily d) helpful e) strange

30 Mona spent a long time talking …… her grandmother as she likes her much.
a) about b) to c) for d) with e) in

(B) Language



Reported speech الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر)

Reported imperatives, requests, suggestions and advice:

(الأمر والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة):

1 يتكون فعل القول فى الجملة الأمرية من أحد الأفعال الآتية:

advise	ينصح	invite	يدعو
ask	يسأل	order	يأمر
encourage	يشجع	teach	يعلم
expect	يتوقع	tell	يخبر
help	يساعد	want	يريد
instruct	يوجه/يعلم	warn	يحذر

2 لا نجد علامات الاقتباس فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها ب to/not to ثم المصدر.

3 إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا فنحول الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضى لكن بعد to/not to فلا يوجد إلا المصدر.

- "Stop talking."
- The teacher told/asked/ordered us to stop talking.
- "If I were you, I'd have a holiday and relax."
- My mother advised me to have a holiday and relax.
- "Don't waste time."
- My father advised me not to waste time.
- "Study science at university."
- Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university.

لاحظ:

- لكى تختار بين to أو not to يجب أن ترجع بالجملة إلى أصلها قبل التحويل فهناك أفعال ممكن أن تحتار فى الربط بعدها لأن المعنى بالعربى يمكن أن يتماشى مع الجملة مثل:

- He warned his daughter (to/not to) walk in the dark alone.

- فلربما تترجم وتقول «هو حذر ابنته أن تمشى فى الظلام» وتختار to وهذا خطأ لأن أصل الجملة إما مثبت فنختار to أو منفى فنختار not to وأصل الجملة هنا هو «Don't walk ...» فيكون الاختيار بالطبع not to.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flight attendant instructed us our safety belts before takeoff.
 a) not to fasten b) fastening c) to fasten d) don't fasten
2. My friend encouraged me nervous before the sports match.
 a) not to be b) to be c) be d) that I be
3. Ola advised Reham the hotel her CV to apply for the job.
 a) not to send b) to send c) sending d) to sending
4. Fatma advised Huda revising for the test.
 a) not to start b) starting
 c) that she starting d) to start
5. The teacher warned the students to write their name at the top of the page.
 a) to forget b) forgetting
 c) not to forget d) that they forget

Answers 1) c 2) a 3) b 4) d 5) c

could/couldn't have + past participle
should/shouldn't have + past participle

1 Possibility in the past الاستطاعة أو احتمالية حدوث شيء في الماضي

Rule	Usage
could + inf.	• refers to the general ability to do something in the past. استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي (مقدرة بدون مجهود).

Example • Our team could beat the star team last week.

للمقدرة في موقف معين نستخدم: was/were able to – managed to

• Sameh and Kareem played a match yesterday. Kareem played well, but Sameh managed to beat him.

Rule	Usage
could have + P.P.	• to say that something was possible in the past. شيء كان ممكنًا حدوثه في الماضي (احتمال ضعيف) تساوى might.

Example

• He could have bought these eggs when he went out this morning.

وتستخدم مع الحالة الثالثة من if لتعبر عن شيء كان من المحتمل أن يحدث.

- Ahmed could have passed the exam if he'd studied a bit more.

Rule	Usage
could have + P.P.	• to say that someone had the ability to do something that they didn't do. كان في مقدور شخص أن يفعل شيئًا، ولكن لم يفعل، وتستخدم للانتقاد أحيانًا.

Examples

- She could have bought a new phone, but she didn't.
- He went to school on foot, but he could have gone by train.
- You didn't visit me, but you could have at least phoned me.

2 Impossibility in the past

عدم الاستطاعة أو عدم احتمالية حدوث شيء في الماضي

Rule	Usage
couldn't + inf.	• unable to do something in the past. عدم استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي.

Example

• I couldn't get the full mark in Maths yesterday as the exam was for giants.

Rule	Usage
couldn't have + P.P.	• to say that something wasn't possible in the past. شيء لم يكن محتملًا حدوثه في الماضي أو مستحيلًا.

Example

• You couldn't have seen Dina today because she is in Germany at the moment.

- لاحظ أن معنى couldn't have + P.P هو نفس معنى الاستنتاج المنفي في الماضي can't have + P.P.

could (Present) استخدام could فى المضارع

Rule	Usage	Examples
Could + subj. + inf.?	طلب مؤدب	Could you buy me two kilos of sugar?
Subj. + could + inf.	اقتراح	You could study science at college. You could buy a new car.
could ... or ...	أكثر من اقتراح	You could come with us or you could stay here.
could	للتوصيات	You could visit the citadel. It's interesting.

لاحظ أن should/ ought to/ must أقوى من could للاقتراح والتوصية والنصيحة.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was so sick yesterday that I get out of my bed.
 a) can't b) couldn't
 c) shouldn't d) could

2. The copier isn't working. You the ink correctly.
 a) shouldn't have changed b) could change
 c) couldn't have changed d) could have changed

3. I can't play football now, but I when I was younger.
 a) couldn't b) could have
 c) should have d) could

4. He at work yesterday. I looked for him in all buildings.
 a) shouldn't have been b) could have been
 c) couldn't have been d) could be

5. He failed the exam, but he it. It's all his own fault.
 a) shouldn't have passed b) could have passed
 c) passed d) couldn't have passed

Answers 1 b) 2 c) 3 d) 4 c) 5 b)

3 should/shouldn't have + P.P. for regrets

للندم

Rule	Meaning
should have + P.P. ought to have + P.P.	• to talk about regret in the past. للتعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغى فعل شىء لم نفعله).
e.g. He should have studied harder to pass the exam.	
shouldn't have + P.P. oughtn't to have + P.P.	• to say that something in the past wasn't a good idea. شىء حدث فى الماضى ولم يكن واجبًا فعله.
e.g. I shouldn't have insulted him. He was angry and I'm sorry.	

Check Point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The report is late. It on his desk by 2 o'clock.
 a) shouldn't have been b) should have been
 c) could have been d) could be
2. Ahmed rode his bike in the middle of the road. He that.
 a) couldn't have done b) should have done
 c) could have done d) shouldn't have done
3. I missed the meeting in Assuit. I an earlier train.
 a) should have caught b) shouldn't have caught
 c) needn't have caught d) could have caught
4. You those books back to the library two days ago. You'll be fined.
 a) shouldn't have taken b) should have taken
 c) could take d) couldn't have taken
5. Ramy the pencil case at his sister. He might have harmed her.
 a) should have thrown b) should throw
 c) shouldn't have thrown d) couldn't have thrown

Answers 1 b) 2 d) 3 a) 4 b) 5 c)

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 **A:** I can't decide what to make for dinner tonight.
B: You meat or chickens with some soup.
a) couldn't make b) could make c) could have made d) should have made

2 They to China a year ago because of COVID-19.
a) couldn't have gone b) could go
c) should have gone d) should go

3 Fatma phoned me before going out. It was desirable.
a) shouldn't have b) could have c) should have d) must have

4 I was sitting at the back of the theatre and very well.
a) shouldn't hear b) can't hear
c) shouldn't have heard d) couldn't hear

5 She warned her daughter near the campfire because it was dangerous.
a) not to go b) to go c) that she go d) going

6 Ahmed's father advised him the front door at night.
a) locking b) that he locking c) to lock d) for locking

7 Samir was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He anybody.
a) couldn't have beaten b) could beat
c) can beat d) shouldn't beat

8 He much harder during the term. He wasted much time.
a) should work b) shouldn't have worked
c) could work d) should have worked

9 My brother to Cambridge University, but he decided to study in Egypt.
a) shouldn't have gone b) could have gone
c) could go d) couldn't have gone

10 When you go to Paris next month, you with my cousin.
a) should have stayed b) could have stayed
c) could have stayed d) could stay

11 Sara's mother warned her the oven because it was hot.
a) not to touch b) to touch c) touching d) don't touch

12 You yourself yesterday. It was the right thing to do, but you didn't do it.
a) could behave b) ought to have behaved
c) shouldn't behave d) shouldn't have behaved

13 The situation was bad, but it worse.
a) could have been b) should have been
c) shouldn't have been d) could be

14 The tour guide warned the tourists into the desert on their own.
a) going b) to go c) that they go d) not to go

15 I that hat. I'd look silly and people would laugh at me.
a) could have worn b) could wear
c) couldn't have worn d) should have worn

16 I wasted the time doing nothing at the airport. I a book to read.
a) shouldn't have brought b) should have brought
c) could bring d) should bring

17 Galal was lucky. He hurt himself when he fell, but he was OK.
a) could b) should have c) couldn't have d) could have

18 What made the police suspicious مرتاب was that I the number of my own car.
a) shouldn't have remembered b) should remember
c) couldn't remember d) could have remembered

19 You his phone ringing. He hasn't got a phone.
a) couldn't have heard b) could have heard
c) should have heard d) shouldn't have heard

20 You bought a new camera, which wasn't necessary. I could have lent you mine.
a) should have b) could have c) shouldn't have d) must have

21 She to the restaurant if she'd left work earlier.
a) couldn't have come b) could have come
c) could come d) should come

22 Why did you tell your friends about the secret? You nothing about it.
a) should have said b) couldn't have said
c) shouldn't have said d) couldn't say

23 you possibly give me a lift to the next village?
a) Didn't b) Shouldn't c) Should d) Could

24 **A:** I bought a sweater at H&M last Friday.
B: You have bought it on Friday. H&M is shut on Fridays.
a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) must d) should

25 Ahmed's had another accident. He till the main road was clear.
a) could wait b) shouldn't have waited
c) ought to have waited d) should wait

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 It wasn't good of you to leave me in that critical situation. You me at least.
a) could phone
b) could have phoned
c) should phone
d) shouldn't have phoned
e) should have phoned

27 Choose the best two correct answers:
a) I warned my daughter not to walk in dark streets alone.
b) I warned my daughter to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
c) I warned my daughter to walk in dark streets alone.
d) I warned my daughter not to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
e) I warned my daughter not to walking in dark streets alone.

28 Two of the answers to the following sentence are grammatically incorrect:
Yasser was ill and stayed in bed, so he to Aswan with his friends.
a) couldn't have gone
b) shouldn't have gone
c) can't have gone
d) could have gone
e) couldn't go

29 Choose the best two correct answers to the following sentence:
The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody escape.
a) managed to
b) should
c) must
d) was able to
e) could

30 Two of the answers to the following sentence are grammatically correct:
The building was empty when the firemen entered. The workers through the exit doors.
a) couldn't have escaped
b) could have escaped
c) shouldn't have escaped
d) can't have escaped
e) were able to escape



General Exercises
(Lessons 1&2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young couple gave each other some at Christmas.
a) prizes b) gifts c) awards d) columns

2 Many people don't buy newspapers any more as they read them
a) outline b) inline c) offline d) online

3 The postman brought a/an and some letters for you.
a) icon b) sale c) parcel d) invention

4 I selling my car. It was the worst decision I've ever made.
a) regret b) rejoice c) recommend d) please

5 It is said that dolphins use sound to with each other.
a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link

6 All staff members are expected to attend the next important about the company's future.
a) conference b) interview c) meeting d) appointment

7 You should for the job of a receptionist in person as there will be a primary interview.
a) reply b) apply c) comply d) imply

8 My mother upset when I told her that I lost my mobile at school.
a) went b) turned c) got d) fell

9 Nader have carried the desk by himself. Someone must have helped him.
a) shouldn't b) should c) could d) couldn't

10 **A:** I had to walk home yesterday. I had no money for my fare.
B: Why didn't you tell me! I you the money!
a) shouldn't have lent b) couldn't have lent
c) could have lent d) could lend

11 Peter wasn't at the scene of the crime, so he have been guilty.
a) couldn't b) shouldn't c) could d) should

12 You look tired! You to bed earlier last night.
a) must have gone b) shouldn't have gone
c) should have gone d) might go

13 Emad have seen Ali yesterday as Ali left Cairo a week ago.
a) couldn't b) could c) shouldn't d) mustn't

14 His health condition got worse and worse. He a doctor earlier.
a) shouldn't have seen b) ought to have seen
c) could see d) shouldn't see

15 Ola left school before the end of the day. She was punished.
a) could have been b) must be c) should have d) shouldn't have

16 This team have trained well otherwise, they would have won the game.
a) could b) should c) couldn't d) shouldn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A desert is a special region where only certain kinds of plants and animals can survive. All deserts have very little water. This means that only animals and plants that can do without water for long periods of time can exist in the desert. Plants in the deserts are particularly adapted to the dry and hot environment. One well-known desert plant is the cactus. Like many desert plants, this plant has very tiny leaves. As plants lose most of their water through their leaves, the small leaves of the cactus help to cut down water evaporation. There are other desert plants that do not have leaves at all. Some desert plants survive by avoiding the dry season altogether. During the dry season, this plant remains as a seed and does not emerge from the soil at all. When the rains come, this seed would grow very quickly into a plant. It would bloom rapidly and then scatter its seeds before the dry season returns.

Desert animals have also learnt to adapt well to life in this region. The camel, for example, survives well in the desert because water can be stored in its body. Other desert animals include rodents. These animals need very little water as they can get all the water they require from their food.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The climate in the desert is
- a) mild and windy
- b) hot and dry
- c) rainy and windy
- d) hot and wet

2 The plants found in the desert must have
- a) long leaves to store water in them
- b) deep roots to get water easily
- c) either tiny leaves or no leaves at all
- d) few leaves

3 To avoid the dry season, some plants
- a) remain as seeds and do not emerge from the soil
- c) drink much water throughout the year
- b) hide under other plants to get protection
- d) remain in far and wet regions under the sand

4 The antonym for the word "include" is "..... ".
- a) enclose
- b) consist
- c) contain
- d) exclude

B) Answer the following questions:

5 What kind of animals and plants can exist in the desert?

.....

6 How is having tiny leaves helpful to the plant living in the desert?

.....

7 **Get words from the passage that mean:**

a) appear b) small animals that have long sharp front teeth

8 What do you think of the people who would like to live in the desert? Why?

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Although using abbreviations and emojis is not acceptable in any formal learning or writing, most young people use them in their everyday chats with their friends.

2. Learning foreign languages especially English widens the horizon and scope of learning. That's because most of the researches and information on the internet are written in English.

3. Competition in our modern life affects everybody in society and sometimes leads to evil deeds. Greed for money and power is the root of many crimes.

4. Physical fitness, healthy food, and reasonable weight are fixed criteria for good health. These are advised by all doctors and medical researchers.

5. Sports teach us discipline, the value of time, and team spirit which help us to overcome every challenge and achieve success in our life.

6. Most young people today are substandard in culture and knowledge. That's because they neglected reading and even watching cultural programmes.

B) Translate into English:

١- أصبح تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية جزءًا هامًا من التعليم فى كثير من الدول، وذلك لأنها لغة دولية تساعد فى كثير من الأغراض العلمية والترفيهية.

٢- يجب أن يختار كل شخص الوظيفة التى تناسب قدراته وتميزه عن الآخرين؛ ولا يبحث فقط عن الوظيفة ذات المرتب الكبير حتى يحقق النجاح فى الحياة.

٣- أظهرت أزمة فيروس كورونا أهمية التعاون بين الدول المختلفة لحل المشكلات الخطيرة، وأهمية المنظمات الدولية كمنظمة الصحة العالمية التى تنظم الجهود للتغلب على هذا الفيروس.

٤- يحصل الأبطال المصريون فى الألعاب الفردية على الميداليات والكئوس، ومع ذلك لا يلقون الاهتمام والدعم مثل الألعاب الجماعية التى لم تحقق الكثير من الإنجازات الكبيرة.

Enrich your vocabulary

challenge	التحدى
competition	المنافسة
criteria	معايير
culture	الثقافة
deeds	أفعال
evil	شرير
fixed	ثابت
greed	الجشع
individual games	الألعاب الفردية
knowledge	المعرفة
neglect	يهمل/يتجاهل
reasonable	معقول
root	جذر/أصل
salary	المرتب
substandard	ذو مستوى متدنٍ
suit	تناسب
support	الدعم
team games	الألعاب الجماعية
World Health Organisation	منظمة الصحة العالمية

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your friend wants to improve his/her English and asks your advice the best ways to do so. Give him your advice."

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary



Vocabulary on Reading

anymore (adv)	لم يعد
debate (n)	مناظرة
dictionary (n)	قاموس
disagree (v) (d)	يعترض/لا يوافق
findings (n)	اكتشافات
grandparents (n)	أجداد
headline (n)	عنوان
modern (adj)	حديث/ عصرى
prefix (n)	بادئة (مقطع يُضاف لأول الكلمة)
procedure (n)	إجراء
proper (adj)	مناسب/صحيح
receive (v) (d)	يتسلم/يتلقى
society (n)	مجتمع
suffix (n)	لاحقة (مقطع يُضاف لآخر الكلمة)
uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح
word (n)	كلمة

Vocabulary on Listening

blog post (n)	منشور على مدونة
check (v) (ed)	يراجع/يفحص
cite (v) (d)	يستدعى
conclusion (n)	خاتمة
frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر
image (n)	صورة
key (adj)	رئيسى
partner (n)	شريك/رفيق
section (n)	قسم
sub-heading	عنوان فرعى
thesaurus (n)	موسوعة مفردات
tips (n)	نصائح

Workbook Vocabulary

age (n)	عمر/عصر
aim (n)	هدف
Angles (n)	قبائل الأنجلو الإنجليزية
comment (n) (v) (ed)	تعليق/يعلق
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
Greek (adj)	يونانى
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية هليكوبتر
hobby (n)	هواية
interest (n) (v) (ed)	اهتمام/يثير اهتمامًا
Latin (n) (adj)	اللغة اللاتينية/لاتينى
member (n)	عضو/فرد
powerful (adj)	قوى ذو نفوذ
recognisable (adj)	يمكن تمييزه/مميز
record (n) (v) (ed)	سجل/يسجل

remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/يظل
report (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/يبلغ عن تقرير
result (n)	نتيجة
reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام
Romans (n)	الرومان
Russian (n) (adj)	روسى
Saxons (n)	قبائل الساكسون الإنجليزية
site (n)	موقع
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
title (n)	عنوان
Vikings (n)	غزاة الشمال (الفايكنج)

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at that time	فى ذلك الوقت	in general	بشكل عام
do the same	يفعل نفس الشىء	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
ever since	منذ ذلك الحين	make different sounds	يصدر أصواتًا مختلفة
feel special	يشعر أنه مميز	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	take ... away	يأخذ بعيدًا عن
give an opinion	يعطى رأيًا	that's why	لهذا السبب
add to/into	يضيف إلى	suitable for	مناسب لـ
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	talk about	يتحدث عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
aim	يهدف	aim	هدف	aimless	بلا هدف
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	compared	مقارن
disagree	لا يوافق/يعترض	disagreement	عدم اتفاق	disagreeable	غير مستحب
find	يجد	finding	اكتشاف	found	مكتشف
interest	يثير الاهتمام	interest	اهتمام	interesting interested	شيق مهتم
recognise	يتعرف على/يميز	recognition	تمييز	recognisable	مميز يمكن تمييزه
record	يسجل	record	سجل	recorded recordable	مسجل قابل للتسجيل
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	----------	

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
compare	يقارن	contrast/analyze	discard/neglect يستبعد/يهمل
debate	مناظرة	argument/controversy	agreement/harmony اتفاق/انسجام
interest	اهتمام	concern/passion	indifference/boredom لا مبالاة/ملل
modern	حديث/ عصرى	contemporary/ modernised	old/ancient قديم
procedure	إجراء	method/proceeding	inaction/inactivity عدم إجراء/عدم نشاط
proper	مناسب/صحيح	convenient/suitable	improper/inappropriate غير مناسب
recognisable	مميز	definite/obvious	ambiguous/indefinite غامض/غير محدد
report	يبلغ	inform/record	hide/conceal يخفى
summarise	يلخص	sum up/compile	expand/enlarge يوسع
survey	دراسة/تقييم	analysis/inquiry	negligence إهمال

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I a bill containing 10% service for the new bed I bought.
 a) received b) delivered c) sent d) designed
2. Parents should teach their children to have a/an behaviour with strangers.
 a) probable b) improper c) proper d) careless
3. I recommend this book to anyone with an in chemistry.
 a) intention b) interest c) invention d) exploration
4. Facebook and Twitter are the most famous social websites.
 a) competition b) service c) course d) media
5. It's important that you always follow the correct of doing research.
 a) concept b) means c) procedure d) provision

Answers 1) a 2) c 3) b 4) d 5) c

Reading Text (1)

Pre-reading question:
- What do you know about Shakespeare?

Shakespeare and the English language

Language is always changing, and new words are created all the time. We need new words to describe new technology, ideas, and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But when everyone started doing it, the word 'selfie' became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries[1] in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they remove words and phrases that we don't use anymore[2].

(1) قواميس
(2) لم يعد
(3) بادئة
(4) لاحقة
(5) غير مريح/غير مرتاح

Shakespeare was a great innovator with language, and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, changing nouns into verbs, and connecting words to make new words. He also added prefixes[3] and suffixes[4], for example, he created 'uncomfortable[5]' from 'comfortable'.

Today the language that Shakespeare used can sound difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

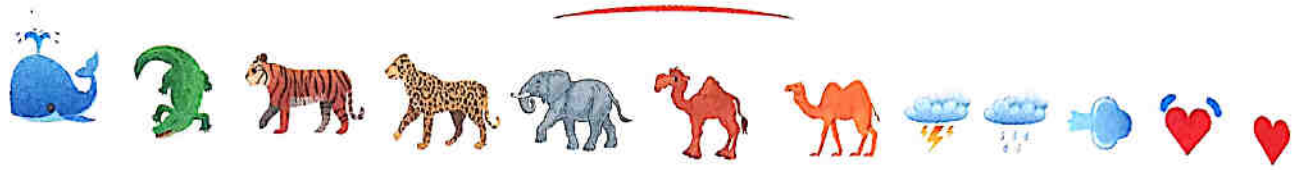
Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

Post-reading question:
- Why was Shakespeare considered innovative?

Reading Text (2)

Pre-reading question:
- How old were you when you sent your first message?

Emoji fun!



Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone. The problem is, there are no words[1], just a long line of emojis. This is confusing[2] because our grandparents[3] think the messages were from me! Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?

When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis rather than proper[4] words to communicate what they want to say.

But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate. With text messages, children can receive[5] and read replies which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel special and they will want to communicate more.

So, instead of taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message".

(1) كلمات
(2) مربك
(3) أجداد
(4) مناسب/صحيح
(5) يتسلم/يتلقى

Post-reading question:
- Why should we give the phones to our children much often?

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Endless change

The Romans spoke a language called Latin[1] and they first took it to the country they called *Britannia* almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from Germany when people called *Angles* and *Saxons* arrived about 500 years later. Soon the *Land of the Angles* became known as England and the English have been using and misusing[2] foreign words ever since.

For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all come from *Old Norse*, which was the language spoken by the *Vikings*[3] who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the French, who arrived in 1066.

Unlike the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meanings. French words are recognisable[4] because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a mansion[5], which is a French word.

In the modern age, we often reuse[6] old words from the past to make new international words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopter[7] is Greek and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a Russian speaker living in America.

(1) اللغة اللاتينية

(2) إساءة استخدام

(3) غزاة الشمال (الفايكنج)

(4) مميز/يمكن تمييزه

(5) قصر

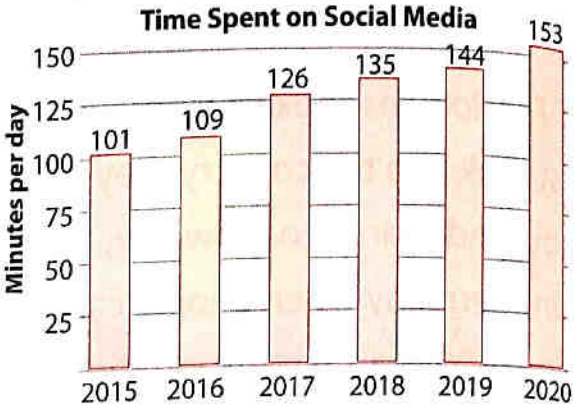
(6) يعيد استخدام

(7) طائرة مروحية هليكوبتر

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

How to write a brilliant blog

1. ☑ Choose an interesting title.
2. ☐ Don't worry about spelling grammar or punctuation mistakes.
3. ☐ You shouldn't use images or photos.
4. ☐ Include a few links to other sites.
5. ☐ Don't organise your ideas dearly.
6. ☐ Give your personal opinion.



The aim of this report is to summarise(1) the findings of the survey(2) into the time students spend using social media(3).

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and disliked about using it. We recorded(4) our results and compared(5) them.

Most of the students that we spoke to were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully.

Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported(6) that at least one member of their family had made a negative comment(7) about it.

However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it.

Most students used social media on their phones. The students used social media to keep in touch with(8) their friends, and to follow their interests(9) or hobbies.

In general(10), students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

(1) يلخص
(2) دراسة/تقييم
(3) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
(4) سجل
(5) قارن
(6) أخبر
(7) تعليق
(8) يبقى على اتصال مع
(9) اهتمامات
(10) بشكل عام

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:
- Do you usually write blog posts?

Speaker 1: Tips[1] on how to write a successful blog post:

1. Start with your topic. Think about what will interest and inform your reader.
2. Start with a headline[2] for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the sections[3] of your blog. Add a sub-heading[4] for each section/new point.
5. Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images[5] where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
7. Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use 'we'.
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently[6]. Use an online thesaurus[7] to avoid repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them?
10. Cite[8] all your sources of information.

(1) نصائح
(2) عنوان رئيسى
(3) أقسام
(4) عنوان فرعى
(5) صور
(6) بشكل متكرر
(7) قاموس موسوعى
(8) يستدعى

Post-listening question:
- What sources of information would you resort to for your blog post?

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is no reason to doubt the information in the articles above.
 a) searched b) removed c) proved d) cited
2. Passengers complained that trains were cancelled.
 a) properly b) rarely c) frequently d) politely
3. I just had time to scan the newspaper before leaving for work.
 a) captions b) headlines c) articles d) analysis
4. Advertising is a/an element in the success of a product.
 a) key b) minor c) unimportant d) conducted

Answers 1) d 2) c 3) b 4) a

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

debate مناظرة	discussion of a particular subject that often continues for a long time and in which people express different opinions
procedure إجراء	a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way
headline عنوان رئيسى	the title of a newspaper report, which is printed in large letters above the report
blog مدونة	a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject, to which new information is added regularly
thesaurus موسوعة مفردات	a book in which words are put into groups with other words that have similar meanings

Notes on Vocabulary

1 prefix

البادئة هى جزء من كلمة تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا ومنها (mis – re – un)، واستخدام كل منها كما هو موضح بالجدول:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples			
mis	تعطى معنى يسىء	misunderstand	يسىء الفهم	misuse	يسىء الاستخدام
re	تعطى معنى مرة ثانية	reread	يعيد قراءة	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
un	تعطى العكس	undo	يلغى العمل	unrecognisable	لا يمكن تمييزه

suffix

اللاحقة هى مقاطع تضاف إلى آخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديدا أو لتحديد نوع الكلمة، ومنها (able - er - less)، واستخدام كل منها كما هو موضح بالجدول:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples			
able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	understandable	يمكن فهمه	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	carer	مهتم/مراعٍ	writer	كاتب
less	تعطى العكس	careless	غير حريص	useless	بلا فائدة

2 debate

مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون

- The two politicians السياسيان will have a debate about their different economic ideas.

discussion مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شىء مهم)

- Our English teacher sometimes starts his lesson with a short discussion about the new topic.

3 society

المجتمع (عموم الناس الذين يربطهم قانون واحد وتنظيمات واحدة)

- The Egyptian society has been shocked by the violent murder.

community

المجتمع / الجالية / جماعة (الناس الذين يعيشون فى منطقة أو مدينة واحدة)

- The president met representatives of the Egyptian community in New York.

4 **title**

١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/ مسرحية)
- The title of the play we study this year is "King Lear".
- The title "Mrs" is used with a married woman.

٢- لقب
- My father's official title is the editor of the newspaper.

٣- مسمى وظيفى

address

١- عنوان (مكان)
- I wrote my address in detail in the application form.

٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى
- You shouldn't post your website address on unknown pages.

٣- خطاب/يخاطب
- The manager addressed the clerks in his first speech.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

..... and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else.

- تستخدم (else) بعد تعبيرات تحتوى على (some - any - no).

He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, ...
So, instead of taking phones away from children, ...

- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد حروف الجر.

Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone.

- تستخدم صيغة المفرد وليس الجمع (four-year-old) فى التعبير السابق لأنها تعتبر صفة لكلمة (sister).

..... we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media.

- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (spend).

..... and most of the students did not want to stop using it.
Most students used social media on their phones.

- تستخدم (most of the) بمعنى (معظم) عند التحدث عن فئة محددة.
- تستخدم (most) بدون (of the) بمعنى (معظم) عند التحدث عن مجموعة عامة.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The of the newspaper's main articles are usually at the front page.
 a) addresses
 b) titles
 c) ranks
 d) awards
2. There was a series of between the two main candidates of the elections.
 a) discussions
 b) debates
 c) fights
 d) battles
3. I asked the customer service clerk about the of the bank's new branch.
 a) address
 b) title
 c) rank
 d) award
4. After a long with his father, Ahmed agreed to wash the car himself.
 a) debate
 b) fight
 c) discussion
 d) dispute
5. The government built a new hospital to serve the rural near the Siwa Oasis.
 a) society
 b) government
 c) community
 d) business

Answers 1) b 2) b 3) a 4) c 5) c



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 All over the world, there is a great whether we should use animals in scientific research or not.
a) agreement b) debate c) search d) meeting

2 The house where my lived is being demolished because it was old.
a) grandchildren b) sons c) grandparents d) visitors

3 The newspaper about the match was so exciting that I read it twice.
a) image b) report c) conference d) document

4 The manager hopes he will become a in our company.
a) part b) surgeon c) servant d) partner

5 This of the hypermarket sells meat products like hot dogs and burgers.
a) college b) centre c) section d) sale

6 The of the research is to find new ways of cleaning polluted water.
a) report b) procedure c) article d) aim

7 The minister was asked about the pay increase but made no
a) comment b) winning c) content d) symbol

8 Scientists the results of both scientific experiments carefully.
a) completed b) compared c) conduct d) coded

9 Stamp collecting has been a of mine since I was a child.
a) lobby b) challenge c) hobby d) game

10 The young painter paints real of working-class communities.
a) photos b) images c) accounts d) descriptions

11 The doctor advised her to in bed for a week after the surgery.
a) remain b) remind c) last d) stop

12 The referees the times of all competitors to decide the winner.
a) resulted b) explored c) deployed d) recorded

13 The of the final exams will be announced tomorrow.
a) reasons b) purposes c) status d) results

14 To be successful, the of a sports team must cooperate with each other.
a) organs b) callers c) members d) helpers

15 I recommend that you buy a more computer to get the project ready soon.
a) helpless b) powerful c) updated d) ancient

16 I've read one of Naguib Mahfouz's books, but I can't remember the
a) title b) address c) speech d) text

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 We contrasted the two characters of the story. The word "contrast" is similar in meaning to the word
a) compare b) sum up c) decrease d) reduce

18 My hometown is hardly to me as I last visited it in 2001.
a) recognise b) recognition c) recognisable d) unrecognised

19 I don't have any suit which is suitable the party.
a) for b) about c) on d) over

20 The two boys had a major over who should clean their father's car.
a) disagree b) disagreement c) disagreed d) disagreeable

21 Girls like to special, so they often buy new clothes and accessories.
a) feel b) make c) work d) help

22 Do you want to add your name the waiting list for the tickets?
a) with b) for c) in d) to

23 The journalists who attended the conference notes of the most important points.
a) filled b) drew c) gave d) took

24 The blood samples have been sent away for analysis. The noun "analysis" is the opposite of the noun "..... ".
a) intention b) application c) survey d) negligence

25 My younger sister always asks me to her my opinion of her clothes.
a) take b) give c) receive d) deliver

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 In modern times, advances in technology have made the world smaller. The antonyms of the adjective "modern" are
a) updated b) old c) fashionable d) ancient e) helpful

27 Angela Merkel, the German leader, has been one of the most politicians in Europe.
a) extra b) available c) important d) additional e) powerful

28 The of the educational survey will be published online.
a) reasons b) failures c) findings d) explorations e) results

29 Recycling is an excellent for getting rid of toxic waste.
a) procedure b) operation c) forum d) process e) seminar

30 It is important to in touch with the latest technology.
a) play b) keep c) make d) leave e) stay

(B) Language

Important Notes

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

1 could/could have for other usages

Rule	Usage
could be (inf.) might be (inf.) may be (inf.)	When we are uncertain about something at present. عندما نكون غير متأكدين من شيء فى المضارع.

Example

- **A:** Where is dad? **B:** I don't know. He could be at the swimming pool or in the park.

Rule	Usage
can't have + P.P. couldn't have + P.P.	I'm certain that something didn't happen. (past deduction). شيء لا يمكن أن يكون حدث فى الماضى (استنتاج قوى فى الماضى).

Example

- She can't have left the house yet because her car is still outside.

Rule	Usage
could have + P.P. may have + P.P. might have + P.P.	The speaker is not sure whether something happened or not. المتحدث غير متأكد مما إذا كان شيء ما قد حدث أم لا.

Examples

- The copier isn't working. It might have run out of paper.
- She could have gone to the shops. I'm not sure.

Rule	Usage
could + inf.	After wish/If only to refer to the present and the future If ⟶ past simple ⟶ could + inf. بعد wish/if only للتعبير عن أمنية فى المستقبل أو المضارع، وجواب شرط الحالة الثانية بعد If.

Examples

- I wish/If only I could play the piano.
- I wish I could help, but I am so busy that I don't have the time.
- He could go with us if he weren't ill.

Rule	Usage
could have + P.P	After wish/If only to refer to the past If ⟶ past perfect ⟶ could have + P.P. بعد wish/ If only للتعبير عن أمنية لم تتحقق أو ندم فى الماضى. وفى جواب شرط الحالة الثالثة بعد if.

Examples

- She wishes she could have come last Friday.
- I wish I could have helped but I was so busy that I didn't have the time.
- If he had finished earlier, he could have come with us.

Rule	Usage	
couldn't + inf.	It was forbidden/against the law.	لم أستطع لأنه كان غير قانونى.

e.g. I couldn't park in Adly Street as it wasn't allowed.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They at school. I'm not sure.
 a) could still be b) are still c) have still been d) must still be
2. Ali to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed!
 a) can travel b) can't have travelled
 c) must travel d) should have travelled
3. Why didn't Salah come to our party? He have forgotten or travelled.
 a) should b) might c) must d) mustn't
4. Last week, we enter the train without a face mask. It was against the law.
 a) mustn't b) can't c) couldn't d) shouldn't
5. If Yasser hadn't missed the ticket, he the train on time.
 a) can't have taken b) must have taken
 c) couldn't have taken d) could have taken

Answers 1 a) 2 b) 3 b) 4 c) 5 d)

2 should for advice/ should have for regret

	Advice	Regret
Advice/ Regret	**should/ ought to/ had better + inf.** •They should (ought to) help the poor. •We shouldn't waste our time. •They ought to study hard. •He had better not use the phone a lot.	**should/ought to/ have +P.P** •You should (ought to) have gone to bed earlier last night. •I shouldn't (oughtn't to) have wasted my time.

Should + inf. for prediction

should + inf. ought to + inf.	to make a prediction للتنبؤ توقع حدوث شيء بحلول وقت معين فى المستقبل (من المفترض/لازم).

e.g. Osama should arrive soon. He left office at 6.

Passive

عند استخدام modal verbs فى المبنى للمجهول إذا كان بعدها المصدر نستخدم be + P.P. وإذا كان بعدها have نستخدم been + P.P. بعد have.

Examples

- The Pyramids could be visited tomorrow. We aren't sure.
- The bills should have been paid two weeks ago.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They are our best friends. They be invited to the party.
 a) can't b) should c) shouldn't d) might
2. Ahmed to live without a job even if he has got a lot of money.
 a) shouldn't b) had c) oughtn't d) mustn't
3. You your friend yesterday as he was in a big problem.
 a) should have helped b) should help
 c) could help d) oughtn't have helped
4. You waste your time or money.
 a) should b) may c) can't d) shouldn't
5. He have worn such heavy clothes. It wasn't cold outside.
 a) could b) shouldn't c) must d) might

Answers 1 b) 2 c) 3 a) 4 d) 5 a)

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I have booked the tickets last week. I was lazy and now I regret it.
a) can't b) should c) couldn't d) shouldn't

2 You have shouted at your sister. You knew it would make her unhappy and it was the wrong thing to do.
a) couldn't b) could c) shouldn't d) ought to

3 You the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.
a) could have caught b) could catch
c) might catch d) shouldn't have caught

4 You have seen Hady in the park this morning. We were in Cairo together.
a) should b) might c) must d) couldn't

5 He have asked me before he took my bike. I'm annoyed.
a) oughtn't b) should c) needn't d) must

6 He have been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work.
a) can't b) must c) could d) might

7 Ali have forgotten about the meeting. I told him this morning.
a) can't b) must c) might d) should

8 I more quickly if my suitcase hadn't been heavy.
a) could walk b) could have walked
c) walked d) shouldn't have walked

9 You have been rude to him. He did nothing wrong.
a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) can't d) should

10 We have donated some money to the poor. It was the right thing to do but we didn't do it.
a) ought to b) shouldn't c) must d) might

11 He a lawyer, but he didn't and lost the case.
a) might have consulted b) must have consulted
c) consulted d) could have consulted

12 She's late. She have taken the wrong road.
a) might not b) may c) can't d) should

13 I have eaten so much chocolate! I feel sick!
a) couldn't b) could c) should d) shouldn't

14 They smoke there. They weren't allowed.
a) can't b) must c) couldn't d) might

15 He have been more tolerant. Everyone was angry with him.
a) must b) ought to c) shouldn't d) might

16 We were totally free. We what we wanted.
a) couldn't have done b) should do
c) couldn't do d) could do

17 **A:** How did the robbers get in?
B: We don't know yet. The old woman have forgotten to lock the door.
a) must b) might c) can't d) should

18 You have taken this job. I can see you're not enjoying it.
a) couldn't b) should c) shouldn't d) could

19 If I had known about the traffic problems, I a different route.
a) could take b) might have taken
c) might take d) couldn't have taken

20 He been working in the garage when we arrived. That might be why he didn't hear the bell.
a) could have b) has c) can't have d) shouldn't have

21 My uncle said that he go to Italy in June or July.
a) can b) might c) needs to d) would

22 Now, you're in a bad need of money. You saving money years ago!
a) should have started b) could start
c) must have started d) might have started

23 Noha have left earlier. She missed her flight.
a) might b) must c) should d) shouldn't

24 We the game, even if we'd wanted to. It was raining very hard and we had to stop.
a) could finish b) couldn't have finished
c) should finish d) shouldn't have finished

25 Our neighbours have cut down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree.
a) should b) couldn't c) can't d) oughtn't to

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 Don't ring the doorbell when you get there. Ola's little baby sleeping.
a) may be b) can't be c) may not be
d) will be e) should be

27 Salah should have saved much money to buy a new car. This means that he it.
a) didn't buy b) regrets buying c) regrets not buying
d) saved but didn't buy e) was wrong to buy

28 I called her but there was no answer. She for Alexandria.
a) has probably left b) should have left c) may have left
d) can't have left e) might have left

29 Fady his exam as he seems happy.
a) could have passed b) shouldn't have passed c) could pass
d) can't have passed e) may have passed

30 He his exams. I'm not sure.
a) must have finished b) can't have finished
c) shouldn't have finished d) might have finished
e) could have finished

(C) Communication Skills

(I) Language Skills

Note
لمزيد من التدريبات على المهارات
يرجى الرجوع الى ملحق المهارات
الجزء الخاص بـ Integrated Skills

Communication

Communication is simply the act of transferring information from one place, person or group to another.

Every communication involves (at least) one sender, a message, and a recipient. This may sound simple, but communication is actually a very complex subject.

The transmission of the message from sender to recipient can be affected by a huge range of things. These include our emotions, the cultural situation, the medium used to communicate, and even our location. The complexity is why good communication skills are considered so desirable by employers around the world: accurate, effective and unambiguous communication is actually extremely hard.

Categories of communication

1. **Spoken or verbal communication**, which includes face-to-face, telephone, radio or television and other media.
2. **Non-verbal communication**, covering body language, gestures, how we dress or act, where we stand, and even our scent. There are many subtle ways that we communicate (perhaps even unintentionally) with others. For example, the tone of voice can give clues to mood or emotional state, whilst hand signals or gestures can add to a spoken message.
3. **Written communication:** which includes letters, emails, social media, books, magazines, the internet and other media. Until recent times, a relatively small number of writers and publishers were very powerful when it came to communicating the written word. Today, we can all write and publish our ideas online, which has led to an explosion of information and communication possibilities.
4. **Visualisations:** graphs and charts, maps, logos and other visualisations can all communicate messages.

Reference: https://www.skillsyouneed.com/ips/what-is-communication.html

(II) Writing

Blog post writing

Write a blog post on the topic of mobile phone use and its effects today.

Tips for writing the essay:

Consider the following points:

- What is a healthy amount of time to spend using your phone?
- What are the effects of spending too much time on your phone?
- What solutions or advice can you offer your reader on how to use their mobile phone in the most positive way?

Mobile phone! Take care!

Yesterday I phoned my friend Nahla to ask her about the title of our English assignment this week. Her phone was busy. I continued to try to get her on the phone, but it was busy for 6 hours. Imagine! She had been talking with a friend all that time. Although there is no exact amount of time set for using your phone, experts warn us not to use a mobile that long.

Spending too much time on your phone has dangerous effects on your health as well as your social life. People who use their phones for long suffer health problems such as sleep trouble and obesity. In addition, it can take you away from your family and friends.

There are some things you can do to use your mobile phone positively. You can use it to communicate with your friends, but don't forget to get together with them. You can use it to play games, but don't neglect physical exercises. In short, you should make your mobile phone a means to be controlled, not a device to be controlled by.

(III) Speaking Skills

A debate:

Debating is the art of discussion aiming to persuade the other to accept your points regarding that you have to listen to his/her points of view too.

Debating in a polite way that may help the two sides to reach a reasonable result or decision.

- There are general rules when debating:

A) Express your views or opinions without prejudice تحيز.

B) Listen to the other side interestingly without ignorance.

C) If you don't reach your goal from debating don't claim that you are right.

- Try to find answers to the following questions:

1. What kind of debating do you prefer to have? Why?
2. If the other side is stubborn, do you give up or continue to persuade him?
3. At the end of the debate, if you find out that your opinion is wrong, will you confess? Why?

Practice

Complete the following dialogue:

Mohsen and Nader are debating bout fast food.

Mohsen : Welcome Nader, I think fast food is harmful. I don't like eating it.

Nader : I don't agree with you. Why do you say this?

Mohsen :

Nader :?

Mohsen : Another thing, it may be not clean, you don't see it while it's being cooked.

Nader : In my opinion, it's not harmful if you choose the place at which you buy it.

Mohsen : What else do you say?

Nader :

Mohsen : I respect your view, but I can't stand eating fast food.

Nader :

General Exercises
(Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I asked my friend about the of this week's writing as I was absent.
a) address b) title c) speech d) location

2 On board, we were given the usual talk on safety by the hostess.
a) procedures b) research c) technology d) boot

3 Experts advise all people to eat meals instead of fast-food takeaways.
a) probable b) vague c) void d) proper

4 Some sociologists carried out research into the roles of men and women in today's
a) organisation b) society c) community d) aspect

5 The of your essay should be clear and brief so that readers finally understand your view.
a) introduction b) extension c) conclusion d) start

6 Social are changing the way people communicate, work, and shop.
a) service b) media c) status d) work

7 The interview with the new minister was on the front page of the newspaper.
a) summarised b) expanded c) reduced d) increased

8 The hospital conducted a/an asking patients to suggest ways in which the service could be improved.
a) inspection b) search c) survey d) estimation

9 I'm really cold! I have brought my coat.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) should d) might

10 If I had gone with my friends to the Red Sea, I scuba diving lessons.
a) must have taken b) can't have taken
c) could take d) could have taken

11 Really, I can't remember you but you me.
a) must have met b) can't have met
c) might have met d) must met

12 Ahmed waited for you outside for long and was angry. You to have met him.
a) oughtn't b) should c) ought d) must

13 **A:** I threw your old books into the recycling bin.
B: Oh, no! You have done that. I need some of them for school.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) can't d) couldn't

14 I wonder why Ali hasn't come to my party. I suppose he have received the invitation.
a) must b) might not c) might d) shouldn't

15 You believe everything you read in the newspapers.
a) need b) must c) aren't d) shouldn't

16 Tamer walked into a wall. He have been looking where he was going.
a) couldn't b) must c) might d) could

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Albert Einstein found school very difficult. His teacher **would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently** while she waited for him to answer her questions. But Albert always had to think about many things before he could answer. After all, he would say to himself, there are many different things to think about before you can say anything is absolutely certain. When his teacher wasn't asking Albert a question, Albert would think of a question to ask her. And often when he did, she would get red in the face and angry at Albert for thinking up questions she couldn't answer. The more Albert learned, the more he found to think about. The more he thought about, the more questions he thought of to ask.

He knew that the Earth, other planets, the moon, and the sun are just part of what we call the universe. He knew that the universe is also made up of all the stars we can see with our eyes and millions and millions more than we can see only with the largest telescopes. He thought there must be some rules to explain why everything in the universe acts as it does. Finally, he believed he had some of the answers. And then people started asking him questions because he had answers for many things that scientists had been trying to figure out for many, many years.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The phrase "**would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently**" means
a) she was very happy b) she was very angry
c) she was very ill d) she was bored with teaching

2 When he was young, Albert Einstein
a) didn't care about learning b) was very stupid
c) always made his teacher cry
d) was clever enough to think about everything

3 If Albert Einstein's teacher hadn't raised questions, ...
a) Albert would have asked her difficult questions
b) Albert would have left the class happily
c) Albert would have been angry
d) Albert wouldn't have answered them

4 The best title to the passage is "……".
a) Albert Einstein's stupidity
b) Albert Einstein and his teacher
c) Albert Einstein and his deep thinking
d) Albert Einstein's early childhood

B) Answer the following questions:

5 What discoveries did Albert Einstein come up with?

……

6 **Get words from the passage that mean:**
a) unable to wait calmly to people's annoying behaviour
b) solution

……

7 What would you do with lazy students if you were a teacher?

……

8 What can governments do to encourage science and scientists?

……

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Experts warn all people not to post a lot of personal information on Facebook and Twitter. This can be misused by criminals and enemies as well.

……

2. Most famous people have their own Facebook pages in which they post their news and pictures. These blogs are followed by millions of people around the world.

……

3. Corruption and indiscipline are the main factors that lead to the deterioration of our economy. That's why the government is trying hard to fight them.

……

4. The champions who won medals in the last Olympics proved that the Egyptians are able to do wonders despite their present hardships. They only need facilities and encouragement.

……

5. Disputes and wars in the whole world have resulted in many problems. One of them is the problem of refugees which increases every day.

……

6. Cooperation and teamwork are two necessary qualities for the success and progress of any society. They must be taught at an early age.

……

B) Translate into English:

١- يحذر الخبراء من استخدام الأطفال المفرط للإنترنت؛ لأن ذلك يؤدى إلى آثار سيئة على صحتهم؛ لذا يجب تعليمهم ترشيد هذا الاستخدام.

……

٢- إن تطوير التعليم من أهم القضايا التى تهتم بها الحكومة، وهذا يساعد على خلق أجيالٍ قادرة على مواجهة التحديات المعاصرة وبناء مجتمع منتج يتسم بمهارات القرن الحادى والعشرين.

……

٣- للأصدقاء تأثير كبير فى حياة المراهقين؛ لذلك يجب على الآباء تشجيعهم على الصحبة الجيدة، فالصديق الجيد يساعد الشخص على النجاح فى الحياة.

.....

٤- تحاول الحكومة إيجاد حلول غير تقليدية لمشكلة الطاقة؛ لذلك تتوسع فى إنشاء محطات الطاقة الشمسية، وبدأت فى إنشاء محطة الضبعة للطاقة النووية.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

champions	أبطال	progress	التقدم
corruption	الفساد	qualities	صفات/سمات
disputes	نزاعات	rationalise	يرشد
facilities	تسهيلات/إمكانيات	refugees	اللاجئون
hardships	صعوبات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
indiscipline	عدم انضباط	terrorism	الإرهاب
nuclear	النووية	untraditional	غير تقليدية
overuse	الاستخدام المفرط		

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The reasons for happiness differ from person to person."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

King Lear Exercises
(Act II, Scene i)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young man has been on suspicion of using a stolen credit card.
 a) arrested b) rewarded c) offered d) demanded
2. A is someone who is very poor and lives by asking people for money or food.
 a) teller b) beggar c) blogger d) follower
3. The first reports about the plane crash were met with and people refused them.
 a) rejoice b) belief c) disbelief d) cheer
4. My mother has always remained to the good values she learned as a child.
 a) hateful b) lawful c) legal d) faithful
5. The stadium was protected by armed police during the match for security measures.
 a) gangs b) enemies c) guards d) workers
6. My eldest son has his mother's patience.
 a) merited b) inherited c) harmed d) tricked
7. Nobody could her to change her mind to leave the job.
 a) persuade b) reject c) defy d) deny
8. The spies were accused of..... against the country.
 a) potting b) putting c) plotting d) parting
9. The little girl closed her eyes and to be asleep.
 a) prohibited b) inhibited c) attended d) pretended
10. There was a rise in the company's this year. They made good money.
 a) profits b) losses c) publicities d) publishers
11. Parents often give their children for passing exams.
 a) awards b) rewards c) punishments d) medals
12. The old man was killed with a to the heart by a fierce criminal.
 a) pull b) stick c) slab d) stab
13. The ferry was about to leave the when the machine broke down.
 a) platform b) port c) pavement d) road
14. If new employees are unable to carry out their they may be fired.
 a) meals b) rights c) duties d) offices

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Building the New Capital in Egypt took a great of time and effort.
 a) part b) quality c) quantity d) deal
2. Our team has won six basketball in the local championships.
 a) titles b) names c) headings d) tours
3. My wife wasn't well enough to visitors, so we cancelled the party.
 a) receive b) deliver c) invite d) enlist
4. Opening remarks are important since they set the for the rest of the job.
 a) music b) tone c) sign d) report
5. My cousin, Sameh has a for making friends easily.
 a) prize b) present c) gift d) reward
6. The story of the murder was important enough to make the
 a) scenery b) divisions c) addresses d) headlines
7. The architect drew the new shopping centre in
 a) section b) selection c) progress d) capital
8. The runner won a gold medal and broke the Olympic by 44 records.
 a) prize b) report c) record d) medal
9. He joined the Egyptian Cancer to be able to help other people.
 a) Community b) Society c) District d) Area
10. The advertisements are intended to improve the company's
 a) photo b) location c) site d) image
11. The narrow windows in the walls little light into the room.
 a) expects b) regrets c) admit d) makes
12. Keeping the accounts is part and of my job.
 a) whole b) parcel c) pixel d) lance
13. My application got lost in the, so I wasn't on the list of applicants.
 a) post b) past c) drawer d) message
14. The news is shocking, but we may find out that the stories we've heard so far are just the of the iceberg.
 a) top b) middle c) bottom d) tip
15. The lion, the tiger, and the cheetah are of the cat family.
 a) ancestors b) organs c) members d) grandchildren

16 Her basket was filled groceries.
a) in b) for c) by d) with

17 Don't just sit there in silence; something.
a) say b) speak c) talk d) tell

18 Jehan on taking a taxi to the airport.
a) warned b) suggested c) insisted d) advised

19 The dentist me to brush my teeth twice a day.
a) permitted b) advised c) suggested d) complained

20 Do they sell clothes here?
a) childrens' b) childrens c) childrens's d) children's

21 Baher said he ill the previous week.
a) would be b) had been c) will be d) has been

22 We donated some money to a charity that helps homeless.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

23 The students were made the homework twice as a kind of punishment.
a) to do b) doing c) did d) to doing

24 The building was designed a Spanish architect.
a) of b) with c) from d) by

25 You collect me from the bus stop. I can take a taxi home.
a) don't have b) needn't c) mustn't d) couldn't

26 Because he's rich, ... he thinks he can do anything he wants.
a) so b) but c) nothing d) that why

27 One thing that bothers me when people talk on their cell phone in a restaurant.
a) is b) it's c) nothing d) that's

28 One of my close friends some advice.
a) needs b) need c) is needing d) are needing

29 I have no idea where
a) were he born b) did he bear c) he was born d) was he born

30 **A:** If I get sick and can't come to work, what?
B: Phone to tell us you're sick and we'll find someone to replace you.
a) does happen b) happens c) would happen d) will it happen

Test 4

Based on Unit 4

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "indifference" is an antonym for the word "……".
 a) trick b) negligence c) interest d) disrespect
2. Children must be taught the …… rules of hygiene and sanitation at school.
 a) fictional b) extra c) additional d) basic
3. The teacher …… angrily at the lazy student who said that he didn't bring his book to school.
 a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced
4. The intense social …… about women's role in rural communities shall never end.
 a) debate b) agreement c) search d) meeting
5. You must be careful when you write any …… on Leila' s page. She is very sensitive.
 a) content b) winning c) symbol d) comment
6. Our neighbour is a kind man and he has a …… to make people happy.
 a) prize b) gift c) present d) reward
7. We lost the game yesterday, but we …… have won. We were the better team.
 a) shouldn't b) should c) must d) can't
8. We looked for Kamal everywhere, but we …… him.
 a) couldn't find b) could find
 c) could have found d) shouldn't have found
9. As soon as I walked into the room, I …… gas.
 a) could have smelt b) must have smelt
 c) can't have smelt d) could smell
10. Many people are demanding that something …… about the problem.
 a) should have done b) should do
 c) should be done d) shouldn't be done
11. Reham …… have got my message. Otherwise, she would have replied.
 a) mustn't b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) could
12. It rained every day during their holiday, so they …… have had a very nice time.
 a) can't b) must c) should d) could

13 We went the wrong way and got lost. We have turned right, not left.
a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) should d) can't

14 Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You have stayed with Tamer.
a) shouldn't b) might c) must d) could

15 We didn't know where Mohamed was, but we find him in the end.
a) could b) were able to c) should d) might

16 You could have left your phone at work. This means
a) it's impossible that you left it there b) it's necessary that you left it there
c) it's advisable that you left it there d) it's possible that you left it there

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Glass is a pure compound of sand melted at a very high temperature with the help of catalysts. Silicate, the main component of sand, is heated till it is red-hot. When it has been sufficiently heated, it is wound around a blowing pipe. Specially trained men, who have learnt to control their intake and output of air, will then blow cups, bowls, vases, and bottles from the heated silicate. These men never make a mistake while blowing glass, for any deviation from their methods could burst their lungs or seriously harm their internal organs. Glass makers work for years before achieving the status of master craftsmen. They join the glass works from a young age, working for minimal pay as apprentices. They soon learn the trade and become ordinary craftsmen. With the benefit of practice and experience, they will one day become master craftsmen. If a particular cup or vase requires a special rim or design, the master craftsman will handle it himself. Otherwise, mass-produced glasses may be moulded in die casts.

Great patience is needed to make a glass, for after it is shaped and left aside to cool, it has to be given along interval to 'contract'. If it is not 'aged' sufficiently, it will crack and disjoint.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main component of sand is
a) glass b) bottles c) silicate d) cups

18 Glass makers become craftsmen
a) at a very early age b) after three-year experience
c) when they join glass works
d) after a lot of practice and experience

19 Someone who works for an employer for a fixed period of time in order to learn a particular skill or job is called a/an

a) apprentice
b) craftsman
c) patient
d) professional

20 One of the following isn't mentioned in the passage

a) making glass needs a lot of patience
b) making glass needs a lot of money
c) making glass needs a lot of experience
d) making glass needs a lot of heat

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What are the two compounds found in glass?

.....

22 What products can we get from the heated silicate?

.....

23 Get words from the passage that mean:

a) to become smaller or narrower
b) very small in degree or amount

.....

24 Can you find any other benefits of glass other than those which are mentioned in the passage?

.....

25 Translate into English:

- أن تكون غير أنانى ومتواضعًا وذكيًا وصبورًا فى ساعة المعاناة وقويًا فى وقت المشاكل وشخصًا مخلصًا ومحبًا، فأنت إذًا إنسان ناجح حقًا، وتتحلى بكثير من الصفات الحميدة.

.....

26 Translate into Arabic:

It is really hard to understand why some people enjoy dangerous hobbies such as mountaineering and motor racing. They can lose their lives in them.

.....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having free time is something you should value and spend in useful things."

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 5

Being smart online

Objectives

- Reading : An article about an online video channel; An Article about how to use the internet for research
- Writing : An email and an essay on how to use social media sensibly
- Listening : Two boys discussing how to use social media; Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young people
- Language : A presentation
- Speaking : Seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to
- Life skills : Critical Thinking; Resilience

Warm up

How was the internet helpful in this incident?









.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 1

Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary



Key Vocabulary

banner adverts (n)	إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)	subscribe (v) (d)	يشترك فى موقع
consult (v) (ed)	يستشير	take down (v)	يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	targeted advertising (n)	الدعاية الموجهة
download (v) (ed)	يقوم بتنزيل ملفات	update (v) (d)	يحدث
follower (n)	متابع	upgrade (v) (d) (n)	يرقى/ترقية
reliable (adj)	موثوق فيه	upload (v) (ed)	يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت
search result (n)	نتيجة البحث	up-to-date (adj)	حديث
sponsored adverts (n)	الإعلانات الممولة	views (n)	مشاهدات

Vocabulary on Reading

advertiser (n)	معلن	junk food (n)	الطعام السريع
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	keywords (n)	كلمات رئيسية
confused (adj)	مرتبك	knowledge (n)	معرفة
effectively (adv)	بفاعلية	mega meal (n)	وجبة كبيرة (بمطعم)
experience (n)	خبرة/تجربة	research (n)	بحث
extra (adj)	إضافى	resource (n)	منبع/مورد
honest (adj)	مخلص/أمين	save (v) (d)	يحفظ
information (n)	معلومات	scan (v) (ned)	يتصفح (يقرأ) للبحث عن شىء محدد

task (n)	مهمة
URL (uniform resource locator)	عنوان URL (على الإنترنت)
skim (v) (med)	يتصفح (يقرأ) بسرعة
smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكى
source (n)	مصدر

Workbook Vocabulary

musician (n)	موسيقار
obvious (adj)	واضح
perfect (adj)	كامل/تام
print (v) (ed)	يطبع
professional (n) (adj)	محترف/احترافى
provide (v) (d)	يوفر/يزود
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر (كتبًا/مجلات)
series (n)	سلسلة
sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
speed (n)	سرعة
spread (v)	ينشر
stamp (n) (v) (ed)	وسم/يوسم/يختم
steal (v)	يسرق
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
tips (n)	نصائح
trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة/يثق فى
version (n)	إصدار/نسخة (من برنامج)
access (n)	مدخل/إمكانية الوصول
adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم
app (n)	تطبيق
browser (n)	متصفح
button (n)	زر
character (n)	شخصية/حرف أو رمز بالكمبيوتر
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع
common (adj)	شائع
excuse (n)	عذر
fake (adj)	مزيف
identity (n)	شخصية/هوية
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر على
install (v) (ed)	يركب جهازًا/يثبت برنامجًا
instant (adj)	فورى/عاجل
Irish (adj)	إيرلندى
journalist (n)	صحفى
life (n)	حياة
moral (n)	مغزى/درس أخلاقى/خُلق

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر
do a history essay	يعد مقالًا تاريخيًا
do research	يقوم ببحث علمى
do things	يقوم بأشياء
adapt to	يتأقلم مع
careful about	حريص بشأن
find out	يكتشف
go online	يستخدم الإنترنت
have access to	يمتلك (يحصل على) وسيلة للوصول إلى
have experience in	لديه خبرة بـ
keep safe	يحافظ على آمنًا
knowledge of	معرفة بـ
full of	ممتلىء بـ
information about	معلومات عن
read on	يستمر بالقراءة
worry about	يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يتأقلم	adaptation	تأقلم	adaptable	متأقلم
advertise	يعلن عن	advertiser	معلن	----------	
		advertisement	إعلان		
apply	يطبق/يتقدم لوظيفة	application (app)	تطبيق/طلب وظيفة	applicable	يمكن تطبيقه
		applicant	متقدم لوظيفة		
browse	يتصفح	browse	تصفح	----------	
		browser	متصفح		
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعى
consult	يستشير	consultation	استشارة	consultative	استشارى
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه
subscribe	يشترك فى	subscription	اشتراك	----------	
suppose	يفترض/يظن	supposition	افتراض	supposed	من المفترض

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust/modify	reject/abandon يرفض/ينبذ/يهجر
fake	مزيف	forged/false	genuine/real أصلى/حقيقى
honest	مخلص/أمين	sincere/truthful	deceitful/dishonest مخادع/غير حقيقى
instant	فورى/عاجل	immediate/urgent	delayed/slow مؤجل/بطىء
obvious	واضح	apparent/evident	ambiguous/doubtful غامض/مشكوك فيه
professional	محترف	expert/experienced	amateur/incompetent هاوٍ/غير كفء
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy/respectable	dishonest/unreliable غير أمين/غير موثوق
speed	سرعة	quickness/acceleration	slowness/delay بطء/تأخير
task	مهمة	duty/strain	benefit/aid فائدة/مساعدة
upgrade	يرقى	promote/improve	reduce/decrease يقلل/يخفض

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can a copy of some programmes from many websites for free.
 a) load b) overload c) upload d) download
2. My parents always advise me to buy food from a shop or market.
 a) doubtful b) distant c) reliable d) disorganised
3. It is believed that yoga can help relieve stress
 a) affectingly b) effectively c) impressively d) excitedly
4. basketball players in America can earn huge sums of money.
 a) Professional b) Old c) Amateur d) Patient
5. The company had to hire an expert at computer to protect its systems from hacking.
 a) ware b) hardware c) software d) warehouse

Answers 1 d) 2 c) 3 b) 4 a) 5 c)

Reading Text (1)

Pre-reading question:
- How do you decide which website to choose when doing research?

Doing research online

Your teacher has given you a homework task[1]. Where do you start your research? The internet is very useful with lots of information, but how do you avoid spending hours reading unhelpful websites? Read on to find out how to use the internet effectively.

1 Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have experience[2] in or knowledge of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.

2 Think about who has written the website. Is it a company who may be trying to sell you something?

3 Check if the website is up-to-date[3]. Is the information still reliable[4] and useful? When was it updated[5]?

4 Always consult[6] more than one website. The advantage of looking at few different sites is that you can check the information and you may find extra facts.

5 What does the website look like? If it is badly designed and is full of grammar and spelling mistakes, then it is probably not very reliable.

6 Websites that have named their sources[7] are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.

7 Save the URL (uniform resource locator)[8] of any useful pages or images so you can find them easily.

(1) مهمة
(2) خبرة/تجربة
(3) حديث
(4) موثوق فيه
(5) محدث
(6) يستشير
(7) مصادر
(8) عنوان URL (على الإنترنت)

Post-reading question:
- How do you make sure the information you get from websites is reliable?

Reading Text (2)

Pre-reading question: - Do you think advertising products is important? Why?

Targeted advertising

Our computers and smartphones keep small pieces of information called cookies[1], which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. Cookies are meant to make it easier for us to find things that interest us, but they also help advertisers[2] to sell things to us. So, when we see an advert for something that seems to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called targeted advertising[3].

(1) ملفات تعريف الارتباط

(2) معلنون

(3) الإعلانات المستهدفة

(4) إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)

(5) الإعلانات الممولة

(6) نتائج البحث

Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can advertise to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large banner adverts[4] that always seem to appear on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the strangest places, like the small sponsored adverts[5] that you find in search results[6].

Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

Post-reading question: - How do advertisers know what we need?

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Are you internet smart?

Do you really know how to protect yourself online? There are several things you can do to stay safe.

- Choose a strong password. Did you know the most common password in the world is '123456'? The best passwords should have numbers, letters and even a special character e.g. TI342mS!* It will be easier to remember if you make it personal in some way.
- When you go online, make sure you have upgraded your browser[1] with the latest software update before you open a webpage.
- Be careful what you upload. Check what others can learn about you from what they can see behind you, and take down any photos you do not want others to download.

All of these tips[2] seem obvious[3], but you'll be surprised how many people are careless online. Stealing[4] someone's identity[5] is more common than you think. Do not make the mistake of thinking that it can't happen to you.

(1) متصفح
(2) نصائح
(3) واضح
(4) سرقة
(5) هوية



Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Don't believe everything you read!

The title of this article is a piece of advice which we may have heard from our parents or grandparents. Although it was true in the past, the speed[1] at which we have access[2] to new information means that this warning is even more important now.

In the past, professional[3] journalists[4] always checked the facts that they wanted to publish against at least two reliable sources to make sure the story was correct. Checking sources, and the time needed to print[5] something in a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was actually a day or two old.

Today the internet provides[6] instant[7] news and is a place where anyone can share information with the rest of the world at the touch of a button[8]. This means that journalists often need to publish their stories quickly, so fact-checking isn't as good as it is meant to be. This is why not everything you read is what it seems to be.

Even serious newspapers, which are supposed[9] to be reliable, can make mistakes. Shane Fitzgerald, an Irish sociology[10] student, wanted to test the influence of the internet. He posted a fake[11] phrase online. It was supposed to be something that a French musician who had recently died had said. Almost immediately several newspapers published the phrase and it was read all over the world.

The moral[12] of the story is to listen to those with more life experience than you and remember not to trust everything you read online without checking it first.

(1) سرعة

(2) مدخل/سبيل

(3) محترف

(4) صحفى

(5) يطبع

(6) يوفر

(7) فورى/عاجل

(8) زر

(9) من المفترض

(10) علم الاجتماع

(11) مزيف

(12) درس أخلاقى/مغزى

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How do these insects themselves to new environments?
 a) adapt b) adopt c) exchange d) update
2. An electrician is coming tomorrow to the new washing machine.
 a) break b) smash c) attach d) install
3. The main of the story is a rich man of about fifty years old.
 a) role b) character c) part d) servant
4. My friend's hobby is rare stamps of different countries.
 a) cutting b) dragging c) collecting d) detecting
5. He said that he hadn't understood the of the film.
 a) moral b) director c) aspect d) actor

Answers 1) a 2) d 3) b 4) c 5) a

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

consult يستشير	to ask for information or advice from someone
download يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت	to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer
reliable موثوق فيه	someone or something that is reliable can be trusted or depended on
take down يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت	to take something that you have posted online off the internet
update يحدث	to make something more modern and relevant by adding new information
upgrade يرقى/ترقية	to improve or make more efficient
upload يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت	to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet
up-to-date حديث	including all the latest information



Notes on Vocabulary

1

load
يحمل (بضائع/برامج)/ حمولة/ عبء

- The farmers were loading some vegetables into the cars.
- This program takes a while to load.

unload
يفرغ حمولة

- The driver unloaded some boxes from the back of the truck.

overload
يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)

- Be careful not to overload the washing machine.

download
يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت

- There are some games that can be downloaded free from the internet.

upload
يرفع إلى الإنترنت

- It might take 10 minutes to upload this video to the website.

2

effective
مؤثر/فعّال (له تأثير)

- The new vaccine is highly effective against the disease.

impressive
مؤثر (يترك/ترك انطباعًا جيدًا)

- The visit to Saint Catherine in Sinai was very impressive. I enjoyed it a lot.

affecting
مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)

- The film about the poor girl was so affecting that it made my mother cry.

3

experience
١- خبرة (اسم غير معدود)
٢- تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)

- He had no previous experience for the job he applied for.
- The two children in this story have suffered a lot from difficult experiences in their life.

experiment
تجربة (علمية/معملية)

- Scientists usually do experiments on animals for new medicines.

4 **publish**

مؤثر/فعّال (له تأثير)

- The novel was published last year.

spread

١- ينتشر/يمتد
٢- ينشر (خبرًا/إشاعة/مرضًا)

- Fire quickly spread through the building.
- The disease spread rapidly amongst the people of the village.
- How dare you spread such evil lies!

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر فى جواب الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (if).

- Is the information still reliable and useful?

تعامل (information) معاملة المفرد باستخدام الفعل (is) لأنها اسم غير معدود.

- Check what others can learn about you.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة الجملة (فاعل+ فعل) بعد (what) لأن الجملة فى الصيغة الخبرية.

- Stealing someone's identity is more common than you think.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb+ing) كفاعل للجملة بمعنى (سرقة) ولاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة المفرد (is).

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young woman was not accepted for the job because she lacks
a) condition b) experiment c) experience d) licence

2 Some diseases can by different insects such as flies and mosquitoes.
a) spread b) publish c) extract d) spray

3 Software updates can be from the company's website.
a) loaded b) overloaded c) uploaded d) downloaded

4 The poet's first book of poems for children was last year.
a) spread b) published c) sprayed d) defined

5 The most solution to traffic jam is to build more roads.
a) effective b) impressive c) affecting d) pleasant

Answers 1 c) 2 a) 3 d) 4 b) 5 a)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Al Ahram Organisation many modern stories by Egyptian writers.
a) spreads b) hides c) publishes d) believes

2 The company's name is across the top of the letters they send.
a) carved b) published c) printed d) spread

3 How do these insects themselves to new environments?
a) adapt b) adopt c) exchange d) update

4 Being successful is not an easy You should work hard.
a) right b) play c) section d) task

5 It might take two minutes to these photos to the website.
a) load b) download c) upload d) overload

6 Most websites use that enable them to show adverts.
a) comments b) posts c) cookies d) shares

7 The computer system is new, but so far it doesn't seem to be
a) available b) expectable c) avoidable d) reliable

8 advertising is those advertisements which appear to people out of their interest and activity on the internet.
a) Banner b) Commercial c) Amateur d) Targeted

9 Users have to pay to be able to the trial antivirus to the full version.
a) diffuse b) upload c) upgrade d) secure

10 Celebrities' posts on Twitter usually receive millions of of their fans.
a) sights b) views c) refuses d) excuses

11 will pay higher rates to advertise during prime-time entertainment shows.
a) Customers b) Consumers c) Advertisers d) Rivals

12 You can find the site by typing the 'forest bird' on the search page.
a) keys b) keywords c) images d) results

13 Young people get all their about politics from watching the television.
a) fancy b) concept c) election d) knowledge

14 China is a country which has few energy of its own.
a) stations b) reactors c) resources d) wells

15 I the waiting list quickly for my name.
a) scanned b) researched c) applied d) replied

16 The line at the Facebook post is usually 30 long.
a) personalities b) characters c) personnel d) photos

17 The actor was wearing moustache and beard for the role.
a) fake b) figured c) updated d) covered

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18 The text message was ambiguous as it was written in a secret code. The adjective "ambiguous" can be the opposite of the adjective
a) smart b) updated c) vague d) obvious

19 We must watch for our children who online a lot.
a) come b) go c) travel d) view

20 My young brother can play video games and talk on the phone the same time.
a) at b) in c) for d) by

21 Please, accept our sincere thanks. The adjective "sincere" is a synonym of the adjective
a) obvious b) fake c) honest d) clear

22 As a young actor, you have to be careful the roles you accept.
a) at b) on c) in d) about

23 You can run this on a computer and a mobile phone if you like.
a) apply b) application c) applied d) applicable

24 Nowadays, almost every young man or woman access to the internet through their mobiles phones.
a) do b) make c) have d) win

25 This essay can be considered a document for everyone who uses the social media.
a) consult b) consultation c) consultative d) consultant

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 The actor was wearing a fake moustache. The antonyms of the word "fake" are
a) real b) false c) genuine
d) forged e) main

27 As part of their test, a student must a 180-word essay to write before Friday.
a) design b) do c) make
d) write e) research

28 Sami through the television programmes in the local newspaper.
a) rejected b) skimmed c) tested
d) leave e) scanned

29 We removed the bath and a shower instead to make space.
a) expected b) perplexed c) put in
d) installed e) fixed

30 The secretary has the of preparing the agenda for the manager's meetings.
a) task b) passion c) profession
d) job e) mission

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

seem to/(be) meant to/(be) supposed to

1) seem/seems (to) + inf.

Rule	Usage
seem/seems to يبدو	• to talk about how something or someone appears to be. للحديث عن كيف يبدو شيء ما أو شخص ما وخاصة عندما لا نكون متأكدين تمامًا.

Examples

- Taha seems to like his new laptop.
- She hasn't said anything, but she seems to be having fun.
- seem to = it seems that + جملة.
- You seem to have lost weight. = It seems that you have lost weight.

2) be meant to + inf.

Rule	Usage
(be) meant to + inf. من المفترض أن	• to talk about what the purpose or truth of something should be. للحديث عن الغرض أو الحقيقة من شيء ما
The finished project is meant to be more than just a power station.	
(be) meant to + inf.	• to talk about something that is expected. للحديث عن شيء متوقع.
They were meant to arrive by now.	
(be) meant to + inf.	• to talk about something that is intended. للحديث عن شيء مقصود.
It was meant to be a chocolate cake, but I dropped it.	

- لاحظ أن be meant to مجهول ولذلك دائمًا قبلها المفعول، أما إذا كانت الجملة معلومًا فلا تسبق بـ v. to be ويكون الفاعل عاديًا ويكون معناها أن فلانًا قصد شيئًا من كذا، مثل:

Alexander the great meant Alexandria to be the capital of Egypt.

- وعند تحويلها للمجهول تصبح:

Alexandria was meant to be the capital of Egypt in the old ages.

3 be supposed to + inf.

Rule	Usage
(be) supposed to من المفترض أن	• to talk about obligation. للحديث عن الالتزام والاضطرارية
I'm supposed to cook dinner tonight.	
(be) supposed to	• to talk about what something or someone is likely or expected to do or be. للحديث عن شيء ما أو شخص ما يحتمل أو يتوقع أن يفعل أو يكون.
It is supposed to rain this afternoon.	
(be) supposed to	• to talk about arrangements. للحديث عن الترتيبات.
I'm supposed to meet my colleagues on Monday evening.	
(be) supposed to	• to talk about our beliefs about something. للحديث عن معتقداتنا عن شيء ما.
Samsung is supposed to be the best phone that you can buy.	

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can't join you for lunch. I'm attend a meeting in ten minutes.
 a) supposing to b) supposing c) supposed d) supposed to
2. He to have been studying for the test all night.
 a) is supposing b) supposed c) seems d) meant
3. The hospital to help the local people, but everyone came to it.
 a) supposed b) was meant c) is seemed d) was meaning
4. Clothes be getting more and more expensive all the time.
 a) seem to b) are supposed c) are meant d) want to
5. I am supposed for the job advertised in the local newspaper before next week.
 a) applying b) will apply c) apply d) to apply

Answers 1 d) 2 c) 3 b) 4 a) 5 d)

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The film to start at 8:30, but it didn't begin on time.
 a) seemed b) meant c) was supposed d) wanted
2. There were some problems at first, but they to have been solved.
 a) meant b) seem
 c) supposed d) will be supposed
3. I shouldn't eat too much. I to be on a diet.
 a) 'm supposed b) 'm not supposed c) seem d) was meant
4. Their food comes from the best restaurants in town. They to have plenty of money.
 a) seem b) mean c) supposed d) are supposing
5. The wedding to be a secret, so how did you find out about it? Did Leila tell you?
 a) meant b) is seemed c) was supposed d) was supposing
6. Ali always reaches his office before the appointed time. He to be enjoying his job.
 a) is meant b) seems c) supposed d) is seemed
7. It to be an apology but it only made her angry.
 a) is seemed b) is meant c) supposed d) was meant
8. Hoda to phone me last night, but she didn't.
 a) was supposed b) is supposed c) supposed d) is supposing
9. The boss is asking for a technician. The photocopier doesn't to be working.
 a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) need
10. The food to feed the poor, but everyone had a share of it.
 a) was meant b) was seemed c) was supposing d) is supposed
11. What are you doing at work? You to be on holiday.
 a) seem b) mean c) are meaning d) 're supposed
12. They stay at home all the time. They never to go anywhere.
 a) supposed b) seem c) are supposed d) are meant
13. Yasser's phone never stops ringing. He to know a lot of people.
 a) seems b) was meant c) was supposed d) is seeming
14. That piece of cloth to be a shirt, but the tailor made it a pair of trousers.
 a) seemed b) was meant c) supposed d) was supposing

15 My teacher is pleased with me nowadays. My English to be getting better.
a) was supposed b) is seemed c) seems d) means

16 The open space to be a playground for youth, but it has turned into a market.
a) seems b) meant c) supposed d) was meant

17 I'd better hurry. I to be meeting Ahmed in ten minutes.
a) seem b) 'm supposed c) was meant d) was supposed

18 The burglars must have come in through the window as the lock to be forced.
a) seems b) is meant c) is supposed d) needs

19 Mohamed is much better after his illness, but he's still to do any heavy work.
a) meant b) not supposed to c) seemed d) supposed

20 This is the second car she has bought this year. She to be rich.
a) supposes b) means c) seems d) supposed

21 Collecting money to make us happy, but to some people, it has become a mania.
a) means b) is meant c) is seeming d) supposed

22 His music seems to by the rock culture of the seventies.
a) influence b) be influencing c) be influenced d) being influenced

23 All my friends to congratulate me when I got married, but only a few of them phoned me.
a) were supposed b) seemed c) meant d) are supposed

24 If your car breaks down on the road, pull it aside. It to block the road.
a) is supposed b) is not supposed c) is meant d) is seemed

25 The Eiffel Tower to attract people to one of the exhibitions, but it has become one of the monuments.
a) was meaning b) seems c) was meant d) is supposed

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct.
a) Our guests were meant to come at 7:30, but they were late.
b) Our guests were seemed to come at 7:30, but they were late.
c) Our guests were supposed to come at 7:30, but they were late.
d) Our guests were seeming to come at 7:30, but they were late.
e) Our guests were supposing to come at 7:30, but they were late.

27 Two of the following answers give the same meaning of this sentence:
"We are supposed to wear a uniform at work." This means

a) it's necessary to do so
b) we aren't allowed to do so
c) it's impossible to do so
d) it's kind of us to do so
e) we are obliged to do so

28 Two answers to the following sentence are grammatically incorrect:
"You are supposed to obey your parents." This means that

a) it's predictable to do so
b) it's your duty to do so
c) it's forbidden to do so
d) it's advisable to do so
e) it's necessary to do so

29 Choose two correct answers to the following sentence:
"My friends to wait for 2 hours, but they left after an hour."

a) were supposed
b) are supposed
c) seem
d) meant
e) were meaning

30 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct.

a) He was meant to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
b) He was supposed to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
c) He was meaning to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
d) He seemed to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
e) He was supposing to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

General Exercises
(Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It wasn't easy for me to to the new regulations in our company's system.
a) adapt b) adopt c) admire d) admit

2 The famous singer has millions of on Instagram and Twitter.
a) chasers b) followers c) enemies d) opponents

3 To hear the full interview, ... to the free National Geographic News podcast.
a) subscribe b) describe c) inscribe d) prescribe

4 Customers gain to up-to-date information through a computer database.
a) recess b) exit c) access d) entry

5 I always use Google chrome as my default internet
a) image b) hardware c) media d) browser

6 The of the film was that crime does not pay.
a) aspect b) moral c) role d) start

7 The police are trying to discover the of the killer.
a) respect b) description c) identity d) prosperity

8 The program automatically your antivirus settings.
a) deteriorates b) outdates c) reverses d) updates

9 What to do to improve your memory?
a) you are supposed b) are you supposed
c) you are meant d) did you suppose

10 Khalid's little boy is a live wire! He plays all day and never to get tired.
a) seems b) supposes c) means d) wants

11 The Great Wall of China was to be a barrier between two cities, but it has turned into a tourist attraction.
a) supposing b) seemed c) meant d) meaning

12 We to go to the party but we got an important meeting.
a) seemed b) are supposed c) are meant d) were supposed

13 There to be so many choices and we've only got a limited amount of money.
a) is supposed b) meant c) seem d) is meant

14 Students are supposed to listen to the teacher's explanation. This is
a) not necessary b) obligatory c) predictable d) prohibited

15 I to buy groceries this Friday as my wife is ill.
a) suppose b) 'm supposing c) have supposed d) 'm supposed

16 What is the problem with her? I don't know, but she to have a high temperature.
a) seems b) is meant c) meant d) supposed

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Animals that sleep during the day and come out at night are called nocturnal. For desert-dwelling animals, being active at night allows them to escape the heat of the day and to conserve water. Many snakes and rodents are examples of desert animals that prefer the night.

The darkness of night makes it easier for some animals to escape predators, especially if the animal is dark enough to blend into its surroundings. Then there's the hedgehog, a small nocturnal mammal that rolls up into a ball of spiny hairs when danger comes near. Because it is active only at night, it can usually wander around unseen. The skunk, another nocturnal animal, has the most smelly way to defend itself. Its fur is mostly black, which blends in with the darkness.

Of course, there are predators that are especially adapted for night hunting, so no prey animal is safe simply because it's nocturnal. Owls and certain species of cats are very effective nocturnal hunters because they have great night **vision** and excellent hearing. Another predator that's well-known for its nocturnal behaviour is the insect-eating bat. Instead of using their eyes to hunt for an insect dinner they use echolocation. What is echolocation? It works like this: The bat emits a very high-pitched sound. The sound is so high that people can't even hear it. When the sound hits an object it bounces, or echoes, back. From the sound of the echo the bat immediately knows the object's size and location. Its echolocation can also determine if an object is a yummy insect or something that can't be eaten like a plant or a tree.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What is echolocation?

a) A way of making high-pitched sounds that bats use to communicate.

b) A method of making high-pitched sounds that bats use to avoid being eaten.

c) A high-pitched sound that helps bats fly after dark.

d) The ability to make a high-pitched sound that bats use to locate things in the dark.

2 Which is the best definition for the following?

For desert dwelling animals, being active at night allows them to escape the heat of day and to conserve water.

a) living or residing

b) nighttime hunter

c) heat-loving

d) healthy

3 Owls and certain species of cats can catch the prey easily because
a) they can fly easily at night
b) they both have feathers to leap silently down upon prey
c) they have great night vision and excellent hearing
d) they use echolocation

4 The synonym of the word "**vision**" is
a) the ability to hear
b) the ability to see
c) the ability to catch
d) the ability to think

B) Answer the following questions:

5 According to the information in the article, why are many desert snakes and rodents nocturnal?

.....

6 Which ways do bat and skunk have to survive at night?

.....

7 Is the nocturnal animal completely safe from being hunted? Why? Why not?

.....

8 Find words from the passage that mean:
a) move around aimlessly
b) protect

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. We should all be careful when we use the internet. Criminals hack people's personal information to use it in their crimes, especially about credit cards.

.....

2. Due to technology, advertising has become a real 'science'. Some colleges already created new departments which are specialised in this science.

.....

3. Mohamed Salah's great achievements encourage young people to work harder to reach their most difficult dreams. He also gives them hope for a better future.

.....

4. Egyptian history is full of great women who were ready to sacrifice their lives so that Egypt could get a better future. So we should all remember them.

.....

5. Studying the lives of great scientists and writers shows that we all should exert great efforts to succeed in life. It is said that "No gain without pain".

.....

6. Cairo Book Fair is one of the most important cultural events in the Arab World. It has many cultural activities such as conferences and seminars.

.....

B) Translate into English:

١- يجب ألا يصدق الناس أو يشاركوا كل ما يقرءون على صفحات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى فهى مليئة بالشائعات التى قد تدمر سمعة الناس واقتصاد البلاد.

.....

٢- تحلم جميع شعوب العالم بالسلام لذا يجب أن نعمل جميعًا على إنهاء الحروب التى تنتشر فى أجزاء كبيرة من العالم وخاصة عالمنا العربى.

.....

٣- للتليفزيون ووسائل الإعلام الأخرى أثر كبير فى تشكيل اتجاهات الأجيال الجديدة؛ لذا يجب حسن استغلالها لتوجيههم نحو التوجهات التى تفيدهم وتفيد بلدهم.

.....

٤- غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، وخاصة موقع فيسبوك، أسلوب تواصل الناس وخاصة الشباب؛ لذلك أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة الحديثة ولا يمكن للشباب الاستغناء عنها.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

achievements	إنجازات	exert	يبذل
attitudes	اتجاهات/مواقف	generations	الأجيال
communication	تواصل	peace	السلام
conferences	مؤتمرات	sacrifice	يضحى
cultural	ثقافى	seminars	ندوات
encourage	يشجع	good name	سمعة

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Many people should be thanked due to their efforts towards us."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary

شاهد فيديو الشرح
تطبيق الأضواء

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

addicted (adj)	مدمن
anyway (adv)	على كل حال
behaviour (n)	سلوك
birth (n)	ميلاد
brainstorm (n)	عصف ذهنى
connect (v) (ed)	يتصل/يوصل/يربط
criticise (v) (d)	ينتقد
cute (adj)	لطيف
develop (v) (ed)	يطور
entertain (v) (ed)	يسلى/يستضيف
exciting (adj)	مثير/رائع
fire (v) (d)	يفصل من العمل
forever (adv)	للأبد
forum (n)	منتدى
game (v) (d)	يمارس ألعاب الفيديو
imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
join (v) (ed)	يلتحق بـ
platform (n)	منصة/رصيف القطار
pleased (adj)	مسرور
privacy (n)	خصوصية
profile (n)	الملف الشخصى/التعريفى
programmer (n)	مبرمج
programming (n)	برمجة
safely (adv)	بأمان
sensible (adj)	عاقل
similar (adj)	مشابه
solve (v) (d)	يحل
support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/مساندة/يدعم
symbol (n)	رمز
take care (v)	يهتم
teen (n)	مراهق
victim (n)	ضحية

Vocabulary on Speaking

cons (n)	عيوب
each (pro)	كل
employee (n)	موظف
guide (n) (v) (d)	مرشد (كتاب إرشادى)/يرشد
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
order (n)	ترتيب
presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
pros (n)	مميزات
rank (n) (v) (ed)	رتبة/يضع فى رتبة (ترتيب)
unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب
useful (adj)	مفيد/نافع

Workbook Vocabulary

represent (v) (ed)	يمثل/ينوب عن
feelings (n)	مشاعر
register (v) (ed)	يسجل
purpose (n)	غرض
viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر
explain (v) (ed)	يفسر
highlight (v) (ed)	يسلط الضوء/عمل بارز
example (n)	مثال
linking word (n)	أداة ربط

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

after all	على أية حال
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ
do a blog post	يعد لمنشور على مدونة
for ages	لعصور (لفترة طويلة)
have a problem	لديه مشكلة
have an effect on	له تأثير على
in a few years' time	فى خلال سنوات قليلة
divided into	مقسم إلى
loads of	كثير من
in person	شخصيًا
in short	باختصار
keep in contact with	يُبقى على اتصال مع
keep ... entertained	يسلى/يجعلهم مسرورين
make rules	يعد القواعد
on your own	بمفردك
pay attention to	يهتم بـ
set of	مجموعة من
share with	يشارك مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
addict	يدمن	addiction	إدمان	addictive	مسبب للإدمان
				addicted	مدمن
connect	يتصل	connection	اتصال	connected	متصل
criticise	ينتقد	criticism	نقد/انتقاد	criticised	منتقد
employ	يوظف	employment	توظيف	employed	موظف
		employee	موظف		
entertain	يسلى	entertainment	تسلية/ترفيه	entertaining	مسلٍّ
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative	خيالى (مبدع)
				imaginary	خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)
register	يسجل	registration	تسجيل	----------	
represent	يمثل	representation	تمثيل/إنابة عن	representative	ممثل
----------		similarity	تشابه	similar	متشابه

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
criticise	ينتقد	condemn/blame	approve/praise يستحسن/يمتدح
cute	لطيف	attractive/charming	hateful/ugly كريه/قبيح
entertain	يسلى/يستضيف	amuse/satisfy	annoy/displease يضايق
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss/sack	employ/hire يوظف/يستأجر
highlight	يسلط الضوء على	focus	neglect يهمل
privacy	خصوصية	secrecy/solitude	publicity/socialness دعاية/شهرة/اجتماعية
register	يسجل	enroll/record	erase/eradicate يمحو/يزيل
represent	يمثل	serve/speak for	differ/oppose يختلف/يعارض
similar	مشابه	alike/related	different/opposite مختلف/مقابل
support	دعم	assistance/backing	discouragement/hindrance عدم تشجيع/إعاقة



Listening Text (1)

Pre-listening question:

- Do you agree on sharing your personal data online or not? Why?

Hamdi : Hey Khaled, can you help me? I'm doing a blog post on how to use social media well. Can you help me think of some interesting points to include please?

Khaled : Yes, sure. What have you got so far?

Hamdi : OK, I think I'm going to begin by talking about your profile(1). That's important on social media.

Khaled : Definitely!

Hamdi : Great! What shall I write?

Khaled : Well, I like seeing who I'm chatting with on social media, so I believe you should always put up a nice picture of yourself on your profile. I hate it when people have symbols(2) or something instead of their photo – you don't know who you are talking to.

Hamdi : I disagree; symbols tell you more about what someone thinks.

Khaled : Really, Hamdi? Well, I think it's important that people don't know too much. For example, in my opinion, it's a bad idea to include your date of birth(3) to show your age.

Hamdi : I see your point. Did you know that about 50% of teenagers have experienced bad behaviour(4) on social media? So, I think you're right not to give people too much information about yourself.

Khaled : After all, you have to be sensible(5) on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.

(1) الملف الشخصى

(2) رموز

(3) ميلاد

(4) سلوك

(5) عاقل

Post-listening question:

- Mention two ways of keeping your information safe online.



Listening Text (2)

Pre-listening question: - How do you use the internet? How long do you stay online?

Narrator 1

Dalida : Hi, I'm Dalida. I think the biggest effect that the internet has on young people is it keeps them entertained – there's always something to watch or listen to, and I'm never bored.

Narrator 2

Injy : Hi, I'm Injy. Like most of my friends, I think I'm addicted(1) to the internet. If I'm not checking my social media apps, I feel worried that I'm missing something important. It means I have a lot of arguments with my parents at mealtimes and when we go out together.

Narrator 3

Ayman : Hello. I'm Ayman. I am so pleased I have the internet to help me with my homework. Imagine(2) if you had to go to the library and read loads of books for every homework or project!

Narrator 4

Osama : Hi, my name's Osama. I game(3) online which is really fun, so I think the internet has a good effect on my life, but I do worry about my sister. She gets sad because she thinks her friends all have better lives than her and do more exciting things. She can't understand that they only post the good things and not the bad things.

Narrator 5

Girl 2 : Hi, Radwa here. I love the internet. I love computer programming(4) so I go on forums(5) to chat to other programmers(6) – students and people who do it for a job. I have learned so much. And if I have a problem that I can't solve to do with programming, someone on the forum can usually help me.

(1) مدمن

(2) يتخيل

(3) يمارس ألعاب الفيديو

(4) برمجة

(5) منتديات

(6) مبرمجين

Post-listening question: - How can social media affect us negatively?



Listening Text (3) (Workbook)

Hanan : Leila, did you see the post that Hany put up the other day about social media behaviour in Egypt?

Leila : No, I was too busy updating my profile. Do you know how difficult it is to take a good photo of yourself?

Hanan : I know what you mean. I just used a photo of my cat. Anyway(1), as I was saying, did you know that Hany's post said that 22 million people in Egypt connect(2) to one popular social media app every day?

Leila : Wow! That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media platform(3)! But getting back to your profile photo, why don't you use a photo of yourself?

Hanan : Don't you worry about what all those people might see on your profile? For example, imagine you post a photo of yourself doing something stupid now, and in a few years' time you apply for a job and the company look at your social media profile to see what kind of person you are. What opinion will they have of you?

Leila : I see your point, but in my opinion, social media should be personal and has nothing to do with your job.

Hanan : I disagree. I read about a man who was fired(4) from his job for criticising(5) his company on his personal profile. You can never be too careful. You don't know who might see your posts.

Leila : I didn't think posting a photo was so important!

Hanan : The thing is that as soon as you post something, it is there forever(6). So be careful with those selfies you're taking! Plus, Hany told me that he was once the victim(7) of bad behaviour after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans. He reported it and everything is fine now, but it really affected him at the time.

Leila : Wow! Well, I might think twice about updating my profile picture and just keep the photo of my dog. I think she's so cute and my selfies all look terrible anyway!

Hanan : I agree, I think your dog is lovely and it's a safer photo too.

Leila : Hey, look! Have you seen what Mona's wearing in the photo she's just posted?

(1) على أية حال

(2) يتصل

(3) منصة

(4) فصل من العمل

(5) نقد

(6) للأبد

(7) ضحية

Video Script

Social media can keep us in contact with friends, entertain[1] us and keep us up-to-date. So, it's important to know how to use it safely.

First of all, take care[2] with privacy[3] settings. Make sure that the only people who can see what you're posting are people who you want to contact online.

Think carefully about the information that you share. Why not use a nice image instead of your face in your profile? And never put real details about yourself online, such as your date of birth, school, home address or your telephone number.

Don't be unkind. If you haven't got anything nice to say, don't say anything. And always check that you know who you are sending messages to. Is it one person or a large group?

If you want to meet more people online, there are lots of groups that you can join[4]. Look for one with people who share your interests. But if anyone asks to meet you in person, tell an adult. Never meet them on your own[5].

(1) يسلى/يستضيف

(2) يهتم

(3) خصوصية

(4) ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ

(5) بمفردك

0:00

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The flag is a/an of our country so, we should all respect it.
a) status b) image c) symbol d) story

2 Ali has improved his since he joined the summer camp.
a) behaviour b) lecture c) culture d) rapture

3 The Ministry of Education have set up a special for online learning and communication between the teacher and the student.
a) pavement b) building c) platform d) facility

4 The World Economic is held in Davos at the end of January every year.
a) Club b) Championship c) Race d) Forum

5 Famous people don't want their to be invaded by reporters.
a) fame b) wealth c) privacy d) health

Answers 1 c) 2 a) 3 c) 4 d) 5 c)

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

behaviour سلوك	the things that a person or an animal does
profile الملف الشخصى	a short description that gives important details about a person
sensible عاقل	reasonable, practical, and showing good judgment
symbol رمز	a picture or shape that has a particular meaning or represents a particular organisation or idea
data of birth تاريخ الميلاد	the date in which someone was born

Notes on Vocabulary

1 **each**

نستخدم (each) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، واحد فى كلِّ مرة.

- He was holding a pen in each hand.
- The teacher will ask each student to hand his essay in person.

every

نستخدم (every) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معًـا، فى مجموعة تعنى (كل شىء) أو (الجميع) أو (الكل).

- Omar has seen a lot of films this month. He enjoyed every one of them.

2 **platform**

رصيف القطار

منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث)

منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعى)

- The Aswan train will depart from platform six.
- He stepped up onto the platform and looked out into the audience.
- With the prevalence of smartphones many companies moved to advertise on mobile platforms.

pavement

رصيف الشارع

- He stopped the car just off the pavement.

3 **represent**
يمثل/ينوب عن (منظمة/مجموعة)
- He represented his company at the meeting.

act
١- يتصرف
٢- يمثل (يقوم بدور) فى فيلم/مسرحية/مسلسل/إعلان
- My parents are always telling me how I should act and what I should say.
- As a child, she began acting in television commercials.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Can you help me think of some interesting points to include please?
- لاحظ استخدام فعل فى صيغة المصدر بعد الفعل (help) كما يمكن استخدام (المصدر to + inf).

..... but I do worry about my sister.
- لاحظ استخدام (do) قبل الفعل فى الجملة الخبرية للتأكيد بمعنى بالفعل.

I was too busy updating my profile.
- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد التعبير (be busy).

That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media platform.
- التعبير (something like) بمعنى ما يقرب من.

..... after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans.
- تستخدم صيغة (verb+ing) بعد أداة الربط (after) إذا لم يأتِ بعدها فاعل.

So be careful with those selfies you're taking! Plus, Hany told me that.....
- معنى كلمة (Plus) وهو علامة الجمع (+) وتستخدم فى المحادثة بمعنى (أضف إلى ذلك).

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Experts believe that women now fifty per cent of the workforce.
 a) represent
 b) act
 c) attach
 d) connect
2. The train to Cairo is on four and it leaves in thirty minutes.
 a) pavement
 b) side
 c) platform
 d) stop
3. There were cars parking along side of the street.
 a) both
 b) all
 c) every
 d) each
4. person should have a role in the progress of their country.
 a) Neither
 b) Every
 c) Either
 d) Both
5. My mother says she is always busy after the house.
 a) look
 b) looks
 c) looking
 d) to look

Answers 1 a) 2 c) 3 d) 4 b) 5 c)



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The man says he's unable to give up smoking as he's completely to it.
a) addicted b) attained c) attacked d) applied

2 The expert that pesticides could be poisonous.
a) asked b) told c) promised d) explained

3 The of all famous athletes is to win a medal in the Olympics.
a) headlight b) light c) highlight d) favour

4 The old project has been as a waste of money.
a) punished b) criticised c) rewarded d) praised

5 Grandmother her grandchildren with stories, songs and drama.
a) entertained b) delayed c) inspected d) trained

6 Some experts believe that children need to things for themselves in order to learn from them.
a) reward b) experience c) award d) cure

7 The club provides a for people who share an interest in history.
a) home b) view c) seminar d) forum

8 The old man said that he couldn't his life without his wife.
a) imagine b) stop c) retire d) demand

9 Facebook has become the most important social media all over the world.
a) pavement b) platform c) view d) canal

10 You should be very careful about the personal information you put up in your Facebook
a) file b) memory c) hardware d) profile

11 It's to keep a copy of your important documents.
a) sensible b) sensitive c) senseless d) sensory

12 Earthquake spent the first night in tents in the city's parks.
a) researchers b) victims c) hikers d) inventors

13 The should be informed about the new instructions and rules in the company.
a) employers b) sections c) employees d) officers

14 The company director will be making short in the meeting.
a) complaints b) products c) interviews d) presentations

15 The university is number one in the country for engineering.
a) degreed b) ranked c) divided d) shared

16 You can for the new course online or in person.
a) register b) study c) rehearse d) reverse

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 The young writer's poems show that she has a lot of
a) imagine b) imaginative c) imaginary d) imagination

18 He can only walk with the assistance of a stick. The word "assistance" is a synonym of the word
a) report b) rapport c) support d) export

19 The students who were on the trip were divided three groups according to their age.
a) at b) into c) with d) about

20 Although the mobile helps young people to in contact with their friends, it can waste their time.
a) keep b) leave c) depart d) pay

21 Father is the person who the rules in our house.
a) deposits b) does c) makes d) finishes

22 She told the class to stop talking and attention to what she said.
a) spend b) buy c) cost d) pay

23 My little sister would never share her toys other children.
a) with b) into c) at d) about

24 There is a between pollution and the death of trees.
a) connect b) connection c) connected d) connective

25 The techniques used differ from company to company. The verb "differ" is an antonym to the verb
a) represent b) act c) leave d) deal

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 She got fired from her first job for being late. The antonyms of the verb "fire" are
a) sack b) dismiss c) employ d) apply e) hire

27 Many politicians prefer Twitter to Facebook as a social networking
a) site b) view c) position d) platform e) post

28 I want to thank person who has contributed to this project.
a) all b) every c) each d) both e) whole

29 It takes a long time to a drug دواء/عقار for a new disease.
a) install b) reform c) develop d) do e) make

30 The two houses are similar in size, but different in style. The synonyms of the adjective "similar" are
a) far b) puzzled c) alike d) related e) representative

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

Important Notes

١ استخدامات أخرى لـ mean

1. mean + v.ing = involve يشمل/يضم

- Being a doctor means working long hours.

2. mean + to + inf = intend to ينوى/يهدف إلى

- He means to find a job abroad.

3. mean يقصد/يعنى (غالبًا آخر السؤال) وليس بعدها to

- What does this word mean?

4. a means – means وسيلة (اسم مفرد) ومضاف إليها s والجمع بإضافة s أيضًا ولكن بدون أداة نكرة a

- The train is an important means of transport.

٢ تعبر 'be + not supposed to' عن المنع والحظر وعدم السماح وخاصة مع النفى.

You're not supposed to do something = it is not allowed

- You're not supposed to park your car here. It's private parking only.

٣ تستخدم supposed to بمعنى يقال/قيل.

be supposed to = be said to

- He is supposed to have twelve children. = He is said to have

٤ تستخدم seem بعدها صفة أو بعدها الفعل like

- It seems like ages since we last met.
- She seems excited about the offer. = She seems to be excited about the offer.

٥ إذا وجدت it قبل seem تستخدم that وبعدها جملة، أما إذا وجدت كلمة there أو أى كلمة أخرى نستخدم to + inf

- It seems that he likes classical music.
- He seems to like classical music.
- It seems that there is some water on the carpet.
- There seems to be some water on the carpet.

٦ لوصف العاطفة نستخدم He doesn't seem himself these days. لا يبدو فى حالته هذه الأيام.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She means her own shop. She has a strong intention.
 a) to be opened
 b) opening
 c) to open
 d) being opened
2. She to eavesdrop on our conversation.
 a) is seemed
 b) is meaning
 c) is supposed
 d) is not supposed
3. After being fired from the company, he nervous.
 a) seemed
 b) was supposed
 c) was meant to
 d) meant
4. She like a good teacher, all her students respect her.
 a) supposes
 b) seems
 c) means
 d) is supposed
5. Being a pilot means a lot and having fun as well.
 a) travelling
 b) to travel
 c) to be travelled
 d) being travelled

Answer 1) c 2) d 3) a 4) b 5) a



Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fireworks to have been invented in China. Is it true?
 a) supposed b) are supposing c) are supposed d) suppose
2. There to be a mistake in these figures.
 a) are supposed b) meant c) were supposed d) seems
3. I'm sorry. I didn't to break your vase.
 a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) supposed
4. I to look after my younger brother while my parents are away.
 a) suppose b) 'm supposed c) am supposing d) supposing
5. Do you know what the weather to be like tomorrow?
 a) is seemed b) is supposed c) is meant d) does seem
6. I seem the first student to arrive at school today.
 a) to be b) being c) be d) to being
7. Being a teacher means a lot of homework.
 a) to correct b) to be corrected c) correcting d) corrected
8. I'm ready to help you at any time. You to be my friend.
 a) are meaning b) mean c) seem d) are supposed
9. My teacher to be happy.
 a) supposed b) seemed c) meant d) be supposed
10. It's blue, but it was to be purple.
 a) meant b) seemed c) supposing d) meaning
11. Why are you outside the factory? You to be working.
 a) seem b) mean c) are supposed d) are seemed
12. This old computer doesn't to be working properly.
 a) mean b) suppose c) need d) seem
13. It's 11 p.m. You to be in your bed.
 a) seem b) are supposed c) mean d) seemed
14. I don't know how long Hany's been working on that project, but it like weeks.
 a) seems b) supposes c) means d) supposed
15. These shoes don't to fit. They're a little too small.
 a) mean b) seem c) suppose d) want
16. Factories are to employ a lot of people and satisfy our needs.
 a) seemed b) supposing c) meaning d) meant
17. The Egyptian student to study day and night to get the full mark.
 a) is supposed b) means c) is seemed d) supposed
18. He like an honest person, but then we found out he wasn't.
 a) supposed b) is meant c) seemed d) is supposed

19 Don't wait for me. I to visit my uncle in hospital after school.
a) seemed b) 'm supposed c) am meaning d) supposed

20 Life in Siwa will probably a little strange to you at first, but you'll get used to it.
a) seem b) suppose c) mean d) want

21 My mother to make much food for the guests.
a) is seeming b) is meaning c) supposed d) is supposed

22 I found something in the meeting room that to be Omar's schedule book.
a) supposed b) supposes c) seems d) meant

23 The doll was to be a present, but the girl had a phobia of dolls.
a) seemed b) supposing c) meant d) meaning

24 She to finish her homework so she can't come with us.
a) supposes b) is supposed c) is seemed d) is meaning

25 Noha hasn't come out of her room for a long time. She to be busy.
a) supposes b) needs c) seems d) means

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 Two of the following answers give the same meaning of this sentence:
"People aren't supposed to get on the plane without a ticket."
a) It's forbidden to get on the plane without a ticket.
b) It isn't a good idea for people to get on the plane without a ticket.
c) It is against the law to get on the plane without a ticket.
d) It is advisable for people not to get on the plane without a ticket.
e) It is inadvisable for people not to get on the plane without a ticket.

27 Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect:
a) He seems that he is innocent. b) He is seeming to be innocent.
c) He seems to be innocent. d) He doesn't seems to be innocent.
e) He seems innocent.

28 Two answers to the following sentence are grammatically correct:
a) We seem to interrupt you while you were asleep.
b) We didn't mean to interrupt you while you were asleep.
c) We supposed to interrupt you while you were asleep.
d) We weren't supposed to interrupt you while you were asleep.
e) We are seemed to interrupt you while you were asleep.

29 Two answers to the following sentence are grammatically incorrect:
Amr seems a good day.
a) is having b) that he has c) has d) to have e) to be having

30 One answer to the following sentence is incorrect:
"My uncle's new car"
a) seems like a luxurious one b) seems to be a luxurious one
c) seems a luxurious one d) is seeming to be a luxurious one
e) seems that it is a luxurious one

(C) Communication Skills

Note
لمزيد من التدريبات على المهارات
يرجى الرجوع الى ملحق المهارات
الجزء الخاص بـ Integrated Skills

(I) Life Skills

Critical thinking

What is critical thinking?

Critical thinking is the ability to think clearly and rationally about what to do or what to believe. It includes the ability to engage in reflective and independent thinking. Someone with critical thinking skills is able to do the following:

- understand the logical connections between ideas
- identify, construct and evaluate arguments
- detect inconsistencies and common mistakes in reasoning
- solve problems systematically
- identify the relevance and importance of ideas
- reflect on the justification of one's own beliefs and values

The importance of critical thinking

- Critical thinking promotes creativity.
- Critical thinking is a domain-general thinking skill.
- Critical thinking is very important in the new knowledge economy.
- Critical thinking enhances language and presentation skills.
- Good critical thinking is the foundation of science and democracy.

Reference: https://philosophy.hku.hk/think/critical/ct.php

(II) Writing

An email to a friend

• **Write an email to your friend Hashem advising him how to use social media well.**

Hi Hashem,

I hope you are fine. This is my advice to you in order to use social media well and effectively. Social media is now a critical part of our lives so we must use it carefully. So, you can depend on social media for several purposes such as communication, studies, paying money, gaining money and so on. But firstly you should decide on your goal and make a plan to achieve it. This will help to measure your results. Social media is not only for fun. Many businesses depend on it for publicity or promoting their products.

For us as students, we can get benefited from it like learning language courses online, attending educational lectures, and downloading dictionaries.

I regularly read English novels and stories on some specialised websites and this helped me to improve my English.

The most important thing is that; you shouldn't share your private details and information easily on social media because this is not completely safe nowadays.

Also, don't log into weird sites or pages as this will waste your time without any benefit.

Thanks for your time

Bye

(III) Speaking Skills

The internet and its effects:

It's obvious that, the invention of the internet has made a revolution in all aspects of our life. Most activities like trading, banking, money transfer, communication, studies, etc. are mostly depending on the internet. Like any invention, it has advantages and disadvantages. But generally it became a part of our life.

A wise person can have many benefits using the internet such as studying, communication, paying bills and freelance work while unwise people may spend too much time playing games or watching useless videos so you need to decide on:

A) The benefit from using the internet.

B) How to avoid wasting your time and harming your health.

C) The internet is not always safe, so you shouldn't share your personal information on it.

Try to find answers to the following questions.

1. Why do you need the internet?
2. How can you wisely manage your time using the internet?
3. Will it help you to develop your abilities and hobbies? How?

Practice

Complete the following dialogue:

Hani and Yousef are talking about the internet.

Hani : Hello! Yousef. Do you use the internet for long hours?

Yousef: Yes, I do.

Hani :

Yousef: I partly agree with you, but I control myself.

Hani :?

Yousef: I manage my time carefully, between studying and entertainment.

Hani : What else do you do on the internet?

Yousef:

Hani : Then I want to ask you, how could I make good friends on the internet?

Yousef:

General Exercises
(Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The report the importance of exercise to maintain a healthy body.
a) highlighted b) declined c) underlined d) derived

2 I understand your about the new system, but do not share it.
a) importance b) quarrel c) viewpoint d) treaty

3 The politician tried to make his speech more for the audience.
a) entertain b) entertainment c) entertaining d) entertained

4 This maths problem is difficult; you can't do it your own.
a) at b) on c) in d) about

5 The tour took the tourists around the Grand Egyptian Museum.
a) pioneer b) serial c) speech d) guide

6 Mohamed Salah has become a/an of the successful Egyptian young man who can serve his country.
a) signal b) claim c) symbol d) means

7 The film was for the violent and inappropriate scenes in it.
a) criticised b) punished c) rewarded d) praised

8 The World Health Organisation provided the best for the exchange of views and ideas about COVID-19.
a) firm b) view c) seminar d) forum

9 She is determined to get a ticket for the concert even if it means a lot of money.
a) paying b) to pay c) to be paid d) to paying

10 I'm going to wash the car now. I to do it yesterday but I didn't feel like it.
a) am supposed b) seem c) mean d) was supposed

11 It as if there will be rain soon.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) seems d) supposed

12 This is a painting of an elephant, but it was to be a horse.
a) seemed b) meant c) like d) supposing

13 That bag too heavy for the old woman to carry.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) is seemed d) seems

14 The plan is to be a secret, but everybody seems to know about it.
a) seemed b) like c) meant d) suppose

15 You to play loud music after midnight. It disturbs the local residents.
a) are supposed b) are not supposed c) are meant d) are seemed

16 Collecting money is to make us live happily, but we mustn't consider it an end.
a) meaning b) supposing c) seemed d) a means

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

While technology is taking control steadily over individual lives, the reading habit is fast vanishing into thin air. TV and the silver screen are filling the minds of the modern youth, taking majority of their free time. We have to think seriously about how the growing generations will find time to read.

Video and television are responsible for the declining interest in reading among youth. They do nothing to build up reading skills. If the children's time is devoted to reading, the population would be better educated.

Reading a story is an active partnership between a writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, but watching something is totally passive.

The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television.

Their difficulty is not reading the words – it is interpreting them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. Only by reading daily a child will become a strong and independent reader.

Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without the television, the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Reading helps people to be

a) well-paid
b) good actors
c) well-educated
d) good writers

2 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to

a) the youth
b) video and television
c) children
d) reading skills

3 According to the writer's view, TV is means of entertainment.

a) not an effective
b) an encouraging
c) an effective
d) not a cheap

4 The synonym of the word "independent" is

a) active
b) intelligent
c) aware
d) self-determining

B) Answer the following questions:

5 What is the writer's main objection to video and TV?

.....

6 What is the difference between reading a story and watching something?

.....

7 The writer believes that visual images, such as watching television, spoil the imagination. Do you agree? Why?

.....

8 How do you think we can encourage reading nowadays?

.....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Mobile addiction has become one of the psychological problems which many young people suffer from. Doctors have special courses to treat it like any psychological disease.

.....

2. You shouldn't trust your personal and financial information with unknown websites. Criminals can use it to steal your money or even your identity.

.....

3. Magdi Yacoub's Heart Foundation depends on charity to carry out its mission. That's why we all should pay more attention to it and donate money for it.

.....

4. The Egyptian civilisation began thousands of years ago. Therefore, Egypt is called the birthplace of civilisation.

.....

5. Although there are selfish and evil people in society, there are still honest people who do what they are convinced is right.

.....

6. Parents can help children with learning disabilities achieve success by encouraging their strengths and knowing their weaknesses.

.....

B) Translate into English:

١- كثيـرًا ما تتهم وسـائل التواصـل الاجتماعى بانتهاك خصوصية المسـتخدمين رغم تأكيدها على حرصهـا على البيانات الشخصية لكل من يمتلك حسابًا بها.

.....

٢- التقدم الطبى أهم إنجازات الإنسـان التى أدت إلى زيادة سـعادته و رفاهيته كما أدى إلى زيادة متوسـط عمر الفرد فى السنوات القليلة الماضية.

.....

٣- كلمـا تقـدم العلم والتكنولوجيا زادت المشـكلات النفسـية التى قد يعانـى منها الناس ويتناولهـا الكُتاب فى قصصهم والمخرجون فى أفلامهم.

.....

٤- تحـذر وسـائل الإعلام الشـباب من الهجرة غير الشـرعية إلى أوروبـا لأنها قد تؤدى إلى فقدانهـم حياتهم و ذلك لأنهم يسافرون عبر طرق خطيرة.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

average	متوسط
birthplace	مهد
civilisation	الحضارة
directors	المخرجون
disabilities	إعاقات/صعوبات
donate	يتبرع
foundation	مؤسسة
honest	صادق/مخلص
illegal	غير الشرعية
immigration	الهجرة
luxury	رفاهية
medical	الطبى
mission	مهمة/رسالة
selfish	أنانى
strengths	نقاط القوة
warn	تحذر
weaknesses	نقاط الضعف
psychological	نفسى
violating	انتهاك

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Everyone should understand the importance of water in our life and the problems faced during scarcity of water."

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

King Lear Exercises

Act II, Scene iii - Act III, Scene i

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should to your customers for wasting their money.
 a) rejoice
 b) please
 c) affect
 d) apologise
2. A is a large hole that was formed by natural processes in the side of a cliff or hill or under the ground.
 a) palace
 b) hut
 c) cave
 d) cottage
3. Money is a source of between many couples these days.
 a) pride
 b) disagreement
 c) shame
 d) species
4. The material I was buying for these shirts suddenly in price, so the they are expensive.
 a) doubled
 b) decreased
 c) divided
 d) applied
5. The soldier's experiences in the war affected him so much that he mad.
 a) came
 b) went
 c) fell
 d) gave
6. This is a silly old I've heard it lots of times and didn't make me laugh.
 a) research
 b) view
 c) joke
 d) riddle
7. Wildlife photography requires a lot of You have to wait much for a good photo.
 a) speed
 b) failure
 c) patience
 d) atmosphere
8. When it started raining, they took under an old forest bridge.
 a) clothing
 b) vanity
 c) pride
 d) shelter
9. The soldier was arrested on suspicion of being an enemy
 a) spy
 b) presenter
 c) producer
 d) director
10. Mahmoud is a good man and would never his back on a friend.
 a) got
 b) grew
 c) turn
 d) face

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young artist asked the expert to his drawings.
 a) prepare b) redetect c) criticise d) deform
2. The actress is very clever at presenting her best to the camera.
 a) director b) profile c) character d) view
3. The of the food in this restaurant makes it look very tasty.
 a) reformation b) updating c) reflection d) presentation
4. The patient's brain is regularly so that doctors can detect the progress of his disease.
 a) scanned b) skimmed c) scaled d) stated
5. I usually my children from their school. It's part of my daily routine.
 a) connect b) hand c) collect d) deliver
6. Most of the people object to the new factory as they want to preserve the of their neighbourhoods.
 a) feeling b) character c) direction d) assumption
7. I missed the flight to New York, so I spent the night at the airport.
 a) connecting b) contacting c) communicating d) commuting
8. When the photographer the film, he was astonished by what he saw.
 a) manufactured b) designed c) spread d) developed
9. Because of pollution, this lake is now too acid to fish.
 a) hunt b) support c) catch d) poison
10. The earthquake 3 on the Richter scale.
 a) weighed b) measured c) registered d) linked
11. "Cl" is the chemical for chlorine.
 a) symbol b) signal c) ray d) flag
12. The passports, with the visa, were waiting at the embassy.
 a) records b) stamps c) relays d) results
13. Omar's first music teacher was a major in his life.
 a) effect b) defect c) influence d) reflex
14. The young lady out of the room so as not to wake the baby.
 a) raked b) rushed c) robbed d) stole
15. The young man's life lacks as he is addicted to drugs.
 a) search b) reason c) purpose d) message
16. By tonight, Khalid his science project.
 a) will finish b) will be finished
 c) will be finishing d) will have finished
17. I'd love at a nice restaurant tonight.
 a) to eat b) eating c) to be eaten d) to be eating

18 My wife had finished cleaning the house I arrived.
a) as soon as b) until c) by the time d) after

19 The team Saturday's match if they had played better.
a) wouldn't lose b) wouldn't have lost c) didn't lose d) hadn't lost

20 The teacher doesn't allow in class.
a) talking b) to talk c) talk d) to be talked

21 Tamer is sleeping. He be tired.
a) shall b) might c) will d) can't

22 The baby was covered a blanket.
a) to b) by c) for d) with

23 Kamal doesn't like what to do.
a) be told b) telling c) being told d) to tell

24 It was good film that we saw it twice.
a) such a b) such c) so d) enough

25 Your hair needs ; it's very long.
a) cut b) to cut c) cutting d) to be cutting

26 Which one is correct?
a) He told that he wasn't feeling well.
b) He told he wasn't feeling well.
c) He said he doesn't feeling well.
d) He said he wasn't feeling well.

27 Which one is correct?
a) We won't know how to do after we get the results.
b) When we get the results, we won't know what to do.
c) We won't know what to do until we get the results.
d) We won't know what to do until we will get the results.

28 Which one is correct?
a) If you wouldn't tell me, I'll ask someone else.
b) If you don't tell me, I'll ask someone else.
c) If you weren't telling me, I'd ask someone else.
d) If you didn't tell me, I'll ask someone else.

29 Which one is correct?
a) What do you think we'll be doing in five years' time?
b) What do you think we're doing in five years' time?
c) What do you think we do in five years' time?
d) What do you think we were doing in five years' time?

30 Which one is correct?
a) I usually live in Assuit, but now I live in Cairo.
b) I usually to live in Assuit, but now I live in Cairo.
c) I used to live in Assuit, but now I live in Cairo.
d) I am used to live in Assuit, but now I live in Cairo.

Test 5
Based on Unit 5

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The antivirus will be automatically on your hard drive.
a) repaired b) fixed c) installed d) perplexed

2 The Internet provides access to an enormous amount of information.
a) instant b) hasty c) undeveloped d) slow

3 To run this software, you will need the latest of Windows.
a) book b) version c) CD d) program

4 We're to check out of the hotel by 11 o'clock to catch our flight.
a) affected b) reflected c) supposed d) reposed

5 The story of the terrible murder was given a high in today's papers.
a) sight b) profile c) character d) view

6 The World Youth is held in Sharm El Sheikh and is attended by young people from all over the world.
a) Scenery b) View c) Seminar d) Forum

7 Nabil is supposed dinner.
a) to be cooked b) cooking c) to cook d) cooks

8 There to be a problem with the trains this morning.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) means d) seems

9 Finding a job means many interviews.
a) attending b) to attend c) to be attended d) being attended

10 It to snow last week.
a) seems b) didn't suppose c) wasn't supposed d) meant

11 Libraries to be a place for reading.
a) seem b) are meant c) supposed d) were meant

12 It seems that two children gone missing.
a) to have b) have c) to be d) being

13 I want to see that film. It to be good.
a) means b) meant c) seemed d) 's supposed

14 Planes are supposed to be the most comfortable of transport.
a) means b) mean c) suppose d) seem

15 The police are looking for him. He to have a criminal background.
a) supposes b) seems c) means d) likes

16 They to be landing at Cairo airport. But if the fog gets any thicker, the plane may be diverted.
a) mean b) are seemed c) are supposed d) are supposing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The moon orbits Earth. When it orbits, it travels in a circle around the Earth. There is a force between the Earth and the moon called gravity. Because of gravity, larger objects pull smaller ones toward them. Earth is larger than the moon, so the Earth pulls on the moon. At the same time, the Earth is being pulled by the sun. The sun is larger than the Earth. The balance between those two "pulls" is what keeps the moon in orbit around Earth. People say the moon shines. However, the moon does not actually have any light of its own. What we see as its light is really the sun's light reflecting off of the moon. As the moon orbits Earth, Earth orbits the sun. We see different amounts of light on the moon depending on its position. We call the changes in the moon's appearance Lunar phases. From one new moon to the next new moon is one complete lunar cycle.

It takes the moon between 27 and 28 days to complete an orbit around the Earth. The moon's orbit is measured from one new moon to the next new moon. It starts in the west and moves toward the east.

To complete one full orbit, the moon travels about 1,423,000 miles. The moon travels very fast. It moves at 2,288 miles per hour.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The moon orbits the Earth and the Earth orbits the sun because of

a) appearance
b) reflection
c) gravity
d) position

18 People are wrong when they think that

a) the Earth pulls the moon
b) the moon is smaller than the sun
c) the Earth is pulled by the sun
d) the moon shines by itself

19 The two spheres which are being pulled by the force of gravity are

a) the moon and the sun
b) the Earth and the moon
c) the sun and the Earth
d) the Earth and gravity

20 The antonym of the word "pull" is

a) push
b) appeal
c) affect
d) influence

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why does Earth pull on the moon instead of the other way around?

.....

22 What's really happening when the moon is said to shine?

.....

23 Which moves faster, your family car or the moon?

.....

24 What does the moon represent in your life? Why?

.....

25 Translate into English:

- تسهم المشروعات القومية الكبرى التى يتم تنفيذها فى كل أنحاء مصر فى حل الكثير من المشكلات الاقتصادية وتوفير فرص العمل للشباب الطامح إلى حياة أفضل.

.....

26 Translate into Arabic:

It is said that many bad habits such as smoking, drug addiction and violent behaviour usually start at teenage. So, teenagers should be careful not to get into them.

.....

27 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your friend will take part on a reading competition on Arab writers. He asks your advice about the sources he can use to research about them. Give him your advice."

.....

.....

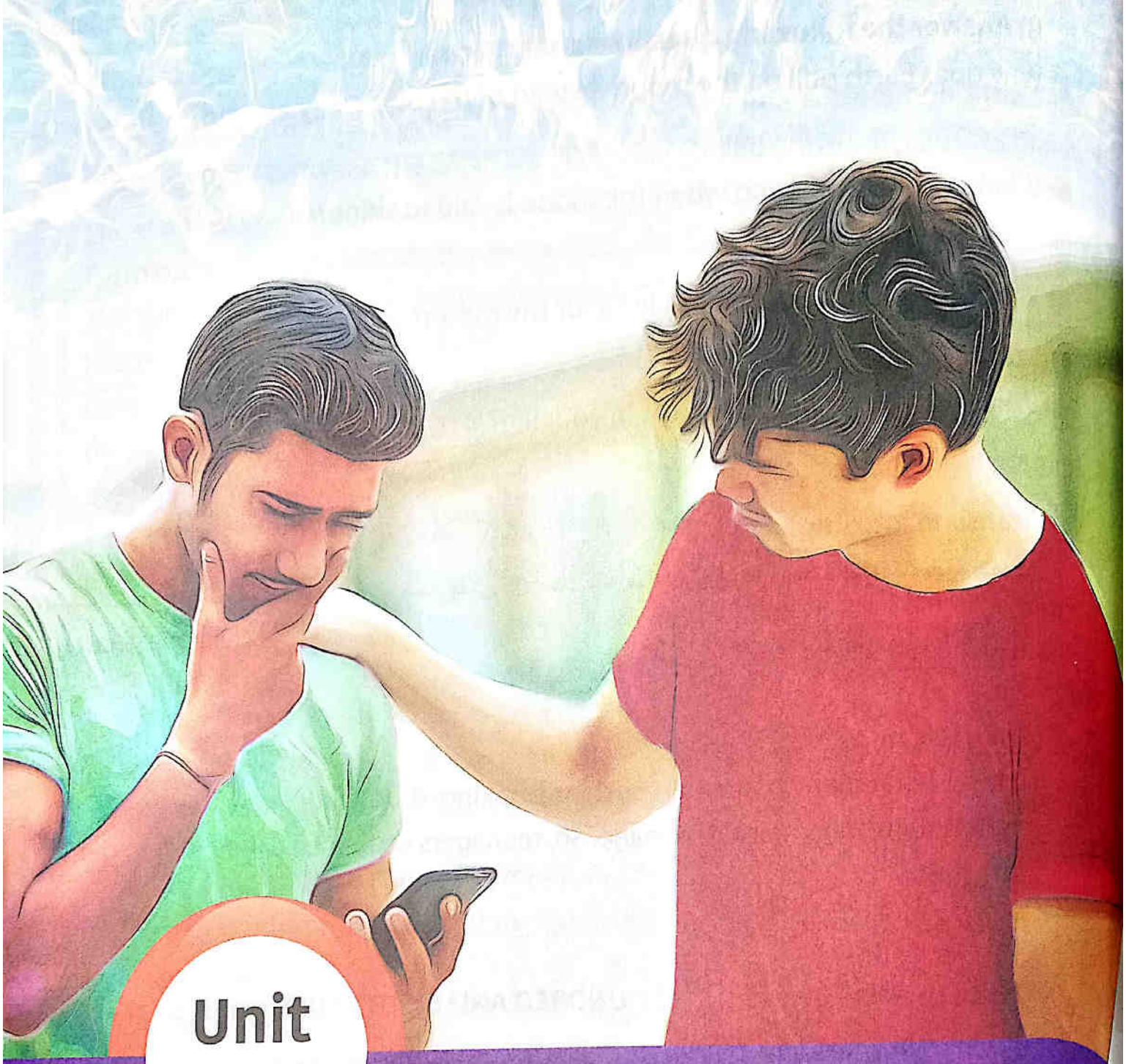
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 6

Learning from our mistakes

Objectives

- **Reading** : Two extracts from an abridged version of *A Christmas Carol* by Charles Dickens
- **Writing** : Captions for a picture story
- **Listening** : A radio programme about regrets, listening for detail
- **Speaking** : Role-play about recognising mistakes
- **Language** : Conditionals (zero, first, second and third)
- **Life skills** : Learning from our mistakes

Part 1 Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary



Key Vocabulary

beg (v)	يرجو/ يتوسل	mean (adj) (v)	بخيل/يعنى/يقصد
carol (n)	ترنيمة (أغنية دينية مسيحية)	pile (n)	كومة
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد	sigh (v) (ed) (n)	يتنهد/يتحسر/تنهيدة
fire (n) (v) (d)	نار/مدفأة/يطلق الرصاص/ يفصل من العمل		

Vocabulary on Reading & Video Script

actually (adv)	بالفعل	life (n)	حياة
alone (adj) (adv)	بمفرده	mistake (n)	خطأ
assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع	nephew (n)	ابن الأخ (الأخت)
boss (n)	رئيس العمل	novel (n)	رواية
breath (n)	نفس/تنفس	office (n)	حجرة مكتب
continue (v) (d)	يستمر	pay (v)	يدفع
disappointed (adj)	محبط	poor (adj)	فقير/مسكين
dream (n) (v) (ed)	حلم/يحلم	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
employer (n)	صاحب العمل	race (n)	سباق
enormous (adj)	ضخم	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
faraway (adj)	بعيد	surprised (adj)	مندهش
foggy (adj)	ضبابى/مغيم بالضباب	tone (n)	نبرة صوت
friendly (adj)	لطيف/ودود	treat (v) (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
including	مشتملًا على/بما فيه	upset (v) (ed) (adj)	يضايق/يزعج/منزعج
large (adj)	كبير		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

call (v) (ed)	يتصل	logical (adj)	منطقى
donation (n)	تبرع	map (n)	خريطة
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	museum (n)	متحف
generous (adj)	كريم	regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/ يندم
health (n)	صحة	waste (v) (d)	يهدر/ يسرف
international (adj)	دولى	water (v) (ed)	يروى
invite (v) (d)	يدعو		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the beginning	فى البداية	get burnt	يحترق/ يتأثر بحرارة الشمس
change his mind	يغير رأيه	get lost	يضل الطريق
do exercise	يمارس تمرينات	keep … warm	يحافظ على الدفء
feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة	make friends	يصادق/ يكون صداقات
feel healthy	يشعر بصحة جيدة	miss the train	يفوته القطار
ask for	يطلب	plenty of	وفرة (كثير) من
breath out	زفير	run off	يجرى بعيدًا
feel about	يشعر بشأن	smile at	يبتسم بوجه
pay for	يدفع مقابل	work for	يعمل لصالح

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	----------	
continue	يستمر	continuation	استمرار	continuous	مستمر
donate	يتبرع	donation donor	تبرع متبرع	----------	
invite	يدعو	invitation	دعوة	inviting	داعٍ
regret	يأسف/ يندم	regret	ندم	regrettable regretful	مأسوف عليه نادم
surprise	يفاجئ/ يدهش	surprise	مفاجأة	surprised	مندهش
treat	يعامل/ يعالج	treatment	معاملة/ علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه
waste	يهدر/يسرف	waste	هدر/ إسراف	wasteful	مبذر

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
assistant	مساعد	helper	opponent	خصم
beg	يرجو/يتوسل	request/ urge	give/ reply	يعطى
disappointed	محبط	depressed/ dissatisfied	cheerful/ comforted	مرح
donation	تبرع	charity/ assistance	blockage/ hindrance	غلق/منع
foggy	مغيم بالضباب	cloudy/ misty	clear	صافى
generous	كريم	hospitable/ charitable	mean/ miserly	بخيل
mistake	خطأ	error/ fault	correction/ soundness	تصحيح
treat	يعامل	deal with/ conduct	abandon/ ignore	يترك
waste	يسرف/يهدر	exhaust/ misuse	maintain/ save	يحافظ على

Reading Text (1)

Pre-reading question:

- What is the weather like in London at the end of December?

A Christmas Carol[1]

It was the end of December. It was dark outside and the streets were foggy. Scrooge was a very rich businessman, but he was mean[2] and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his assistant, Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't pay for a big fire[3] to keep them warm.

There was only a small fire and it was very far away.

"It's late. Can I go home, Mr. Scrooge?" Bob begged[4].

"Have you finished your work?" asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the enormous pile[5] of work left to do and sighed[6].

"You can't go home if you don't finish your work," continued Scrooge.

"If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob.

"No," said Scrooge."

Suddenly the door opened and Scrooge's nephew, Fred, came into the office. He gave his uncle a friendly smile.

"Bah!" said Scrooge, "Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're poor. What have you got to be happy about?"

"If you are so rich, why are you so sad?" replied Fred. "Perhaps if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, too."

"Have you come to ask me for money?" asked Scrooge in an unfriendly tone.

"No," replied his nephew. "I've come to invite you to dinner."

"Bah!" said his uncle.

(1) ترنيمة عيد الميلاد

(2) بخيل/سيئ الطباع

(3) مدفأة

(4) يرجو/يتوسل

(5) كومة

(6) يتنهد/يتحسر

Post-reading question:

- At the end of this part, what do you think of Mr. Scrooge?

Reading Text (2)

Pre-reading question: - Do you think that Mr. Scrooge can change?

A Christmas Carol: After a dream



(1) حلم

(2) أخطاء

(3) يعامل

(4) مندهش

(5) يدفع

(6) يغير رأيه

The next morning, Scrooge woke up in his bed. He'd had a terrible dream(1), but now he could see his mistakes(2). If he hadn't felt so alone, he wouldn't have cared only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated(3) other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone. But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. "You! Boy!" he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the butcher's shop?"

"Yes, Mr Scrooge," shouted the boy. He was surprised(4) to see Mr Scrooge smile.

"I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift from me to his family. Will you do this for me if I pay(5) you?"

"Of course," said the boy and then he ran off before Mr Scrooge changed his mind(6).

Scrooge went out in the street and said, "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied, "Good morning, Mr Scrooge," and that made Scrooge very happy.

Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside.

Post-reading question: - What kind of dream do you think Mr. Scrooge had?

Video Script

Charles Dickens was born in England in 1812. He wrote fifteen novels[1] including *Great Expectations*, *Oliver Twist*, *David Copperfield*, and *Hard Times*. His most popular novel is probably[2] *A Christmas Carol*, which was published in 1843.

In *A Christmas Carol*, Dickens wrote about some of the problems in Britain at that time. Many people were very poor and Dickens thought that rich people should be kinder and help the poor people who worked for them.

The main character is Ebenezer Scrooge. At the beginning of the story, he is mean and he won't help anyone, including[3] his employee, Bob Cratchit, who is very poor with a large[4] family and a sick child.

However, by the end of the story Scrooge has changed and he sees life in a completely different way. We are told that Scrooge became as good a friend, as good an employer[5] and as good a man as the good old city of London had ever seen.

0:00

(1) روايات

(2) من المحتمل

(3) مشتملًا على/بما فيه

(4) كبير

(5) صاحب العمل

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children their father to take them to the cinema, but he said no.
 a) ordered b) begged c) attacked d) delayed
2. Mother asked me not to forget to turn the electric off before I go to bed.
 a) shot b) job c) fire d) task
3. The old factory owner has always been with money, so his employees don't like him.
 a) cheerful b) generous c) careless d) mean
4. The businessman deeply at the thought of losing his money.
 a) cheered b) sighed c) laughed d) yelled
5. The clerk was busy behind a of paper on his desk.
 a) pile b) hay c) hole d) wreckage

Answers 1 b) 2 c) 3 d) 4 b) 5 a)

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

beg	يرجو	to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much
mean	بخيل	not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
pile	كومة	a group of things put on top of each other
sigh	يتنهد	a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed

Notes on Vocabulary

1 **life** — الحياة بشكل عام (لا تجمع)
- Poor people usually suffer much in life.

a life — حياة من نوع خاص يسبقها أداة نكرة.
- Samy says that marriage has helped him live a happy life.

the life — حياة شخص أو فئة من الناس يسبقها أداة معرفة.
- I read an exciting book about the life of Nelson Mandella.

2 **treat** — يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)
- Patients are treated with a combination of medication and exercise.

cure — يعالج/يشفى (من مرض)
- It might be several months before she's fully cured.
- Many formerly fatal diseases can now be cured.

heal — تلتئم (الجروح والكسور)
- The wound took a long time to heal.
- Vitamin K is needed by the body for healing cuts and bruises.

3

work with	يعمل/يتعامل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	My brother works for a big company in the city. We all should work for the improvement of our society.
work in	يعمل فى	I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.
work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The writer said that he was working on a new novel.
work as	يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al Ahram newspaper a long time ago.

4

let	يترك/ يسمح (المصدر بدون to)	We let our children read simple stories.
make	يجعل (المصدر بدون to)	We make our children read simple stories.
cause	يسبب (المصدر + to)	He caused the little girls to cry.
allow	يسمح (المصدر + to)	Using good seeds allows farmers to get better crops.

Notes on sentences from Reading Texts

..... will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?

- نستخدم مصدر الفعل بدون (to) بعد الفعل (let).

He was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smile.

- نستخدم مصدر الفعل بدون (to) بعد الفعل (see) كما يمكن استخدام (verb + ing).

"I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift

- نستخدم (as) بمعنى كـ وتعبر عن الحقيقة وليس التشبيه.

Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied.

- نستخدم الفعل فى صيغة المفرد بعد (everyone) ونستخدم ضمير جمع (they) للإشارة إليه.
- لاحظ أيضًا استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (see).

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young researcher has spent the last two years working a book about childcare.
 a) with b) on c) for d) as
2. Some teachers let their students a quiz before starting the lesson.
 a) do b) does c) doing d) to do
3. It can take about one month for a broken arm to
 a) spread b) cure c) treat d) heal
4. The young man doesn't know what he really wants in
 a) life b) a life c) the life d) lives
5. My father worked an engineer in the great national project of the New Suez Canal.
 a) with b) on c) for d) as

Answers 1) b 2) a 3) d 4) a 5) d



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. I felt a little when my team lost the match.
 a) disappointed b) appointed c) acquainted d) imparted
2. The relationship between workers and should be good in order to achieve good profits.
 a) customers b) buyers c) employers d) clients
3. I took my friend's place in the until he returned.
 a) office b) home c) building d) plane
4. My son always says he wishes I would stop him like a child.
 a) treating b) curing c) healing d) affecting
5. It was of the rich man to donate a million pounds for charity.
 a) cowardly b) miserly c) hasty d) generous
6. The Davis Cup is an important tennis championship in which all the countries take part.
 a) local b) national c) folk d) international
7. Nehad not phoning her mother on her birthday. She should have done it.
 a) regrets b) affects c) pleases d) rejoices
8. My father asked me not to my money on that unhealthy food.
 a) benefit b) waste c) keep d) save
9. Teachers have been using visual aids such as and pictures in the classroom for a long time.
 a) screens b) chalk c) maps d) laps
10. In squash, you have to beat the person you are playing
 a) lonely b) private c) alone d) particular
11. The poor lady the doctor to see her sick child and he immediately agreed.
 a) begged b) ordered c) refused d) yelled
12. The church choir كورال is rehearsing some to be sung at Christmas Eve.
 a) films b) carols c) games d) stations
13. The police two shots at the criminals before they were arrested.
 a) breathed b) designed c) fired d) warmed
14. Our old neighbour was a man who never gives presents to anyone.
 a) main b) generous c) kind d) mean
15. The old house had been knocked down, and there was nothing left but of stones.
 a) holes b) wells c) piles d) pools
16. The young boy with relief when he saw that he passed the test.
 a) sighed b) cried c) fought d) pleaded

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 We made too many errors, and that cost us the game. The word "error" is a synonym to the word
a) prize b) correctness c) mistake d) clearing

18 I received my friend's to his wedding and I was very happy for him.
a) invite b) invitation c) invited d) uninvited

19 My son used to change his a lot especially about clothes.
a) head b) mind c) brain d) matter

20 Doctors advise all people to exercise to keep healthy and feel relaxed.
a) make b) note c) do d) neglect

21 The passenger arrived ten minutes late so, he the six o'clock train.
a) missed b) lost c) caught d) reserved

22 The client said that he didn't want to pay the cold meal that the waiter brought.
a) at b) about c) in d) for

23 The man I work isn't kind. He can easily dismiss any worker.
a) for b) on c) as d) at

24 I always advise my sister not to make unnecessary long calls as they are
a) waste b) wasted c) wasteful d) wasteless

25 He knocked out his opponent in the third round. The noun "opponent" is an antonym to the noun
a) enemy b) assistant c) competitor d) accuser

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 Sami's family are very disappointed about his bad exam results. The synonyms of the word "disappointed" are
a) pleased b) depressed c) impressed d) dissatisfied e) infected

27 Unluckily, my younger sister spends all her time watching television.
a) free b) busy c) study d) useful e) spare

28 My aunt has just retired after 35 years working children.
a) as b) with c) among d) for e) on

29 On going to work, I saw my brother the ice off the car windscreen.
a) scraped b) to scrape c) scrape d) scrapes e) scraping

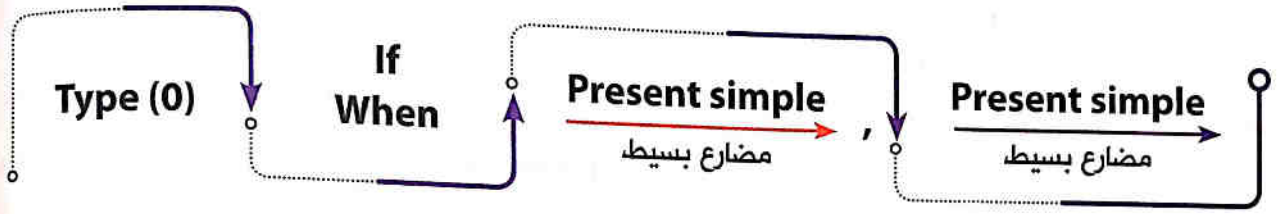
30 Leaving the heating on all the time wastes electricity. The antonyms of the word "waste" are
a) maintain b) damage c) puzzle d) ignore e) save

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح
تطبيق الأضواء

conditional forms

1 The Zero Conditional



- **We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true:**

- نستخدم الحالة الصفرية لنتحدث عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية (شىء لا نتحكم فيه) والأشياء التى دائمًـا حقيقية والعادات التى تتكرر لدى الشخص.

- If/When water gets very cold, it turns into ice.
- If/When you drop something, it falls to the ground.
- I stay at home if/when I feel ill.
- If I use the computer for a long time, I usually/always have a headache.

Active	Passive
If we boil water, it evaporates.	Water evaporates if it is boiled.

2 The First Conditional



- **We use the first conditional to talk about events or situations that we think are probable or possible in the future:**

- نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.

- If he leaves early, he will be on time for the meeting.
- Tarek is ill. If he's better tomorrow, he'll come to school.
- If he doesn't repay the debt, he'll go to prison.

- نستخدم (should) فى جواب الشرط للنصيحة أو الاستحباب و (have to) للوجوب والإلزام.

- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you lose your credit card, you have to ring the bank.

- يمكن استخدام may للاحتمال وcan للاستطاعة.

- If you speak English well, you may get this job.
- If there is an airport here, we will be able to (can) travel abroad easily.

- تعبر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو أمنية أو تهديد.

- If you come first in the English test, I will give you this good camera.
- If I win the gold medal, I will be very famous.
- I won't lend you any money if you insist on spending it carelessly.

- يمكن أن يبدأ جواب الشرط فى الحالة الأولى بأمر (مصدر) أو نهى:

- If you are tired, go to bed.
- If Samy visits you, don't tell him about our meeting.

لاحظ:

١- تستخدم when محل if فى الحالة الصفرية فقط للحقائق والعادات:

- If / When I have a fever, I stay in bed. — حقيقة عامة عند الشخص أن الحمى تقعده فى السرير.
- If I have a fever tomorrow, I'll stay in bed. — ليست حقيقة بل توقع حدث فى المستقبل.

٢- إذا كانت الجملة حالة صفرية ووضع لها زمن أو مدة فإنها تتحول إلى موقف خاص وليس حقيقة مثل:

- If you put this bottle of water in the freezer tomorrow, it will turn into ice.

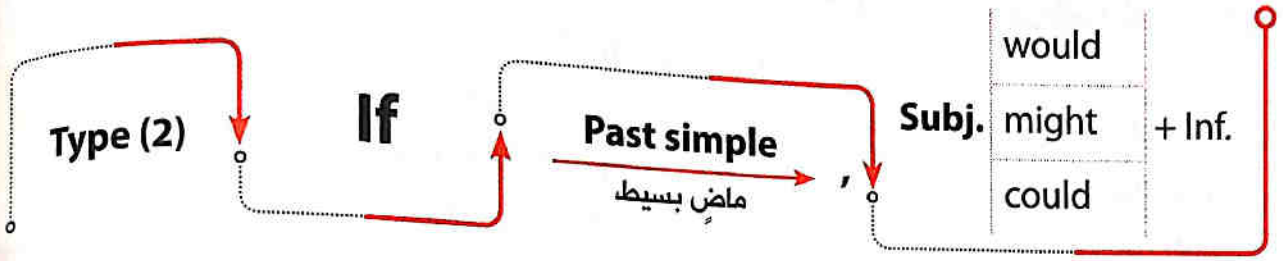
Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I read in bed, I asleep. It's a habit.
 a) fell b) would fall c) will fall d) fall
2. If I feel ill, I always at home.
 a) would stay b) stay c) will stay d) stayed
3. What if you feel unhappy?
 a) do you do b) would you do c) you did d) have you done
4. If you are late, ... a taxi.
 a) would take b) should take c) take d) will take
5. If it today, we won't go to the park.
 a) will rain b) rains c) rained d) had rained

Answers 1) d 2) b 3) a 4) c 5) b

3 The Second Conditional



- **We use the second conditional to talk about situations that are imaginary or unlikely in the present or future:**

- نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن المواقف الخيالية وغير الممكنة فى المضارع والمستقبل.

- If I saw a ghost, I would run away. (unlikely to happen)
- If I discovered a planet, I would give it my name. (unlikely to happen)
- If I were a bird, I could fly. (I'm not a bird. untrue in the present)
- If I were you, I'd try harder. (Giving advice)

4 The Third Conditional



تعبر الحالة الثالثة عن حدث مستحيل أو ندم أو انتقاد لأن الحدث تم فى الماضى وانتهى.

- **We use the third conditional to talk about past situations or actions that did not happen:**

- نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.

- If I had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen. (I didn't lock it)
- If he had behaved well, the teacher wouldn't have punished him. (He didn't behave well)

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He isn't here. But if he were here, he you.
 a) will meet
 b) would meet
 c) can meet
 d) would have met
2. If she, she would have attended the party.
 a) was invited
 b) had invited
 c) were invited
 d) had been invited
3. If Ahmed a new car, he would buy a motorcycle.
 a) didn't buy
 b) bought
 c) had bought
 d) buys
4. What if you found a burglar in your house?
 a) will you do
 b) you did
 c) would you do
 d) did you do
5. If you had told me about your problem earlier, I you.
 a) would have helped
 b) would help
 c) had helped
 d) helped

Answers 1) b 2) d 3) a 4) c 5) a



Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't feel ill yesterday. I at home if I had felt ill.
 a) will stay b) would have stayed
 c) would stay d) stayed
2. If I have a headache, I a cup of tea. It always makes me feel better.
 a) drink b) will drink c) would drink d) drank
3. If the weather were nice today, we out for a walk.
 a) would have gone b) go
 c) will go d) would go
4. I would have come home earlier if I you were worried.
 a) knew b) 'd know c) 'd known d) know
5. If you work harder for the next week, I'm sure you your exam.
 a) won't pass b) pass c) 'd pass d) will pass
6. If they me a good salary, I would have accepted the job.
 a) had offered b) offered c) offer d) hadn't offered
7. The teacher happy if we learnt this lesson by heart.
 a) would have been b) will be
 c) would be d) was
8. If we had waited for another 10 minutes yesterday, we the minister.
 a) had seen b) will see c) would have seen d) 'd see
9. If I need advice about my life, I usually to my mother.
 a) talk b) would talk c) had talked d) will talk
10. If Magdi had enough money, he a new mobile phone.
 a) would have had b) will buy
 c) would have bought d) would buy
11. If a balloon is filled with hot air, it
 a) may rise b) would rise c) rises d) will rise
12. If you go out, ... the porter to bring me the keys.
 a) tell b) would tell c) will tell d) won't tell
13. If I ill and missed the interview, I might have got the job.
 a) had fallen b) hadn't fallen c) fell d) fall

14 If her dreams true, she would have been happy.
a) comes
b) came
c) had come
d) hadn't come

15 If he had tried harder, he in achieving his ambition.
a) will succeed
b) would have succeed
c) would succeed
d) would have succeeded

16 If I a car, I would have to give you a lift to the airport.
a) had
b) had had
c) have
d) was having

17 Ehab fishing if he finishes all his work before the weekend.
a) will go
b) had gone
c) would go
d) is going

18 Ali would act in the school play if he good at acting.
a) had been
b) were
c) will be
d) would be

19 If I had had my mobile phone yesterday, I you.
a) would contact
b) will contact
c) would have contacted
d) contacted

20 If you need anything from the shop, I it for you.
a) will get
b) get
c) would get
d) got

21 If people lived on the moon, they tired and bored.
a) would have been
b) would be
c) will be
d) are

22 If you more careful, you wouldn't have cut yourself.
a) were
b) have been
c) are
d) had been

23 If the sun didn't give us heat and light, we
a) wouldn't die
b) will die
c) would die
d) may die

24 If you things properly, you wouldn't have got into a mess.
a) had planned
b) planned
c) plan
d) have planned

25 If he sold the five feddans, he would be rich and a new house.
a) bought
b) buy
c) will buy
d) buys

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 If there is an airport near our house, we travel easily.

a) might
b) can
c) should
d) will be able to
e) have to

27 Two answers of the following are grammatically correct:

a) If you want to buy a good carpet, you should go to Al Hussein Market.
b) If you want to buy a good carpet, you might go to Al Hussein Market.
c) If you want to buy a good carpet, go to Al Hussein Market.
d) If you want to buy a good carpet, you would go to Al Hussein Market.
e) If you want to buy a good carpet, will go to Al Hussein Market.

28 Two answers of the following are grammatically incorrect:

a) If we boil water to 100°C, it evaporates.
b) If we boil water to 100°C, it is evaporated.
c) If water is boiled to 100°C, it evaporates.
d) If water boils at 100°C, it evaporates.
e) If water boils at 100°C, it is evaporated.

29 If I a car, I you a lift.

a) had/would have given
b) had/would have to give
c) had had/would have given
d) had had/would have to give
e) had had/would give

30 Two answers give the same meaning to the following sentence:

If Ahmed lived in a big city, he could find a job easily.

a) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
b) Ahmed doesn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
c) Ahmed won't live in a big city, so he won't find a job.
d) It's improbable for Ahmed to find a job as he doesn't live in a big city.
e) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he found a job.

General Exercises
(Lessons 1&2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The dentist had her sterilise the instruments يعقم الأدوات every day.
a) patient b) assistant c) system d) foe

2 The Cancer Hospital has collected 200 000 pounds through online
a) sales b) crops c) products d) donations

3 Since mother helped us before, it's to assume that she'll help us again.
a) logical b) legal c) movable d) legislative

4 If you are a/an worker, you must keep doing exercises to avoid being fat.
a) field b) sports c) house d) office

5 Leila her friend Mariam like one of the family.
a) cured b) healed c) treated d) advised

6 The price of a room in this hotel is 300 pounds breakfast.
a) consisting b) including c) containing d) enclosing

7 Although he practised hard, he couldn't win the, but came fourth.
a) champion b) path c) race d) passage

8 My uncle feels really after the death of his wife and he is always sad.
a) alone b) relaxed c) happy d) relieved

9 When you put too much water in rice when you cook, it sticky.
a) would get b) will get c) gets d) got

10 We wouldn't have any money if we didn't work hard, but we hard.
a) work b) worked c) will work d) had worked

11 We'd see you more often if you so far away.
a) lived b) didn't live c) hadn't lived d) weren't lived

12 If Sherif to bed earlier last night, he wouldn't have got up late this morning.
a) has gone b) went c) goes d) had gone

13 If my brother had a lot of money, he it all on music and clothes.
a) would spend b) will spend c) would have spent d) spends

14 If he read the questions slowly, he them.
a) will understand b) would understand c) understands d) can understand

15 If Nihal watches honor movies, she at night.
a) will sleep b) wouldn't sleep c) does not sleep d) hadn't slept

16 If Mona someone the way to the museum, she would have known where to go.
a) asked b) would ask c) asks d) had asked

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the wild, it often comes down to predator and prey. There is the hunter and there is the hunted. Organisms want to stay alive. They hide or escape from animals who would like to eat them. So how do they do it? They adapt to their environment.

One very helpful adaptation is called camouflage. You may have been surprised at some time by an animal that used camouflage. It blended into its surroundings so well that you nearly missed seeing it. Its coloring, markings or other physical features allowed it to blend into the area around it.

Animals use camouflage to fool a predator. The hidden animal is not seen when a predator scans an area looking for food. Wild goats, for example, have coats that make them look invisible among rocks. A baby giraffe's coat helps it hide among the grass and trees. A chameleon is a lizard that will change colors depending on the surface it is on.

Camouflage often works the other way around, too. Predators can use camouflage to trap their prey. A predator can attack unexpectedly an animal it wants to eat. The prey animal doesn't see danger because the predator blends into the habitat. A leopard's spotted coat helps it blend into the background and sneak up on its prey.

Another popular adaptation is mimicry. Mimicry is when an animal has the physical characteristics that make it look like another animal or a plant. Some moths look like wasps. Predators that don't like wasps will think the moth is a wasp and will not eat it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Camouflage often works to help

a) the prey
b) the predator
c) the prey and the predator
d) the wasp

2 What helps the animal to blend in to the area around it is its

a) physical features
b) size and strength
c) intelligence and wisdom
d) fear from the predator

3 If a chameleon was on a green leaf, what colour do you think it would be?

a) Brown.
b) Blue.
c) Yellow.
d) Green.

4 When animals want to look like something a predator doesn't want to eat, they use

a) camouflage
b) mimicry
c) wasps
d) moths

B) Answer the following questions:

5 How do different creatures manage to stay alive?

.....

6 What's the difference between camouflage and mimicry?

.....

7 If you were a wild animal, would you rather have the ability to mimic another animal or the ability to camouflage yourself? Why?

.....

8 How do you think camouflage is very helpful in military?

.....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Happiness is more than a good feeling or a yellow smiley face. It's the feeling of truly enjoying your life, and the desire to make the very best of it.

.....

2. Some people believe that money can make you happy. When we have experiences and buy things, using money, this can make us happy.

.....

3. Literature can play a vital role in solving many social problems. That's because it is one of the best means to portray these problems and look for solutions for them.

.....

4. Mass media affects our life greatly. It has become one of the main instruments of political change. So, it is widely used in all political campaigns.

.....

5. Retirement age can be considered a time of rest for a lot of people. However, many old people want to continue work for social and financial reasons.

.....

6. Teenagers usually don't agree with their elders and do not like trusting their secrets with them. Most of them resort to their friends for this.

.....

B) Translate into English:

١- صورت قصص نجيب محفوظ المجتمع المصرى بكل قيمه ومشاكله، فى الوقت الذى عاش فيه وقد حصل على جائزة نوبل بسبب تأثيره الكبير فى الأدب العربى.

.....

٢- تشجع الحكومة الشباب على بدء مشروعاتهم وعدم انتظار الوظيفة الحكومية، وذلك بتوفير القروض والتسهيلات التى تساعد على نجاح مشروعاتهم؛ لكى يكونوا مواطنين صالحين فى مجتمعهم.

.....

٣- يعانى الكثير من الناس من غلاء المعيشة فى العالم كله، فيجب على أفراد المجتمع العمل على زيادة الإنتاج وتغيير عاداتهم الاستهلاكية لمواجهة الأزمات المختلفة والزيادة المستمرة فى الأسعار.

.....

٤- تمثل الجامعات المصدر الرئيسى لإمداد المجتمع بما يحتاجه من علماء وباحثين فى المجالات المختلفة، لذا يجب توفير الدعم المادى اللازم لتطويرها بشكل مستمر.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

campaigns	حملات	portray	يصور
consuming habits	عاداتهم الاستهلاكية	production	الإنتاج
continually	بشكل مستمر	resort to	يلجأ إلى
crises	الأزمات	retirement	التقاعد
elders	كبار السن	scholars	باحثون
financial	مالى	social	اجتماعى
governmental	الحكومية	source	المصدر
instruments	أدوات	support	الدعم
loans	القروض	trust	يثق
facilities	التسهيلات	vital	حيوى

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:
"How can mass media spread awareness towards health problems and controlling them? Think of the Coronavirus as an example."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

Key Phrases

bring back	يعيد ذكريات
fall out	يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/ يتعارك مع
get into	يبدأ الاستمتاع
get on with	ينسجم مع
hang out with	يقضى وقتًا مع
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال
lose touch	يفقد الاتصال

Vocabulary on Listening

apparently (adv)	بوضوح
caption (n)	شرح/عنوان لصورة فى جريدة أو مجلة
chat (v) (ted) (n)	يدردش/دردشة
close (adj)	قريب/مقرب
go back (v)	يرجع/يعود
guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن
ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل
improve (v) (d)	يحسن
magazine (n)	مجلة
mall (n)	مركز تسوق
memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى
prompt (n)	مثير/محفز
wish (v) (ed) (n)	يتمنى/أمنية

Workbook Vocabulary

amount (n)	كمية
conversation (n)	محادثة
friendship (n)	صداقة
high school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية
leader (n)	قائد
necklace (n)	قلادة
opposite (adj)	عكس/مقابل/مواجه لـ
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
own (v) (ed)	يمتلك
pick up (v) (ed)	يلتقط

pocket (n)	جيب
polite (adj)	مؤدب
prep school (n)	مدرسة إعدادية
pretty (adj)	جميل
primary school (n)	مدرسة ابتدائية
rain (n) (v) (ed)	مطر/تمطر
relationship (n)	علاقة
reunion (n)	إعادة جمع (اتحاد)/لم الشمل
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

according to	طبقًا لـ
as usual	كالمعتاد
feel sad	يشعر بالحزن
feel uncomfortable with	يشعر بعدم الراحة مع
feel sorry	يشعر بالأسى
argue with	يجادل مع
bad for	سيئ لـ
get worse	يسوء
have a cold	يصاب بالبرد
keep attention on	يبقى اهتمامًا بـ
share sad moments	يشارك اللحظات الحزينة
take an interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ
go past	يمر بـ
interested in	مهتم بـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
appear	يظهر	appearance	ظهور/مظهر	apparent	واضح/ظاهر
guess	يخمن/يظن	guessing	تخمين/ظن	----------	
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorance	جهل	ignorant	جاهل
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	محسن
memorise	يحفظ	memory	ذاكرة	memorable	بارز/ جدير بالذكر

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
apparently	بوضوح	obviously/clearly	unlikely/improbable	غير محتمل
close	قريب/مقرب	nearby/intimate	far/distant	بعيد
guess	يخمن/يظن	suppose/presume	question/wonder	يتساءل
memory	ذكرى	remembrance/ memorisation	forgetfulness/amnesia	نسيان
organise	ينظم	arrange/coordinate	ruin/ confuse	يدمر
prompt	مثير/محفز	hint	hindrance	إعاقة
relationship	علاقة	relation/connection	separation/disconnection	انفصال



Reading Text (Workbook)

Pre-reading question: - What role does friendship play in your life?

How are your friendships?



Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, when you're in the middle of a conversation(1), when you're they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people feel ignored and upset. And the problem may be getting worse because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers between the ages of 15 and 17 now own(2) a phone.

Studies have shown that just having a mobile phone out while having a conversation makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being polite(3) and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can damage even good friendships(4).

However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends. Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to pick up(5) your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should keep your attention on the person you are talking to. And if a friend ignores(6) you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel.

So, if you want to be a kind and honest friend, keep your phone in your pocket(7) and your eyes on your friendship.

(1) محادثة
(2) يمتلك
(3) مؤدب
(4) صداقات
(5) يلتقط
(6) يتجاهل
(7) جيب

Post-reading question:
- How can mobile phones affect our relationship with our friends?



Listening Text (1)

Pre-listening question:

- Did you ever do something in the past that you regret now?

Presenter:

In today's show, we're going back in time and looking at some of our regrets. Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that, I think, will bring back(1) memories for many of us. This is what he says …

I used to talk to my family and play with my brothers after school. I also used to phone my grandparents and my cousins. But then I got into(2) using social media more.

I started using social media to talk to my friends after school too. We all liked the same things. It was fun and we all got on with(3) each other. Sometimes I'd hang out with(4) them online for hours chatting.

I guess I lost touch with(5) my cousins and my grandparents a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I didn't call them. I didn't tell my grandparents about my day at school.

But when my friends started falling out(6) with each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have ignored my family. I wish I'd kept in touch(7) with my cousins more. I should have called my grandparents, and I wish I could change what happened.

Sadly, this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're getting into something new, we can forget to take an interest in the people who really care about us. Thank you for sharing your story with us, Tarek.

(1) يعيد ذكريات

(2) بدأ الاستمتاع

(3) انسجم مع

(4) قضى وقتًا مع

(5) فقد الاتصال

(6) يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف

(7) يبقى على اتصال

Post-listening question:

- Why did Tarek change his mind about using social media much and ignoring his family?

Listening Text (2)

Judy: Huda was my best friend. We'd always hang out together at school. We made each other laugh a lot and we were very close.

Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as well. We'd listen to music, look at magazines(1) and chat(2) for hours.

One weekend, we went shopping at the mall(3). We had a great time as usual(4), but that was when she showed me her new smartphone.

Apparently(5), it was a really good phone and Huda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

(1) مجلة
(2) يدردش
(3) مركز تسوق
(4) كالمعتاد
(5) بوضوح

Listening Text (3) (Workbook)

Hoda : Hey, Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos from when we were in prep school.

Lamia: Really? Let's see. But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.

Hoda : Yes, you do. She used to sit opposite(1) you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you both wanted to be the leaders.

Lamia: Ahhh, yes. I remember now. I shouldn't have argued with her so much because she was a kind person really.

Hoda : Look. Here she is in the photo.

Lamia: Ahh, wow!

Hoda : ... and look at us! Oh no way! Just look at your hair!

Lamia: Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

Hoda : Oh no! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories(2). That was the dress I was wearing when I lost my favourite necklace(3). I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

Lamia: But the necklace was very pretty(4) and if you hadn't taken it to school, Samira wouldn't have spoken to you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

Hoda : That's true I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

(1) مواجه لـ
(2) ذكريات
(3) قلادة
(4) جميل

Lamia: And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they moved away to go to high school[5] and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

Hoda : Yes, we had some great times together and if we had stayed in touch, we would have been able to organise[6] a school reunion[7]. I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

Hoda : That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

Lamia: Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.

(5) مدرسة ثانوية
(6) ينظم
(7) إعادة جمع/ إعادة اتحاد

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Dalia has never really on with the new student in the class.
a) went b) got
c) came d) received

2 My friend's isn't good with her brother, but she's very close to her sister.
a) relationship b) dispute
c) race d) cure

3 I used to hang with my old friends when I was at college.
a) on b) in
c) out d) at

4 I that you'll be looking for a new job after you left the old one.
a) detect b) guess
c) detest d) object

5 Egypt should its industry to limit our imports.
a) prove b) approve
c) disapprove d) improve

Answers 1 b) 2 a) 3 c) 4 b) 5 b)

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

bring back يعيد ذكريات	to make you remember
fall out يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/ يتعارك مع	to stop being friendly
get into يبدأ الاستمتاع	to start enjoying
get on with ينسجم مع	to be friendly with
hang out with يقضى وقتًا مع	to spend time with
keep in touch with يبقى على اتصال	to continue to communicate with
lose touch يفقد الاتصال	to stop communicating

Notes on Vocabulary

1

memory
ذاكرة/ذكرى (شيء معنوى غير ملموس)

- My sister has a terrible memory for names.
- He has lots of happy memories of his stay in Sharm El Sheikh.

souvenir
تذكار (شيء مادى يُذكر برحلة/حدث)

- I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a souvenir of Paris.

anniversary
ذكرى سنوية

- October 2019 was the 25th anniversary of our parents' marriage.

2 **conversation**
محادثة غير رسمية لتبادل معلومات (لا تكون غالبًا على التليفون أو إلكترونيًا)
- I was having a conversation with a friend the other day.

chat
محادثة غير رسمية لتبادل الحديث (يمكن أن تكون على التليفون أو إلكترونيًا)
- I've just had a chat with my friend online.

3 **title**
عنوان رئيسى فى جريدة أو مجلة لمقال أو خبر/ عنوان كتاب.
- The titles of the main newspaper articles are usually printed in red capital letters.

subtitle
١- عنوان فرعى (تحت عنوان رئيسى)/عنوان فرعى لكتاب.
٢- ترجمة لفيلم أو فيديو تظهر مكتوبة أسفل الصورة.
- The subtitle of Taha Hussein's *Al Ayam* is "A personal autobiography".
- I watched a French documentary with English subtitles about the First World War.

caption
تعليق مكتوب فوق أو تحت صورة مطبوعة أو منشورة.
- The photo of the accident was published with the caption "Catastrophe" under it.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them
- لاحظ استخدام ضمير الجمع (them) للإشارة إلى الاسم (friend).

..... while having a conversation makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other.
- نستخدم صيغة المصدر (verb + ing) بعد أداة الربط (while) إذا لم يتبعها فاعل.

However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends.
- نستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد كل حروف الجر ومنها (without).

I stopped chatting with them, too.
- نستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (stop) بمعنى «يتوقف عن». أما إذا كانت بمعنى «يتوقف لكى» فيتبعها (المصدر + to).

But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.
- لاحظ استخدام أداة النكرة (an) قبل الاسم بمعنى (شخص ما يدعى).

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor advised my father to stop because of some heart problems.
 a) smoke
 b) to smoke
 c) smoking
 d) smoked
2. Weakness or loss of is a natural part of old age.
 a) memory
 b) souvenir
 c) memorial
 d) anniversary
3. The news of the accident was front page of most newspapers.
 a) address
 b) title
 c) speech
 d) talk
4. My sister spends hours on a with her friends on WhatsApp application.
 a) chat
 b) murmur
 c) rumour
 d) conversation
5. The teacher showed us a group of pictures and asked us to think of a for each one of them.
 a) title
 b) subtitle
 c) caption
 d) rank

Answers 1 c) 2 a) 3 b) 4 a) 5 c)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The two neighbours out over the place to park their cars.
a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose

2 We on well enough, but we're not really close friends.
a) give b) get c) take d) go

3 They were friends in college, but then they moved to different cities and touch.
a) moved b) removed c) stayed d) lost

4 He spent a couple of days out with his old friends.
a) changing b) hanging c) returning d) moving

5 We were surprised when their happy marriage ended after only two years.
a) unlikely b) unfortunately c) untruly d) apparently

6 The on the picture says, "This year's contest winners."
a) caption b) title c) subtitle d) address

7 It is not advisable to with other people about your personal life on the internet.
a) fight b) chat c) quarrel d) reverse

8 Can you the number of guests who will come to the part?
a) think b) guess c) accept d) agree

9 When Ali saw his friend Samy in the street, he him as he had a quarrel.
a) assisted b) welcomed c) ignored d) applied

10 One of the ways to your English is to practise it with your friends at school.
a) prove b) remove c) move d) improve

11 Grandfather suffers from a weak due to his age and illness.
a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory

12 The police provided only a small of information on the crime.
a) quality b) account c) amount d) adjective

13 President Sadat was a respected Egyptian who made great achievements.
a) officer b) leader c) diplomat d) secretary

14 Don't try to up your phone while talking to a friend.
a) hold b) raise c) move d) pick

15 The between Arab countries should always be strong because they have common enemies.
a) debate b) relationship c) argument d) quarrel

16 Mr Sameh has always dreamed of a/an to work and stay with his son who lives in America.
a) reunion b) separation c) migration d) invitation

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 The photographs brought many pleasant memories.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

18 Social media websites help you your attention on your friends' affairs.
a) lose b) keep c) miss d) have

19 Despite her problems, she carried on working usual.
a) as b) in c) at d) on

20 The bad weather ruined the party. The verb "ruin" can be the opposite of the verb "..... ".
a) destroy b) organise c) damage d) distract

21 She's always arguing her sister about sharing their clothes.
a) on b) for c) at d) with

22 The school bus goes many students' houses on the way to school.
a) past b) for c) inside d) into

23 The scientist had never been greatly concerned with her
a) appear b) appearance c) appeared d) apparent

24 A good teacher should never make his students feel
a) ignore b) ignorance c) ignorant d) ignored

25 The book includes helpful hints for inexperienced cooks. The word "hint" is a synonym of the word "..... ".
a) forecast b) reserve c) conservation d) prompt

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 He began to lose his memory as he grew older. The synonyms of the word "memory" are
a) remembrance b) souvenir c) memorial d) amnesia e) memorisation

27 The doctors fear that our grandfather's health condition will worse as he is very old.
a) become b) turn c) get d) fall e) pick

28 I usually buy my clothes at the shopping..... near our house because of the variety of shops in it.
a) theatre b) pharmacy c) gym d) mall e) centre

29 The player a cold and he missed the final match yesterday.
a) lost b) had c) caught d) treated e) cured

30 Don't get too close to the fire. The antonyms of the adjective "close" are
a) near b) far c) happy d) distant e) nearly

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

Important Notes

Wish/ If only

1 Wish (If only) + past simple

- نستخدم wish + past simple للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص موقف نتمنى أن يكون مختلفًا.

- I wish I spoke French. (I do not speak French. I regret this now.)
- I wish I knew where my keys were. (I do not know where my keys are.)
- I'm not very tall. I wish I was/were tall enough to play basketball.

- بعد wish نستخدم were/was مع I/he/she/it و were فقط مع they/ we/you.

2 Wish (If only) + could+ Inf.

- نستخدم wish + could للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص عدم القدرة لفعل شىء.

- I wish I could speak Spanish. (I can't speak Spanish).

3 Wish (If only) + past Perfect

- نستخدم wish + past perfect للندم عن شىء حدث أو لم يحدث فى الماضى.

- I wish I had taken your advice. (But I didn't. It's a pity I didn't take it.)

- عند التعبير عن الرغبة والأمنية نرجع بالزمن درجة إلى الوراء، فلو أردنا التعبير عن المضارع نستخدم الماضى، ولو أردنا الماضى نستخدم الماضى التام، ولا نستخدم شكل المضارع بعد wish/If only أبدًا.

- He's ill. He wishes he weren't ill. (present)
- I overslept yesterday. I wish I hadn't overslept yesterday. (past)

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wish we enough money to buy a car.
 a) were having b) have c) had d) would have
2. She wishes she to her teacher's advice. She didn't succeed.
 a) listened b) had listened c) listens d) would listen
3. I wish the school holidays longer.
 a) will be b) are c) have been d) were

4 Ahmed is angry with me. I wish I to his wedding last week.
a) had gone b) went c) would go d) will go

5 I regret going to the final match. I wish I there.
a) didn't go b) hadn't gone c) wouldn't go d) won't go

Answers ٤) ب ٥) ب ١) ج ٢) ب ٣) ب ٤) ب ٥) ب

Alternatives to using if بدائل (If)

هناك تعبيرات يمكن أن نستخدمها محل if وتؤدى نفس المعنى:

1) Provided that/ On condition that/ As (So) long as + جملة

You can borrow my pen if/ provided that/ on condition that/ as long as you give it back.

لا تحل هذه الكلمات محل if فى الحالة الثالثة لأنها تعبر عن المضارع والمستقبل فقط.

2) Suppose/ Supposing/ Imagine (that) + جملة

Supposing/ Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

Supposing it rains, will you still go for a picnic with him?

3) Unless + جملة مثبتة/ Without + noun or v. + ing = If ... not

Unless لو لم	+	فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة)	,	جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية)
Unless		he had phoned me	,	I wouldn't have visited him.

We can't enter the building	if we don't wear a helmet.
	unless we wear a helmet.
	without wearing a helmet.

If they hadn't had a ticket,	they wouldn't have been able to watch the match.
Unless they had had a ticket,	
Without having a ticket,	

4) In case of/ In the event of + noun = If + جملة

- Open the door in case of (if there is) an emergency.

5) In case = If

- نستخدم in case بدون of وتساوى if فى شكل الجملة وتختلف عنها فى المعنى، لأنها تعنى فعل شىء لتجنب مشكلة محتملة فى المستقبل.

- Take this money in case you need some. فى حالة / ربما
- He took two photos in case one of them didn't come out.
- Chain the bike to the gate in case it is stolen. (not if)

6) But for + noun = Without = If ... not

- But for his advice, we would have got lost.

7) Should/ Were/ Had + sub. + verb

- تستخدم should/ were/ had بدلًا من if كأفعال مساعدة بعدها فاعل ثم فعل أساسى.

- تستخدم should بدلًا من if فى الحالتين الأولى والثانية ويأتى بعدها المصدر.

- Should the plane leave on time, I'll arrive in Paris at noon.
- Should he fail to be elected, it would be a great disappointment for him.

- تستخدم Were بدلًا من If فى الحالة الثانية فقط، ويأتى بعدها إما اسم وإما صفة أو (to + inf).

8) Were + subject + noun/ adjective
Were + subject + (to + Inf.)

- Were I you, I wouldn't tell anyone about it.
- Were the builders to finish the work to schedule, they would be rewarded.

- تستخدم Had بدلًا من If فى الحالة الثالثة.

Had + Subject + P.P.

- Had he advised me, I'd have passed my exams easily.

- فى النفى نضع not بعد الفاعل.

- Had he not advised me, I wouldn't have passed my exams easily.

9 If it weren't for/ If it hadn't been for = Without

- If it weren't for the underground, I would reach my work late. (حالة 2)
- If it hadn't been for my father's help, I wouldn't have got a job easily. (حالة 3)

لاحظ:

If/ Unless + v. + ing + verb

- يجب مراعاة أن (v. + ing) يمكن أن يكون فاعلًا فيأتى بعد if أو unless كالآتى:

- If swimming is useful, I will join a sports club to do it.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I had been so tired, I might have realised what was happening.

a) If
b) Without
c) In case of
d) Unless

2 him today, he would know what happened.

a) If she meets
b) Were she to meet
c) Unless she met
d) Had she met

3 our team won the World Cup, what would they do?

a) Provided that
b) On condition that
c) Without
d) Imagine that

4 He took some food with him there were no restaurants in the area.

a) in case
b) if
c) unless
d) but for

5 your help, I would have failed.

a) In case of
b) Provided that
c) Without
d) Unless

Answers 1 d) 2 b) 3 d) 4 a) 5 c)

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I won't do anything you agree.
 a) without b) in case of c) unless d) but for
2. We will be at work in time the bus comes soon.
 a) unless b) provided that c) without d) in case of
3. he been cleverer, he wouldn't have made that silly mistake.
 a) Should b) Hadn't c) Had d) If
4. knowing the truth, I wouldn't have called her.
 a) Without b) If c) Provided that d) Unless
5. an emergency landing, the pilot will inform the airport authorities.
 a) If b) Unless c) In case of d) Provided that
6. Were Covid-19 again, hospitals would now be ready for it.
 a) to reappear b) reappeared c) be reappeared d) to reappearing
7. You can go out with your friends you come back before midnight.
 a) as long as b) in case of c) but for d) without
8. Supposing there no rivers on earth, how would we get water for drinking?
 a) were b) had been c) are d) have been
9. Do you love reading but wish you more about the authors?
 a) can know b) knew c) will know d) know
10. having a car, we would have found it difficult to get there in time.
 a) If b) In case of c) Without d) Provided that
11. his many crimes, he wouldn't have been sent to prison.
 a) But for b) In case of c) Suppose d) Provided that
12. Should she more information about Hany's situation, she would help him.
 a) had b) have c) to have d) had had
13. What if it rained next Friday?
 a) should you do b) were you to do c) would you do d) did you do
14. They wish they speak French.
 a) could b) can c) will d) may
15. If it for medical staff's great efforts, many people might die.
 a) haven't been b) hadn't been c) weren't d) hadn't

16 You must take your umbrella it rains.
a) in case b) unless c) in case of d) without

17 your generosity, I would have been in big trouble.
a) But for b) In case of c) Provided that d) Unless

18 If it your ambitions, we wouldn't have reached that great position.
a) weren't for b) hadn't been for c) wasn't d) had been

19 I wish I more revision this year. I didn't get high marks.
a) did b) had done c) would do d) could do

20 If only I more time for my hobbies. I'm very busy.
a) have b) had c) had had d) would have

21 If he read that article, he everything about global warming.
a) can know b) knows c) will know d) would know

22 If I enough money in my twenties, I around Europe. But, unfortunately, I was broke.
a) had/would backpack b) had had/would backpack
c) had had/would have backpacked d) have/will backpack

23 studying Latin bothers you, you can stop it.
a) If b) Without c) In case of d) But for

24 he had a calculator, he would have answered quickly.
a) If b) Were c) Had d) Unless

25 emergency, I will have to go to work on feasts.
a) But for b) Without c) In case of d) If

Choose the Two correct answers out of the Five options given:

26 "If I had quit my job, I would not have enough money to live in Cairo".
This means
a) She quit her job and does not have enough money now
b) She did not quit her job and she has enough money
c) She intends to quit her job as she doesn't have enough money
d) She doesn't intend to quit her job although she doesn't have enough money
e) She imagines leaving her job and not having enough money

27 Two answers to the following sentence are correct:

"If I enough money, I around Europe. But, unfortunately, I am broke."

a) had/ would backpack

b) had had/ would backpack

c) had/ would have backpacked

d) have/ will backpack

e) had/ could backpack

28 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct:

a) Unless I were a doctor, I couldn't help you.

b) Unless I were a doctor, I could help you.

c) Unless I weren't a doctor, I couldn't help you.

d) If I weren't a doctor, I couldn't help you.

e) Unless I weren't a doctor, I could help you.

29 Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect:

a) I will lend you my car if you promise to return it today.

b) I will lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.

c) I won't lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.

d) I will lend you my car unless you don't promise to return it today.

e) I will lend you my car as long as you promise to return it today.

30 Choose two correct answers to the following question:

What if you enough money?

a) did you do / had

b) would you do / had

c) had you done / had had

d) would you have done / had had

e) would you do / had had

(C) Communication Skills

(I) Language Skills

Note

لمزيد من التدريبات على المهارات
يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المهارات
الجزء الخاص بـ Integrated Skills

Learning from mistakes

The most important life lessons we will ever learn will be from the bad decisions we make. Time and experience can be excellent teachers when you actually learn a lesson from your poor decisions. Experience comes from our way of living, understanding and the adjustments we make. It also comes from suffering, agony عذاب and the ordeals محن we are afflicted by مبتلى بها.

We need to learn from our mistakes so that we do not run the risk of repeating them. We must develop the wisdom and sense to make good decisions and choices. Good judgment حكم will only develop if you truly learn from your mistakes. Unfortunately, for many people, it takes a few repeats of the same mistake to learn the lesson.

Good or bad, experiences are what help us learn lessons and form a better sense of judgment. Bad judgment seems to stick with us longer as a lesson learned because we really do not want to keep repeating it. Wisdom is the knowledge you can gain from making mistakes.

5 ways to turn your mistake into a valuable life lesson:

1. Acknowledge اعترف بـ Your Errors
2. Ask Yourself Tough قاسية Questions
3. Make a Plan
4. Make It Harder to Mess up
5. Create a List of Reasons Why You Don't Want to Make the Mistake Again

References

https://exploringyourmind.com/recognizing-mistakes-means-can-learn/
https://www.elitedaily.com/life/why-you-need-to-learn-from-your-mistakes
https://www.forbes.com/sites/amymorin/2017/07/17/5-ways-to-turn-your-mistake-into-a-valuable-life-lesson/#7f7b723a1c01

(II) Writing

Write an essay of about 180 words about something that you regret. Draw pictures with captions for your regret.

Last summer I was going to travel to Rome for a business trip. The plane was at six o'clock a.m. I woke up very early so that I wouldn't be late for the plane. I took a taxi and I arrived at the airport at 4 o'clock an hour before the plane. I checked in and got ready for the plane. As it was still early for the plane, I decided to go to a cafe at the airport to have my coffee. I bought a big packet of biscuits to eat with the coffee.

The cafe was busy and I had to share a room with an old man. I had my handbag which I put on the table and went to bring my coffee at the counter. I returned back to the table. As I sat at the table, I saw the old man smiling at me. A packet of biscuits was on the table and I started to eat the first piece. Surprisingly, the old man took a piece, too. Each time I took a piece of biscuits, the old man took one. Soon, we ate all the pieces except for one piece left. The old man took it, cut it into two halves, took one half and gave me the other. I was very angry and I shouted at the old man very hard. However, the old man didn't say a word. He looked sad, then he left.

When I got on board the plane, I was surprised to see the old man on the same plane. I looked at him angrily and sat on my seat. I opened my handbag to take out a book I wanted to read on the plane. To my surprise, I found the packet of biscuits I bought. I forgot that I had put it in the bag before going to bring my coffee. The packet on the table belonged to the old man who didn't mind sharing it with me. Immediately, I went to the old man's seat and apologised to him. The man just smiled at me and said, "It's all right."



I am arriving at the airport.



I am sitting with the old man at the cafe.



I am shouting at the old man angrily.



I am finding the packet of biscuits in my handbag.

(III) Speaking Skills

Recognising mistakes:

Recognising our mistakes means we can learn from them. A wise man said, "If you make a mistake and do not correct it, this is called a mistake." If we follow that logic, **is it true that denying our mistakes means we don't learn anything from them?** In other words, is denying a mistake the first obstacle to fixing what we messed up in the first place? Personally, I agree with this. **When you don't admit your mistakes, what you are usually trying to do is put some distance between you and what happened, and the consequences.** However, that same distance makes it harder for you to learn from what happened. It pushes away the possibility of reviewing the process and identifying the errors.

- So, it's important to know the following points:

A) Admitting your mistakes is the first step to correct your path.

B) Think positively to find new ways to avoid repeating these mistakes.

C) Don't let yourself be affected by the passive opinions of the others.

- Try to find answers to the following questions:

1. What is the biggest mistake you have ever made?
2. What were the results of that mistake?
3. How could you learn from that mistake?

Practice

Samy and Murad are talking:

Samy : Hello! Murad. I have made a big mistake, would you help me get over this?

Murad : Of course, with pleasure. What is it?

Samy : I had a job but I don't like it. I don't feel comfortable and I regret doing that.

Murad :?

Samy : I am not able to improve my skill, I feel like a machine?

Murad : My advice to you is that

Samy : But how can I learn new skills to get a better job?

Murad : By

Samy :?

Murad : Undoubtedly, this will help you in the near future.

Samy : OK, I will take your advice. Thanks, Murad.

Murad : You're welcome.

General Exercises
(Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Staying at this hotel brought sweet memories of our honeymoon.
 a) about b) in c) back d) for
2. The two sisters out over who will wear the new bag to the party.
 a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose
3. I knew that Samy didn't like the new student as he him completely.
 a) assisted b) welcomed c) ignored d) applied
4. I advised my son to his study well to get high marks in exams.
 a) organise b) recognise c) realise d) specialise
5. The doctor said that the old man died of a heart attack and it wasn't a murder.
 a) unlikely b) unfortunately c) luckily d) apparently
6. You should be when you talk to your elders.
 a) hasty b) rude c) polite d) greedy
7. My sister is really interested reading about the news of actors and actresses.
 a) at b) for c) in d) about
8. The two girls have a long-standing since they were at primary school.
 a) conspiracy b) teenage c) childhood d) friendship
9. My uncle will go to London next week if he a cheap flight.
 a) get b) gets c) got d) had got
10. If it doesn't start snowing, we go skiing this evening.
 a) will b) don't c) wouldn't d) won't
11. Thank you for helping me study. If you hadn't tutored me, I the test.
 a) wouldn't have failed b) would fail
 c) will fail d) would have failed
12. If I exercised more, I would be much more fit and I so many health problems.
 a) won't have b) wouldn't have
 c) would have d) wouldn't have had
13. It's too bad Hany isn't with us. If he here, he the letter for us.
 a) had been/ 'd have translated b) is/ will translate
 c) were/ wouldn't translate d) were/ could translate
14. Nabila always her mother if she has too much to do.
 a) helps b) won't help c) would help d) will help
15. Were you harder, you'd get higher marks.
 a) worked b) to work c) had worked d) work
16. I will call her she wants to join us to the cinema.
 a) without b) unless c) in case d) but for

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You use energy every day. Energy is the ability to cause change. Any time you move, you are using energy. When you bounce a ball or ride a bike, you use energy from your body to make the ball or the bike move. Your parents cook food for you to eat. They use heat energy to change the food from **raw** to cooked. Not all energy is used as soon as you get it. Sometimes energy is stored to be used later. Stored energy can be chemical energy stored in a battery or in your body. It can also be potential energy. Potential energy is based on the position of the object. A ball at the top of a hill has potential energy. A soccer player standing ready to kick a ball has potential energy, too.

Energy of motion is also called kinetic energy. Potential energy converts, or changes into kinetic energy when the thing or person begins to move. When the ball starts rolling down hill, kinetic energy is at work. When the soccer player kicks the ball, kinetic energy is at work there, too. Energy often changes forms. When you switch on the light, electricity converts into light. When you eat, chemical energy from your food converts into thermal and mechanical energy that allows you to move and work.

When you switch on a cell phone, chemical energy from the cell phone's battery converts into sound energy and light energy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Energy is

a) the ability to bounce a ball
b) the ability to cause change
c) the ability to ride a bike
d) the ability to switch on the light

2 The other meaning to "change into" from the passage is

a) bounce
b) kick
c) store
d) convert

3 Energy that is based on an object's position is called

a) potential energy
b) kinetic energy
c) thermal energy
d) mechanical energy

4 The antonym of the word "**raw**" is "..... ".

a) uncooked
b) fresh
c) cooked
d) natural

B) Answer the following questions:

5 What is another name for energy of motion?

.....

6 What happens when the thing or person begins to move?

.....

7 What do you think are the sources of energy we will use in the future?

.....

8 How do you think we can save the energy we use?

.....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Friendship is one of the best things in life as friends can give you all the help and support to do better in your life.

.....

2. Experts warn us that using the phone for long hours can have serious effects on us. It can cause us physical and psychological problems.

.....

3. We can solve many of our social problems if we teach our children to realise and change their bad mistakes. Parents and schools have a great role in this.

.....

4. The Olympic Games are now a political question as all athletes try hard to win so as to honour their country. So, they may have lost their original meaning.

.....

5. The scientific discoveries made in any country help in its development and progress. Science is also the power which can drive the wheel of production in it.

.....

6. The Ministry of Education must train children on food safety through social studies lessons in primary stage. This will help them in their later life.

.....

B) Translate into English:

١- يوجد الكثير من العيوب للتكنولوجيا، فبسبب ارتباط الشباب بأدوات التواصل الاجتماعى التكنولوجية، مثل: الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول، يفقد بعضهم وسائل الحوار مع باقى أفراد المجتمع.

.....

٢- يقال إن سر النجاح فى الحياة هو أن يكون الإنسان مستعدًا عندما تأتيه الفرصة، وإذا لم يستغلها فقد لا تعود إليه مرة أخرى، لذا لابد من استغلال الفرص المتاحة.

.....

٣- لا تؤثر البطالة فقط على الأفراد ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًا على النمو الاجتماعى والاقتصادى للبلاد، لذا لابد أن نضع حدًا لها.

.....

٤- للرياضة الكثير من الفوائد، فهى تساعد على تحسين مزاجنا وتخفيف التوتر؛ لذلك يعتقد الكثير من الأطباء النفسيين أنها أفضل طريقة لمحاربة الاكتئاب.

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

athletes	الرياضيون	political question	مسألة سياسية
depression	الاكتئاب	power	قوة/ طاقة
development	التنمية	psychiatrists	الأطباء النفسيون
flaws	عيوب	relieve	تخفف
honour	يكرم	safety	أمان
mood	مزاج	social studies	الدراسات الاجتماعية
original	أصلى	stress	التوتر

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Many people should be thanked due to their efforts towards us."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

King Lear Exercises

Act III, Scene ii

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. During the storm, a flash of lit up the sky and the children were afraid.
 a) lightning b) thunder
 c) wind d) tornado
2. My elder sister would never me for losing her ring.
 a) prohibit b) forgive
 c) allow d) expect
3. A is a small simple building with only one or two rooms.
 a) palace b) resort
 c) hut d) hall
4. Closing the factory was a decision as it led to loss of jobs.
 a) hearted b) easy-hearted
 c) soft-hearted d) hard-hearted
5. All the animals in this small farm sleep on
 a) sheets b) leather
 c) straw d) skin
6. Our host, Mrs. Adams, insisted on from her chair to greet us.
 a) raising b) rising
 c) keeping d) staying
7. Despite the pain, the old woman herself to get out of bed.
 a) forced b) delighted
 c) punished d) pleased
8. The floods have killed hundreds of people and made thousands
 a) speechless b) sightless
 c) homeless d) useless
9. One of the main symbols of the Olympics is the Olympic which is lit all through the Games.
 a) sword b) torch
 c) stadium d) circle
10. Ahmed's brother lost his life in a/an train accident.
 a) effective b) impressive
 c) delightful d) horrible

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The rich businessman made a of cash on the sale of one of his companies.
 a) hole b) mountain c) pile d) hill
2. The health minister has come under from all sides because of the accident in the hospital.
 a) rocket b) fire c) pocket d) shot
3. I'm going to the park outside the city for a of fresh air.
 a) breath b) push c) quantity d) quality
4. International schools in New York accept children from all and religions.
 a) heights b) wealth c) competitions d) races
5. The carpenter the wood with a waterproof sealant مادة عازلة to protect it.
 a) cured b) treated c) processed d) operated
6. He won't let his elder brother him around like that.
 a) depart b) accept c) boss d) head
7. Sales of the products at present low prices would be a of the company's investment.
 a) waste b) miss c) profit d) benefit
8. I'll tell you what happened, but I don't want to get all the reasons for why it happened.
 a) back b) into c) on d) out
9. I know he broke the window, but so far, he hasn't up.
 a) possessed b) spent c) owned d) admitted
10. In some parts of the country, there are still of violence and unrest.
 a) packets b) piles c) resources d) pockets
11. We got to the station just to catch the last train.
 a) for time b) the time c) in time d) on time
12. They didn't manage to get to the match it was nearly over.
 a) until b) before c) by the time d) when

13 For information, contact the reception desk.
a) farther b) furthest c) further d) far

14 My neighbours are away for the weekend so, that can't be car outside.
a) theirs b) our c) them d) their

15 They send emails to every week.
a) himself b) each other c) they d) itself

16 There were so people at the exhibition that we could hardly move.
a) many b) a lot of c) much d) lots of

17 Don't forget to phone me, ...?
a) you did b) would you c) do you d) will you

18 If you want to see the director, you'll have to an appointment.
a) do b) make c) face d) construct

19 Mohamed Salah was regarded the greatest player in Liverpool last year.
a) as b) such c) like d) so

20 It is said that Egyptians have the sense of humour even in hard times.
a) more b) any c) the d) an

21 He couldn't come to the party he was busy.
a) because of b) owing to c) since d) due to

22 a huge creature this is!
a) What b) Which c) When d) How

23 While , he fell down.
a) was playing b) playing c) play d) had played

24 My mother usually puts her glasses on T.V.
a) a b) an c) no article d) the

25 We will discuss your requirements before we working on the project.
a) started b) start c) had started d) starting

Test 6
Based on Unit 6

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new cancer hospital in 6th October City accepts from all people.
 a) sales b) donations c) products d) crops
2. The shop showed the young woman all the red dresses in the shop, but she didn't like any of them.
 a) assistant b) designer c) customer d) servant
3. The price of the trip costs 10000 pounds travel and accommodation.
 a) consisting b) enclosing c) containing d) including
4. When I was in Alexandria, I spent most of the day out with my friends.
 a) changing b) returning c) hanging d) moving
5. Mother could persuade our father to change his about where to spend the holiday.
 a) head b) mind c) brain d) matter
6. I realised that time was getting and we would have to hurry.
 a) on b) back c) into d) about
7. If you don't water plants, they
 a) die b) died c) will die d) would die
8. Amr's assistant will be late if she the early train.
 a) will miss b) miss c) misses d) missed
9. Hanaa would have met the new teacher if she at school yesterday.
 a) have been b) was c) were d) had been
10. Mobile phones usually working if they fall in water.
 a) will stop b) stop c) would stop d) stopped
11. If the internet, our life would be gloomy.
 a) didn't exist b) existed c) doesn't exist d) exists
12. My brother wouldn't have missed the bus if he so slowly.
 a) walked b) had walked c) hadn't walked d) walks
13. If I go to sleep early, I usually early.
 a) wakes b) would wake up c) will wake up d) wake up
14. What if you'd been late for the exam?
 a) will you do b) would you do c) would you have done d) do you do
15. If your grades good the first term, you will have to work harder the second term.
 a) weren't b) aren't c) hadn't been d) had been
16. If I anywhere in the world, I would go to Egypt to see the Pyramids.
 a) could go b) had gone c) go d) was gone

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Did you know that electric eels have quite a misleading name? They do! That's because even though it's true they are electric, they're actually not eels! Instead they are a kind of fish called "knife fish". The most interesting thing about electric eels is that they can produce an electric charge.

The shock can go up to 600 volts. This can knock down a full-grown horse. Electric eels use their charge to hunt and protect themselves. They also use the charge in another way. Since these eels have poor eyesight, they don't rely on their eyes to see. Instead, they give out a weak electric signal that they use like radar. This radar helps them find their way around. It also helps them locate their prey.

Electric eels live in fresh water. They are nocturnal, which means they sleep during the day and are active at night. They mostly live in rivers in South America. They like dark waters, mud and caves. Most of their time is spent underwater and will regularly come to the surface about every ten minutes to inhale air through its mouth, then it will swim back to the bottom of the water.

Electric eels are carnivores, so they love to eat meat. They are very good at attacking their prey and their teeth are really sharp. If you saw an electric eel, you might think it looks like a snake. They have long, thin bodies. They can be white, black, blue, purple, or grey. They rarely harm humans. In fact, they are afraid of people. In some cultures, people eat electric eels. They are a delicacy. Since the blood can be **toxic**, the eels need to be fully cooked. Would you eat one?

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Where might you find an electric eel?

a) In the deep waters of the Pacific Ocean.

b) In the shallow coastal waters of the Mediterranean Sea.

c) In the fresh waters of the Amazon River.

d) Only in zoos because they are extinct in the wild.

18 What does delicacy mean in "In some cultures, people eat electric eels. They are a delicacy."?

a) A specialty food item.

b) A common snack food.

c) A symbol of good luck.

d) An unlucky omen.

19 How are electric eels different from most fish in the way they obtain oxygen to breathe?

a) Electric eels get oxygen through the food they eat.

b) Electric eels come up to the surface to breathe air through their mouths.

c) Electric eels have an extra set of gills on their bodies.

d) Electric eels do not need to obtain oxygen to survive like other fish.

20 The antonym of the word "**toxic**" is "……".

a) innocent

b) poisonous

c) harmful

d) harmless

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How do electric eels produce electricity?

……

22 According to what you read in the article, how is an electric eel's name misleading?

……

23 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) Animals that only eat meat.

b) Active at night.

……

24 What do you think of the people who like eating dangerous fish like electric eels?

……

25 Translate into English:

- حصلت المرأة المصرية على كثير من حقوقها الاجتماعية والسياسية؛ حيث أصبحت تشغل المناصب المرموقة، ولها نسبة تمثيل فى مجلس النواب ومجلس الشيوخ.

……

26 Translate into Arabic:

Some scientists believe that science has no limits. This can lead them to dangerous experiments which can create problems or even new viruses.

……

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The job you dream of and your reasons for choosing it."

……

……

……

……

……

Revision (2)
Units 4, 5 & 6

Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

bandage (n)	ضمادة
bottom (n)	قاع
character (n)	شخصية
chat (n) (v) (ted)	الدردشة/يدردش
choice (n)	اختيار
comment (n)	تعليق
conversation (n)	محادثة
digital (adj)	رقمى
e-book (n)	كتاب إلكترونى
expert (n)	خبير
expression (n)	تعبير
fall over (v)	يقع
feelings (n)	مشاعر
footprints (n)	آثار أقدام
innovator (n)	مبتكر
joke (n) (v) (d)	نكتة/يمزح
last (v) (ed)	يدوم/يستمر
messaging (n)	مراسلة/كتابة رسائل
misunderstand (v)	يسىء الفهم
phrase (n)	عبارة
positive (adj)	إيجابى
post (n) (v) (ed)	بريد/ينشر (على موقع)
profile (n)	ملف شخصى
remain (v) (ed)	يبقى
remove (v) (d)	يزيل
response (n)	رد/استجابة
ruin (n) (v) (ed)	خراب/يدمر
search (n)	بحث
speed up (v)	يسرع
storyteller (n)	راوى قصة
swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
tap (v) (ped)	ينقر
tone (n)	رنة/نبرة صوت نغمة
upload (v) (ed)	يرفع إلى الإنترنت
warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Reading Text (1)

New technology often changes the way we do things. In the past, people could only tell stories by talking to each other, but this changed when stories could be written down and read. Modern technology means we can read e-books and listen to audio books, but there are always new ways to enjoy great stories. Chat stories are short stories that you can read on your smartphone. They look like messages between the characters in the story. And when you finish reading one part of the conversation, you tap the bottom of your screen to show the next message. Reading a chat story feels like you're reading someone's messages. Some chat stories also include photos, audio and videos, so you can see what a character looks like and the expressions on their face. And some chat stories let you make choices about what happens next. But some storytellers want us to go further. They invite us to imagine how our phones could show the world around us like we were in a film or a video game. Through our phones, we could also meet the characters from our stories. They think that we will learn to enjoy stories in a new way because we will be at the centre of the action. However, we must remember to make the stories fun and interesting because technology can become boring when we forget to include human feelings.



Reading Text (2)

Digital footprints

Scientists have discovered human footprints in Australia that are 20,000 years old. There are footprints of a family with a small child, and five men who ran as fast as Olympic athletes. Footprints can tell us a lot about what people did, and they can last for a long time. The phrase 'digital footprint' describes all the information that we leave behind when we use the internet. It includes things like our social media profiles, posts and the photos we upload, as well as the groups that we've joined and posts from other people that we've shared. Our search history is also part of our digital footprint. Emails can remain online for years, and the comments that we make on videos can be seen by anyone. Taha El-Sayed is an expert in internet security. He advises people to do an internet search for their own names to see what other people can find. Then we're supposed to remove anything that we don't like, and we're encouraged to close any social media accounts that we don't use anymore. He says that we have to be careful with our behaviour and try to be positive online. When asked about advice for young people, he said, "Think about how other people could react to your photos, videos or comments. Control who can see your posts and keep photos and information private in social media." He also warned young people not to share addresses, phone numbers or the name of their school with anyone online. He said, "Most young people don't mean to give away too much information, but they often forget about security when they meet new friends or join a group online."



Listening Text

Yasser: So, Hany posted a funny picture that he had taken last summer and we were all laughing at it. Gamal was in it. He had fallen into a swimming pool with his clothes on. He looked very surprised, so I was making a few jokes about it with Fady.
But when Gamal saw the jokes, he was angry. He said he'd only fallen into the pool to stop Hany's little cousin, Amir, falling in. He had asked Hany to take a picture but it was wet and he fell over. Gamal stopped him falling in, but then he fell instead. Gamal wasn't hurt but he wasn't happy, so he asked Hany not to show anyone the picture. Hany had agreed, but then he posted a lot of pictures from last summer and I guess he'd forgotten about that one.
So, now I think Gamal isn't my friend any more.

Workbook Exercises (Units 4-6)

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1 I have a look at what you're posting online?
a) Will b) Can c) Would d) Can't

2 Our geography teacher never smiles and has a permanent
a) frown b) emoji c) tone d) laugh

3 I downloaded that program. Now I have a virus on my laptop.
a) can't have b) could have c) shouldn't have d) will have

4 Did you know that 'CUl8er' is the for 'see you later'?
a) acronym b) selfie c) emoji d) abbreviation

5 My mother always has a bad reaction if she honey.
a) eats b) will have c) have d) had

6 We had a small about which birthday present to buy our friend.
a) banner b) disagreement c) blog post d) disbelief

7 I wish I taken that selfie. I look terrible!
a) have not b) has not c) won't have d) had not

8 The teacher us not to look at our phones during the exam.
a) looked b) suggested c) warned d) recommended

9 I shouldn't have read the email so quickly because I the message.
a) misunderstands b) misunderstanding
c) misunderstand d) misunderstood

10 When we are not sure about how to spell a word, we can a dictionary.
a) consult b) scan c) update d) skim

11 If you post that picture of Amir, he angry for sure.
a) would have got b) would get c) gets d) will get

12 Have you seen that there are 6,000 of my brother's blog?
a) posters b) subscribers c) likes d) followers

13 My dad wanted that new car the moment he set eyes it.
a) on b) in c) with d) back

14 I can't see this photo clearly. What is it?
a) meaning to be b) seemed to be
c) supposed to d) meant to be

15 I like to hang with my friends in the park after school.

a) on b) with c) out d) in

16 I saw that someone is offering a/an for finding a lost mobile phone.

a) profit b) assistant c) prize d) reward

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

un - mis - re - less - er - able

1 Maya got into trouble for (behaving) in class.

2 My grandfather said that the shops used to sell (usable) soft drink bottles.

3 This tablet is (use) because the battery is very old.

4 The text on this phone is so small it's (unread).

5 I think it was very (kind) of him to say what he did. He is a nasty person.

6 To be a good friend, you need to be a good (listen).

3 Match the sentence halves to make zero, first, second or third conditional sentences.

1. I wouldn't download that program	**A)** if she hadn't said anything.
2. If you had told me earlier,	**B)** we have to do PE indoors.
3. If you install the app like this,	**C)** if I were you.
4. If I studied harder,	**D)** it works perfectly.
5. If you get caught cheating,	**E)** we will finish the project sooner.
6. At my school, if it rains,	**F)** you will be in big trouble.
7. It would have been fine	**G)** I would have put the torch in my bag.
8. If you help me,	**H)** I would get better exam results.

4 Write the reported speech sentences using the words in brackets.

1. Our teacher: 'If I were you, I wouldn't frown when you are in a job interview.' (advised)

2. My mum: 'Please help me to find that photo on my phone?' (asked)

3. Adam's dad: 'I'm sure if you keep on revising, you will do very well in your English exam, Adam.' (encouraged)

4. Our grandmother: 'Be careful to keep your new phones away from water.' (warned)

5 Fill in the gaps with one word. Listen and check:

Are you actively listening or just waiting your turn?

When you are hanging(1)..... with friends, do you listen carefully to them or do you just wait for your turn to speak? If you really listen, then you are an active listener and a good friend. If you want to make sure that you continue to get (2)..... with your friends and do not fall(3)..... with them, here are a few tips.

No one likes to feel like their friends are ignoring them. To avoid your friends turning their backs(4)..... you, keep eye contact while you chat. This shows them that you are listening. Don't keep looking at your phone all the time. If your friend is enjoying talking and really getting(5)..... telling you about something, encourage them to speak and don't interrupt. Don't be unreliable!

Psychologists advise us to be patient and ask questions to avoid misunderstandings. We should always make an effort to see things from their point of view. Being an active listener will make your friendships stronger, and your friends will always want to keep(6)..... touch with you.

6 Read the text again and answer the questions:

1. Find the following words in the text:
 a) to ignore
 b) to think or feel like someone
 c) to stop someone from saying something
2. What should you do with your eyes when talking to a friend?
3. What advice do psychologists give to avoid disagreements with friends?
4. In what way should we try to understand what our friends are saying?
5. What are the advantages of being an active listener?
6. Why do you think we should not judge the opinions of others?

7 Translate the following into Arabic:

Body language often has a great impact in transmining messages. Facial expressions and eye movements are important. A smile on the face reflects confidence, while a frown reflects the opposite.

8 Translate the following into English:

- تتمتع مصر عبر كل العصور بالكثير من عوامل الجذب السياحية، ومن أهمها الآثار المصرية القديمة، لذا علينا أن نرشد السياح جيدا للحفاظ عليها لأهميتها التاريخية.

9 Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. He understood what I wanted him to do because he did the opposite.
2. On my opinion, I think we should choose this one.
3. Maher seem to be a lot happier in his new school.
4. You should skim the text for specific information.
5. If we know you were coming, we would have prepared a meal.
6. I made a bad mistake, but my father forbade me because I didn't intend to do it.
7. My mother asked me go to the shop.
8. It is sensitive to keep note of your passport number.
9. The bus was too crowded; I didn't find a room for us!
10. He should have studies more for the exam.

10 Choose one of the two topics. Write about (180) words on the topic:

1. Write a short biography of a famous person that you consider your role model.
2. Write a blog post about how often you send and receive text messages, and the language you use.



King Lear: Acts 2-3 SB

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Nurses need to have a lot of so they can be kind to people.
a) anger b) beauty c) patience d) power

2 I think I will mad if I need to do this again.
a) talk b) send c) come d) go

3 A is a small building with only one room.
a) castle b) palace c) hut d) boat

4 I to Eman because I was late meeting her at the cafe.
a) told b) apologised c) persuaded d) said

5 My father wanted to stay at home, but then he his mind and came with us.
a) made b) put c) got d) changed

6 I lost my key, so I was locked of our house until my mum came home.
a) out b) under c) into d) off

7 I had to walk because there was no..... for me in the car.
a) room b) chair c) time d) move

8 We'll order food when Hisham..... here.
a) goes b) finds c) gets d) sends

9 It was dark, so we used a to see where we were going.
a) cart b) mouse c) torch d) sword

10 The ferry will arrive in the at half past seven.
a) park b) port c) field d) road

11 Please don't turn your..... on me.
a) side b) head c) front d) back

12 We had to in a shop when it started to rain.
a) cover b) shelter c) find d) exit

2 Match the people (a-h) with the sentences (1-8):

a) Cordelia	1. is living in France now.
b) Edgar	2. lies to his father about his brother.
c) Edmund	3. comes to her sister's home.
d) The Fool	4. wants her father to leave with her sister.
e) Goneril	5. tries to make the king happier with jokes.
f) Kent	6. finds somewhere for the king to stay in the storm.
g) King Lear	7. says his name is Poor Tom.
h) Regan	8. agrees to go into the hut with Poor Tom.

3 Answer the questions:

1. **Why does Edmund pretend to fight his brother, Edgar?**
 a) To protect his father. b) To make Edgar look bad.
2. **What will happen to anyone who helps Edgar to hide?**
 a) He/ She will get a reward. b) He/ She will be arrested.
3. **Who put Kent in the stocks?**
 a) Goneril and Albany. b) Regan and Cornwall.
4. **Why won't Goneril apologise to King Lear?**
 a) She doesn't think she's done anything wrong.
 b) She wants to make King Lear angry.
5. **Why does Cornwall want to go inside?**
 a) He can see a storm coming. b) He feels cold and tired.
6. **What has the King of France sent to England?**
 a) His wife. b) An army.
7. **Where has Gloucester put the letter he received?**
 a) In his dining room. b) In his bedroom.
8. **Why does King Lear say that he is poor?**
 a) Because his daughters have been cruel.
 b) Because he is cold and hungry.
9. **Who says that Poor Tom is a philosopher?**
 a) Gloucester. b) King Lear.

4 Read the quotations and answer the questions:

1. **"He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I'll be faithful to him; the Fool will always stay, and let the wise men run away."**
 a) Who is the Fool talking about?
 b) Why will the Fool stay with him?
2. **"He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make a bear hide in a cove, but the king is running around outside without even a hot."**
 a) Why is King Lear outside in a storm?
 b) How does King Lear feel about his daughters?
3. **"I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen - the poor man!"**
 a) Who are the two people that Gloucester is talking to?
 b) Who does Gloucester think he's talking to?

5 Writing:

Imagine that you **are Edgar. Write a diary entry about the night of the storm. Include what happened, how you felt about it and what might happen next.**

Test on Units 4, 5 & 6

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Our teacher at us when we said we forgot to do our homework.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

2 Al Ahly is the team who won the most African of football.
a) titles b) names c) headings d) tours

3 We decided to a specialist about our father's heart problem.
a) predict b) consult c) detect d) hire

4 Every day, we see more and more internet on which people can communicate.
a) pavements b) views c) stations d) platforms

5 The 100-metre is described as the most exciting competition in athletics.
a) race b) path c) match d) passage

6 Visiting my friend in hospital brought sad memories about my grandfather's death.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

7 The doctor told me plenty of water.
a) to drink b) not to drink c) I will d) if I drank

8 It that there is a mistake in these figures.
a) is supposed to b) seems c) is meant to d) seemed

9 If I had known you were allergic to chocolate, I you a vanilla birthday cake.
a) would make b) could make
c) will make d) would have made

10 **A:** I got very wet walking home in the rain last night.
B: Why did you walk? You a taxi.
a) could take b) took
c) could have taken d) shouldn't have taken

11 He to have been an actor when he was younger.
a) seemed b) means c) is supposed d) seems

12 she planned things properly, she wouldn't get into a mess now.
a) Should b) Had c) If d) Were

13 Yesterday, I left the car unlocked. It stolen, but luckily, it wasn't.
a) couldn't have b) could have been
c) could have d) should have

14 Why are you angry? It be a joke.
a) is supposed to b) means to c) seems d) supposed

15 You can borrow my camera you buy me a new one if you break it.
a) were b) should c) providing that d) unless

16 They didn't come to our party. They have received our invitation.
a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) could d) oughtn't

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Imagine how life could be on earth without modern technology. Imagine how you could do your daily life routine without home appliances and the internet. Some people argue that it is a double- edged weapon.

In today's modern society, the internet is a very educational and productive tool. In order to become knowledgeable and stay well connected. Without technology some individuals cannot function throughout their day. Many people use it for business purposes while others use technology in order to communicate on social networking sites such as Twitter or Facebook. Despite the beneficial users, predators often abuse its powers. This tool puts consumers at risk for identity theft through scamming and even hacking.

Cyber-crime is any illegal activity committed on the internet that uses a computer as its primary means of theft. Through identity theft, a predator without someone's knowledge acquires data and uses it to commit fraud. It is often difficult to catch cyber criminals because the internet makes it easier for people to do things from any location on the globe. Predators use methods such as spam advertisements and even phony programmes that have viruses.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main idea of the passage is
a) the internet is a very educational and productive tool.
b) the internet and cyber-crimes.
c) the internet "advantages and disadvantages".
d) the internet as a means of communication.

18 People use the internet for
a) business b) communication
c) scamming and hacking d) all of these

19 The underlined word "predators" means
a) hackers b) hatchers c) customers d) traders

20 The best sentence that summarises the passage is
a) Spam advertisements and phony programmes are useful.
b) Don't use the internet ever again.
c) We can't protect ourselves from cyber criminals.
d) We can't do without the internet, but we should be careful when using it.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Do you think technology is going to stand still? Why? Why not?
.....

22 Explain how we could protect our data from predators. Give a reason.
.....

23 How can we overcome the abuse of the internet? Illustrate.
.....

24 How would you imagine life without the internet? Why?
.....

25 Translate into English:

- أصبح تحدث أكثر من لغة أجنبية، وتعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر من أهم المؤهلات التى يحتاج إليها سوق العمل، وزادت أهمية ذلك مع لجوء الشركات للعمل على الإنترنت بسبب جائحة كورونا.

.....

26 Translate into Arabic:

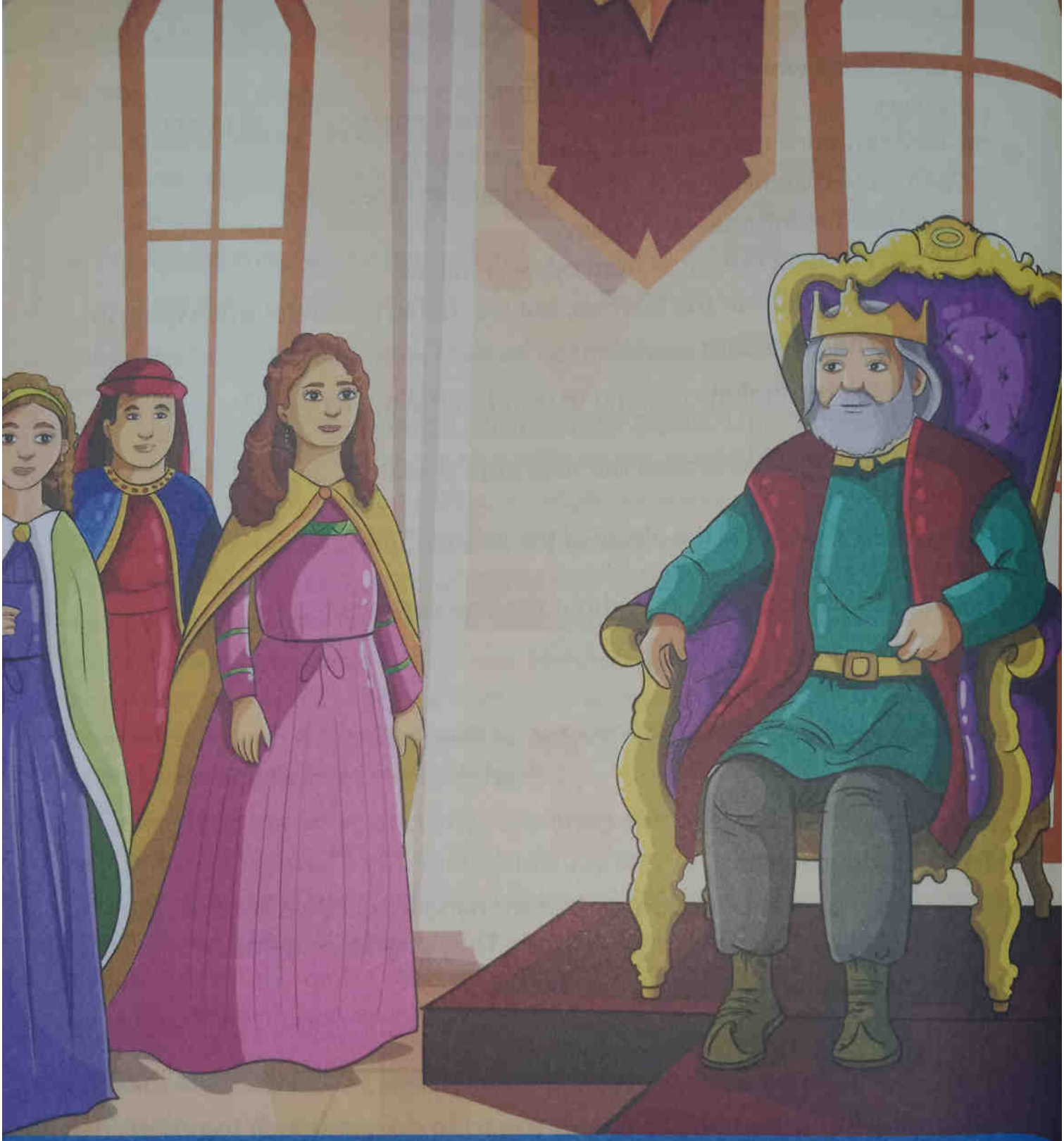
Technology played an important part in changing people's lifestyle. They chat or email people instead of talking to them. They play video games instead of doing sports or exercises.

.....

27 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your teacher asked you and your friend to do a research together. Ask your friend how to arrange doing it and what resources will you use."

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



King Lear

By: William Shakespeare

Introduction

(A) The Writer (William Shakespeare)

William Shakespeare was an English poet, playwright كاتب مسرحي, and actor born in 1564 in Stratford-upon-Avon. His birthday is most commonly celebrated on 23 April, which is also believed to be the date he died in 1616.

Shakespeare's father worked as a glove-maker صانع قفازات, but he also became an important figure in the town of Stratford. His high position مكانة meant that he was even more likely to have sent his children, including William, to the local grammar school. When he was eighteen, Shakespeare married Anne Hathaway. They had three children. Their first daughter, Susanna, was followed by twins Hamnet and Judith. Hamnet died when he was just 11 years old.

Shakespeare's career started in London. During his time in London, Shakespeare's first printed works were published. They were two long poems قصيدتين, *'Venus and Adonis'* (1593) and *'The Rape of Lucrece'* (1594). He also became a founding مؤسس member of The Lord Chamberlain's Men, a company فرقة of actors. Shakespeare was the company's regular dramatist كاتب المسرحيات, producing on average two plays a year, for almost twenty years.

He remained with the company for the rest of his career, during which time it evolved into *"The King's Men"* under the patronage رعاية of King James. During his time in the company Shakespeare wrote many of his most famous tragedies تراجيديا, such as *King Lear* and *Macbeth*, as well as great romances قصص رومانسية, like *The Winter's Tale and The Tempest*.

Although Shakespeare's professional career was spent in London, he maintained close links with his native town. His success in the London theatres made him considerably wealthy, and by 1597 he was able to buy a large house in Stratford-upon-Avon. He eventually returned to his hometown and lived there until he died.

Shakespeare's legacy تراث is as rich and diverse متنوع as his work; his plays have received countless adaptations نسخ across multiple genres أنواع متعددة and cultures. His plays have had an enduring presence وجود مستمر on stage and film. William Shakespeare continues to be one of the most important literary figures of the English language.

(B) The Play

King Lear is a play written by William Shakespeare. It is a tragedy about the king of Britain, who is planning how to divide his kingdom مملكة between his three daughters. In order to decide, Lear asks his daughters to tell them how much they love him. The answer from his youngest daughter, Cordelia, makes him angry and he disowns her. His other daughters betray يخدع him and he eventually realises he has made a bad decision.

(C) Characters in the Play

KING LEAR	: The King of Britain
GONERIL	: King Lear's eldest daughter
REGAN	: King Lear's second daughter
CORDELIA	: King Lear's youngest daughter
KING OF FRANCE	: He wants to marry Cordelia.
DUKE OF BURGUNDY	: He also wants to marry Cordelia.
DUKE OF ALBANY	: Goneril's husband
DUKE OF CORNWALL	: Regan's husband
DUKE OF KENT	: A good friend of King Lear
DUKE OF GLOUCESTER	: A good friend of King Lear
EDGAR	: Gloucester's eldest son
EDMUND	: Gloucester's youngest son
FOOL	: Lear's clown
OSWALD	: A servant
OLD MAN	: A man who helps Gloucester
GENTLEMAN	: A friend of Kent
CAPTAIN	: One of Edmund's soldiers
DOCTOR	
HERALD	

Servants, soldiers and messengers of the King and his family

(D) Summary of the Plot

Act I

King Lear begins as the Earl الأيرل (لقب إنجليزى) of Gloucester introduces his illegitimate غير شرعى son, Edmund, to the Earl of Kent. Lear, King of Britain, enters with his court بلاط الملك. Now that he is an old man, Lear has decided to divide his kingdom between his three daughters. The division will depend on the quality of each princess' declarations تصريح of love for her father before the court. Goneril, Duchess دوقة of Albany, and Regan, Duchess of Cornwall, both speak enthusiastically بحماس and earn their father's praise مديح. But Cordelia, the youngest, says nothing because she cannot voice her deep love for Lear. Misunderstanding his daughter, Lear disowns يتبرأ من and banishes ينفى her from the kingdom. He also banishes the Earl of Kent, who had taken Cordelia's side against the King.

This action by the king divides the kingdom, both figuratively مجازيًا and literally حرفيًا. Cordelia's suitor الخاطب, the Duke of Burgundy, rejects her once she is dowerless بلا مهر, but the King of France values يقدر her honesty and takes her as his wife. Lear's kingdom is shared between Goneril and Regan and their suitors (the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall, respectively). Lear plans to alternate يتناوب living with each of them.

Act II

Meanwhile, Edmund is determined مصمم to be recognised as a rightful صحيح/شرعى son of Gloucester. By a trick, he persuades his father that his legitimate brother, Edgar, is plotting يتآمر against Gloucester's life. Warned by Edmund that his life is in danger, Edgar flees يهرب and takes the disguise تنكر of a Bedlam beggar متسول. Edmund becomes a courtier خادم to Goneril. Goneril meanwhile grows increasingly exasperated غاضب by the behaviour of Lear's hundred companions who are upsetting her life at Albany's castle, and she criticises her father.

Kent has returned from exile المنفى in disguise and wins a place as a servant to Lear. Kent accompanies يصطحب Lear when, in a rage نوبة غضب against her criticisms, he curses Goneril and leaves. Lear goes, unannounced, to live with Regan and Cornwall who, it turns out, has gone out to visit Gloucester. When Lear arrives at Gloucester's house to find Regan, she spurns يرفض/يزدرى him and his followers, namely his devoted companion, the Fool الأحمق.

Act III

Despairing يائس for his daughters, and deeply regretting rejecting Cordelia, Lear goes mad at the height of a great storm. He and the Fool run wild يهيم بلا هدف on the heath أرض بور until Gloucester takes them into a hut كوخ for shelter ملجأ. He then seeks the aid of Kent to get them away to the coast ساحل, where Cordelia has landed with a French army to fight for her father against her sisters and their husbands. Gloucester then leaves and returns home.

Meanwhile, Edmund is employed as a messenger مبعوث/رسول between the sisters and is courted by each in turn. He persuades Cornwall that Gloucester (his father) is an enemy عدو because he has been in touch with France and helped Lear and when they are turned away by Regan. As punishment عقاب for Gloucester's seeming betrayal خيانة, Cornwall and Regan pluck out يقتلع his eyes and abandon يهجر him. During the act of blinding Gloucester, a servant stabs يطعن Cornwall, who dies. But Regan continues to rule with Edmund's help.

Act IV

Out in the storm, Lear finds shelter where Edgar has also taken refuge يلجأ, still disguised as the beggar. The Fool, the mad king, and the disguised "insane" غير عاقل beggar become unlikely companions رفاق before they are separated. Edgar finds Gloucester wandering يهيم the heath alone and in agony عذاب/كرب. Since his father is blind, Edgar leads the despairing man to the coast and helps him along the journey to come to an acceptance قبول of his life. Gloucester later meets the mad Lear on Dover beach, near Cordelia's camp. With Kent's aid, Lear is rescued and re-united يلم شمل with Cordelia. Gloucester, now reunited with Edgar, dies quietly alone.

Act V

The French forces قوات are overcome by Albany's army led by Edmund, and Lear and Cordelia are captured يتم القبض عليهم. Goneril has already poisoned Regan in their jealous مغامر rivalry منافسة over Edmund's attention. Edgar, disguised now as a loyal knight فارس, challenges Edmund to a duel مبارزة بالسيف and wounds him mortally. Seeing no way out, Goneril kills herself, and the dying Edmund confesses يعترف his misdeeds and releases Cordelia. However, it is too late to save Cordelia from the hangman الجلاد. Lear's heart breaks as he carries the body of his beloved youngest daughter in his arms, and he dies. Albany and Edgar are left to re-organise يعيد تنظيم the kingdom and resolve the civil wars.

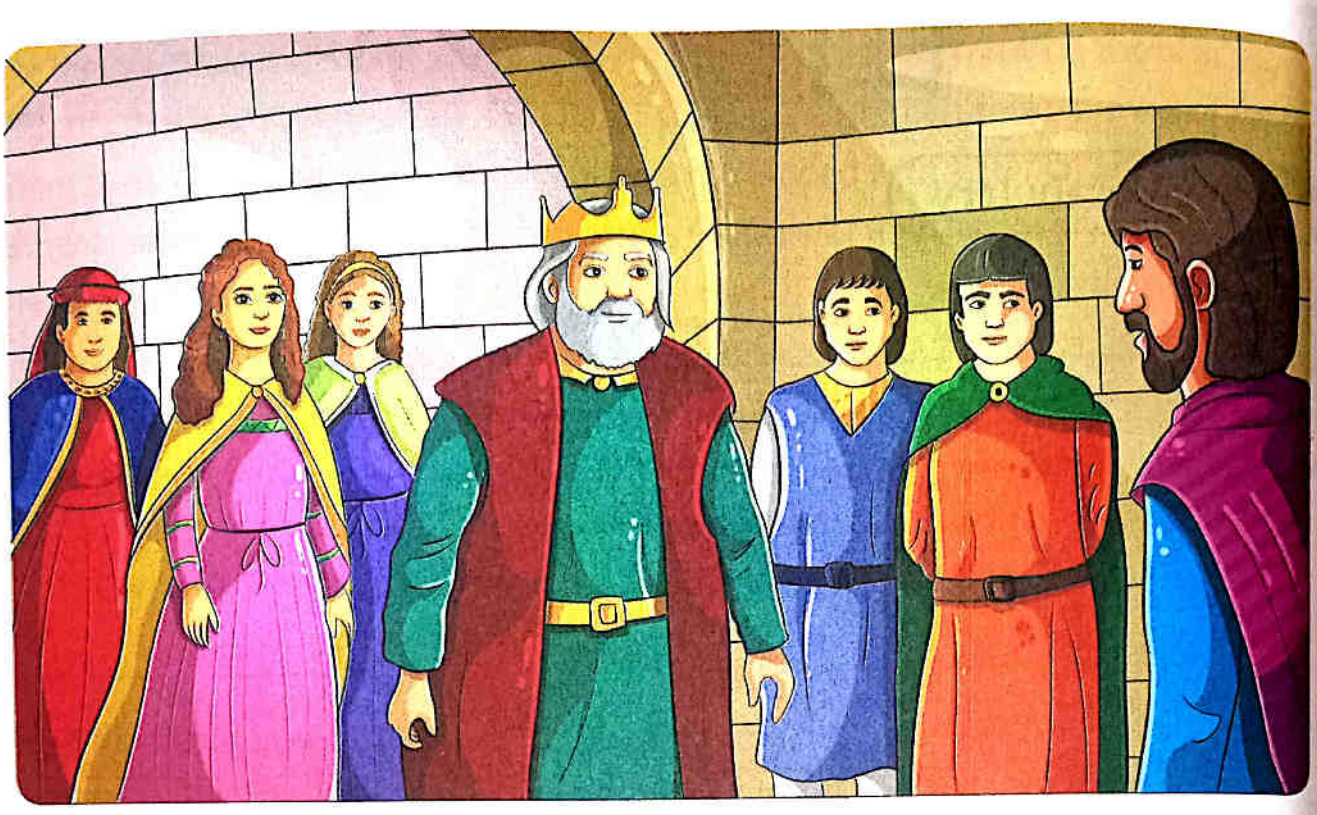
Act I, Scene i

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

act	فصل (فى مسرحية)
actions	إجراءات/أفعال
answer	إجابة/رد
beauty	جمال
call	ينادى على
change	يتغير
countryside	ريف
cruel	قاسٍ
divide	يقسم
duke	دوق (لقب)
duty	مهمة/واجب
feelings	مشاعر
fine	محترم
foolish	أحمق
give away	يتبرع
hate	يكره
honest	صادق
kill	يقتل
kingdom	مملكة
majesty	جلالة
marry	يتزوج
promise	يعد
riches	ثروات
scene	مشهد (فى مسرحية)
shout about	يصرخ
speech	خطاب
stranger	شخص غريب
sword	سيف
third	ثلث
title	لقب

Scene Text



[In King Lear's Palace]

(DUKE OF) GLOUCESTER: Ah, the Duke of Kent!
Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund?

(DUKE OF) KENT: I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

GLOUCESTER: I'm very proud of him.

EDMUND: I'm pleased to meet you, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Edmund is my second child. I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund.

EDMUND: Listen! The King is coming.

[King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave.]

KING LEAR: Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my kingdom to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia. I will also give an answer to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter, Cordelia.

First, look at this map of my kingdom. I have divided it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most? Goneril, you are the eldest, so you can speak first.

GONERIL: Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. I love you more than health, beauty and riches.

CORDELIA: *[To herself]* I love my father, but I don't know what to say!

KING LEAR: *[Pointing to the map]* Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say?

REGAN: Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to say. Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as you.

CORDELIA: *[To herself]* What can I say? I don't have the words to say how much I love my father.

KING LEAR: Thank you Regan. I will give a third of our beautiful kingdom to you and your children.

[To Cordelia] Now, Cordelia, my youngest daughter. What can you say to make me give you more than I gave to your sisters?

CORDELIA: I can say nothing, father.

KING LEAR: Nothing? Cordelia, if you say nothing, I will give you nothing. Speak again.

CORDELIA: I cannot put my feelings into words. I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less.

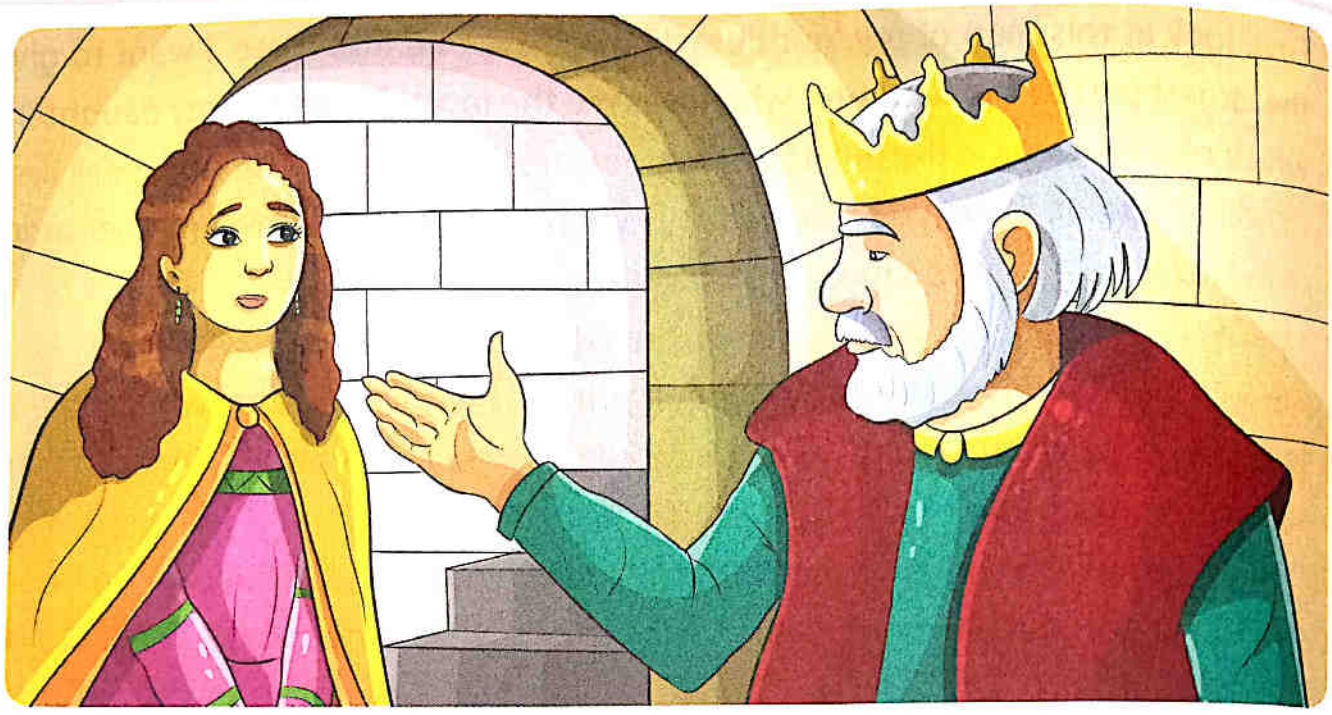
KING LEAR: But this is not kind, Cordelia. Change your speech a little, or your future will change, too.

CORDELIA: You have always been a good father and it is my duty to love you too. But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too? If I marry, I will love my husband as much as my father.

KING LEAR: Cordelia. Do you really mean this? Can you be so young but also so cruel?

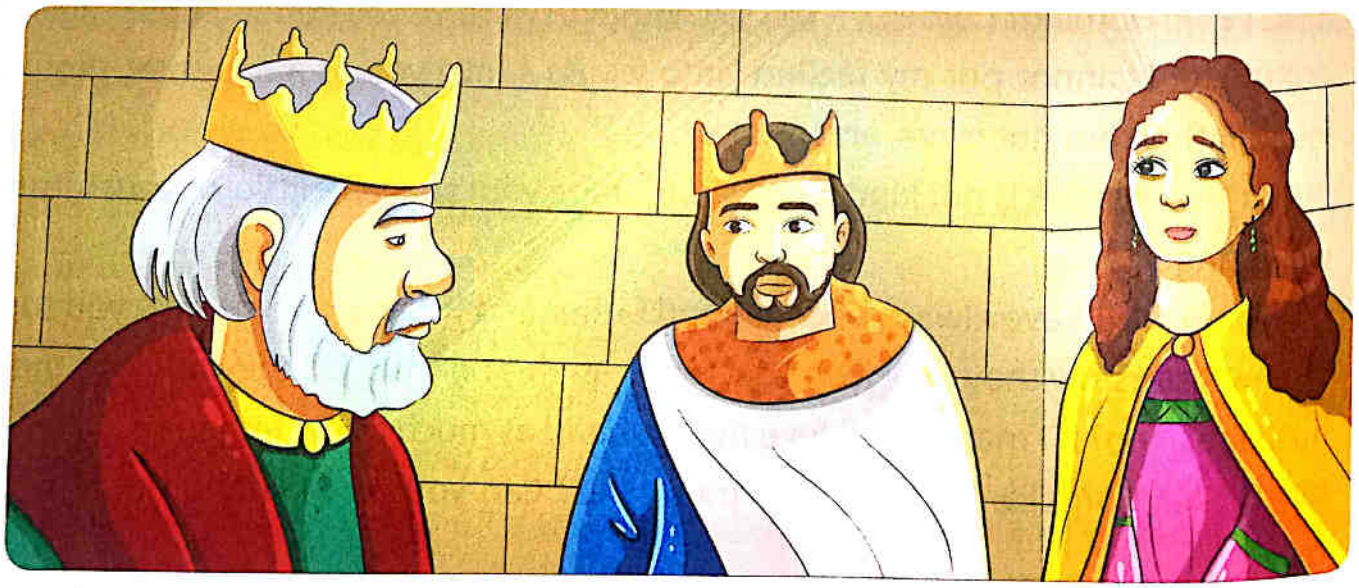
CORDELIA: Father, I am young but I am honest.

KING LEAR: Then you are not my daughter any more. You are now a stranger to me. I don't know you.



KENT: But your majesty ...

KING LEAR: Be quiet, Kent! I loved Cordelia, and I wanted her to look after me when I was old. Now she must go! But first, call the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy! While we wait for them, listen to what I say: Goneril and her husband Albany, and Regan with her husband Cornwall, will have half of my kingdom each. They will have all the power and riches that come with being a king. All I want is to keep the title of King, but they will have everything else.



KENT: Your majesty, what do you mean? I must speak honestly when my King is being foolish. Your youngest daughter does not shout about her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least. You mustn't give your country away like this.

KING LEAR: Say nothing more to me, Kent!
KENT: I am not afraid to make you angry if it will help to protect you.
KING LEAR: Then you must go away too! Leave!
KENT: Let me stay and give you good advice, King Lear. You must learn to see better.
KING LEAR: Oh, you are a cruel man!
[He puts his hand on his sword.]
(DUKE OF) CORNWALL: Your majesty, please stop!
KENT: I'll say it again, King Lear. You've done a terrible thing.
KING LEAR: Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed. Go!
KENT: Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear King.
[To Cordelia] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country.
[Gloucester enters with the King of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]
GLOUCESTER: Here are the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.
KING LEAR: Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do you expect to have if you marry my daughter Cordelia?
(DUKE OF) BURGUNDY: Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.
KING LEAR: I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is. You can marry her.
BURGUNDY: I don't understand.
KING LEAR: You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your choice.
BURGUNDY: I'm sorry, sir. I cannot marry her without some of your land.
KING LEAR: Then leave her, sir.
CORDELIA: Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.
KING LEAR: *[To the King of France]* So, the great King of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.
(KING OF) FRANCE: But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.

CORDELIA: *[To King Lear]* Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.

KING LEAR: I shall not. Go! You will have nothing from me!

FRANCE: My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.

[To the King] Your daughter will be the queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me.

KING LEAR: She is yours, King of France; I'll never see her face again.

[To Cordelia] Leave now; without my love. Come with me, Burgundy.

[King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester.]

Act I Scene i Exercises (SB)

1 Read the list of characters in the play and answer the questions:

Cordelia | Duke of Albany | Duke of Burgundy
Duke of Cornwall | Edgar | King of France | King Lear

1. Who is the King of Britain?
2. Who is King Lear's third daughter?
3. Who is married to Regan?
4. Which two characters want to marry Cordelia?
5. Who is Edmund's brother?
6. Who is married to Goneril?

2 Match the words with their meanings:

1. a play	a) a larger part of a play
2. a character	b) a piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre
3. an act	c) a small part of a play which happens in one place
4. a scene	d) a person that an actor plays

3 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences:

1. King Lear wanted to *divide / shout about* his *kingdom / duty* into three parts.
2. The old king had a large amount of *beauty / riches* like silver and gold.
3. Cordelia couldn't think of a good *answer / sir* for her father.
4. The *Duke / title* of Kent is a very important man.
5. Kent thinks that it's *honest / foolish* to tell Cordelia to go away.
6. When King Lear gets angry with Kent, he touches his *power / sword*.

4 Read this part of the play again and answer the questions:

1. Who does King Lear want to give the largest part of his land?

A) The King of France.
B) The daughter who loves him best.
C) The daughter who is the oldest.

2 How much does Goneril say she loves her father?

A) More than health, beauty and riches.

B) More than anyone else.

C) As much as a daughter should love her father.

3 What does King Lear decide to do after listening to Cordelia?

A) Give Cordelia all of his kingdom.

B) Give his kingdom to his two other daughters.

C) Give none of his daughters any of his kingdom.

4 What does Kent tell King Lear?

A) That he has made a bad decision.

B) That he has made a good decision.

C) That he wants to marry Cordelia.

5 Who will Cordelia leave with?

A) The Duke of Burgundy.

B) The King of France.

C) The Duke of Kent.

5 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions:

1 Do you think Cordelia made the right decision? Why? Why not?

2 If you were King Lear, would you send Cordelia away because she didn't say how much she loved you? Why? Why not?

Act I Scene i Exercises (WB)

1 Match the words and the definitions:

1. sword	a) a lot of money or things
2. divide	b) a country that has a king or queen
3. duty	c) the official name of a job
4. foolish	d) separate something into two or more parts
5. kingdom	e) a long, sharp knife
6. riches	f) not sensible or clever
7. beauty	g) something that looks nice or attractive has this
8. title	h) something you do because it is right or part of your job

2 Put the events in the correct order:

a) Cordelia says it is her duty to love her father.
b) King Lear shows people a map of his kingdom.
c) Regan tells Lear how happy he makes her.
d) King Lear tells Kent to leave the kingdom.
e) France says he will marry Cordelia.
f) Goneril says how much she loves her father.
g) Kent meets Gloucester's son, Edmund.
h) King Lear gives all his kingdom to Regan and Goneril.

3 Are these sentences *true* (T) or *false* (F)? Correct the false sentences:

1. The King of France and the Duke of Burgundy both want to marry Cordelia. ☐
2. Gloucester's son Edmund is older than Edgar. ☐
3. Cordelia tells her father that she does not love him. ☐
4. King Lear decides to give all his power and riches to Goneril and Regan. ☐
5. Kent tells Lear that he is doing a good thing. ☐
6. The Duke of Burgundy does not want to marry Cordelia without some land too. ☐
7. King Lear advises the King of France to marry Cordelia. ☐
8. Cordelia knows she has done something wrong to her father. ☐

4 Read again. Who has or will have the following?

Cordelia King of France Duke of Gloucester
Goneril King Lear Regan

1. a son he is proud of
2. three daughters and a title
3. green forests and beautiful countryside
4. a half of her father's kingdom with Goneril
5. a new wife
6. nothing from her father

5 Match to make collocations:

1. ask	a) an answer to a question
2. divide	b) someone happy
3. give	c) something into two
4. make	d) to meet someone
5. pleased	e) someone to marry you

6 Read the quotations and answer the questions:

1. "No child can love a father more than I love you." Why do you think Goneril says this?
2. "You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed!" Who does Lear say this to and why?
3. "Understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words." Who says this and why?
4. "You are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated!" Why does the King of France say this?

7 Imagine that you are Kent. Write a diary entry about the events of the day and what King Lear said to you. Write about 180 words:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Act I, Scenes i–ii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

adult	شخص بالغ
anger	غضب
beat	يتغلب
believe	يصدق
break somebody's heart	يفجع/يحزن
bring	يحضر
conversation	محادثة
deceive	يخدع
decision	قرار
deserve	يستحق
exit	يخرج
fail	يفشل
fool	أحمق
forgive	يغفر
hide	يخفى
income	إيراد/دخل
inheritance	ميراث
lie about	يكذب بشأن
loyalty	وفاء/إخلاص
pocket	جيب/كيس
powers	قوة/سلطة
receive	يتسلم
respect	يحترم
send ... away	يرسل بعيدًا
succeed	ينجح
test	يختبر
throw	يرمى
trust	ثقة
truth	حقيقة/صدق
writing	خط/أسلوب الكتابة

Scene Text



[In King Lear's Palace]

FRANCE: Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye to your sisters.

CORDELIA: Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both. My heart is broken. Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.

GONERIL: Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.

REGAN: Yes, go to your husband. You've failed to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you deserve.

CORDELIA: I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember: everyone discovers the truth in the end. Goodbye!

FRANCE: Come with me, my dear Cordelia.

[The King of France and Cordelia leave.]

GONERIL: Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight.

REGAN: I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.

GONERIL: Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision has made him send her away.

REGAN: He is becoming a little mad in his old age.

GONERIL: Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill health and old age will bring.

REGAN: He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry more often in the future.

GONERIL: Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us.

REGAN: You are right. Let's think about what we can do.

GONERIL: We must do something, and quickly.

[At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.]

EDMUND: My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my inheritance just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm the second son? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother, Edgar, I will have your land. Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he loves you. And I have a letter here. If this letter succeeds, then Edmund the younger son will beat the older son Edgar!

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER: Ah Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent away! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has left the palace tonight without his powers! This has all happened so quickly!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.]

What are you doing Edmund?

EDMUND: Nothing, father.

GLOUCESTER: Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it?

EDMUND: Nothing, sir.



GLOUCESTER: Then, why did you hide it in your pocket? Let me see it.

EDMUND: Please forgive me, father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar that I haven't finished reading yet, but I don't think you should read it.

GLOUCESTER: Let me see that!

EDMUND: OK, but I hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty to my family,

GLOUCESTER: *[Reads the letter.]*

When we respect older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it. Older people only have power because we give it to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our father were dead, you could enjoy half his income, and be loved by your brother Edgar.' Did my son Edgar write this letter? When did you receive this? Who brought it?

EDMUND: It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in through my bedroom window.

GLOUCESTER: Are you sure the writing is your brother's?

EDMUND: Yes, it is his handwriting, father.

GLOUCESTER: Has he ever talked to you about this before?

EDMUND: No, never. But I've often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult, he should be given some of his father's income.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, what a cruel son! Go and find him, Edmund. Where is he?

EDMUND: I don't know, father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant, then you can decide what to do. I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.

GLOUCESTER: Do you really think so?

EDMUND: Yes. Listen, I have a plan. I'll hide you somewhere tonight. I'll discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversation. Then you'll know what he really thinks.

GLOUCESTER: My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar and make him talk to you. I want to know the truth.

EDMUND: I'll go and find him immediately.

GLOUCESTER: Find him, Edmund, and be careful. (to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.



[Gloucester exits. Edgar enters.]

EDMUND: Ah, Edgar. There you are. How are you? When did you last see our father?

EDGAR: I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.

EDMUND: And did you talk to him?

EDGAR: Yes, we spent two hours together.

EDMUND: Did you say anything unkind to him? He's very angry with you at the moment. Please don't go near him until he's less angry.

EDGAR: Really? Then somebody has lied about me.

EDMUND: That's what I'm worried about. Stay with me for now. I'll take you to see our father when he feels better. Here's my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.

EDGAR: My sword? But why?

EDMUND: That's the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly!

[Edgar exits.]

EDMUND: My brother and father trust me, which makes them easy to deceive. I need these two fools to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I'll have to be clever to get it.

[Edmund exits.]

Act I Scenes i–ii Exercises (SB)

1 Replace the words or phrases in bold with the words and phrases in the box:

deceive him | deserves | exits | have a lot of anger
an inheritance | loyalty | sent ... away

1. The King has **told** Cordelia to **leave**
2. Cordelia **leaves** with her husband, France.
3. Goneril thinks that Cordelia should get what she **should receive**
4. Goneril and Reagan expect their father **to feel unhappy and shout**
5. Edmund wants to get **some money** when his father, Gloucester, dies.
6. Gloucester reads the letter that Edmund has written **to make him believe a lie**
7. Edmund says his brother wrote the letter to test his **support** to his family.

2 Match the sentences to the characters they describe:

1. ☐ His/Her heart was broken.
2. ☐ He/She wanted a bigger income.
3. ☐ He/She was wrong to trust someone.
4. ☐ He/She will be ill.
5. ☐ They were told that everyone will learn the truth.

a) Edgar
b) Goneril and Regan
c) King Lear
d) Edmund
e) Cordelia

3 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions:

1. If you were King Lear, would you be unkind to Cordelia because she couldn't say how much she loved you? Why? Why not?
2. Do you think that King Lear was right to give everything to Goneril and Regan? Why? Why not?
3. Are actions more important than words, or are words more important than actions? Why?

4 What are stage directions?

a) Words that the characters say.
b) Instructions that the actors in a play follow.
c) Notes for people who are watching the play.

5 Look at this part of the play again. What information is in the stage directions? Tick what you can find:

a) ☐ the place where a scene is happening
b) ☐ which character is leaving/coming on to the stage
c) ☐ how a character is feeling
d) ☐ something that a character says
e) ☐ something that a character does

Act I Scenes i–ii Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words:

anger deceive exit lie income
inheritance loyalty succeed trust truth

1. Mr Ahmed did not buy his house. It was an from his parents.
2. My younger brother always tells the He never
3. It is natural to feel sometimes, but it is important to learn to control it.
4. We really wanted to climb the mountain, and we all felt very happy when we
5. The man in the market says that all his watches are new, but I don't him. I think they are all quite old.
6. Do you think that is the most important quality that a best friend can show you?
7. My grandmother had a small as a cleaner, but she never had very much money.
8. This email asking for money says it is from the bank, but I think it is trying to us.
9. You can go into the building one way and through a different door.

2 Match to make sentences:

1. Cordelia's heart
2. Cordelia hopes that her sisters will take
3. Regan thinks that Cordelia got
4. Goneril was surprised when Lear decided to send
5. Goneril and Regan say they must prepare for problems with Lear's ill

a) Cordelia away.
b) health and old age.
c) was broken when she had to leave her sisters.
d) what she deserved because she failed to do what her father asked.
e) care of her father

3 Match the people with how they are described, or how they describe themselves:

1. Kent
2. Edger
3. Edmund
4. Lear

a) strong, kind and clever
b) angry and a little mad
c) an honest man
d) cruel

4 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences in your notebooks:

1. Cordelia has to leave her family in England.
2. Regan and Goneril don't think that Cordelia should leave them.
3. Edmund thinks that his brother Edgar deserves his inheritance.
4. Edmund writes a letter and tells his father that Edgar wrote it.
5. Gloucester is angry after hearing what is in the letter.
6. Edmund is an honest and kind man.

5 Read the quotations and answer the questions:

1. "If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us."
 Do you think that Goneril and Regan want to take care of Lear, or do they want something else?
2. "My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much."
 Why does Gloucester think that Edgar is cruel?
3. "My brother and father trust me, which makes them easy to deceive."
 Why is Edmund trying to deceive his brother and father?

6 Answer these questions:

1. Why will Edgar get his father's inheritance and not Edmund?
2. In what ways are Goneril and Regan like Edmund?
3. What do you think will happen next?

7 Imagine that you are Gloucester. Write a letter to a friend describing the day's events, including what Edmund has told you. Write about 180 words:

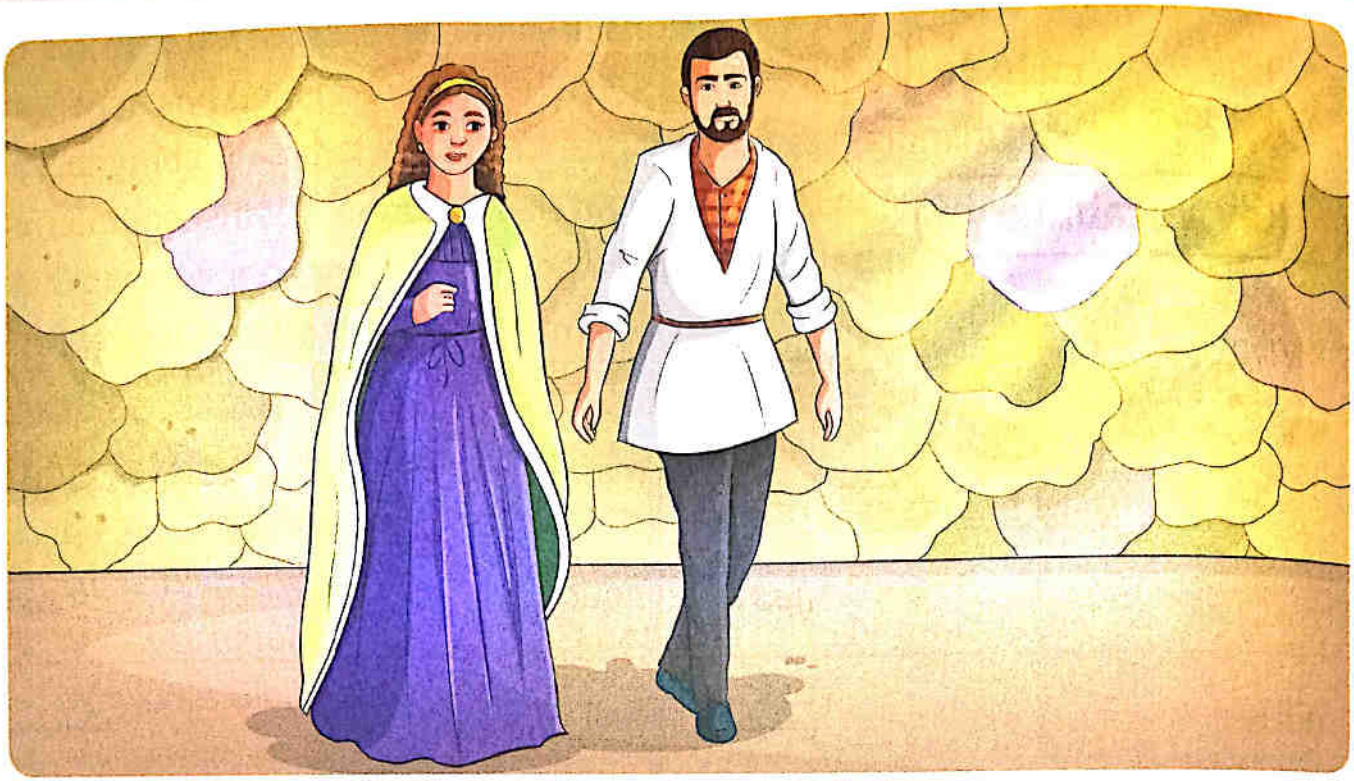
Act I, Scenes iii-iv

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

attendant	مضيف/خادم
behave	يتصرف
cart	عربة الخيل
disguise	يموه/يخفى
encourage	يشجع
follow	يتبع
fool	مهرج /مجنون
guilty	مذنب
hit	يضرب
hold	يعلق/ يمسك
lady	سيدة
mad	غاضب/مجنون
notice	يلاحظ
pull	يسحب/يشد
rude	وقح
servant	خادم
soldier	جندى
taste	مذاق
wise	حكيم/عاقل

Scene Text



[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with her servant Oswald.]

GONERIL: Did my father, King Lear, hit my servant?

OSWALO: Yes, madam.

GONERIL: I must do something. His soldiers are starting to behave badly, and my father gets angry about everything. When he comes here, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.

OSWALD: He's coming, madam; I can hear him.

GONERIL: Tell the other servants not to do what he asks them. If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!

OSWALD: Yes, madam.

GONERIL: I'll write to my sister immediately and tell her my plans.

[She exits.]

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Kent enters in different clothes.]

KENT: I've disguised myself in different clothes, and I have changed how I usually speak, so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.

[King Lear enters with soldiers and servants.]

KING LEAR: Get my dinner ready.

[A servant exits.]

[To Kent] Who are you?

KENT: I am a poor but honest man.

KING LEAR: What do you want?

KENT: I want to help you, sir.

KING LEAR: Do you know me?

KENT: No, sir; but I want to help you because I can see that you are an important man.

KING LEAR: What can you do?

KENT: I can give good and honest advice.

KING LEAR: Then follow me. You can be my servant.

[Oswald enters.]

You, where's my daughter?

OSWALD: I'm sorry, sir ...

[He exits.]

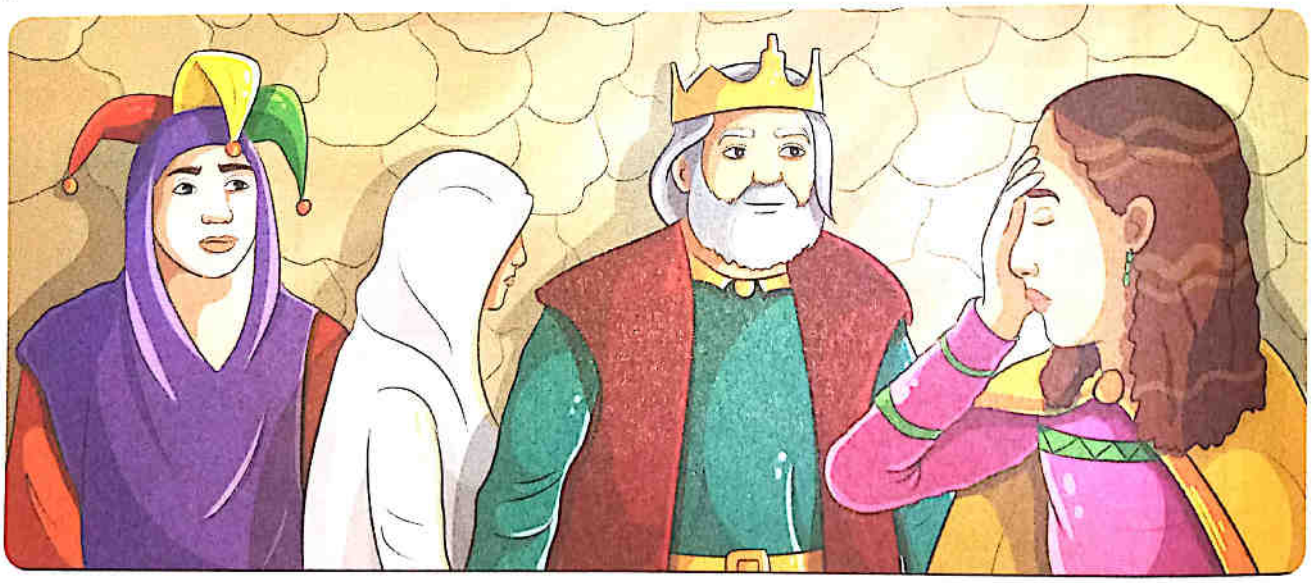


KING LEAR: What did the man say? Call him back.

SOLDIER: He said that your daughter wasn't well.

KING LEAR: Why didn't he come back when I called him?

SOLDIER: Your majesty, he was very rude. I don't know what the problem is, but the servants, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.
KING LEAR: I've noticed that too. But where's my Fool? I haven't seen him for two days.
SOLDIER: He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.
KING LEAR: Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to her.
[The soldier exits. Oswald and the Fool enter.]
Oh, you, come here! Who am I?
OSWALD: My lady's father.
KING LEAR: My lady's father? How rude!
[King Lear hits him.]
OSWALD: Don't hit me, my lord.
KENT: *[Hitting him]* Don't be rude to the King or I'll hit you, too!
KING LEAR: Thank you. You are a good man.
[Goneril enters.]



KING LEAR: What's the matter, Goneril? Why are you holding your head?
FOOL: You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.
GONERIL: Father, are you encouraging your men to behave badly? Your Fool says and does what he wants.
FOOL: Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse.
KING LEAR: Does anyone here know who I am? Tell me!
GONERIL: You're old and you should be wise. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.

KING LEAR: *[Angry]* What did you say? Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.
[Albany enters and he is very surprised.]
[To the soldiers] Prepare my horses.
ALBANY: Please, sir, wait.
KING LEAR: *[To himself]* Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why was I so foolish?
ALBANY: Your majesty, I don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not guilty.
KING LEAR: That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is cruel to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she will have a taste of her own medicine.
[King Lear exits.]
ALBANY: What has happened, Goneril?
GONERIL: Nothing. Let him shout. He is a mad old man.
[King Lear enters again.]
KING LEAR: Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!
ALBANY: What is the matter, sir?
KING LEAR: I'll tell you. *[To Goneril]* I cannot believe that you have the power to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!
[King Lear exits with Kent and Attendants.]
GONERIL: Did you hear that, my husband?
ALBANY: You know how much I love you, Goneril, but ...
GONERIL: Do not say more.
[To the Fool] You, go.
[The Fool exits.]
GONERIL: Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age? They might attack us.
ALBANY: I think you are worrying too much.
GONERIL: It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything. I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.
ALBANY: Maybe you know more than I do, Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.
[They exit.]

Act I Scenes iii–iv Exercises (SB)

1 Read the phrases in the box and write them in the correct column in the table:

behave badly be guilty of something
be rude be wise encourage someone to do something

Positive	Negative

2 Match the phrases with their meanings:

1. Attack someone
2. Disguise yourself
3. The cart is pulling the horse
4. A taste of your own medicine

a) Change the way you look
b) Try to hurt someone
c) experience what you do to others
d) Things aren't the way they should be

3 Read this part of the play and match the characters with the things they do:

Albany Goneril Kent King Lear Oswald

1. This character tells the king not to be angry with him and then tells his wife not to worry about the king.
2. This character gets angry with his daughter when she tells him that he shouldn't keep so many soldiers.
3. This character disguises himself so he can continue to work for the king.
4. This character works for Goneril and tries to tell the king that he can't see her.
5. This character didn't want to see her father, but then she talks to him about the number of soldiers he has with him.

4 What do we learn about the characters in this part of the play? Choose the correct options:

1. Goneril feels *guilty / worried* because of the way her father is behaving.
2. Kent *will / won't* leave the king.
3. King Lear feels that Goneril *knows / doesn't know* how much she has hurt him.
4. Albany thinks that Goneril should worry *more / less* about her father.

5 Read the questions about what you think will happen next in the play. Write your answers in your notebook:

1. Will King Lear's soldiers hurt Goneril and Albany?
2. Will King Lear get angry with his other daughter, Regan, as well?
3. Will Kent continue to help King Lear as his servant?

Act I Scenes iii–iv Exercises (WB)

1 Fill in with the correct form of the words in the list:

disguise wise behave rude servant encourage cart

1. He rarely makes mistakes. He is very and careful.
2. We all respect him because he politely.
3. My father usually us to read different books.
4. Don't be, or you'll be punished.
5. We have a very honest who never steals anything from the house.
6. The criminal tried to himself so the police wouldn't recognise him.
7. Don't be cruel to animals; the little horse can't pull this huge

2 Match the characters in column (A) with the actions in column (B):

(A)	(B)
1. The King's soldiers are starting	a) to be his servant.
2. Kent has changed	b) is worrying too much.
3. King Lear asks Kent	c) fifty of the King's soldiers.
4. Kent hits Oswald	d) because he is rude to the King.
5. Goneril has sent away	e) to behave badly.
6. Albany believes that Goneril	f) how he usually speaks.

3 Complete the sentences with these adjectives:

angry guilty honest kinder mad rude

1. King Lear is starting to get with everything.
2. Kent tells King Lear that he is a poor but man.
3. One of the soldiers is because he does not listen to Lear.
4. Albany says he is not of making Lear angry.
5. Goneril calls her father a old man.
6. Albany thinks that Goneril should be to her father.

4 Answer these questions:

1. Where does Goneril say that Lear can stay if he is unhappy at her home?
2. What does Kent tell Lear that he can give him?
3. Why does the fool say the cart is pulling the horse?
4. Who does Lear think is ruder to him than Cordelia?
5. Do you think that Albany is happy with his wife Goneril's behaviour?

5 Read the quotations and answer the questions:

1. *"The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!"*
 What does this tell us about how Goneril sees her father?
2. *"I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me."*
 What does this tell us about Kent?
3. "My lady's father! How rude!"
 Why is King Lear angry with Oswald?
4. *"Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left."*
 Why does King Lear say this to Goneril?
5. *If Goneril has a child who is cruel to her, "... she will have a taste of her own medicine."*
 What does King Lear mean by this expression?
6. *"It's better to worry and be safe."*
 Why does Goneril say this to Albany?

6 Match to make collocations:

1. be angry	**a)** someone's problems
2. give	**b)** someone unhappy
3. hold	**c)** with someone
4. make	**d)** your head
5. solve	**e)** advice to someone

7 King Lear says to Goneril, "I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!" What will Regan say? Write the conversation that King Lear has with Regan when he tells her how Goneril has treated him. Write about 180 words:

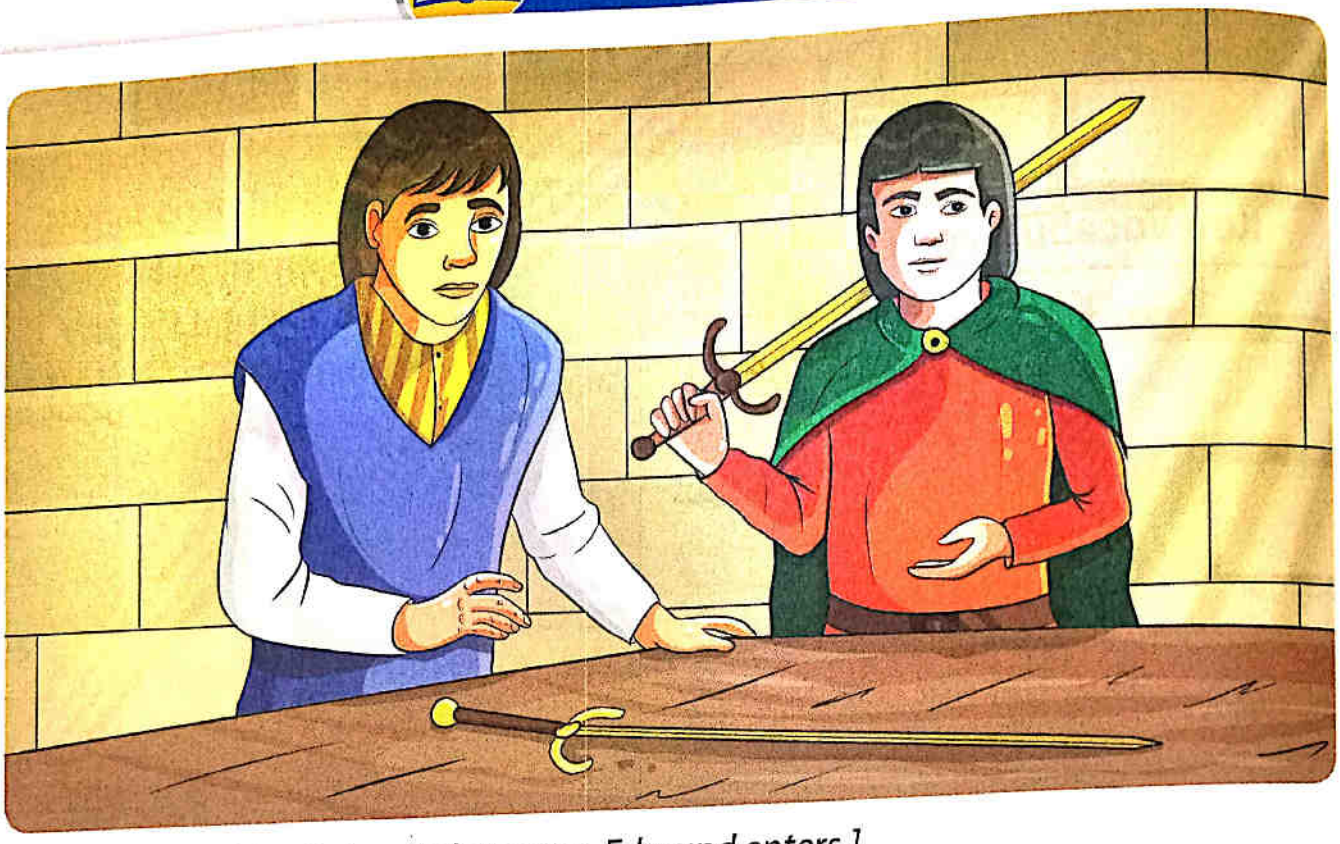
Act II, Scene i

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

arrest	يقبض على
back	ظهر
beggar	شحاذ
call out	يصرخ
catch	يقبض على
change one's mind	يغير رأيه
disbelief	جحود/عدم ثقة
disguise	يموه
duty	واجب
faithful	مخلص
follow	يتبع
get (to)	يصل
guard	حارس/يحرس
inherit	يرث
persuade	يقنع
plot against	يتآمر ضد
port	ميناء
pretend	يتظاهر
profit	يربح/يستفيد
reward	مكافأة
stab	طعنة
stocks	عمود خشبى فى التعذيب
warn	يحذر

Scene Text



[In the Castle of the Duke of Gloucester. Edmund enters.]

EDMUND: *[To himself]* So, I hear that the Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. That's good! It will help my plan a lot. My father has a guard ready to arrest my brother. But there's one more thing I should do first. Here's Edgar.

[Edgar enters]

Brother, can we talk? Our father's coming here soon, so you must go! He knows you are hiding here. But first, we must pretend to fight. Pick up your sword. Quickly, before our father gets here. Now run from here, brother.

[Calls out.] Help me!

[To his brother again] Goodbye, Edgar.

[Edgar exits.]

[To himself] If there's some blood on me, people will think I've been in a fight. *[He cuts his arm]*

Father, father! Stop him, stop him! Help!

[Gloucester enters with servants.]

EDMUND: Look, at my arm, father, I'm injured.

GLOUCESTER: What happened? Where's Edgar?

EDMUND: He ran that way when I refused his plan.
GLOUCESTER: You there, follow him!
[Some servants exit.]
What plan, Edmund?



EDMUND: His plan is to kill you, father. I told him that I loved you. Finally, when he understood that I didn't want to help with his terrible plan, he cut my arm with his sword. Then he saw that I was ready to fight him, and he quickly ran away.
GLOUCESTER: He'll not run very far. If he stays in this country, we'll soon find him. Then we'll arrest him. The Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. I will tell him that there's a reward for any man who finds Edgar. And anyone who hides him will be arrested, too.
EDMUND: Father, I tried to persuade Edgar to stop his plan, but he wanted to continue with it. I told him that I would tell you all about it.
"Do you think anyone will believe you?" Edgar said. "No. I'll say that it was all your idea. They know that you will profit most if father dies, not me."
GLOUCESTER: This is terrible! It is a stab in the back. I'll stop people from leaving England's ports; Edgar won't leave the country. Thank you, my loving son Edmund. Now I will do everything to help you. You will inherit all my land.
[The Duke of Cornwall enters with his wife Regan and servants.]

CORNWALL: Gloucester, how are you, my friend?
Since I've arrived here, I've heard some strange news.

REGAN: If it is true, it is terrible news!

GLOUCESTER: Oh Regan, my heart is broken!

REGAN: Did your son really try to kill you? Your son Edgar?

GLOUCESTER: Yes, it's true! I wish it were different.

REGAN: I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.

EDMUND: That's correct, madam, he spent some time with them.

REGAN: Then the soldiers have given him the idea of plotting against his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I've just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to be careful of them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.

CORNWALL: Edmund, I hear that you've been a good son to your father.

EDMUND: It was my duty, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm when he tried to stop him.

CORNWALL: Is anyone following Edgar?

GLOUCESTER: Yes, I've sent some guards.

CORNWALL: The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I'd like you to work for me. I need men like you that I can trust.

EDMUND: I'd be happy to help you, sir.

GLOUCESTER: I thank you, Cornwall.

[They exit.]

Act II, Scene ii

Scene Text



[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

EDGAR: I've heard people say that I'm guilty! But I was not caught, because I hid in this old tree. It's not safe for me to go to any port now. Guards are looking for me. So I must disguise myself as a beggar. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.

[He changes his clothes.] I'll wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain. Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I'll call myself Poor Tom.

[Edgar exits.]

[Enter, Lear, Fool and Knight. Kent is in the stocks.]

KENT: Good morning, my lord.

KING LEAR: [Looks in disbelief at Kent in the stocks.] What has happened? Who did this to you?

KENT: It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.

KING LEAR: But you are working for the King! They should not do this to you! This is terrible.

Where's my daughter?

[King Lear exits.]

KENT: Fool, why has the King got so few soldiers now?

FOOL: He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I'll be faithful to him; the Fool will always stay and let the wise men run away.

[King Lear and Gloucester enter together.]

KING LEAR: Why don't they want to speak to me? You say they are sick? They are tired? That's no answer.

GLOUCESTER: I'm sorry your majesty, but you know that the Duke of Cornwall easily feels angry. He won't change his mind.

KING LEAR: What? He's angry! Well, I'm angry, too!

[He sees Kent in the stocks again.]

Why is he sitting in the stocks? Go and tell the Duke of Cornwall and his wife that I want to speak to them, now!

[Gloucester exits.]

KING LEAR: Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart!

[Cornwall, Regan, Gloucester and Servants enter]

REGAN: Father, I'm pleased to see you.

KING LEAR: My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she's been so cruel to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.

REGAN: I don't think my sister could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.

KING LEAR: I'm very angry with her!

REGAN: Father, please go back to my sister's house; you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril.

Act II Scene ii Exercises (SB)

1 Match the words and the definitions:

1. guard
2. beggar
3. reward
4. profit
5. pretend
6. plot against someone
7. disbelief
8. faithful
9. persuade
10. port

a) benefit from something
b) someone who protects a place or a person
c) act in a way that is not true
d) get someone to do something or to agree with you
e) someone who asks other people for food or money
f) the feeling that something cannot really be happening
g) money for someone who finds or helps someone important
h) loyal, continue to support someone
i) a place where ships enter and leave a town or country
j) make a secret plan to do something that is wrong to another person

2 Find these phrases in the text and choose the correct answer:

1 Gloucester says, "it's a stab in the back" because

A) he didn't expect his son to be against him
B) Edgar has given Gloucester's a new knife
C) he doesn't understand what Edmund means

2 When Gloucester says to Regan, "my heart is broken, " he is telling her that

A) he can't breathe properly
B) he is feeling ill
C) he is extremely sad

3 When Gloucester says, "He won't change his mind," he means that the Duke of Cornwall

A) won't change his behaviour
B) won't get ill
C) won't try to make King Lear think differently

3 Complete the summary using the names in the box:

Cornwall	Edgar	Edmund	Gloucester
Kent	King Lear	Regan	

In Act II, scene i, (1)..... runs away, because he thinks his father, the Duke of (2)..... is angry with him. His younger brother, (3)....., cuts himself with his sword and tells the Duke that his brother did it. His plan works, and his father says that he will give all his land to him. The Duke of (4)..... is so impressed by Edmund that he offers him a job.

In Act II Scene ii, (5)..... finds (6)..... in the stocks. It was his daughter, (7)..... who put him there and now she won't speak to her father.

4 Work in groups to answer these questions:

1. What does Edmund say Edgar's plan is?
2. Who does Regan think gave Edgar the idea?
3. In what ways have Regan and Goneril changed since the beginning of the play?
4. Who is Poor Tom?
5. Who is in disguise in the play at this point?

5 Discuss these questions in pairs:

1. Why does King Lear say, 'Well, I'm angry, too!" in Act II Scene ii? Do you think he is right to feel angry?
2. What do you think will happen next to these characters?
 - King Lear
 - Kent
 - Edgar
 - Edmund

Act II Scene ii Exercises (WB)

1 Put the words into the correct group. Some words can be used as either a noun or a verb:

beggar - disbelief - faithful - follow guard - persuade - ports - pretend - profit - reward

Verb	Noun	Adjective

2 Complete the sentences using the words from Exercise 1.

1. All the ships had to remain in their due to the bad weather.
2. There was a at every door in the castle to help protect the king.
3. I will try to my mother to let me go to the cinema tomorrow.
4. Look! Someone is offering a if we find the lost mobile phone.
5. If you get a benefit from something, you from it.
6. The police will the suspect to see where he goes.
7. My mother usually gives money to any she sees on the street.
8. During the difficult times the soldiers remained to the king.
9. The children to be kings and queens when they are playing.
10. Everyone looked at him in when my brother said he wanted to climb the mountain.

3 Match the phrases with their meanings:

1. to get here	**a)** when a friend breaks your trust
2. to call out	**b)** to have a different opinion from before
3. a stab in the back	**c)** speak loudly to people can hear you far away
4. to have your heart broken	**d)** arrive at a place
5. to plot against	**e)** plan in secret with others to do something
6. to change your mind	**f)** how you feel when someone you love hurts you

4 Read the sentences and replace the phrases in bold with phrases from Exercise 3:

1. When my brother closed the door on my fingers, I **shouted** for help
2. It looks like the football players are secretly **planning against** the coach as they don't like him.
3. It was like **deception** when my friend told my classmates my secret.
4. When the character died at the end of the film, **I felt very sad**.
5. At the last minute, my sister always **has a different opinion** about what to wear.
6. The students were almost late for the exam but **arrived** just in time.

5 Put the events from the play in the order in which they happened:

a ☐ Edmund told Gloucester that Edgar planned to kill him.
b ☐ Edgar runs away to avoid getting arrested.
c ☐ The King is unhappy about how his daughter has behaved.
d ☐ The Fool promises to stay with the King.
e ☐ Edgar changes his appearance.
f ☐ King Lear is surprised when he sees Kent.
g ☐ Edmund pretends to fight with his brother.
h ☐ Edmund pretends his brother cut his arm.

6 Write the characters' names next to what they said. Then listen and check:

Cornwall - Edgar - Edmund - Duke of Gloucester - Duke of Kent - King Lear - Regan

1. asked his brother if they could talk.
2. called out to his father for help.
3. said it was a stab in the back.
4. asked if his son had really tried to kill him.
5. asked if anyone was following Edgar.
6. said he would change his clothes.
7. asked why they didn't want to speak to him.
8. asked her father to go back to her sister's house.

7 Act II, Scene i shows how money can cause problems in families. Which do you think is more important in life: having lots of money or having a good relationship with family? Why? Write about 180 words:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

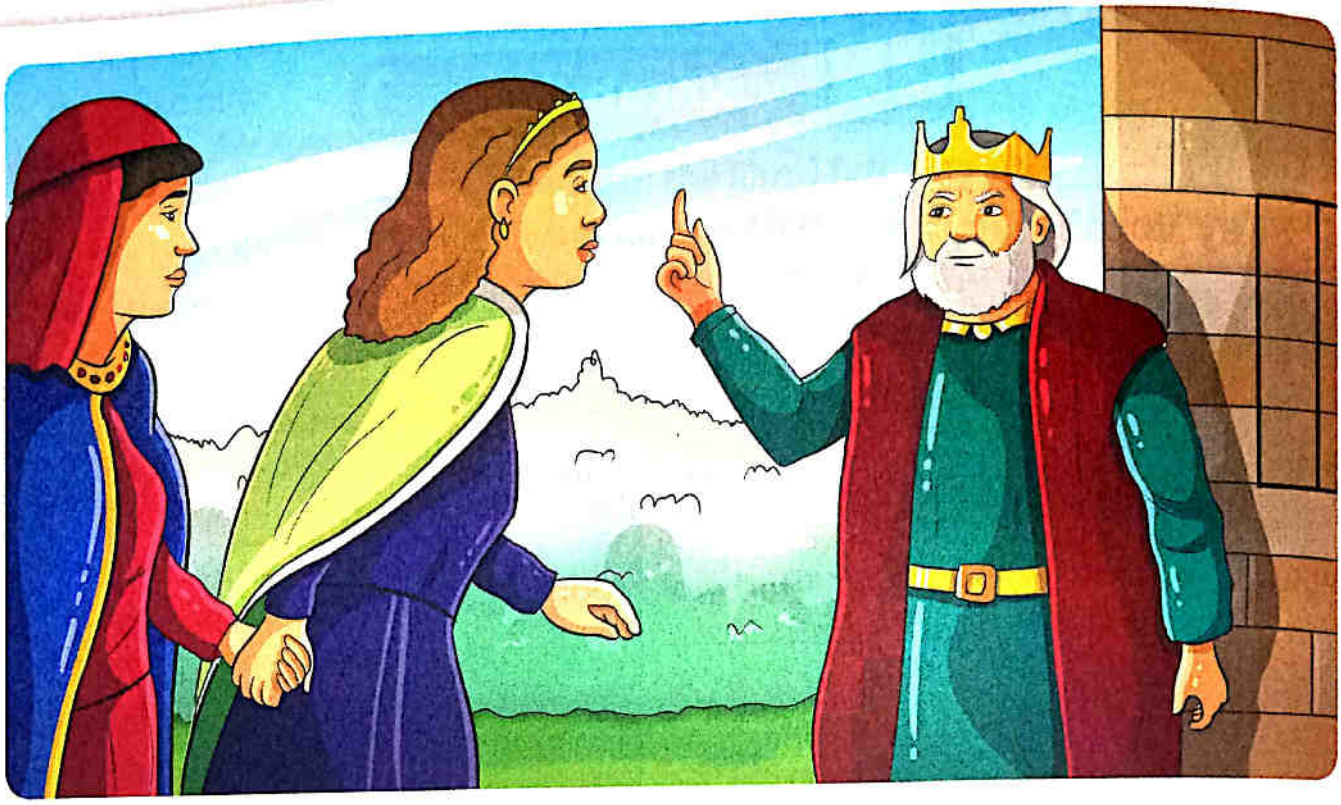
Act II, Scene iii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

apologise	يعتذر
bear	دب
blow	تهب (الرياح)
cave	كهف
choice	اختيار
disagreement	خلاف
double	يضاعف
go mad	يصاب بالجنون
joke	نكتة/فكاهة
lock somebody out	يحظر/يمنع من العمل
patience	حلم /صبر
ring	خاتم
room	مكان/حيز
set eyes on	يرى/يشاهد
shelter	مأوى/يحمى/يقى
spy	جاسوس/يتجسس
turn back on	يعرض عن/يتجاهل/يهمل
wet	مبلل/مطير
wind	ريح

Scene Text



[In the countryside.]

KING LEAR: Regan, I will not stay with your sister Goneril. Please, give me clothes, food and a bed. Remember, I am old.

REGAN: Please, father! Go back and stay with my sister.

KING LEAR: Never, Regan! She's told half of my soldiers to leave! She's has been cruel and rude to me! I want rain to always fall on her head!

REGAN: You'll want the same to happen to me soon.

KING LEAR: No, Regan, I'll never say bad things about you. Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never turn your back on me. And you'd not lock me out of your house. You understand how a daughter should help her father. You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom.

REGAN: Father, why are you unhappy?

CORNWALL: Listen! Who's coming?

REGAN: It's my sister. She said in her letter that she would come soon.

[Goneril enters with Oswald].

KING LEAR: Who put my servant in the stocks? Regan, I hope that you didn't know about this.

[To Goneril] You shouldn't want to look at me. Oh Regan, why are you holding her hand?
GONERIL: Why shouldn't she hold my hand, father? What have I done wrong?
KING LEAR: Oh, how unhappy you've made me.
You're too cruel! Why won't you apologise to me? And why is my servant in the stocks?
CORNWALL: I put him there, sir, because he didn't behave well.
KING LEAR: You? Was it you?
REGAN: Please, father, you're ill today. Stay with my sister until the end of the month.
Then, if you ask half of your soldiers to leave, you can come and stay with me.
KING LEAR: Stay with her, and ask my soldiers to leave? No, I would rather sleep outside under the stars.
[To himself] Return with Goneril? I would prefer to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food. Go back with her? I would prefer to be the servant of this terrible man. *[Points at Oswald]*
GONERIL: It's your choice, father.
KING LEAR: Please, daughter, don't make me mad. I won't set eyes on you again, my child; goodbye. We won't meet any more. But you will soon feel bad about what you've done. I'll be patient for now, and I'll stay with Regan with my hundred soldiers.
REGAN: That is not possible. My home isn't ready for you. Listen to my sister.
Are fifty soldiers not enough for you?
GONERIL: My servants could help you.
REGAN: Yes, why not, father? We have enough servants. When you come to me (for now I see the danger of so many men), I ask you to bring just twenty-five soldiers. I won't have rooms for any more.
KING LEAR: But Regan, I gave you everything ...
REGAN: And you gave it to me at the right time!
KING LEAR: I gave you enough to live well for all time! I asked for just one thing - to keep a hundred soldiers. Are you really asking me to come with just twenty-five, Regan?
REGAN: Don't talk to me any more about this.
KING LEAR: *[To Goneril.]* Then I'll go back with you.
Your fifty soldiers is double her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does.
GONERIL: Listen, father. You do not need twenty five, ten or even five soldiers in a house where we have fifty servants to look after you.
REGAN: Why do you even need one soldier?

KING LEAR: Why do I need them? Even the poorest beggars have things that they don't need. If you only give people what they need to live, then they are little more than animals. You are a lady. If you just want to stay warm, you don't need those beautiful clothes you're wearing. They don't keep you warm at all. But, if you ask me what I really need, I need patience! Oh, give me patience, or I will go mad!

[King Lear exits with Gloucester and the Fool. There is a huge storm.]

CORNWALL: We should go inside; there's a big storm coming.

REGAN: This house is small; there isn't room for Lear and his soldiers.

GONERIL: Where is the Duke of Gloucester?

CORNWALL: He followed Lear.



[Gloucester enters.] Here he is.

GLOUCESTER: The King is very angry. He has called for his horse.

CORNWALL: Let him go. He won't listen to anyone.

GONERIL: Yes, don't try to stop him.

GLOUCESTER: But it is nearly night and strong winds are blowing. There is nowhere to shelter for many kilometres.

REGAN: That will teach him a lesson. Lock the doors. He has his soldiers with him, and who knows what they'll persuade him to do.

CORNWALL: Regan is right. Lock the doors, it's a wet night. Come in out of the storm.

[They exit.]

Act III, Scene i

Scene Text



[In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier.]

KENT: Who's there, in this terrible weather? Where's the King?

SOLDIER: He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make a bear hide in a cave, but the King is running around outside without even a hat.

KENT: But who's with him?

SOLDIER: Only the Fool, who tries to make him happier with his jokes.

KENT: Sir, I trust you. I have got something to tell you. There's a disagreement between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. If you trust me, go quickly to Dover. There are people there who'll thank you when you tell them about the King's problems.

I'm not the person who you think. I'm really an important man. If you see Cordelia, show her this ring, and she'll tell you who I am. Here's some money. Oh, this storm! I must go and find the King. *[They exit.]*

Act ii Scene iii & Act iii Scene i Exercises (SB)

1 Complete the sentences with these words from the play:

apologise | disagreement | double | patience
jokes | room | shelter (v) | spy(n)

1 My bedroom is so small that there isn't enough for a desk.
2 We had a about which film to watch, but I let him watch a comedy.
3 Azza is a great friend. She has a lot of, so she never gets angry.
4 Your brother makes us laugh when he tells funny
5 I asked Seleem to to Ziad for shouting.
6 Mr Hassan could be a because he speaks five languages and he often travels to foreign countries.
7 Twenty-four is twelve.
8 We can in this shop until the rain stops.

2 Find these phrases in the text and choose the correct answer:

1 When King Lear says to Regan, *"You would never turn your back on me,"* he means that she would not
A) say bad things about him.
B) refuse to look at his face.
C) refuse to help him.

2 When King Lear says *"You'd not lock me out,"* to Regan, he means that she would not
A) stop him coming into her home.
B) ignore him when he spoke to her.
C) lie to him about her plans.

3 When King Lear says *"I won't set eyes on you again,"* to Goneril, he means that
A) he won't look at her again.
B) he won't visit her again.
C) he won't believe her again.

3 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences:

1 Regan is happy that her father has come to stay with her. ☐
2 Goneril and Regan don't want their father to bring any soldiers to their homes. ☐
3 The Duke of Cornwall follows Lear into the storm. ☐
4 Regan keeps the door open so that her father can come back inside. ☐
5 There is somewhere near that Lear can stay for the night. ☐
6 Kent asks a soldier to help Lear. ☐

4 Where are the characters at the end of Act II Scene i? Write *Out* (outside in the storm) or *In* (inside the Duke of Cornwall's home):

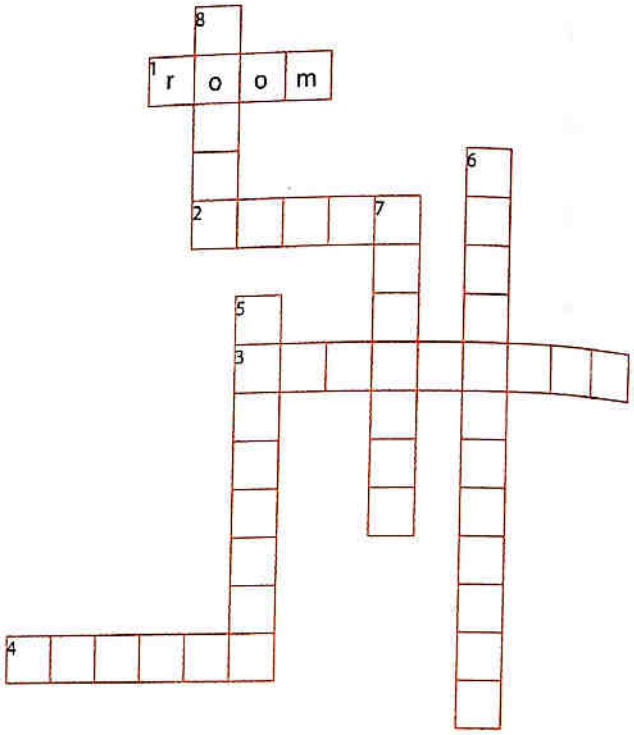
Cornwall	(.....)	Gloucester	(.....)
Edgar	(.....)	Kent	(.....)
The Fool	(.....)	King Lear	(.....)
Goneril	(.....)	Regan	(.....)

5 Discuss these questions in pairs:

1 Why does Kent give the soldier his ring?
2 Do you think Cordelia will want to help her father? Why? Why not?

Act ii Scene iii & Act iii Scene i Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the crossword with words from Act II, Scene iii. Use the clues to help you:



Across

1. A synonym for 'space', e.g. There isn't enough space for everyone in the car.
2. People who collect information secretly.
3. The action of saying sorry.
4. Two times the quantity of something.

Down

5. Something you need so that you do not get angry.
6. A situation where people have different opinions.
7. A place that will protect you from bad weather.
8. Something you tell others to make them laugh.

2 Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1:

1. I had a with my brother yesterday and we're not talking now.
2. Stop buying clothes! You haven't got any more in your wardrobe.
3. I for posting that photo of you. I didn't realise it would make you angry.
4. That tech company used to discover what the competition was doing.
5. You need a lot of with this APP. It takes ages to open!
6. While walking in the hills, we had to find due to the storm.
7. My new phone has the amount of memory as my last one.
8. Have you seen this website? It has loads of which are really funny!

3 Complete the collocations with the words in the box:

on out mad on

1 If you 'turn your back someone', it means you ignore them.
2 If someone 'locks you; it means you cannot enter a place.
3 If you 'set eyes someone', it means you see them, often for the first time.
4 If you 'go; it means you get angry or lose your mind.

4 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences:

1 King Lear is happy to stay with his daughter Goneril. ☐
2 Regan wants her father to stay in her house. ☐
3 Both daughters want their father to abandon his soldiers. ☐
4 There is a disagreement between King Lear and his daughters. ☐
5 Regan stopped her father from returning to her house. ☐
6 King Lear is wearing clothes to protect him from the rain. ☐
7 The Duke of Kent tells the soldier to take the King to a shelter. ☐
8 The King of France is planning an attack. ☐

5 Imagine that you are one of King Lear's soldiers. Describe what happened at Goneril's home. How do you feel? What do you think of your king?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Act III, Scene ii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blanket	بطانية	hut	كوخ
burn	يحرق	lightning	برق
fall	يسقط	philosopher	فيلسوف
force	يجبر	rise	ينهض
forgive	يغفر/يسامح	straw	قش
go into	يدخل	torch	كشاف/شعلة
hard-hearted	قاسى القلب	try	يحاول
homeless	بلا مأوى/مشرد	walk in someone's shoes	يكون فى مكان شخص ما
horrible	رهيب	walking fire	نار متحركة

Scene Text



[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR: Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!

FOOL: Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive you!

KING LEAR: I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to me, like my daughters?

[Kent enters.]

KING LEAR: Who's there?

FOOL: Ah, here's someone who is both a wise man and a fool.

KENT: Oh no, why are you here? Even bears want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's hut near here. It will shelter you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hard-hearted daughters.

KING LEAR: When I asked for you, they did not let me in their house, so I'll force them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad!

[To the Fool.] How are you, my boy? I'm cold.

Where's the straw? It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!

[King Lear exits with Kent.]

Act III, Scene iii

Scene Text

[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund.]

GLOUCESTER: Oh, Edmund, I don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him.

EDMUND: That's very cruel of them!

GLOUCESTER: Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement between the two Dukes and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight ...

[To himself.] No, it's too dangerous to talk about it to him.

[To Edmund] I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.

[He exits.]

EDMUND: [To himself.] I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded for this, and I'll win the trust that my father loses. The younger man rises as the old man falls!

[He exits.]

Act III, Scene iv

Scene Text



[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.]

KENT: Here is a hut where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside. This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.

KING LEAR: Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it anymore!

KENT: Please, go inside.

KING LEAR: *[To the Fool.]* You go in first, my boy.

[The Fool goes into the hut.]

Poor homeless people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your hungry stomachs and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes, and then the world would be a better place for us all.

[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the hut and he's very frightened.]

FOOL: Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.

KENT: Who's in there?

FOOL: A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.

KENT: Who are you? Come out here.

[Edgar enters disguised as a madman called Poor Tom.]

EDGAR: Keep away from me!

KING LEAR: Are you mad like me? Have you given everything to your two daughters?

EDGAR: Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.

KING LEAR: Have his daughters done this to him?

[To Edgar.] Don't you have anything?

FOOL: No, he only has a blanket.

KING LEAR: Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you?

EDGAR: I was a servant, who was very proud.

KING LEAR: It would be better if you were dead than go around with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!

FOOL: Look, here comes a walking fire. *[Gloucester enters carrying a torch.]*

KING LEAR: Who's this?

GLOUCESTER: What's your name?

EDGAR: My name is Poor Tom, and I once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is mice to eat.

GLOUCESTER: Has your majesty nobody to help you apart from this mad man? Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord? Why do they hate their fathers?

EDGAR: Poor Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER: Come inside with me, your majesty. I didn't want to do what your cruel daughters asked me to do. They asked me to lock the doors and leave you outside on this terrible night. I've come to find you and take you home, where there's a fire and food ready for you.

KENT: My lord, please accept this man's offer and go to the house.

KING LEAR: First, let me talk to this philosopher.

What are you researching?

EDGAR: I am researching how to keep warm and to kill mice.

KENT: *[To Gloucester.]* Ask him again, my lord. He's beginning to go mad. He thinks the poor man is a philosopher.

[Gloucester holds his torch it in front of him and looking at Edgar and Kent, but they are both disguised.]

GLOUCESTER: I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen – the poor man! I'm almost mad myself. I have a son who tried to kill me. No father loved his son more than I loved him. What a night this is! Please, your majesty, come with me.

EDGAR: Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER: Go into your hut, Tom; keep yourself warm.

KENT: This way, your majesty.

KING LEAR: *[Pointing to Edgar.]* I am going with him!

KENT: My lord, let him bring the poor man with us.

GLOUCESTER: OK. Sir, come on; come with us.

KING LEAR: Let's go then, my good philosopher.

[They exit.]

Act III Scenes ii-iv Exercises (SB)

1 Choose the best word to complete each sentence:

1. In a storm, you often see *lightning / a torch.*
2. A *fool / philosopher* is someone who studies the meaning of life.
3. They spent the night in a small *hut/ straw* in the mountains.
4. If you *forget / forgive* someone, you stop being angry with them.
5. People who are *hard- / soft*-hearted, don't care how other people feel.

2 Read King Lear's speech on page 69 again. What does the phrase 'to walk in someone's shoes' mean?

A) To take someone's shoes without asking them.

B) To experience life the way someone else does.

C) To be the same as one of your parents.

3 Arrange these events in order on the timeline:

1	2	3	4	5	6

a. Gloucester tells Edmund about a letter.

b. They take Poor Tom with them.

c. Kent tells Lear about a poor man's hut.

d. Gloucester finds Lear.

e. Gloucester goes to look for Lear.

f. Lear meets poor Tom.

4 Who is the speaker of each quotation? Who are they speaking to and why do they say it?

1. "Ask your daughters to forgive you!"

.....

2. "We must help King Lear."

.....

3 "Are you mad like me?"

.....

4 "Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord?"

.....

5 "He's beginning to go mad"

.....

5 Answer these questions:

1 Who is the 'old man' that Edmund refers to?

.....

2 Is Edmund a good son to his father? Why? Why not?

.....

3 Why do you think Poor Tom does not tell King Lear who he really is?

.....

4 How does King Lear feel about the poor man?

.....

6 Discuss these questions in pairs:

1 In your opinion is King Lear going mad? Give your reasons.

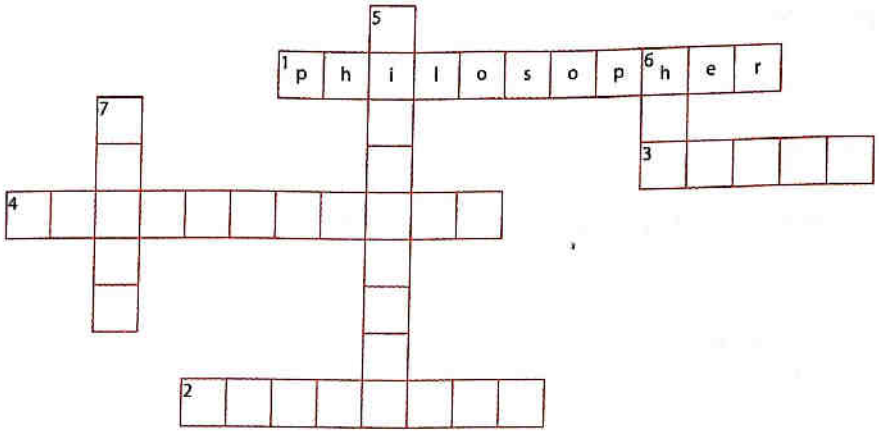
.....

2 What do you think happens next in the play?

.....

Act III Scenes ii-iv Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the crossword with words from Act III, Scene iii-iv. Use the clues to help you:



Across

1 A person who studies and thinks about the meaning of life.
2 To stop being angry with someone who has done something wrong.
3 A light you can carry to help you see.
4 An adjective to describe someone who is unkind.

Down

5 Bright light that comes from the sky in a storm.
6 A small building, usually with just one room.
7 Dry yellow wheat used to feed animals.

2 Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1:

1 My grandmother is scared of thunder and She hides under the stairs.
2 In the past, people used to light a with fire. Today, we use batteries.
3 Hatem's finding it hard to Hazem for what he said in that online post.
4 I asked my brother but he won't help me. He is very
5 Hatem should be a because he likes to think about important questions.
6 My horse loves to sleep on a bed of fresh
7 We got lost in the mountains and spent the night in a wooden

3 When King Lear talks about walking in a poor man's shoes he says rich people should understand how it feels to be poor:

1 What would rich people learn if they were poor for some time?
2 How do you think this comment by King Lear shows a change in his way of thinking?

4 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences:

1. King Lear is scared of the storm.
2. King Lear is happy to sleep anywhere that is dry.
3. Gloucester tells Edmund everything that is happening.
4. Edmund plans to betray his father to get his power.
5. King Lear thinks it is good to see things from a different perspective.
6. The King recognises Edgar and is happy to see him.
7. Edgar says that he has always been poor.
8. Gloucester can understand why the King has gone mad.

5 Answer the questions in your own words:

1. Think about the weather in this section of the story. What are the similarities between the weather and what is happening in King Lear's life?
2. What does Edmund mean when he says, "The younger man rises as the old man falls"?
3. Why does King Lear say he won't think any more about how his daughters have treated him?
4. Why do you think King Lear calls Poor Tom a philosopher?

Irregular Verbs

	INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
يكون	be	was/were	been
يتحمل	bear	bore	borne
يضرب	beat	beat	beaten
يصبح	become	became	become
يبدأ	begin	began	begun
يثنى	bend	bent	bent
يلف	bind	bound	bound
يعض	bite	bit	bitten
يهب	blow	blew	blown
يكسر	break	broke	broken
يحضر	bring	brought	brought
يبنى	build	built	built
يحرق	burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
يشترى	buy	bought	bought
يمسك	catch	caught	caught
يختار	choose	chose	chosen
يكلف	cost	cost	cost
يتناول	deal	dealt	dealt
يفعل	do	did	done
يرسم	draw	drew	drawn
يحلم	dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed
يشرب	drink	drank	drunk

يقود	drive	drove	driven
يسقط	fall	fell	fallen
يطعم	feed	fed	fed
يشعر	feel	felt	felt
يقاتل	fight	fought	fought
يجد	find	found	found
ينسى	forget	forgot	forgotten
يسامح	forgive	forgave	forgiven
يتجمد	freeze	froze	frozen
يحصل على	get	got	got/gotten
يعطى	give	gave	given
ينمو	grow	grew	grown
يعلق	hang	hung	hung
يملك	have	had	had
يسمع	hear	heard	heard
يضرب	hit	hit	hit
يمسك	hold	held	held
يؤذى	hurt	hurt	hurt
يحفظ	keep	kept	kept
يعرف	know	knew	known
تضع (بيضًا)/يُعِد	lay	laid	laid
يؤدى/يقود	lead	led	led
يتعلم	learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned

يرحل/يغادر	leave	left	left
يسلف	lend	lent	lent
يدع	let	let	let
يرقد	lie	lay	lain
يخسر	lose	lost	lost
يعنى	mean	meant	meant
يقابل	meet	met	met
يدفع	pay	paid	paid
يضع	put	put	put
يتصل تليفونيًا/يدق	ring	rang	rung
ينهض/يشرف	rise	rose	risen
يجرى	run	ran	run
يقول	say	said	said
يرى	see	saw	seen
يبيع	sell	sold	sold
يرسل	send	sent	sent
يخيط (الملابس)	sew	sewed	sewn/sewed
يهز	shake	shook	shaken
يسطع	shine	shone/shined	shone/shined
يطلق النار	shoot	shot	shot
يبين / يظهر	show	showed	shown/ showed
يغطس	sink	sank	sunk

يجلس	sit	sat	sat
ينام	sleep	slept	slept
يسكب	spill	spilt/spilled	spilt/spilled
يشق / ينشطر	split	split	split
يفسد	spoil	spoilt/spoiled	spoilt/spoiled
ينشر	spread	spread	spread
يقف	stand	stood	stood
يسرق	steal	stole	stolen
يلدغ	sting	stung	stung
يضرب	strike	struck	struck
يمسح	sweep	swept	swept
يقسم	swear	swore	sworn
يأخذ	take	took	taken
يدرس	teach	taught	taught
يخبر	tell	told	told
يفكر	think	thought	thought
يلقى	throw	threw	thrown
يفهم	understand	understood	understood
يرتدى	wear	wore	worn
ينسج	weave	wove	woven
يبكى	weep	wept	wept
ينسحب	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
يكتب	write	wrote	written

قاموس بمعانى الكلمات الواردة فى قطع الفهم

Dictionary

absolutely	تمامًا/إطلاقًا	bloom	يزهر/يتفتح/يورد
accurate	دقيق/محكم	boosts	يعزز
adapt	يتأقلم/يتكيف	bounce	يثب/يرتد
adaptation	تأقلم/ملاءمة/تكيف	bubble	فقاعة
adopt	يتبنى	buffalo	الجاموس
adult	راشد/بالغ	cactus	نبات الصبار
afford	يقدر على/يطيق	camouflage	التستر أو التخفى عن عيون العدو
alarming rate	معدل (مزعج/مخيف)	cardiovascular	قلبى وعائى
appearance	ظهور/مظهر	carnivores	آكلات اللحوم
apprentice	تلميذ (فى الصناعة)	carpet	سجادة/بساط
argue	يتجادل	catalysts	مواد محفزة
article	مقالة	caves	كهوف
artificial	اصطناعى	chameleon	حرباء أو أبو قلمون
associated with	متعلق بـ	characteristics	شمائل/خصائص
attend	يحضر/يشاهد	charge	شحنة
balance	توازن/ميزان/موازنة	chew	يمضغ
bat	الخفاش	chicle	نوع نبات (الشيكل/الزجر)
behaviour	سلوك	citizenship	مواطنة/حقوق ابن البلد
benefits	فوائد	claw	مخلب
blend	يخلط/يمتزج/يندمج	competition	المنافسة
blizzard	عاصفة ثلجية	competitive	تنافسى

complexity	تعقيد/صعوبة
component	مكون/عنصر
compound	مادة مركبة/مستحضر
concentration	تركيز
confidence	ثقة
conserve	يحفظ
constitution	الدستور
consume	يستهلك
contract	يتقلص/ينكمش
convenience	مواءمة/موافقة/ملاءمة
convert	يحول/ينقلب
convinced	مقتنع/متيقن
cooperative	تعاونى
coordination	التنسيق
crack	شرخ
craftsmen	حرفيون
cubs	الأشبال
cut down	يقلل/يخفض
cycle	دورة/دائرة
daring	جرىء
declare	يعلن/يظهر
defend	يدافع عن
delicacy	حساسية
depression	منخفض/اكتئاب/ركود
determine	يقرر/ يعزم على/ينوى
deviation	انحراف/شذوذ/ضلال
devote	يكرس
diabetes	مرض السكر
die casts	قوالب الصب
digest	يهضم
disabilities	عجز/عدم مقدرة
discipline	نظام/انضباط
disjoint	يتفكك/يخلع
disorder	اضطراب/عدم ترتيب
do without	يستغنى
drag	يسحب/يجر
drastically	بصورة عنيفة
dreadful horror-movie	فيلم رعب
duties	مهام/واجبات
dwelling	المسكن
echo	صدى الصوت
echolocation	تحديد موقع الصدى
eels	ثعابين البحر
elections	انتخابات

eliminate	يزيل
emerge	يخرج/يطلع/يستبين
emit	تنبعث
entertainment	استضافة/ترفيه
entire	إجمالى/كلى/كامل
epidemic	وباء/وبائى/شوطة
equipment	معدات
essence	جوهر/خلاصة/مضمون
evaporation	تبخير
excellence	إجادة/تفوق
excess	زائد/فائض/تجاوز
exchange	تبادل/أخذ وعطاء
exist	يتواجد/يتوافر/يعيش
exploitation	تسخير/ استغلال
express	يعبر عن
expressions	تعبيرات
facial	ظاهر على الوجه
fair	عادل
fan	مناصر/هاوٍ/متحمس
features	سمات/مميزات
females	الإناث
figure out	يحسب
flavouring	معطيات النكهة
fool	يضلل/يخدع/يغش
force	يقهر/يكره/يجبر
frightful	مخيف
gauge	مقياس
genetics	علم الوراثة
glass works	مصانع الزجاج
grasses	الأعشاب
gravity	جاذبية
guarantee	يضمن/يتكفل
gum	العلكة/اللبان
habitat	بيئة طبيعية لحيوان أو نبات
hares	أرانب
hedgehog	القنفذ
hogs	الخنازير
hurricane	إعصار/زوبعة
identified	عرف/ميز/حدد الهوية
immune	المناعة
impatiently	بفارغ الصبر
impressive	مؤثر
include	يتضمن/ يتكون من/يشتمل
independent	مستقل

influence	فاعلية/سيطرة
ingredients	مكونات
inhale	يستنشق
intake	يمتص/يتناول
intake	المأخوذ/منفس
internal	داخلى/باطنى
interpreting	يفسر/يترجم
interval	فترة/فاصل
invisible	غير مرئى
irrational	غير منطقى/لامعقول
kinetic	حركى
knock down	يهدم
knot	عقدة
lab	معمل
labour	عمالة/تشغيل
latex	سائل أبيض كثيف
leopard	نمر أرقط
licking	لعق
lizard	سحلية
lunar	قمرى
made up	يتكون/يتألف
maintain	يحافظ على/يبقى
males	الذكور
mammal	الثدييات
manufactured	مصنعة
mastic	نوع شجر (المصطكى)
mate	تزاوج
meanwhile	فى الوقت نفسه
meow	مواء
meteorologist	عالم بالأرصاد الجوية
mimicry	محاكاة/مماثلة
mines	مناجم
minimal	أصغر/دنىء
misleading	مضلل
moths	حشرة مجنحة/عثة
mould	يصب/يشكل/يصور
mud	الطين
muffle yell	صرخة مكتومة
muscles	عضلات
nightmare	كابوس
nocturnal	ليلية
numerical	رقمى
nutrition	تغذية
obesity	سمنة مفرطة

obey	يمتثل/يطاوع/يطيع
object	شيء/حاجة/موضوع
options	اختيارات
orbit	يدور/مدار
organism	كائن حى
output	منتج/الخارج/محصلة
partnership	مشاركة
peanut-butter	زبدة الفول السودانى
periods	فترات/حقبات/دهور
permission	تصريح/إذن/رخصة
perseverance	مثابرة
phases	مرحلة/طور/وجه
physical	جسدى/جسمانى
pink	وردى
planets	الكواكب
plantation	أرض مزروعة/زرع
pointer	مؤشر
pop	يخرج/يبرز فجأة
position	مركز/موقع
potential	طاقة/قوة كامنة
predators	الحيوانات المفترسة
predispose	مستعد/جعله عرضة لـ
prevalence	سيادة/تحكم
prey	فريسة
pride	الفخر
protection	حماية
prove	يدلل/يبرهن
psychological	نفسى
pull	جذبة/شدة
purple	الأرجوانى
pursuit	مواصلة/تعقب/ملاحقة
rainbow	قوس قزح
raise	يرفع
raw	ناقص النضج أو غير مطبوخ
realistic	واقعى
reflecting	انعكاس
region	منطقة/إقليم
related	ذات صلة/متعلقة
religious	دينى
reptiles	زواحف
reputation	شهرة/سمعة
require	يتطلب/يستلزم
requirements	متطلبات
responsibilities	مسئوليات

softeners	الرقائق/المنعمات
spiny	شائك
stick	عصا
stretch	يمتد
struggle	يكافح/يناضل
summit	مؤتمر قمة/قمة/ذروة
support	يساند/يشجع
supporter	معاون/مدافع/مناصر
surface	سطح
surroundings	البيئة المحيطة
survive	يبقى حيًا
swallow	يبتلع
syrup	شراب
tap	قرع بخفة/يضرب
taxes	ضرائب
thermal	حرارى/سخن
thermometer	مقياس الحرارة
thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
tiny	دقيق/صغير
tore	مزقت
trial	محاكمة

rim	إطار/حافة
roar	هدير
rodents	القوارض
roll up	يلف
rubbery	مطاطى
rubbing	فرك/حك
rucksack	حقيبة الظهر
scan	يمسح ضوئيًا
scatter	يفرق/ينتشر/يتناثر
scent	رائحة
section	قطاع/طائفة
sedentary	ملازم الجلوس/قعود
serve	يخدم
severe	شديد/قاسٍ
sketch	يرسم/يخطط
skillful	بارع/ ماهر/حاذق
skunk	حيوان الظربان
smelly	رائحة كريهة
snarling	زمجرة
sneak	يتسلل/ يتسرب إلى
soccer	كرة القدم

tripled	تضاعفت ثلاث مرات	vocally	جهارًا
ugly	قبيح	vote	يصوت/ينتخب
undeniable	لا يمكن إنكارها	wander	يتجول/يهيم
universe	الكون	wasp	دبور
vane	دليل اتجاه الريح/دوارة الهواء	wildebeest	حيوان كبير الحجم
variety	اختلاف/تنوع	yummy	لذيذ
vision	رؤية		

Advanced & Open General Exercises Answers

Unit 1

1. b) bleed
- تستخدم bleed هنا بمعنى (يختلط اللون بآخر).

2. c) injury
- يستخدم التعبير do oneself an injury بمعنى (يسبب ضررًا لنفسه).

3. d) base
- تستخدم base هنا بمعنى (قاعدة عسكرية).

4. a) label
- يستخدم التعبير own label/own brand بمعنى (منتج من ماركة محددة).

5. c) survived
- يستخدم survive هنا بمعنى (يستمر فى النجاح).

6. c) react
- يستخدم react against بمعنى (يرفض/يكره).

7. a) severe
- تستخدم severe هنا بمعنى (جاد/حازم).

8. b) allowing
- تستخدم allow for بمعنى (مع احتساب).

9. d) area
- تستخدم area هنا بمعنى (مساحة شكل هندسى).

10. c) surface
- تستخدم under the surface بمعنى (تحت السطح – شىء عكس ما هو ظاهر).

11. b) course
- تستخدم course هنا بمعنى (مسار حياة).

12. d) organ
- تستخدم organ هنا بمعنى (مجلة/جريدة تمثل أو تتخصص فى مجال أو مجموعة محددة).

13. a) immune
- تستخدم immune هنا بمعنى (محصن).

14. b) cell
- تستخدم cell هنا بمعنى (زنزانة/مكان احتجاز).

15. d) diet
- يستخدم التعبير go on a diet بمعنى (يتبع نظامًا غذائيًا خاصًا (ريجيم)).

16. d) digging
- بعد الفعل spend يأتى الفعل gerund أى الفعل به ing.

17. c) with
- نستخدم with وبعدها الأداة المستخدمة سواء فى المعلوم أو المجهول.

18. d) throw
- نستخدم see وبعدها الفعل فى المصدر إذا شاهدنا الحدث كله و v.ing إذا شاهدنا جزءًا من الحدث وبعد and فى هذه الجملة مصدر وهو معطوف على ما قبلها.

19. a) Could
- سؤال عن الاستطاعة فى الماضى.

20. b) to
- حرف الجر مع prefer هو to وبعد كليهما الفعل gerund.

21. c) Would
- هذا expression بمعنى: هل لديك مانع؟ وبعده gerund.

22. a) must
- استنتاج فى الماضى بمعنى أكيد والجملة الثانية تبين أنها أكيد كانت حاضرة.

23. d) to being taken
- بعد الفعل object نستخدم to + v.ing وهنا مجهول.

24. d) weekly
- استخدام weekly هنا كصفة لـ routine بمعنى أسبوعى.

25. a) the best
- صفة تفضيل بمعنى أفضل مرشح ولا توجد أداة نكرة لاستخدام إجابات أخرى ممكنة.

26. c) may
- استخدام may للاحتمال لأننا لا نعرف إذا كانت ستمطر أم لا.

27. a) was feeding
- الماضى المستمر لأن الحدثين مستمران ولا يقطع أى منهما الآخر والاختيار هنا بعد while فلابد أن يكون مستمرًا.

28. b) finish
- بعد until للمستقبل نستخدم المضارع البسيط أو المضارع التام.

29. c) Being
- فى أول الكلام being بمعنى لكونه وتساوى because he was.

30. d) Not speaking
- يمكن أن نبدأ الجملة بـ v.ing بعد حذف روابط معينة وفى النفى not + v.ing.

Unit 2

1. **c)** celebrating
- تستخدم celebrate هنا بمعنى (يحتفى/يمجد شخصًا أو حدثًا).

2. **a)** event
- يستخدم التعبير in the event of بمعنى (فى حالة حدوث).

3. **c)** extract
- تستخدم extract هنا بمعنى (يستخلص/يستنتج).

4. **d)** made
- يستخدم التعبير make it a rule بمعنى (يتأكد من فعل شىء دائما).

5. **b)** native
- تستخدم native هنا بمعنى (موجود أساسًا فى مكان محدد).

6. **a)** spicy
- تستخدم spicy هنا بمعنى (مثير و غير لائق).

7. **c)** climate
- تستخدم climate هنا بمعنى (الجو المحيط أو الشعور السائد).

8. **d)** respect
- يستخدم التعبير with all (due) respect بمعنى (مع كل الاحترام اللازم).

9. **c)** served
- تستخدم serve هنا بمعنى (يقوم بدور).

10. **b)** occasion
- يستخدم التعبير on occasion بمعنى (أحيانًا/بشكل غير مستمر).

11. **a)** amount
- تستخدم amount هنا كفعل بمعنى (يصعد/يصل إلى).

12. **b)** articles
- تستخدم articles هنا بمعنى (أدوات مستخدمة بمكان ما) ومرادفها (item).

13. **c)** introduces
- تستخدم introduce هنا بمعنى (يعلم/يخبر).

14. **d)** distant
- تستخدم distant relative هنا بمعنى (شخص ذو قرابة بعيدة).

15. **c)** options
- تستخدم options هنا بمعنى (الميزات الإضافية التى تأتى مع منتج كالسيارة).

16. **c)** wherever
- الجملة دالة على المكان والمطلوب كلمة تعنى فى أى مكان أو (أينما).

17. **a)** haven't you
- إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفى وهنا have تصبح haven't.

18. **d)** anyone
- الإجابة المطلوبة بمعنى (أى أحد) بعد didn't هى anyone.

19. **b)** as
- بعد as تأتى الوظائف بمعنى تعمل كـ.

20. **c)** whole
- تأتى whole التى بمعنى (كل/جميع) بعد the ولكن all قبل the.

21. **a)** In spite
- الإجابة الوحيدة التى بعدها of هى in spite بمعنى (على الرغم من).

22. **d)** this
- استخدام this للمفرد القريب المناسب لـ have أما that تناسب الماضى.

23. **b)** Had
- استخدام had كبديل لـ if فى الحالة الثالثة.

24. **c)** me
- استخدام me كمفعول بعد belong to.

25. **a)** to help
- بعد ask نستخدم to + inf والاستمرار فى الجملة to be helping لا يناسب الطلب.

26. **b)** had
- الإجابة had حالة ثانية لأن جواب الشرط حالة ٢ ينقصه التصريف الثالث بعد have.

27. **d)** hard
- هنا hard حال وليس hardly التى بمعنى بالكاد وليس حال للفعل work.

28. **d)** Not wanting
- يمكن أن نبدأ الجملة بـ v.ing بعد حذف روابط معينة وفى النفى not + v.ing.

29. **b)** until
- تستخدم until للمستقبل وبعدها أما المضارع البسيط أو المضارع التام أو فترة زمنية.

30. **c)** where
- ضمير الوصل الذى يستخدم للمكان هو where.

Unit 3

1. c) solution
- تستخدم solution هنا بمعنى (محلول).

2. a) ocean
- يستخدم التعبير a drop in the ocean بمعنى (قطرة فى محيط/ جهد قليل بالنسبة لشىء أكبر).

3. c) link
- تستخدم link هنا بمعنى (رابط لموقع أو صفحة إنترنت).

4. b) available
- تستخدم available هنا بمعنى (موجود لأداء عمل).

5. d) earn
- يستخدم التعبير earn their keep بمعنى (يكسب قوت يومه).

6. c) description
- تستخدم job description هنا بمعنى (طبيعة الوظيفة أو مهامها).

7. d) heating
- تستخدم heat up هنا بمعنى (يزداد حدة).

8. a) contained
- تستخدم contain هنا بمعنى (يحتوى النار أو يطفئها).

9. c) crop
- تستخدم crop هنا بمعنى (جيل/دفعة لتعليمها).

10. b) electric
- تستخدم electric هنا بمعنى (مثير/مؤثر).

11. a) flow
- تستخدم cash flow هنا بمعنى (سيولة مالية).

12. b) cause
- تستخدم cause هنا بمعنى (قضية).

13. c) vehicles
- تستخدم vehicle هنا بمعنى (أداة/وسيلة لنقل عدوى).

14. d) capital
- تستخدم capital هنا بمعنى (رأس مال).

15. c) project
- تستخدم project هنا بمعنى (يظهر صورًا بواسطة جهاز عرض).

16. a) told
- يأتى بعد told مفعول وعبارة that boy standing there هى مفعول ومعناها (أخبرت الولد الواقف هناك قصة حقيقية).

17. b) much
- تأتى much لبيان الزيادة الواضحة قبل الصفات فى درجات المقارنة.

18. c) since
- يأتى بعد since البداية المحددة والسنين أما بعد for فتأتى مدة محسوبة وقبلهما المضارع التام.

19. d) myself
- الضمير هنا عكسى لوجود كلمة نفس فيه.

20. c) Neither
- الرد والموافقة هنا على جملة منفية و neither تأتى للنفى.

21. d) or
- تناسب or النفى قبلها عند ذكر شيئين أو أكثر ولها استخدامات أخرى.

22. a) are always dropping
- استخدام always مع المضارع المستمر لبيان المضايقة من تكرار فعل شىء.

23. a) lived
- استخدام الماضى البسيط لبيان انتهاء المدة.

24. b) Eating
- يمكن أن يكون الفاعل gerund ومكون من مجموعة كلمات أيضا والفاعل هنا Eating too many sweets وفعل الجملة is.

25. d) What an
- يمكن استخدام How أو What للتعجب ولكن how يأتى بعدها صفة فقط و what يأتى بعدها اسم موصوف وإذا كان الاسم مفردًا يعد يأتى a/an قبل الصفة.

26. b) myself
- الضمير هنا عكسى أيضًا لوجود كلمة نفس فيه (أشترى لنفسى).

27. b) passengers' bags
- لان الاسم الذى تضاف إليه الملكية جمع منته بـ s توضع apostrophe فقط بعد الـ s.

28. a) don't they
- لأن الضمير العائد على everyone يكون جمعًا استخدمنا they ولأن الجملة مثبتة فيكون السؤال المذيل منفيًا.

29. c) the
- نستخدم the وبعدها الشخص مضافًا إليه apostrophe ثم s لتوضح مكان عمل الشخص مثل العيادة أو الورشة الخ.

30. a) to writing
- حرف الجر المقترن بـ prefer هو to وبعده الاسم أو gerund.

Unit 4

1. **d)** deal
- تستخدم deal هنا بمعنى (قدر/مقدار).

2. **a)** titles
- تستخدم title هنا بمعنى (لقب فى لعبة أو مسابقة).

3. **a)** receive
- تستخدم receive هنا بمعنى (يستقبل ضيوفًا).

4. **b)** tone
- يستخدم التعبير set the tone بمعنى (يحدد الاتجاه السائد فى مقابلة أو مكان).

5. **c)** gift
- تستخدم gift هنا بمعنى (موهبة).

6. **d)** headlines
- يستخدم التعبير make the headlines بمعنى (يظهر فى عناوين الأخبار).

7. **a)** section
- يستخدم التعبير in section بمعنى (على مقاطع/أجزاء).

8. **c)** record
- يستخدم التعبير break the record بمعنى (يحطم الرقم القياسى).

9. **b)** Society
- تستخدم Society هنا بمعنى (جمعية).

10. **d)** image
- تستخدم image هنا بمعنى (صورة/موقف).

11. **c)** admit
- تستخدم admit هنا بمعنى (يسمح بدخول).

12. **b)** parcel
- يستخدم التعبير part and parcel بمعنى (جزء لا يتجزأ من شىء).

13. **a)** post
- تستخدم the post هنا بمعنى (البريد).

14. **d)** tip
- يستخدم التعبير the tip of the iceberg بمعنى (قمة جبل الجليد/الجزء الظاهر فقط).

15. **c)** members
- تستخدم member هنا بمعنى (أحد أفراد فصيلة من الحيوانات).

16. **d)** with
- حرف الجر لـ filled هو with بمعنى مملوء بـ وكلمة groceries ليست agent أو فاعل لنستخدم معها by فى المجهول ولكن الفاعل هو الشخص الذى يقوم بالعمل.

17. **a)** say
- هذا التعبير «قل شيئًا» نستخدم معه say وليس tell التى يأتى بعدها الشخص الذى يخبر بالشىء.

18. **c)** insisted
- تأتى on كحرف جر بعد insist بمعنى يصر على.

19. **b)** advised
- الاختيار المناسب لمعنى الجملة هو advised لأن الطبيب ينصح.

20. **d)** children's
- لأن الاسم الذى تضاف إليه الملكية جمع غير منتهٍ بـ s توضع apostrophe ثم s.

21. **b)** had been
- الجملة هنا محولة إلى غير المباشر فلزم تحويل الزمن إلى الماضى التام وخاصة مع تحويل الظرف الزمنى the previous المحول من last.

22. **c)** the
- تحول الصفة بعد the إلى اسم جمع ومع وجود homeless اخترنا the لتؤدى معنى المتشردين.

23. **a)** to do
- الفعل make يأخذ المصدر فى المعلوم وعند تحويله للمجهول يأتى بعده to + inf.

24. **d)** by
- فى المجهول نستخدم by + agent لبيان من قام بالفعل إذا كان ذلك ضروريًا.

25. **b)** needn't
- تعبر هذه الجملة عن عدم الضرورة وما يناسبها هو needn't.

26. **c)** nothing
- كلمة nothing هنا معناها عدم وضع أى شىء لأن الجملة كاملة.

27. **a)** is
- الذى ينقص الجملة هنا هو الفعل لأن ما قبلها فاعل.
One thing that bothers me

28. **c)** needs
- المطلوب فعل للفاعل المفرد one ولأن need فعل stative فلا يستخدم gerund بعد v.to be.

29. **c)** he was born
- لأن where هنا أداة ربط وسط الجملة لا يأتى بعدها سؤال بالشكل المألوف ولكن يحول السؤال إلى جملة خبرية.

30. **b)** happens
- لا توجد إجابة غير المضارع البسيط ولنعتبرها حالة صفرية «ماذا يحدث لو حدث كذا؟».

Unit 5

1. **c)** criticise
- تستخدم criticise هنا بمعنى (يحكم على/يفحص جيدًا).

2. **b)** profile
- تستخدم profile هنا بمعنى (صورة فوتوغرافية بأحد جوانب الوجه).

3. **d)** presentation
- تستخدم presentation هنا بمعنى (طريقة عرض).

4. **a)** scanned
- تستخدم scan هنا بمعنى (يجرى فحصًا بالأشعة).

5. **c)** collect
- تستخدم collect هنا بمعنى (يحضر شخصًا من مكان).

6. **b)** character
- تستخدم character هنا بمعنى (الميزة المعروفة عن مكان).

7. **a)** connecting
- يستخدم التعبير connecting flight بمعنى (رحلة جوية مكملة (ترانزيت) إلى مكان).

8. **d)** developed
- يستخدم التعبير develop the film بمعنى (يقوم بطبع الصور الفوتوغرافية على أحد أفلام الكاميرا).

9. **b)** support
- تستخدم support هنا بمعنى (يوفر البيئة المناسبة لحياة كائن حى).

10. **c)** registered
- تستخدم register هنا بمعنى (يسجل رقمًا على مقياس محدد).

11. **a)** symbol
- تستخدم chemical symbol هنا بمعنى (رمز كيميائى لعنصر).

12. **b)** stamps
- تستخدم stamps هنا بمعنى (أختام).

13. **c)** influence
- تستخدم influence هنا بمعنى (شخص مؤثر).

14. **d)** stole
- تستخدم stole هنا بمعنى (ينسل خارجا/يخرج بهدوء).

15. **c)** purpose
- تستخدم purpose هنا بمعنى (هدف فى الحياة).

16. **d)** will have finished
- بعد جملة by التى بعدها فترة زمنية فى المستقبل نستخدم المستقبل التام.

17. **a)** to eat
- بعد love نستخدم الفعل به ing ولكن بعد 'd love نستخدم to + inf.

18. **c)** by the time
- بعد by the time نستخدم الماضى البسيط وقبلها الماضى التام إذا كانت الجملة ماضيًا.

19. **b)** wouldn't have lost
- جواب شرط الحالة الثالثة من if.

20. **a)** talking
- إذا لم يأت مفعول بعد allow نستخدم v.ing وهو يساوى الاسم أما إذا جاء مفعول يأتى بعده to + inf.

21. **b)** might
- استنتاج على أن الشخص نائم فلربما أنه متعب والاختيارات الباقية لا تؤدى معنى.

22. **d)** with
- حرف الجر لـ covered هو with بمعنى مغطى بـ و كلمة a blanket ليست agent أو فاعل لنستخدم معها by فى المجهول ولكن الفاعل هو الشخص الذى يقوم بالعمل.

23. **c)** being told
- بعد الفعل like يأتى v.ing وفى المجهول being + P.P.

24. **a)** such a
- بعد such يأتى اسم موصوف وإذا كان الاسم مفرد يعد نستخدم معها a/an.

25. **c)** cutting
- بعد need أما v.ing أو مجهول to be + P.P.

26. **d)** He said he wasn't feeling well
- الجملة محولة لغير المباشر و said فى الماضى ويلزم أن يكون الزمن بعدها ماضٍ وأما told فلابد بعدها من مفعول.

27. **c)** We won't know what to do until we get the results.
- هذه الجملة هى الوحيدة التى تعطى معنى فالزمن بعدها صحيح وهو مضارع بسيط كما أنه مع after و when لا يستقيم المعنى بوجود جملة منفية قبلها وأما الجملة الأخيرة لا يأتى بعد until مستقبل.

28. **b)** If you don't tell me, I'll ask someone else.
- هذه الجملة هى الجملة الوحيدة التى تنطبق عليها شروط if والباقى لا يناسب جواب الشرط فعل الشرط.

29. **a)** What do you think we'll be doing in five years' time?
- مع in five years' time نستخدم المستقبل المستمر.

30. **c)** I used to live in Assuit, but now I live in Cairo.
- تستخدم used to لعادة كانت فى الماضى ولم تعد الآن وباقى الجمل غير سليمة أما من ناحية المعنى أو القواعد.

Unit 6

1. **c)** pile
- يستخدم التعبير a pile of cash بمعنى (قدر كبير من المال).

2. **b)** fire
- يستخدم التعبير under fire بمعنى (معرض للنقد الشديد).

3. **a)** breath
- يستخدم التعبير a breath of air بمعنى (نسمة من الهواء).

4. **d)** races
- تستخدم race هنا بمعنى (عرق/جنس بشرى).

5. **b)** treated
- تستخدم treat هنا بمعنى (يعالج خشبًا بمادة كيميائية).

6. **c)** boss
- تستخدم boss هنا بمعنى (يمارس سلطة/تحكم).

7. **a)** waste
- تستخدم waste هنا بمعنى (إهدار لموارد).

8. **b)** into
- تستخدم get into هنا بمعنى (يعرض/يناقش).

9. **c)** owned
- تستخدم own up هنا بمعنى (يعترف).

10. **d)** pockets
- تستخدم pocket هنا بمعنى (جيوب/مناطق عنف/إرهاب).

11. **c)** in time
- تعبر كلمة in time عن الوصول فى الميعاد المناسب أما on time فى الوقت المحدد للأشياء التى لها مواعيد وجداول محددة.

12. **a)** until
- تعطى until المعنى المناسب للنفى قبلها و nearly بعدها.

13. **c)** further
- تستخدم further هنا بمعنى أكثر أو زيادة أما farther فهى أبعد للمسافات.

14. **d)** their
- تستخدم their كصفة ملكية بعدها اسم أما theirs فلا يأتى بعدها اسم.

15. **b)** each other
- تعنى each other بعضهم البعض.

16. **a)** many
- تستخدم many قبل الاسم الجمع الذى يعد وفى هذه الجملة قبلها so لذلك هى الوحيدة الصحيحة لأن a lot of لا تأتى مع so ولكن مع such

17. **d)** will you
- إذا كانت جملة السؤال المذيل جملة أمرية منفية يكون السؤال المذيل بـ will فى الإثبات أما إذا كانت الجملة أمرية مثبتة فيكون السؤال المذيل بـ will أو won't

18. **b)** make
- هذا تعبير محفوظ make an appointment بمعنى يحدد ميعادًا.

19. **a)** as
- نستخدم as مع regarded بمعنى يعتبر.

20. **c)** the
- نستخدم the قبل الجنسيات لتعبر عن شعب هذه البلد مثل the English يعنى الشعب الإنجليزى.

21. **c)** since
- لـ since هنا معنى آخر وهو لأن وتساوى because للسبب.

22. **a)** What
- يمكن استخدام How أو What للتعجب ولكن how بعدها صفة فقط و what بعدها اسم موصوف وإذا كان الاسم مفردًا يعد يأتى a/an قبل الصفة.

23. **b)** playing
- نستخدم v.ing بعد while إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعدها.

24. **d)** the
- هناك كلمات تستخدم للغرض الرئيسى ولا تأخذ the ولكن إذا لم تستخدم للغرض الرئيسى تأخذ the مثل bed, hospital, prison, school, university, TV وهنا TV ليست للغرض الرئيسى.

25. **b)** start
- أدوات الربط إذا استخدمت للمستقبل نستخدم بعدها المضارع البسيط أو المضارع التام والحدث الآخر مستقبل.

ALAOWAA

Gem

New

HELLO ENGLISH LANGUAGE

First Term

2021

Skills & Ongoing Assessment

2nd Secondary

ندى البسوقى

ALADWAA

Gem

New Hello!

الصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Skills and Ongoing Assessment Booklet

ملحق المهارات والتقويم المستمر

By

Emad Fawzy Mohamed Abdel Aal Ahmed Fadel Ayman M. Ebrahim Yacoub Moawad



حمّل
تطبيق الأضواء
الآن

ابحث عن
كودك الشخصى
الموجود فى ظهر الغلاف
واحصل مجانًا على جميع مزايا التطبيق.

1234567890

طالب

- اختبارات تفاعلية
- شرح الدروس
- تقارير وإحصائيات
- هدايا ومكافآت
- اسأل الأضواء
- تحدى الأصدقاء

ولى أمر

- تابع مستوى أولادك الدراسى من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات.
- تعرّف أهم مستجدات العملية التعليمية.

معلم

- تابع مستوى طلابك الدراسى من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات.
- كون مجموعة من طلابك وتواصل معهم.

www.aladwaa.com Follow Us

Contents

Part 1

Skills

1) Reading Comprehension 4
2) Translation 13
3) Writing 31

Part 2

Integrated Skills

- Staying healthy 53
- Eating around the world 57
- The future of food 61
- Changing English 65
- Being smart online 69
- Learning from our mistakes 73

Part 3

Ongoing Assessment

Ongoing Assessment 77

Part 4

Important General Grammar

Important General Grammar 102

Part 1



Skills

1) Reading Comprehension
2) Writing
3) Translation

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

لاشك أن سؤال قطعة الفهم هو من اكبر الأسئلة فى الامتحان وأعلاها درجات. لذلك يجب الاهتمام بها والتدريب المستمر عليها، وللإجابة عن اسئلة قطعة الفهم اليك النصائح الآتية:

١- قم بقراءة القطعة مرة واحدة لتفهم المعنى العام دون التوقف عند الكلمات الصعبة.
٢- اقرأ أسئلة القطعة ثم قم بقراءة القطعة مرة ثانية بحثًا عن الاجابة.
٣- عند عدم معرفة كلمة فى الجملة حاول تخمينها من سياق الجملة ككل.
٤- عند الاختيار من متعدد يمكن أن يكون هناك اختياران لهما نفس المعنى فتقوم باستبعادهما وتفكر فى الاختيارين الأخرين.
٥- لاحظ صيغ الأسئلة التالية:

Do you agree/oppose/think ...?	هل (توافق)/(تعارض)/(تعتقد)؟
Find in the passage words which mean: a) b)	استخرج كلمات من القطعة تعنى
From the point of view of the writer (author)	من وجهة نظر الكاتب (المؤلف)
From your point of view.... / In your opinion	من وجهة نظرك /(فى رأيك)
Give a suitable title for the passage.	ضع عنوانا مناسبا للقطعة.
Mention in detail .../ in brief	اذكر بالتفصيل/باختصار
Show/Explain/Discuss the reasons	وضح/اشرح/ناقش الأسباب
What do you think (is your opinion) of ...?	فسر لماذا/ما رأيك فى؟
What does the pronoun ... refer to?	ما الذى يشير إليه الضمير؟
What does the underlined word mean/refer to?	ماذا تعنى الكلمة التى أسفلها خط؟ إلى ماذا تشير الكلمة التى تحتها خط؟
What is the main idea of the passage?	ما هى الفكرة الرئيسية فى القطعة؟
Write down/Summarise with words on your own	اكتب- لخص بكلمات من عندك
Summarise the main idea in the passage.	لخص الفكرة الرئيسية فى القطعة.

Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1 "No smoking" this is what we read in public closed places and public means of transport. If you do not smoke, do not start. This is a valuable piece of advice we often receive from the majority of doctors. Cigarette smoking and pollution represent fearful enemies to man as they destroy health and bring about suffering a death. Smoking is one of the most important factors in the development of heart diseases and cancer.

Doctors have proved that the smoker's lungs, throat and respiratory system are often attacked by cancer. Male cigarette smokers have higher death rate from heart diseases than non-smoking ones. Female smokers are less affected because they do not breathe in the smoke so deeply. So, smoking is banned in cinemas, theatres and all closed places. In some places, there are special rooms for smoking, just to protect the non-smokers from its danger. They are helpless victims since they inhale poisonous gas and nicotine, they receive much more than the smokers themselves. The majority of smokers who want help to stop smoking prefer to seek it from a medical practitioner or other qualified health professional, rather than using self-help approaches. Patients should accept advice on changing their smoking habits from an acknowledged expert on health problems.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doctors have recently proved that smokers are exposed to _____.
 a) punishment b) good health
 c) cancer and heart diseases d) non-smokers' attack
2. Non-smokers have _____ death rate from heart diseases than male cigare smokers.
 a) higher b) greater c) lower d) as much as
3. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?
 a) Male smokers. b) Non-smokers.
 c) Female smokers. d) Diseases.
4. The underlined verb "inhale" is similar in meaning to the verb _____.
 a) breathe in b) breathe out c) consume d) produce

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why is cigarette smoking dangerous? Give two reasons.
6. What do doctors advise smokers to do?
7. Mention two of the human organs that can be badly affected by smok
8. In your opinion, why do people resort to smoking? Give two reasons.

2 Dirty water can be dangerous to drink and can make people ill. It can damage the environment, animals and fish. What do you think causes water pollution? People often throw rubbish into rivers. This makes the river look horrible and affects the lives of people, animals, and fish. We all need to get rid of waste materials from our bodies. In many places untreated sewage goes straight into rivers, lakes or seas. Too much sewage kills fish and other water life. It can make the water unsafe for drinking, washing or swimming.

Oil is an important source of energy, but it can also cause pollution. If it is spilt while lorries or ships are transporting it, plants and animals die. Factories often pump waste liquid into sewers and rivers. This may contain dangerous chemicals which could harm plants, animals, fish and humans. Some factories filter or clean the waste before it goes into sewers or rivers. This helps to keep the environment cleaner. It may be concluded, that all live organisms on Earth utterly depend on water, and if the water they consume is not clean, it reflects negatively on these organisms.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun " It" refers to
 a) water life
 b) fish life
 c) too much sewage
 d) untreated sewage
2. Factories try to keep the environment cleaner by
 a) pumping waste liquid into rivers
 b) throwing dangerous chemicals into sewers
 c) filtering the waste before it goes into rivers
 d) transporting their products abroad
3. Water pollution affects people because
 a) it provides sewage
 b) it filters waste
 c) it spills oil
 d) it contaminates water
4. From the author's point of view, what is responsible for water pollution?
 a) Human activities.
 b) Fish.
 c) Animals.
 d) Sewage.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. According to the passage, what causes water pollution?
6. Pollution is a serious problem. Suggest two ways to solve it.
7. Find words from the passage which mean:
 a) garbage
 b) moving something to other places
8. How do you think people and the government can solve the problem of dirty water?

3 It was a very foggy day in London. Mr. Smith arrived from Edinburgh to go to a very important meeting, but no buses or taxis were running because of the fog.

It was nine o'clock and his meeting was at ten, so he thought he would walk to the office where it was going to be. But nobody was even trying to walk anywhere. While Mr. Smith was standing there, a young man came up to him and said, "Sir, if you want to go somewhere, I can guide you." Mr. Smith was surprised and said, "How can you find the way in this fog?" "Don't worry, Sir," answered the man. So Mr. Smith told the young man where he wanted to go. They walked quite fast. At last Mr. Smith thought, " Perhaps this man is mad, or a thief." But a minute later, the young man stopped and said, "Here is the place, Sir." Mr. Smith was surprised to find that he reached the office. He gave the young man a pound and then said, "How did you find the way in the fog?" "I'm blind, Sir," answered the young man, "but I know London well, and it is exactly the same in the fog."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The meeting was going to be in
 a) Edinburgh
 b) Scotland
 c) London
 d) Glasgow
2. Mr. Smith rewarded the blind man by
 a) walking with him
 b) giving him money
 c) thinking he was mad
 d) telling him a funny story
3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
 a) The office.
 b) The fog.
 c) The guide.
 d) The meeting.
4. Mr Smith seemed to the man who guided him.
 a) trust
 b) doubt
 c) hate
 d) recognise

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why couldn't Mr. Smith find a bus or a taxi?
6. What do you think of the blind man?
7. Find words from the passage that mean:
 a) lead
 b) burglar
8. Do you think the story is fiction or non-fiction? Why?

4 Helicopters are very different from airplanes. They can do three things that airplanes cannot do. First, when airplanes move upward, they must also move forward, but helicopters can move straight up without moving ahead. Second, helicopters can fly backward, which airplanes cannot do. Third, helicopters can use their rotors to hover in the air (stay in one place) which is impossible for airplanes.

Because helicopters can perform actions that airplanes cannot, they are used for different tasks. Since helicopters can take off without moving forward, they do not need a runway for takeoff. They are used in congested areas where there is no room for airplanes or in isolated areas which do not have airports. Because they can hover, they are used on firefighting missions to drop water on fires. They are used in logging operations to lift trees out of forests. Helicopters are used as air ambulances to airlift patients out of situations which are difficult to reach by conventional ambulances. The police use helicopters to follow suspects on the ground or to search for cars on the ground. Of course, helicopters have military uses because of their design and capabilities.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Helicopters are able to
 a) move straight up
 b) fly backward
 c) hover
 d) all of the previous
2. The best synonym for "perform" is
 a) fly
 b) do
 c) lift
 d) can
3. If an area is isolated it is
 a) crowded
 b) popular
 c) cut off
 d) in the city
4. How are helicopters used as ambulances?
 a) They chase suspects on the ground.
 b) They airlift people out of accidents.
 c) They can drop water on fires.
 d) They lift trees out of forests.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What must airplanes do when they move upward?
6. Why are helicopters used in firefighting?
7. Why don't helicopters need runways?
8. Helicopters can be used in many different things. Mention two.

5 Football or soccer, which is considered to be the most popular sport in the world, is a team sport played between two teams of eleven players using a spherical ball.

The object of the game, which is played on a wide rectangular field with a goal on each end of the field, is to score by putting the ball into the adversary goal. A goalkeeper who is allowed, at the exception of other players, to use his/her hands in the game, keeps the goal. The winners are those who score the most goals. If the football match ends in a draw, the two teams may be redirected to play extra time and/or penalty shootouts (each team taking turns to have a set number of kicks at the goal.)

The way football is played now was first codified in England. Nowadays, it is governed by the FIFA, «Fédération Internationale de Football Association» (International Federation of Association Football.) The game is played now all over the world and competitions are organised nationally, continentally and internationally. The most prestigious of football competitions is the World Cup, which is held every four years.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is another word for football.
 a) Soccer
 b) FIFA
 c) The World Cup
 d) Goal
2. The rules of the game were established
 a) by an international committee
 b) in England
 c) by FIFA
 d) every four years
3. The number of players on the pitch in a football match is
 a) ten
 b) eleven
 c) sixteen
 d) twenty two
4. The most important football competition nowadays is
 a) FIFA
 b) the World Cup
 c) soccer
 d) football

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How is football played?
6. What exception does the goalkeeper have?
7. Find in the text words which mean:
 a) worldwide
 b) high-status
8. In your opinion, how can football be a means to please people?

6 Statistics الإحصاء show that the rapid growth in population creates problems for developing countries. So, why don't people have fewer children? It has also been found that only when people's education and living standards begin to rise, birth rates begin to fall. Now poor countries can't afford social services and old age pensions, and people's incomes are so low that they have nothing to spare for savings. So people need their children to provide them with security in their old age. Having a large family can be a form of insurance. Even when they are still young, children can help on a small farm.

Improvements in public health services and medical care have assured that many more babies survive infancy and grow up. It has also helped the parents to live longer. No wonder populations are being added to both ends. These people have to be convinced that with smaller families, there will be more food, better schools, more employment and thus a better standard of living. This means changes in attitudes.

To sum up, the population explosion has caused huge pressure on the surface of the earth. Also, we can control many issues of the earth by controlling population growth. Besides, many problems like food insecurity, illiteracy, poverty, and unemployment can be minimised by controlling the population.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ had decreased the number of deaths among babies.
 a) Medical care b) The standard of living
 c) Birth control d) Education
2. We have to convince people to _____.
 a) work on farm b) build more houses
 c) go to school d) have smaller families
3. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to _____.
 a) people's incomes b) social services c) people d) poor countries
4. The best title to this text is "_____".
 a) Statistics b) Family planning
 c) Smaller families d) Developing countries

B) Answer the following questions:

5. When do birth rates go down?
6. Why did people like to have many children in the past?
7. Find in the text words which mean:
 a) the science which deals with numbers and facts
 b) early childhood
8. In your opinion, how can we solve the problem of over-population?

7 All spiders spin webs. That's because webs help spiders. Webs help spiders do three things. Webs help spiders hold eggs. Webs help spiders hide. And webs help spiders catch food.

Webs help spiders hold eggs. Many spiders like to lay their eggs in their webs. The webs help keep the eggs together. Webs help spiders keep their eggs safe.

Webs help spiders hide. Most spiders are dark. They are brown, grey, or black. But spider webs are light. They are white and cloudy. When spiders hide in their webs, they are harder to see.

Webs help spiders catch food. Spider webs are sticky. When a bug flies into the web, it gets stuck. It moves around. It tries to get out. But it can't. It is trapped! Spiders can tell that the bug is trapped. That's because spiders feel the web move. And the spider is hungry. The spider goes to get the bug.

Without webs, spiders would not be able to live like they do. Spiders need their webs to survive!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This passage is mostly about _____.
 a) spider colors b) spider webs
 c) spider eggs d) spider prey
2. As used in paragraph 4, the word trapped most nearly means _____.
 a) stuck b) hidden c) eaten d) escaped
3. How can spiders tell when something is trapped in their web?
 a) They hear it. b) They smell it.
 c) They feel it. d) They see it.
4. As used in the last sentence of the passage, the word survive means to stay _____.
 a) awake b) hidden c) caught d) alive

B) Answer the following questions:

5. The passage lists three reasons why spiders spin webs. Of these reasons, which do you think is the most important? Why?
6. Find words from the passage that mean:
 a) gluey b) imprisoned
7. Do you like spiders? Why? Why not?
8. In what ways can spider webs help spiders?

8 Mona says that all of her friends have a cell phone, but Mona's mom doesn't want to buy her one. Mona's mom doesn't want Mona to play video games either. What is more, the Internet scares her. Mona's mom says, "If Mona has a cell phone, how do we know whom she is talking to? Video games are bad for you. The Internet is dangerous and uncontrolled. It's like having a gun in the house. We should just ban her from using the computer, and I'm not buying her a cell phone until she is eighteen. This is the only way we can be sure that Mona is safe."

Mona's dad disagrees with Mona's mom. Although he agrees that there are some dangers to it, he likes the Internet, and finds it to be very useful. "The trouble is," he says, "we just can't stop Mona from using the Internet, as this would put her at a disadvantage. What is more, I like video games. I think that, when played in moderation, they are fun. Obviously, it is not good to play them without restraint or self-control. Finally, I think Mona needs a cell phone. We can't take these things away."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona's mother doesn't want to buy her a cell phone because she is more
 a) ridiculous b) careful c) cruel d) rude
2. Mona's dad can best be described as
 a) shameless b) foolish c) wild d) reasonable
3. Which of the following best shows the difference between Mona's mom and Mona's dad?
 a) Mom wants to ban Mona from using the computer, while dad likes to play video games.
 b) Mom thinks technology is dangerous, while dad thinks it can be useful.
 c) Mom cares little about Mona's future, while dad is very supportive.
 d) Mom is very strict while Dad is open-minded.
4. Which of the following explains the similarity between Mona's mom and Mona's dad?
 a) Mom and dad both like technology.
 b) Mom and dad both think video games are bad.
 c) Mom and dad both think the internet is dangerous.
 d) Mom and dad both care about Mona's wellbeing.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What do you think would be the best way for Mona to change the way her mom thinks about technology?
6. On what condition will Mona's mother buy her daughter a cell phone? If she is eighteen.
7. Do you think we should let children use modern technology without restrictions? Why ? Why not?
8. Do you think technology is useful to children? Why? Why not?

2 Translation

1 Translation from English into Arabic:

١ نحدد أجزاء الجملة من حيث الفاعل والفعل والمفعول ونبدأ الترجمة للعربية بالفعل كلما أمكن.

٢ يحول المجهول إلى المعلوم ولكن إذا كان المجهول واقعيا فلا بأس.

٣ يمكن استخدام كلمات وحروف مثل: «الواو، من، ثم، كذلك، لهذا، الفاء» لربط المعنى.

٤ يمكن إضافة كلمة أو أكثر للسياق لكى يستقيم المعنى.

٥ نترجم should/must/ought to إلى: يجب أن/ينبغى أن/إنه للزام علينا أن.

٦ نترجم المضارع التام (have/has + p.p.) إلى: لقد + الفعل الماضى.

٧ نخمن الكلمة الصعبة من التى قبلها أو التى بعدها أو من سياق الجملة.

٨ يمكن التخمين باستخدام مقاطع أول وآخر الكلمة مثل: non-renewable فإن أصل الكلمة new وأضيف لها re بمعنى يعيد و able تضيف الصفة و non للنفى فيصبح معنى الكلمة «غير متجدد».

٩ إذا لم نستطع التخمين لا نترك مكانها فارغًا.

١٠ نلتزم بزمن الجملة فى الترجمة. المضارع يترجم إلى مضارع والماضى يترجم إلى ماض.

2 Translation from Arabic into English:

Part (1)

١ الجملة هى أهم شىء فى تعلم أى لغة فلو لم تكن الجملة صحيحة لا يستطيع أحد أن يفهم ما تريد ولابد أن تكون فى زمن صحيح أيضا. والجملة فى اللغة الانجليزية لا تعرف إلا شكلا واحدا وهو:

Subject +	verb +	object +	adverb +	place +	time
الفاعل	الفعل	المفعول	الحال	المكان	الزمن
Noun/pron. اسم/ضمير		Noun/pron. اسم/ضمير			
The boy	studies	his lessons	carefully	at home	every day.

- ينقص تكوين الجملة الصفة وهى ليس لها مكان محدد بل تأتى قبل كل اسم، فيمكن أن تأتى قبل الفاعل أو المفعول أو المكان أو الزمن.

PART 1

١ الجملة تكون فى نفس الزمن الذى نتحدث فيه.

I visited a lot of countries. - زرت العديد من البلاد.

٢ ينظر الطالب إلى الفاعل جيدا فالفاعل فى الجملة العربية هو الفاعل فى الجملة الإنجليزية.

- تلعب السياحة دورًا هامًا فى زيادة دخلنا القومى.

- Tourism plays a vital role in increasing our national income.

٣ يمكن أن يكون الفاعل v.ing وهنا لابد من وجود فعل رئيسى آخر.

- Reading gives us a lot of information and widens our knowledge.

٥ إذا بدأت الجملة بفعل مضاف إليه ing فيعامل كفعل مفرد (is/ was/ has/ does/ s/ es).

- يقوى لعب كرة القدم أجسامنا.

- Playing football strengthens our bodies.

٦ نترجم قد أو لقد وبعدهما فعل ماض إلى المضارع التام.

- لقد نظفت والدتى الشقة وطهت الطعام.

- My mother has cleaned the flat and cooked the food.

٧ نترجم لقد إلى زمن الماضى البسيط إذا كان فى الجملة كلمة من كلمات الماضى البسيط.

- لقد اتصلت بصديقى مرتين أمس.

- I phoned my friend twice yesterday.

٨ إذا لم نجد فعلًا فى الجملة فهى جملة اسمية وفى هذه الحالة يكون الفعل:

- إن العلم هو العمود الفقرى لتقدم أى دولة.

- لا يوجد فعل فى هذه الجملة وعند الترجمة لابد من وجود فعل فى الإنجليزية فعل معناه يكون أم يملك؟ نجد أنه (يكون).

- Science is the backbone of the progress of any nation.

- لدينا ظروف صعبة هذه الأيام.

- لا يوجد فعل فى هذه الجملة وعند الترجمة لابد من وجود فعل فى الإنجليزية فعل معناه يكون أم يملك؟ نجد أنه (يملك).

- We have difficult circumstances these days.

Translate into English:

١ تلعب القراءة دورًا هامًا فى حياتنا لأنها تمدنا بالمعرفة فى شتى المجالات.

.....

٢ يعطينا السلام فرصة ذهبية لتنفيذ العديد من المشاريع المفيدة فهو يوفر المال المنفق على الأسلحة.

.....

٣ السياحة شيء ضروري لزيادة الدخل القومى ولتنفيذ العديد من المشاريع الإنتاجية الضخمة.

.....

Translation

٤ يعانى عالمنا فى الوقت الحاضر من كثير من المشكلات مثل الاحتباس الحرارى وندرة المياه ونقص انتاج الغذاء.

.....

٥ يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على قراءة أفضل الكتب فى العلم والطب والهندسة.

.....

٦ لدينا العديد من الموارد الاقتصادية التى لو أحسنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم.

.....

٧ لقد ساعد الحاسب الآلى الإنسان على توفير الوقت والجهد وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

.....

Part (2)

١ الاسم الجمع العام لا يأخذ the وكذلك الاسم المفرد العام (غير المخصص).

- تعطينا الأشجار الظل والأخشاب والثمار والأكسجين.

- Trees give us shade, wood, fruit and oxygen.

٢ الأسماء المعنوية (غير المحسوسة) لا تأخذ the:

- إن التسامح والحب والإخلاص والتعاون من أسمى الصفات الإنسانية.

- Tolerance, love, loyalty and cooperation are of the best human qualities.

٣ الصفة تسبق الاسم فى اللغة الإنجليزية.

- يساعدنا المعلمون المهرة على فهم دروسنا الصعبة.

- Clever teachers help us understand our difficult lessons.

٤ يترجم الفعل المضارع فى اللغة العربية إلى زمن المضارع البسيط أو المضارع المستمر.

- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب.

- The government is doing (does) its best to provide job opportunities for the youth.

- يعانى كثير من الناس من ارتفاع الأسعار والبطالة.

- A lot of people suffer (are suffering) from the rise in prices and unemployment.

٥ الضمائر المستترة فى اللغة العربية تظهر فى الإنجليزية.

- يجب أن نهتم بالتعليم والصناعة والزراعة والسياحة والاقتصاد.

- We should care about education, industry, agriculture, tourism and economy.

٦ طريقة تكوين المضاف والمضاف إليه.

مع العاقل يمكن أن نستخدم 's أو s' للتعبير عن الإضافة، هكذا:

The boy's hand يد الولد	the cat's leg رجل القطة	the man's heart قلب الرجل
The boys' room حجرة الأولاد	the soldiers' camp معسكر الجنود	

ومع الجماد وغير العاقل لا نستخدم 's أو 'ـ ولكن نستخدم:

Pollution problem	The problem of pollution	مشكلة التلوث
Cairo university	The University of Cairo	جامعة القاهرة
Living standard	The standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
Food shortage	The shortage of food	نقص الطعام

لقد كسر اللص باب المنزل.

- The thief has broken the door of the house.

Translate into English:

١ يجب أن نعتنى بالأطفال ونربيهم جيدًا من جميع النواحى فهم شباب المستقبل.

.....

٢ الماء ضرورى للحياة وله فوائد كثيرة للإنسان والحيوان فيجب أن نحافظ عليه.

.....

٣ أجاب الطالب الذكى عن كل الأسئلة الصعبة ولذلك حصل على درجات عالية.

.....

٤ تحاول الحكومة حل مشكلة البطالة ورفع مستوى المعيشة فى كل مكان.

.....

٥ يجب أن ندرك قيمة العلم لأنه سلاح الأمم وأساس حضارتها ومصدر تقدمها وازدهارها.

.....

Part (3)

١ عندما تكون and أداة ربط يكون الفعل الذى بعدها يساوى ما قبلها.

- We suggested going out and visiting the Pyramids. - اقترحنا الخروج وزيارة الأهرامات.
- We decided to go out and visit the Pyramids. - قررنا أن نخرج ونزور الأهرامات.

٢ فى الغالب لا نترجم الفعل «يعمل» أو «يقوم» إذا جاء معه فعل آخر.

- تقوم الأم بمساعدة زوجها فى تربية الأولاد.

- Mother is helping (helps) her husband in bringing up children.

٣ المفعول المطلق لا يترجم وتحول الصفة إلى حال.

- Pollution affects man badly. - يؤثر التلوث على الإنسان تأثيرا سيئا.

Translation

٤ بعض الأفعال يأتى بعدها حرف جر فى اللغة العربية ولا تأخذ حرف جر فى اللغة الإنجليزية.

affect	يؤثر على	admire	يعجب بـ
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	suspect	يشك فى
feel	يشعر بـ	include	يشتمل على
join	يلتحق بـ	sacrifice	يضحى بـ
enjoy	يتمتع بـ	recognise	يتعرف على
arrest	يقبض على	obtain/get	يحصل على
reach	يصل إلى	fear	يخشى أن
seek	يبحث عن	should/ must	يجب أن

- يريد صديقى أن يلتحق بكلية الطب.

- My friend wants to join the faculty of Medicine.

٥ «إن» لا تترجم ولكن «أن» تترجم إلى that.

- إن الصداقة شىء جميل فى الحياة.
- Friendship is a beautiful thing in life.
- يعتقد الناس أن المال يجلب السعادة.
- People think that money brings happiness.

Translate into English:

١ تهدف السياسة التعليمية الجديدة إلى تحسين النظام التعليمى وخلق جيل جديد واع بمشكلات بلده.

.....

٢ تقوم الدولة بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب من خلال إقامة مشروعات ضخمة فى المدن الجديدة.

.....

٣ دمر الزلزال المدينة تدميرا كاملا وأصيب كثير من الأشخاص إصابات بالغة .

.....

٤ إن التدخين يدمر الصحة ويضيع المال وإن غير المدخنين يعيشون حياة أكثر صحة من الآخرين.

.....

٥ لقد استمتعنا بالحفلة أمس وشعرنا بالسعادة لرؤية أصدقائنا القدامى.

.....

٦ لقد أثبتت مصر أنها لا تخشى الإرهاب الذى لا يعرف فقط إلا الخراب وأنها جادة فى القضاء عليه.

.....

٧ يعتقد البعض أن النجاح فى الحياة هو الحصول على المال فقط وأن الفقر مصدر الشقاء والبؤس.

.....

Vocabulary & Expressions for Translation

a means (to)	وسيلة الـ	awareness	وعى	championship	بطولة
ability	القدرة	backbone	العمود الفقرى	chaos	فوضى
achievements	انجازات	baggage/luggage	أمتعة السفر	characteristics	خصائص
acquire	يكتسب	balanced diet	غذاء متوازن	childhood	الطفولة
adapt to	يتأقلم على	basis	أساس	circumstances	ظروف
addiction	الادمان	armed with	متسلح بـ	citizens	مواطنين
admiration	الاعجاب	beauty of nature	جمال الطبيعة	civil wars	الحروب الأهلية
adolescence	فترة المراهقة	behaviour	السلوك	civilisation	حضارة
advance	تقدم /يتقدم	believing that	إيمانا بـ	cloning	الاستنساخ
adventure	مغامرة	birthplace	مهد	co-existence	التعايش
adventurer	مغامر(شخص)	blessing	نعمة	colleagues	زملاء العمل
aggression	عدوان	book fair	معرض الكتاب	comfort	راحة
aging	كبرالسن (الشيخوخة)	boredom	ملل	comfortable	مريح
agricultural development	التنمية الزراعية	bossy	متغطرس	communities	مجتمعات
agricultural investment	الاستثمار الزراعى	bring prices down	يقلل الأسعار	competition	منافسة
agriculture	الزراعة	bring up	يربى	competitive	متنافسة
all over the world	فى كل انحاء العالم	bringing up	تنشئة	concentration	تركيز
alternatives	بدائل	broaden the mind	يوسع المدارك	considerate	مراع للآخرين
ambitions	طموحات	brotherhood	الأخوة	consideration	اعتبار
ambitious	طموح	campaign	حملة	construction	تشييد
ancient monuments	الآثار القديمة	capacity	قدرة/طاقة	consume	يستهلك
assassination	اغتيال	car fumes	عوادم السيارات	consumer	مستهلك
attitude	موقف	catastrophe	كارثة	consumption	الاستهلاك
authority	سلطة	catch up with	يواكب / يساير	contaminate	يلوث/يدنس
aware of	واع بـ/على دراية بـ	challenges	تحديات	contemporary	معاصر

contribute to	يساهم فى	deserve	تستحق	education	التعليم
cooperation	التعاون	destruction = ruin	دمار	effective	مؤثر/فعال
cope with	يواكب	destructive	مدمر	efficient	كفء
corporation	شركة كبيرة	devastating	مدمر/مخرب	efforts	جهود/مجهودات
corruption	فساد	develop	يطور/ينمى	election	انتخاب
costs of living	تكاليف المعيشة	developing countries	الدول النامية	element	عنصر/عامل
create	يخلق	development	تنمية	eliminate	يمحو
creatures	مخلوقات	deviation	الانحراف	emotions	عواطف
crime	الجريمة	dignity	كرامة	employable	صالح للوظيفة
criteria	معايير/مقاييس	directions/trends	اتجاهات	employee	موظفون
crocodiles of tourists	أفواج السياح	distinguish	يميز	endanger	يشكل خطرا
cultivated land	أرض مزروعة	divine	سماوى	enrich	يثرى
culture	ثقافة	do sports	يؤدى رياضة	entertainment	التسلية
cultured	مثقف	do without	يستغنى	epidemics	أمراض وبائية
curative tourism	السياحة العلاجية	do ... best	يفعل ما بوسعه	essential	ضرورى
curse	نقمة	donation	تبرع	expenditure	إنفاق
customers	زبائن	double edged weapon	سلاح ذو حدين	explosion	إنفجار
declared aim	هدف معلن	drought	الجفاف	exports	الصادرات
deepen	يعمق	duties	واجبات	extinct	منقرض
demand	الطلب	earthquake	الزلزال	extra time	وقت إضافى
democracy	ديمقراطية	economic	اقتصادى	extrovert	انبساطى
density	كثافة	economic crisis	أزمة اقتصادية	fabulous	رائع
dependence	اتكال/تبعية	economise on	يقتصد فى	factors	مقومات/عوامل
depression	اكتئاب/انخفاض/ركود	economy	الاقتصاد	famines/starvations	المجاعات
deprivation	حرمان	ecotourism	السياحة البيئية	fans	مشجعون

features	ملامح/سمات
fertile soil	تربة خصبة
fields	مجالات
flock	يتدفق
floods	فيضانات
flourish	يزدهر
fluency	طلاقة
food crisis	أزمة الطعام
foreign	أجنبي
foreign currency	العملة الصعبة
foreign policy	السياسة الخارجية
forgery	تزوير
frankness	الصراحة
freedom	الحرية
friendship	الصداقة
fumes	أدخنة
generation	جيل
gestures	إيماءات/إيحاءات
get rid of	يتخلص من
glory	مجد
good example for	مثال طيب لـ
good manners	الأخلاق الحميدة
governorate	محافظة
governors	محافظون
gratitude	عرفان بالجميل
hard currency	العملة الصعبة
hardships	صعوبات
heart transplant	زراعة القلب
herbal medicines	العلاج بالأعشاب
herbicides	مبيدات الأعشاب
heritage	تراث
hinder/delay	يعوق
holidaymaker	سائح
home tourism	السياحة الداخلية
hostility	عدوان/خصومة
housing	الإسكان
human cells	خلايا بشرية
human rights	حقوق الإنسان
humanity	الإنسانية
ignorance	الجهل
ignorant	جاهل
ignore	يتجاهل
illiteracy	الأمية
immigration	هجرة
impact	تأثير
implement	يطبّق/ينفذ
imports	الواردات
increase	يزيد/زيادة
incredible	لا يصدق
indebted	ممتن/مديون
indeed	حقا
independence	استقلال
individual skills	مهارات فردية
individuals	الأفراد
industrial	صناعي
industrial sector	قطاع الصناعة
industrialisation	التصنيع
industry	الصناعة
infancy	الطفولة
inflation	تضخم
influence	تأثير
infrastructure	البنية الأساسية
injustice	الظلم
innocence	براءة
innovation	ابتكار
inorganic farming	الزراعة غير العضوية
insecticides	مبيدات الحشرات
instability	عدم استقرار
instinct	غريزة
integration	تكامل
invade	يغزو
investment	الاستثمار
investor	مستثمر
irrigation	الري
job opportunities	فرص العمل

jogging	عدو/هرولة
justice	العدل
knowledge	معرفة
lack	نقص
land reclamation	استصلاح الأراضي
leaders	قادة
legend	أسطورة
leisure	وقت الفراغ
lifelong learning	التعلم مدى الحياة
losers	خاسرون
loyalty	الوفاء/الولاء
luxury goods	سلع كمالية
majority	الأغلبية
mankind	الجنس البشري
manners	أخلاق/سلوكيات
mass production	الإنتاج بالجملة
measure	يقيس
medicine	طب/دواء
merciful	رحيم
mercy	رحمة
merits	فوائد/مزايا
migrate	يهاجر
migration	هجرة
mind	يُبالي
ministry	وزارة
missions	مهام
mixed blessing	سلاح ذو حدين
monopolist	محتكر
monopoly	احتكار
motivation	إثارة/تحفيز
multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
national duty	واجب قومي
national income	الدخل القومي
national unity	وحدة وطنية
nations	أمم
natural	طبيعي
natural reserves	محميات طبيعية
nature	الطبيعة
necessary	ضروري
official	رسمي/موظف
on-going	متواصل/مستمر
opportunity	فرصة
optimism	التفاؤل
optimistic	متفائل
organic farming	الزراعة العضوية
outlet	مخرج
outstanding	بارز/ظاهر
overcome	يتغلب على
owe	يدين
patience	الصبر
patriotism	وطنية
pave	يمهد
perfection/mastering	الإتقان
perform	يؤدي/يعمل
performance	أداء
pessimistic	متشائم (صفة)
phenomena	ظواهر طبيعية
phobia	خوف مرضي
pioneer	رائد/قائد
policy	سياسة
pollution	التلوث
population	السكان
positively	بإيجابية
postpone	يؤجل
potentials	قدرات كامنة
poverty	الفقر
praise	يمدح/يشهد بـ
pray	صلاة/يصلي
preserve	يحافظ/يصونون
president	رئيس
prevention	وقاية
Prime Minister	رئيس الوزراء
principles	مبادئ
privacy	خصوصية
process	عملية

producer	منتج
production	انتاج
productive	منتج/غزير الإنتاج
profits	أرباح
progress	التقدم
projects	مشروعات
prosperity	الرخاء
protection	حماية
provide	يوفر/يمد بـ
psychologists	علماء النفس
psychology	علم النفس
punctual	مواظب
qualities	سمات/صفات
quarrels	مشاجرات
rapidly	بسرعة
rationalisation	ترشيد
rationalise	يرشد
reasonable	معقول
recycling	إعادة تصنيع/تدوير
reduce/limit	يحد/يقلل
reflection	انعكاس
reform	إصلاح
refresh	ينعش
relationships	علاقات
religion	الدين
religious	ديني
reputation	سمعة
resources	مصادر
respect	يحترم
responsibility	مسئولية
restore/recovery	استرجاع
revolution	ثورة
rewarding	مجزية
rights	حقوق
rise/leap	طفرة
rivals	منافسون
rumour	إشاعة
rush hour	ساعة الذروة
sacrifice	التضحية
satisfaction	الرضا
science	العلم
sects	طوائف
security	الأمن
selfish	أناني
selfishness	الأنانية
self-reliance	الاعتماد على النفس
self-sufficiency	الاكتفاء الذاتي
serious	جاد/خطير
severe	شديد/قاس
shade	الظل
shortage	نقص
shortage of food	نقص الطعام
shoulders	أكتاف
sights	المعالم السياحية
sightseeing	رؤية المعالم السياحية
sit-in/strike	اعتصام
slogan	شعار
social affairs	الشئون الاجتماعية
solidarity	تماسك/تضامن
source	مصدر
spirit	روح
splendid	رائع
spoil	يفسد
sports centre	مركز رياضي
sports facilities	تسهيلات رياضية
springs	ينابيع
stability	استقرار/ثبات
standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
sterilisation	تعقيم
stimulate	يحفز
strength	قوة
strike	إضراب
struggle	يكافح
sufficiency	اكتفاء/كفاية
summer resort	المصيف

summit conference	مؤتمر القمة
superstructure	بنية فوقية
support	يؤيد/يشجع
survive	يعيش/يبقى حيا
talented	موهوب
terrorism	الإرهاب
thanks to	بفضل
the press	الصحافة
theft	السرقة
threaten	يهدد
throughout	في كل أنحاء
time bomb	قنبلة موقوتة
tolerance	التسامح
tourism	السياحة
tourist revenues	إيرادات السياحة
treason	خيانة عظمى
treatment	معاملة
treaty	معاهدة
tremendous progress	التقدم الهائل
understanding	التفاهم
undertake	يتعهد
unemployment	البطالة
unite	يتحد/يتوحد
unrest	عدم استقرار/اضطراب
unselfishness	عدم الأنانية
update	يحدث بيانات
uprising	انتفاضة
uproot	يستأصل
up-to-date	حديث/عصري
urge	تحث على
values	القيم
various purposes	أغراض عديدة
violence	العنف
votes	أصوات انتخابات
waste	يضيع
wasteful	مبذر
wealth	ثروة
weapons	أسلحة
welfare	رفاهية
whereas	بينما
wisdom	الحكمة
witness	يشهد
worry	القلق
wrestling	المصارعة
youth	الشباب

Exercises

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The Coronavirus known as COVID-19 was declared as a pandemic by the World Health Organisation. It affected most countries of the world and caused great deaths.
2. The crisis faced by the Coronavirus showed the importance of cooperation and solidarity among people. Even great economies needed the help of other nations.
3. The whole world is looking forward to producing a vaccine for the Coronavirus. Until then, we should all stick to the health precautionary procedures.
4. Mohamed Salah has become a role-model for all young people who look for great achievements. He is also praised for his kind and generous donations to charity in Egypt.
5. There are many charities in Egypt to help the poor such as the Food Bank, Resala and Misr El Kheir. They give poor people all help and support they can afford.
6. Bullying has become a strange phenomenon in the Egyptian society. We all should fight it whether it was physical, verbal or even cyber bullying.
7. Many experts believe that we should limit the children's use of the internet especially social media. They say that they may have bad effect on them.
8. Poetry is one of the finest arts that a civilised society is marked by. However, most young people are not attracted to reading it.
9. Hygiene and sanitation are very important in protecting us against most infectious diseases. Therefore, rules of cleanliness should be taught to children at an early age.
10. Most modern inventions are considered double-aged weapons. It is our role to benefit from them and avoid their bad effects.
11. The Ministry of Education has established STEM schools all over Egypt. These are specialised for teaching scientific subjects using the most up-to-date teaching methods.
12. People are successful in their workplace if they choose the job which they enjoy. It should also suit their skills and talents not only their academic qualifications.
13. To build a strong nation, it is the duty of parents and teachers. They have a great role to build the youth of the nation to take their responsibility seriously.

14. People must be taught to follow and respect all traffic rules and regulations. These are designed by the government to ensure our safety.
15. Money spent on fighting terrorism every year is enough to build a great country and improve industry, education and economy. That's why we should all work hard to eliminate this crime.
16. Planting trees helps the environment. They provide shade in summer, give us many things to use in everyday life and absorb carbon dioxide.
17. Globalisation has brought both happiness and sadness. Although it has made the world one global village, it has given rise to competition, crime and terrorism.
18. Sports and games are very beneficial to us. They teach us punctuality, patience, discipline, teamwork and dedication. They also help us live a healthy life.
19. Although people in villages are very sociable and have the peace of mind, they lack sanitation and some medical facilities and modern means of transport.
20. With modern technology, learning has become easier and easier. It made information more available and it has developed the student's personality as well.
21. Parents must understand that their children cannot attain excellence and success in life on their own. They need their help and support.
22. Bad friends can ruin our life completely whereas good friends motivate us to do any hard work and pass bad times cheerfully.
23. Our ancestors always asserted that the way of glory is not paved with flowers, but it is filled with hard work and fatigue.
24. People differ in their colour, height, weight, size, strength, hairstyle, and even in their intelligence. However, they all can succeed if they are given the same opportunities and attention.
25. Time is more precious than money. Money lost can be restored by any means; however time lost can never be earned by any means.
26. Climbing dangerous mountains is like illegal immigration. In both of them, people risk their lives for a far-fetched goal.
27. It isn't impossible for a person to achieve his ambitions if he has patience and a strong will. They are important qualities to achieve success.
28. Psychologists think that the rising rate of unemployment leads in turn to the spread of violence and crime. So, governments should work hard to solve this problem.

29. Thanks to Professor Magdi Yacoub's high qualifications, he has become the pioneer of heart transplant operations. He received great honours and awards for his great works.
30. Fighting pollution and many of the world's other problems requires peoples' awareness and their cooperation. In addition, good planning is also important for this.
31. Food shortage is a serious problem threatening the world and causing starvation in many poor countries. Rich countries have a responsibility to help avoid this.
32. The Nile is a source of water, fertile soil for growing crops and is used for transportation. That's why we should all work on keeping it clean.
33. Cooperation together with tolerance is essential for the success of any work and any company. This can be applied to all easy or difficult tasks in life.
34. Developing Sinai and providing job opportunities for its people are the ideal way to combat extremism and terrorism. So, the government is doing its best to do this.
35. Individuals differ in their abilities to understand complex ideas and to adapt effectively to the environment. This concept should be applied in education.
36. Sports and games are both very important to improve the person's potentials, and work efficiency. They can help individuals overcome some psychological problems.
37. Science can help us improve health, food production and nearly every aspect of our lives. Therefore, it should be given much care.
38. We must forget our disagreements and unite for the sake of Egypt to direct our energy to production. This unity can help us solve all economic problems.
39. Teamwork teaches us cooperation, tolerance and forgiveness and it is the best means to achieve our goals. It can help us achieve development in many fields.
40. The government is carrying out great national projects. These can provide job opportunities and give a great boost to our economy as well.
41. Great efforts are being exerted to provide enough food, education and jobs for people in Egypt. The project of developing the slums is a clear example for this.
42. We are all facing a challenge to rebuild our country through strong determination and cooperation. People should bear their responsibilities to achieve this.
43. Reforming education is one of the priorities of the government in Egypt. However, it is a great national mission that needs all our efforts.
44. Hundreds of African people have tried to escape their difficult economic conditions through illegal immigration. However, many of them failed to achieve their ambitions.
45. Although eating food is a way of keeping us fit, we need exercise to feel healthy. Relaxing and refreshing yourself can also add to our healthy lifestyle.

46. It has been proved that traditional learning is unsuitable for building up an independent citizen. That's why the Ministry of Education urges students and teachers to move to modern methods of education
47. To avoid pollution and diseases and to be healthy, we should correct our mistakes and selfishness towards our environment. Damaging the environment is the most important cause of diseases.
48. Terrorists are working in the dark to spoil Egypt's economy and ruin tourist industry. They are traitors who should be rejected and fought by all means.
49. Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration of the workplace. It can also help in treating diseases and overcome health problems.
50. Ecotourism is now defined as responsible travel to natural areas that conserves the environment. It has become very important for Egypt to make tourism sustainable.

B) Translate into English:

١ ستحتاج الخسائر الاقتصادية التى سببها فيروس كورونا وقتا طويلا للتغلب عليها، لذلك من المتوقع أن تتخذ الحكومات إجراءات صارمة قد تؤثر على الأفراد.

٢ خلال أزمة فيروس كورونا أصبح التعليم عبر الإنترنت هو الوسيلة المثالية لاستمرار الطلاب فى تعليمهم بل وإجراء الاختبارات للطلاب فى جميع المراحل.

٣ تتعاون كل الدول والمؤسسات الطبية فى سبيل إيجاد أدوية ولقاحات لفيروس كورونا المستجد كما يتم التأكيد على إتاحتها لجميع دول العالم بأسعار مناسبة.

٤ يواجه الأطباء والممرضات بعض الصعوبات فى محاربة فيروس كورونا المستجد بسبب سرعة انتشاره ونقص المعلومات عن آثاره على المصابين ذلك لأنهم يواجهونه لأول مرة.

٥ يأتى كثير من السياح إلى مصر ليس فقط لآثارها القديمة ولكن أيضا لمناظرها الطبيعية الخلابة خاصة فى منطقة البحر الأحمر لذا يجب حماية تلك الأماكن لضمان استمرار السياحة.

٦ تساهم المنظمات الخيرية فى تخفيف آثار الأزمات الاقتصادية على الفقراء والمحتاجين وخاصة فى المناطق العشوائية لذلك يجب أن ندعمها سواء بالمال أو العمل التطوعى.

٧ يلعب الأدب دورًا كبيرًا فى إظهار مشكلات المجتمع المختلفة مما قد يساعد على إيجاد الحلول المناسبة لها، وقصص نجيب محفوظ وتشارلز ديكنيز من أكبر الأمثلة على هذا الدور.

٨ يقضى الشباب وقتا طويلا على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى مما يقلل من مهارات التواصل لديهم ويؤثر على علاقاتهم مع والديهم وباقى أفراد أسرهم.

٩ للإنترنت أهمية كبيرة حيث تتزايد استخداماته كل يوم، حيث أصبح يشكل جزءا هاما من حياة الناس فيستخدمه الناس فى قراءة الأخبار والتواصل أو حتى التسوق.

١٠ يفوز الرياضيون المصريون ذوو الاحتياجات الخاصة بعدد كبير من الميداليات فى الألعاب الأوليمبية للمعاقين رغم أنهم لا يلقون قدرا كبيرا من الدعم مثل الرياضيين الأصحاء.

Translation

٣٠ ساهمت مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى فى نشر الأفكار سواء الصالحة أو الفاسدة فى جميع أنحاء العالم لذا يجب توجيه الأطفال والشباب نحو الصالح منها.

٣١ من أهم وسائل الحفاظ على السياحة هو المحافظة على الآثار لذلك يجب نشر الوعى بين الناس لأهمية هذه الآثار ودورها فى تطوير صناعة السياحة فى مصر.

٣٢ يعتبر المعلم ركنا أساسيا فى أى إصلاح للتعليم لذا تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم توفير وسائل كثيرة لتدريب المعلمين على أحدث الطرق التربوية.

٣٣ يعتقد الكثيرون أن المال يجلب السعادة ولا نستطيع العيش بدونه لكن بعض الحكماء يقولون إن المال هو أصل الشرور.

٣٤ بسبب ارتفاع تكلفة المعيشة، لا يمكن للكثير من الناس تحقيق التوازن بين عملهم وعائلاتهم حيث لا يقضون وقتا كافيا مع أسرهم.

٣٥ تعتبر الأعياد والعطلات فرصة جيدة للناس للاسترخاء ونسيان ضغوط حياتهم اليومية وفرصة للتقارب بين أفراد العائلة.

٣٦ بسبب التطور التكنولوجى الكبير نشأت وظائف جديدة كثيرة تتطلب مهارات وظروف عمل مختلفة عن التى اعتادها الموظفون وأصحاب الأعمال.

٣٧ ينبغى على الحكومة أن تساعد فى إعادة تدوير الأشياء مثل العلب والورق والزجاج والبلاستيك عن طريق بناء المزيد والمزيد من مصانع إعادة التدوير.

٣٨ بالإضافة إلى مساعدة الناس على أن يكونوا على اتصال بأقاربهم وأصدقائهم، تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى وسيلة مثالية لبيع المنتجات وتقديم الخدمات.

٣٩ تعاقب القوانين فى معظم دول العالم نشر الشائعات لأن الشائعات لها أثر سيئ كبير على المجتمع فلا تشارك فى نشرها سواء بالقول أو على مواقع الإنترنت.

٤٠ عندما تهمل الأسرة المبادئ والأخلاق، فسوف يسوء سلوك الشباب وتزيد الجرائم التى تهدد المجتمع وتمنع تطوره.

٤١ من أهم الوسائل التى تساعد على محاربة الأمراض زيادة الوعى لدى الناس بقواعد النظافة العامة والإجراءات التى يجب اتخاذها لحماية أنفسهم من تلك الأمراض.

٤٢ العلم سلاح ذو حدين، فعلى الرغم من أهميته فى السلم، فلقد حقق أحلام الأشخاص العدوانيين الذين كانوا يحلمون دائما بالسيطرة والقوة.

٤٣ ليست المدارس أماكن فقط لتعلم المواد الدراسية، ولكن أيضا لاكتساب الأخلاق الحميدة والسلوكيات الصحيحة التى تجعل المتعلم مواطنا صالحا.

٤٤ يعتقد بعض الناس أن الكتب والصحف الإلكترونية ستؤدى إلى اختفاء الكتب والصحف الورقية التقليدية. فهل توافق على ذلك؟

٤٥ يجب ان تتذكر دائما أن التوتر قد يؤدى بك إلى عواقب وخيمة تجعلك مريضا وبائسا وغير سعيدا.

٤٦ هل تعتقد أنه من العدم البحث عن الحياة على كواكب أخرى أم حل مشكلاتنا على الأرض كالفقر والمرض أولاً؟

٤٧ التكنولوجيا الحديثة، كعلامة للحضارة الحديثة، غيرت أسلوب حياة معظم الناس فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

٤٨ تستفيد الدول المتقدمة سياسيا واقتصاديا من استكشاف الفضاء رغم أن البعض يعتبره مضيعة للوقت والجهد الذى يجب استخدامه فى حل مشكلات العالم.

٤٩ ان قطع الغابات يمكن أن يؤدى إلى آثار كارثية مثل تغير المناخ وقلة الأمطار وفقدان مساكن الحيوانات البرية التى تعيش فى تلك الغابات.

٥٠ لقد لعبت المرأة المصرية دائما دورا حيويا فى مشروعات التنمية الشاملة التى ساعدت فى تطور ونمو الاقتصاد المصرى.

١ العمل الجاد والصبر من أهم الصفات التى تساعد الإنسان على النجاح فى الدراسة وفى كل مجالات العمل.

٢ تعطى الرياضة أهمية كبيرة فى العديد من البلدان بسبب فوائدها الحقيقية وأهميتها فى الحفاظ على اللياقة البدنية وتعليم الأطفال والشباب قيم التعاون والعمل الجماعى.

٣ يعتمد معدل التطور فى أى بلد على كيفية الالتزام الدقيق والانضباط لأفراد تلك الدولة فى وظائفهم. لذلك، فإن الالتزام بالمواعيد هو مفتاح النجاح للجميع.

٤ يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمنا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فهذه القيم هى أساس التقدم فى أى أمة.

٥ يجب على الجميع الحفاظ على البيئة نظيفة فيجب أن يتعلم الأطفال استخدام صناديق القمامة لرمى الأشياء عديمة الفائدة فيها والعناية بالممتلكات العامة.

٦ اعتاد الناس من جميع الأعمار على تناول الوجبات السريعة والمشروبات الغازية والرقائق والبيتزا وأنواع أخرى من الوجبات السريعة المتوفرة فى السوق رغم تحذير الخبراء من آثارها على زيادة الوزن.

٧ أفكارك تبنى واقعك فالأفكار الإيجابية تجلب الأشياء الجيدة فى الحياة والأفكار السلبية تجلب تجارب معاكسة لذا علينا جميعا أن نفكر بشكل إيجابى لبناء مستقبل أفضل.

٨ الماء ضرورى لبقاء الإنسان ، ومع ذلك، للأسف يتم إهداره بسرعة كبيرة فى جميع أنحاء العالم لذا يجب على الجميع أن يساهم فى توفير المياه.

٩ يسىء الكثيرون استخدام مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى فيقومون بنشر الأخبار دون التأكد من صدق ما فيها لذلك يتهكم البعض بفرض رقابة أكثر على تلك المواقع.

١٠ لقد أقيم الكثير من المشروعات على ضفتى قناة السويس الجديدة مما يساهم فى زيادة دخلنا القومى وتوفير فرص العمل وتحسن الاقتصاد.

١١ يجب أن يهدف التعليم إلى تنمية قدرات ومهارات المتعلمين وخلق مواطن قادر على مواجهة تحديات الحياة الحديثة وتطورها.

١٢ يوصى الخبراء بأن يكون لكل شخص هواية تساعده على الاسترخاء وتجديد طاقته مما يساعده فى تخفيف الضغوط وأداء أفضل فى العمل.

١٣ لقد بدأت مصر فى إعطاء أولوية عالية لاستخدام الطاقة المتجددة فأنشأت فى أسوان واحدة من أكبر محطات إنتاج الكهرباء من الطاقة الشمسية بالعالم.

١٤ تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادى عن طريق جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات القومية الكبرى مما يعطى دفعة للاقتصاد فى الوقت الحالى.

١٥ الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية قد يكونان سببا لعيش بعض الأطفال فى الشوارع ويصبحون بلا مأوى لذا تحاول الحكومة حل مشكلة أطفال الشوارع.

١٦ المواطنون الصالحون هم أولئك الذين يكرسون أنفسهم ووقتهم وأموالهم من أجل رفاهية أسرهم وخدمة مجتمعهم وحماية أوطانهم.

١٧ إن زيادة الإنتاج هى السبيل الوحيد لتحقيق التقدم الاقتصادى ورفع مستوى المعيشة الذى نأمل جميعا فى الوصول إليهما.

١٨ هناك عدة طرق لمواجهة مشكلة البطالة ومنها المشروعات الصغيرة التى تتيح للشباب فرصا جيدة للعمل لذا توفر البنوك القروض لهذه المشروعات.

١٩ نعمل جميعا على التغلب على مشاكلنا لنكون على قدم المساواة مع البلاد التى حققت نجاحات فى العديد من المجالات.

Vocabulary on Translation Exercises

aggressive	عدوانى	far-fetched	بعيد المنال	public property	الممتلكات العامة
ancestors	أجداد	festivals	المهرجانات	recycling	اعادة تدوير
aspect	جانب	globalisation	العولمة	reforming	اصلاح
awareness	الوعى	glory	المجد	regulations	تنظيمات
behaviour	سلوك	homeless children	أطفال الشوارع	respect	يحترم
beneficial	مفيد/ نافع	honours	تكريمات	responsibility	مسئولية
boost	دفعة	ideal	المثالية	rumours	الشائعات
challenges	تحديات	illegal	غير قانونى/ غير شرعى	slums	العشوائيات
citizen	مواطن	immigration	الهجرة	sociable	اجتماعى
civilization	الحضارة	investments	الاستثمارات	solidarity	التضامن
comprehensive	الشاملة	lack	نقص	solutions	الحلول
cooperation	التعاون	literature	الأدب	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
cost of living	تكلفة المعيشة	loans	القروض	stick to	يلتزم بـ
crisis	أزمة	miserable	بائسا	stress	التوتر
determination	العزم/ التصميم	motivate	يدفع/ يحفز	strict	صارمة
discipline	الانضباط	observance	رقابة	terrorism	الإرهاب
economic	اقتصادى	pandemic	جائحة	traditional	التقليدية
economy	الاقتصاد	Paralympic Games	الألعاب الأولمبية للمعاقين	traitors	خونة
efficiency	كفاءة	pioneer	رائد	unemployment	البطالة
eliminate	يمحو/يزيل	positive	الإيجابية	urge	يدفع/يحث
employees	العوظفون	precious	قيم/ نفيس	vaccine	لقاح
employers	أصحاب الأعمال	pressures	الضغوط	values	القيم
evils	الشرور	principles	المبادئ	vital	حيويًا
excellence	امتياز	priority	أولوية	voluntary	التطوعى
exploration	استكشاف	procedures	إجراءات	will	إرادة
extremism	التطرف	production	الإنتاج		
facilities	إمكانيات/تسهيلات	psychologists	علماء النفس		

3 Writing

A Sentence writing

- لكتابة مقال جيد يجب البداية بكتابة جملة صحيحة sentence ثم فقرة paragraph وللقيام بذلك عليك مراعاة التالى:

1. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital كبير وواضح.
2. أن تضع (.) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة .
3. أن تستخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب لنوعية الموضوع الذى تكتبه، فقد يكون فى المضارع وقد يكون فى الماضى أو المستقبل أو خليطًا بينهم.
4. الاستخدام الصحيح للضمائر حسب موقعها فى الجملة.
5. تجنب استخدام الجمل المعقدة التى تحتوى على مفردات وتركيبات صعبة قد توقعك فى أخطاء أنت فى غنى عنها، وعليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة والسهلة فى المعنى.
6. إذا قمت باستخدام أى من أدوات الربط فيجب عليك مراعاة القواعد الصحيحة لها.

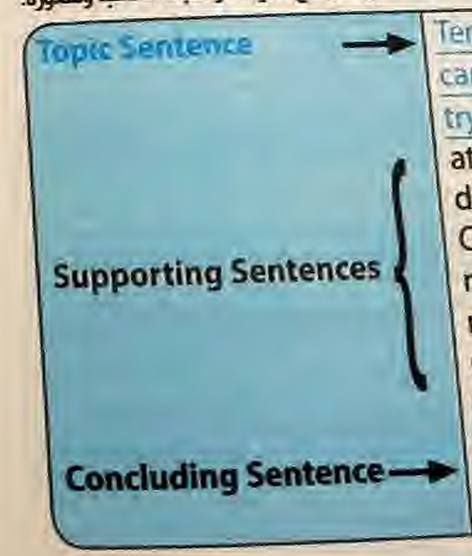
B Paragraph writing

- الفقرة paragraph أحد أجزاء المقال، ويتحدد دورها وطبيعة الجمل بها حسب نوع المقال، ولكن هناك بعض القواعد العامة التى يجب اتباعها منها:

أن تراعى الترابط والتنسيق العلم بين جمل الفقرة.

استخدام بعض الكلمات والعبارات التى يمكن أن تقوم بدور الرابط بين الجمل (عند الضرورة).

تبدأ كل فقرة بجملة تسمى (جملة الموضوع topic sentence)، وفيها يتم تحديد الفكرة الأساسية المراد توضيحها فى الفقرة، ثم يتبعها عدد من الجمل لتوضيح أو التدليل على الفكرة الأساسية، وتنتهى بجملة استنتاجية توضح حقيقة أو اتجاه الكاتب وشعوره.



Terry Fox was a Canadian who suffered from bo
cancer and raised awareness for cancer research
trying to run across Canada. **He attracted a lo**
attention by running the distance of a marat
daily on one prosthetic leg. He also challenged
Canadian citizen to contribute one dollar for ca
research. Unfortunately, Fox was forced to end hi
near Thunder Bay because of health complication
CTV network organised a nation-wide run to co
Fox's fundraising efforts. Clearly, Terry Fox had an
on both cancer research and the millions of Ca
who participate in the Terry Fox Run every year.

C Essay writing

1. Decide what kind of essay to write.

A. Narrative Essay
B. Descriptive Essay
C. Expository Essay
D. Argumentative Essay
E. Persuasive Essay

2. Brainstorm your topic.

3. Outline your essay.

A. Introduction (paragraph 1)
B. Main body (paragraphs 2-3)
C. Conclusion (paragraph 4)

4. Write a draft of your essay.

5. Review your essay to correct mistakes.

A. Spelling mistakes
B. Grammar mistakes

6. Finish your essay

General Outlines of Essay Writing

Introduction	**The introduction:** المقدمة ترشد المقدمة القارئ الى المقال من خلال تقديم الموضوع يجب أن يبدأ بلفت انتباه القارئ يمكن أن يكون هذا التمهيد أو مشاهدة أو سؤالا. وبعد الى ذلك يعد جذب انتباه القارئ يجب أن تقدم المقدمة بعض المعلومات الأساسية حول الموضوع، ويجب أن تكون الأفكار الموجودة في المقدمة عامة بما يكفي ليتمكن القارئ من فهم الاتجاه الرئيسي، ويصبح تدريجيا أكثر تحديدا ليقود الى بيان هذا الاتجاه
Main Body Main idea (1) Main Body Main idea (2)	**The main body:** صلب الموضوع يدعم بين المقالة النقاط الرئيسية الواردة في المقدمة. يتم تطوير كل نقطة موضحة فقرة واحدة أو أكثر. ويتم دعمها بتفاصيل محددة، بالإضافة الى هذا الدعم، فإن مناقشته للموضوع يربط الأفكار معا. ويستخلص النتائج التي تدعم الاتجاه الرئيسي للمقال.
Conclusion	**The conclusion:** الخاتمة يجمع الاستنتاج بين جميع النقاط الرئيسية للمقال. يشير الى بيان الاتجاه الرئيسية للمقال. ويترك القراء تفكرا بعلانيا عن طريق حل أن أفكار تم طرحها في المقالة. ولا يمكن تقديم مواضيع أو أفكار جديدة لم يتم تطويرها في المقال

A Narrative Essay

- المقال القصصي هو الذي تحكي فيه قصة أو تجربة، ولا يقتصر على وصف ما حدث فقط، بل يحتمل أيضا ما شعرت به في ذلك الوقت. وكيف أثرت عليك، وما تعلمته منه والنقطة الرئيسية لكتابة هذا النوع من المقال هي كالتالي:

Outline of a Narrative Essay

Introduction	هنا تقدم الموضوع والسبب الذي تريده، وتشرح سبب أهميته بالنسبة لك. كما يمكنك أن تلخص بسرعة ما تعلمته أو شعرت به نتيجة للحادث الذي تصفه.
Main body	سوف تبدأ الآن من الحادث الذي تريده وأنك القيام بذلك. تأكد من تضمين جميع النقاط المهمة. من شارك؟ أين حدث هذا؟ لماذا حصل هذا؟ صف بالضبط ما حدث وقد يتم ذلك في فقرة واحدة أو أكثر
Conclusion	ارجع الى ما تعلمته من الحدث، وكيف أثر على معتقداتك أو سلوكك للموضوع المطروح. وقد لا يتضمن هذا الموضوع خاتمة خاصة اذا كانت تصف بدقة لم يؤثر بشكل كبير عليك!

Sample Narrative Essays

A wedding party that I attended

1. Introduction

Last week, I was invited to my cousin's wedding party which I attended with my wife. The party was in a big hall at a famous hotel in Cairo. It was so amazing and everything was exciting. I can say that it is one of the most exciting events that I have attended lately.

2. Main body

When we arrived at the wedding hall, my wife and I were taken by the size of the place. There were about 30 tables of 10 people. Most of the were relatives and friends. When all the guests arrived, the waiters began serve all kinds of juice and soft drinks, while the band was playing music camera man was filming everything that was happening. Then, the bride the groom made their wonderful entrance. Everyone was gazing at them happily. The bride was wearing a fabulous white dress, and the groom wearing a nice suit. Next, the band started its show with a famous singer sang beautiful songs while other guests were taking pictures with the and groom.

A few minutes later, we sat down at the dinner table and we had a very nice and delicious dinner. They brought us delicious dishes of vegetables meat and a plate of roasted chicken for every table. The party lasted to in the morning, the time when the two married couple went out followed some guests.

3. Conclusion

To tell the truth, the wedding was really beautiful and unforgettable. was so happy that day. My wife was much impressed by it and she reminds me of our wedding party which was simpler than this one, but we also remember it with great excitement and joy. We were very happy to see couple begin their new life just as we did years ago.

My first day in the kitchen

1. Introduction

When I was ten years old, I almost died in the kitchen. One day, I was the only one home. I was bored, and I played video games a lot. In the early evening, I became hungry, but there was nothing to eat. I decided to make some food by myself, but it would be dangerous because I had never cooked anything until then.

2. Main body

At first, I started to cook some rice. Second, I cut onions, but I couldn't stop crying for 20 minutes. After I stopped crying, I cut carrots. I did well partway, but I cut my middle finger because I didn't fold my fingers away from the knife. I felt foolish. I almost gave up, but I continued to cook. Next, I peeled potatoes with a peeler. I thought it was safe, but I was wrong. My nail was skinned a little by the peeler.

After I made my small dish, I looked at my hand, and it was all cut up. When I ate it, it was very tasty. Later, when my mother got home, she ate my curry and said, "this is so delicious." She looked so happy, and I was so happy, too. After that, my father was happy, so I wanted to cook again.

3. Conclusion

These days, I often cook rice by myself. Now that I know how to make it properly, I have become much better at it.
I think it is good for us to try new things. Even if we are not perfect at first, we can become better and better.

B Descriptive Essay

المقال الوصفي هو المقال الذي تصف فيه شيئًا أو شخصًا أو مكانًا أو عملية أو حدثًا. ويكون هدفك هو إنشاء تجربة قراءة حية أو مرئية من الرواية. والخطوط الرئيسية لكتابة هذا النوع من المقال هي كالتالي:

Outline of a Descriptive Essay

introduction	Main body	Conclusion
تقدم المقدمة لمحة عامة موجزة عن موضوع المقال. تحدد فيها الشيء أو الموقف الذي ستقوم بوصفه كما يمكن إعطاء بعض الانطباعات أو الاتجاهات أو الآراء الخاصة بالموضوع. وعادة ما يحصل القراء على تلميح عما ستكون عليه المقالة من الفقرة الأولى.	يتم استعراض موضوع المقال الوصفية وشرحه بالتفصيل في نص المقال. يمكن لك أن تصف كل جانب من جوانب الموضوع/ الشيء، اعتمادًا على ما تعتبره مهمًا. عادة يستخدم الكاتب مجموعة كبيرة ومتنوعة من الصفات والظروف لجعل المقال أكثر حيوية وإثارة للاهتمام للقراءة. أيضًا، في هذا القسم، يمكن للكاتب تقديم أمثلة محددة لتحسين وصف الموضوع (الشيء الموصوف) وتسهيل فهمه للجمهور. يوفر هذا الجزء من المقال للقراء نظرة شاملة لكل جوانب الوصف.	في هذا الجزء، تقدم ملخصا لما تعتقده ... وصف كما يتضمن أفكارك ... فيما يخص موضوع ... هذا يعتمد بشكل كبير على ... والخيال والمهارات ... للكاتب.

Sample Descriptive Essays

My favourite holiday place

1- Introduction

As a child, I always enjoyed spending time at our chalet in Marsa Matrouh. ... was a place where you could go and get away from the busy life in the city and ... enjoy doing things that you might not be able to do back home. We always ... tried to go at least a couple of times during the summer when my father would ... get his vacation from work. There was so much to do and see. Even though ... things have changed now, I won't forget all of the memories that I have from ... when I was a child.

2- Main body

The first time we went there, I noticed a difference in the way the air smelled. ... I took in a deep breath of air and noticed how clean it smelled. I couldn't help ... myself. I wanted to breathe in more and more to keep taking it all in. I felt my ... lungs clearing from all the pollution and stale air back home. I never wanted ... to let go of this feeling of freshness.

3. Conclusion

At night, it was so quiet you could have heard a pin drop. The sky was clear and the sea was so nice. It was a sight that was far unlike anything I could have ever imagined. You could sit outside for hours just listening and watching nature in its truest form.

Now, I have my own family and I always spend all summer vacations with them here. I am thinking of moving to Marsa Matrouh live here permanently. Now, my family get to enjoy the fresh air and relaxed atmosphere. Those experiences as a child opened my eyes to something far better beyond the city that I get to remember every day with my family.

My best friend

1. Introduction

A person's best friend is the closest and most special person in that person's life. A best friend is someone with whom we share all of the most important and crucial things in our life. Best friends support each other in everything they do. My best friend is Mohamed; our parents are also very good friends. I can't even remember when we became friends which show how long we have been friends.

2. Main body

Your best friend is the only person in the world that will give you equal love and devotion like your parents. We both study in the same school. Mohamed also helps me in my studies. We also live in the same locality. My best friend Mohamed and I spend most of the time together doing the things we like to do. We enjoy our life according to our needs and wishes. He is the person who I can truly count on all through my life. Whenever I need help or support, my best friend is always there for me. We have lived moments together and have created memories that will remain throughout my life.

Having a best friend like Mohamed makes my life easier. In any crucial situation, the first person that comes to my mind is my best friend. Whenever I am in any problem, my best friend helps me to get out of the problem by providing the best solutions. My best friend gets angry when I do something wrong and appreciates me when I achieve something.

3. Conclusion

My best friend helps me to become a better person. We plan our weekends and enjoy together. He is the person who makes me happy and deserves all my love and attention. My best friend has been my support system and my strength. No one can take the place of my best friend Mohamed in my life.

Expository Essay

المقال التفسيري هو الذي تقوم فيه بشرح حقائق متصلة بموضوع ما او توضيح شيء بطريقة يصبح واضحا للقارئ بشكل او يكون تحليلا او تقييما لأهمية الموضوع المتناول للتوضيح

Outline of an Expository Essay

Introduction	تحتوي المقدمة على تحديد الموضوع المراد الكتابة عنه مع عرض موجز للجوانب التي ستقوم بتفصيلها وشرحها في المقال، ويجب الا تتضمن اي تفاصيل عن هذه الجوانب.
Main body	في فقرتين او ثلاث قم بسرد كل الجوانب والحقائق عن الموضوع ويمكن تضمين بعض الادلة والتفاصيل الخاصة لكل جانب من جوانب الموضوع: مع ملاحظة أن الموضوع لا يتضمن اي وجهة نظر محددة، بل هو سرد للمعلومات الخاصة بالموضوع المراد توضيحه للقارئ.
Conclusion	تتضمن الخاتمة تلخيصا موجزا للحقائق التي تم عرضها في المقال، ويمكن ادراج اي تقييم للموضوع الذي تم تجميع جوانبه المختلفة. ويمكن أن تتضمن الخاتمة دعوة للقارئ للبحث عن جوانب وحقائق اخرى لهذا الموضوع

Sample Expository Essays

Friendship

1. Introduction	Friendship plays an important role in everyone's life. It is based on the simple rules of trust and honesty. It is the most wonderful relationship that every person can have if he or she is loyal, dependable, kind, caring, and loving. True friends try to avoid conflicts and do everything possible to make their relations stronger. A true friendship is a reward for all the good we do in our life.
2. Main body	A true friend is a person you can always count on when you face challenges and serious problems. He or she always offers a shoulder to cry on in case something wrong happens. Your friend always listens to your problems, gives you good piece of advice, and never talks behind your back. A true friend is never envious of your achievements. This person respects you and keeps all your secrets. A true friend is there for you in the times of need, he makes you smile when you forgot how to, and lift you up when you can`t lift up yourself.  A true friendship is something that can`t be expressed with words. Friendship is being able to cry together. Friendship is being foolish together. It is being mad at each other. True friends are always ready to protect each other from being hurt emotionally and physically. It takes time and patience to build a strong friendship and achieve trust between two friends. It is very important to have somebody with whom you can share your thoughts freely.
3. Conclusion	A good friendship is very difficult to find. That is why we should appreciate this divine relationship that is based on understanding and feelings. There are a lot of benefits of friendship. We just need friends to live happily. Lasting friendship is a blessing for everybody. We don`t have to pretend to be someone else when we spend time with our friends. They give us total freedom to be who we really are. We should be grateful to people who make us happy. A true friend is one of the most precious possessions that one can have in his life.

PART 1

The history of chess

1. Introduction

Chess is perhaps the most popular and treasured board game in the world. Millions of people play it daily, and millions of dollars of sponsorship go into the world championships of chess. It seems to be getting even more popular as the years goes on.

2. Main body

There are many legends surrounding the origin of chess, and also the rules of the game have transformed so much during its about 1500 years of history, that it is difficult to trace exactly when "chess" came into being as we know it. In each region, chess took on different rules, pieces and boards. However, we know that chess originated from the Gupta Empire (600CE), of India. The pieces come from the primary military elements of that time: the infantry, the elephants, the cavalry and the chariots. Some experts have claimed that the game could have originated in China, but these assessments are in the minority.

From India, chess travelled to Persia. Several variations of chess evolved in Persia. The queen and bishop had limited movement at this time, unlike the wide movement it has now. The form of chess which finally arrived in Europe was already being played in Persia some 1,350 years ago. The game became very popular in the Muslim world, and it was carried back, throughout Islam, across North Africa and eventually into Europe. Also, in Persia, the first recognisable chess pieces began to emerge that are similar to our modern ones.

3. Conclusion

Chess is a game of about 1,500 years that originated in India, travelled to Persia, and through Muslim influence, spread throughout Europe. In that progression, its rules have changed, and its pieces have also transformed. There are still several variations of chess in multiple countries, like China, Japan, Korea, and more. However, the international chess we play today was developed in Europe by giving the queen and bishop greater power– making the game more thrilling, and at the same time, subtle.

D Argumentative Essay

إن المقال الاستدلالي هو المقال الذي يقدم الكاتب فيه وجهتي نظر أو آراء مختلفة حول موضوع واحد، وقد يتخذ موقفاً من قضية ما وفي مقال مضاد فيه. ثم يحاول الكاتب اقناع القراء بفهم وجهة نظره حول موضوع ما ودعمها عن طريق ذكر أسبابه وتقديم أدلة لدعم

Outline of an Argumentative Essay

Introduction	Main body	Conclusion
يجب أن تحدد المقدمة الفكرة الأساسية للمقال، وتوفر معلومات أساسية ضرورية لفهم الفكرة. وتحدد الجوانب أو الآراء المختلفة للموضوع التي سوف تقوم بعرضها (مثل المزايا والعيوب لموضوع المقال)، ويمكن أن تحدد اتجاهك الأساسي في الموضوع الذي ستناقش جوانبه.	يتألف المقال الجدلي النموذجي من فقرتين او اكثر تشرح أسباب دعمك لرايك. يجب أن تغطي كل فقرة فكرة مختلفة او دليلاً مختلفاً حيث تقوم بعرض وجهات النظر المتعارضة. حيث إن تقديم الحقائق والنظر في موضوع من كل زاوية يضيف مصداقية، وسيساعدك على كسب ثقة القارئ.	هنا يجب عليك تلخيص رأيك وكل وجهة نظر من قسم المقال. يجب ان تتجنب الخاتمة الفارغ وتعرض وجهة رأيك. كما يجب ان تضع في اعتبارك أيضاً ان الفقرة تربط فقط الجوانب المركزية للمقال. ولا يمكنها تقديم حجج او حقائق جديدة

Sample Argumentative Essays

The mobile phone

Introduction		The mobile phone is a good technology which is not lacking from our lives. Some people, especially young men and women, believe it is the best invention man has ever had. Yet, many people agree that it, like most modern inventions, has its own advantages and disadvantages.
Main body	Point of View (1)	On the One hand, the mobile phone has become popular to everybody since it is very convenient. The most advantage of having a mobile phone is you can communicate to your family and your friends no matter where you are. For instance, you can contact your friends easily by calling or sending messages everywhere without electricity. It is maybe the main reason why almost all people today choose to own a mobile phone. From the customer's point of view, it is obvious that mobile phones assist you in business a lot, such as, make timetables of working, surf the internet, and keep in touch with their companies. Moreover, you can relax with mobile phone's applications, for example, play games, listen to music, or chat with your friends.
	Point of View (2)	On the other hand, there are also disadvantages. Using mobile phones a lot can harm your brain, particularly teenager and children who are under 16 years old. If you use mobile phones too much, you will get bad effects like dizziness, blood-brain barrier, or ears problems. In addition, when you use mobile phones while you are driving, you may get an accident. It is essential not good for you and others. It can also lead to social problems. It can affect your social relations badly. Young men spend much time chatting with their friends preferring it to face to face relations. This too can affect young people's communication skills and leads to bad family relations.
Conclusion		Owning a mobile phone in your hand is you can solve many issues and hold most of information around the world. It can help you do jobs easily and saves a lot of time. However is not good for your health and you have to protect yourself from bad effects of mobile phones if you choose to have one.

Should public libraries be shut down?

Introduction		As online learning becomes common more and more resources are converted to digital form, some people have suggested that public libraries should be shut down and, in their place, everyone should be given an iPad with an e-reader subscription.
Main body	Point of View (1)	Proponents of this idea state that it will save local cities and towns money because libraries are expensive to maintain. They also believe it will encourage more people to read because they won't have to travel to a library to get a book; they can simply click on what they want to read and read it from wherever they are. They could also access more materials because libraries won't have to buy physical copies of books; they can simply rent out as many digital copies as they need.
	Point of View (2)	However, it would be a serious mistake to replace libraries with tablets or iPads. First, digital books and resources are associated with less learning and more problems than print resources, more Additionally, staring too long at a screen has been shown to cause numerous health problems, including blurred vision, dizziness, dry eyes, headaches, and eye strain, at much higher instances than reading print does. People who use tablets and mobile devices excessively also have a higher incidence of more serious health problems such as shoulder and back pain, and muscle strain. We should add to these problems by giving people, especially young people, more reasons to look at screens.
Conclusion		While replacing libraries with tablets may seem like a simple solution, it would encourage people to spend even more time looking at digital screens, despite the problems of this overuse. It would also end access to many of the benefits of libraries that people have come to rely on. In many areas, libraries are such an important part of the community network that they could never be replaced by a simple object.

Persuasive Essay

- المقال الإقناعى هو المقال الذى يشرح الكاتب فيه موضوعًا، ويحاول إقناع القارئ بوجهة نظر محددة تجاه هذا الموضوع. والفارق هنا بين المقال الإقناعى والجدلى هو مناقشة فكرة واحدة أميزة أو عيب) للموضوع الذى تتم الكتابة عنه، مع شرح أسباب رأى الكاتب حتى يستطيع فى النهاية إقناع القارئ أن ينحاز لوجهة نظره.

Outline of a Persuasive Essay

Introduction	الغرض الرئيسى من المقدمة هو تحديد الجوانب الرئيسية لموضوعك والتجاهك الأساسى بشكل موجز، ويمكن ذكر أسباب هذا الاتجاه (التى سوف تناقشها بالتفصيل بعد ذلك)، ويجب أن تكون فى شكل موجز.
Main body	يتكون من فقرتين أو ثلاث، تركز كل منها على فكرة منفصلة أو سبب من الأسباب المؤيدة لوجهة نظرك، مع إضافة دعامة تجعل القارئ يقتنع بوجهة نظرك تجاه الموضوع.
Conclusion	تتكون من ملخص قصير للنقاط الرئيسية التى أيدت وجهة نظرك فى المقال، وذلك لتعزيز التأثير المقنع للقارئ. ولذلك يجب أن تكون واضحة ومنطقية.

Sample Persuasive Essays

The advantages of online learning (education)

Introduction	It seems everything is moving online these days. Even our education is transferring onto the internet. Online learning is now considered the best way of education in our modern world. There are reasons for this: you can learn whatever you want, it is more comfortable in a variety of ways and the cost of virtual education is often lower than traditional education.
Main body	The freedom to choose your educational path is an enduring quality of online education. For more creative people, or people who want to focus on a single activity, this can be a dream come true. With online education, you can take any program or course present in traditional four-year universities. So, the ease of access to the courses and majors you are striving to study are widely available online. This increases opportunities to gain the education we desire instead of making needless compromises. Similarly, comfort takes centre stage for many students. Countless students choose online education in order to avoid wasting time travelling and on many other activities in order to attend physical education institutions. Students listen to lectures and complete assignments sent to them electronically, with no need to fight traffic, leave work early for class, or miss important family time. Rather than miss important class sessions (due to weather conditions), students in online courses can always "attend" by participating in discussion boards or chat sessions, turning in their work on time, and watching lectures or reading materials. Finally, the cost of getting an online education is cheaper on average than receiving a traditional education. For example, there are no commuting costs, and sometimes required course materials, such as textbooks, are available online at no cost. In addition, many colleges and universities accept credits earned via free massive open online courses. Thus, there are a variety of reasons why an online education costs less.
Conclusion	Receiving an online education is becoming more and more popular due to a multitude of advantages it has over traditional instruction. These advantages include, to name a few: students can learn whatever they want, it is more comfortable, online courses often look great on resumes, the pacing of learning is managed by the pupil, and the cost is often lower than traditional education. With these reasons, it is hard to not see why this form of education is on the rise.

PART 1

Why people should stop smoking

Introduction

I am sure that you know that smoking harms your body. Then why do you continue smoking? Maybe you do it because you haven't really become conscious about all the effects that smoking has. There are a lot of reasons why you shouldn't smoke. Some of them are that smoking affects your health, that you spend a lot of money on cigarettes, and that when you smoke you are not respecting people around you.

Main body

The first reason why you shouldn't smoke is that smoking affects your health. If you smoke, your physical condition will be negatively affected, so it will be very difficult for you to succeed in sports. Also, smoking produces lethal diseases like cancer and reduces the length and quality of your life. Maybe you don't notice all the physical effects of smoking immediately, but you surely will be sorry one day.

The second reason why you shouldn't smoke is because of all the money that you spend on it. Maybe you start smoking only when someone offers you a cigarette, but there will be a day when you will feel the need of a cigarette. By this time, you will pay whatever to smoke, and each time you will smoke more, so you will spend more money. All the money you would spend on cigars could have be spent in something better, don't you think?

The last reason why you shouldn't smoke is out of respect for the people around you. When you smoke, you not only harm yourself, but you also harm all the people around you. So you mustn't be selfish; you should at least avoid smoking in front of people who don't smoke. Also, many people don't like the cigarette's smell, so they won't enjoy your company. Would you like that?

Conclusion

I have said just some reasons of why you shouldn't smoke, so I hope that now those of you who smoke are able to think a little and try to make a smart decision. In addition to all the reasons I've said, I would like you to think about how much you love yourself and then whether you want to continue harming yourself. Think also about all the people who love you, like your family who doesn't want to see you suffering or sick. If you decide to continue smoking, what a pity. But if you decide to stop smoking, congratulations! Remember that "If you can dream it, you can do it."

D Email writing

- تطبق نفس قواعد كتابة المقال السابقة لأن كليهما يتكون من تكوين الجمل السليمة إلا أن البريد الإلكتروني أسهل لأن به شرح معينا ويستطيع كل طالب أن يحسنه ويكون جملة أقل مستوى من المقال المعتاد ترغم أن معدل الأسئلة يطلبون نفس العدد من الكلمات تقريبًا ويمكن تقسيمه أيضًا إلى فقرات تتضمن المقدمة والموضوع والخاتمة، مع ملاحظة أنه هناك نوعان من البريد الإلكتروني

E-mail

A. Formal E-mail

هذا النوع تم استخدامه حديثًا من جانب الهيئات والشركات للتعامل مع بعضها البعض أو التعامل مع العملاء والموظفين والمتقدمين للوظائف المختلفة، وهذا النوع يتميز بلغة أكثر رسمية بعدم وجود جمل التحيات والمجاملات المتعارف عليه.

B. Informal E-mail

هذا النوع يتضمن رسائل التواصل بين الأشخاص مع كتابة الجمل في الموضوع بشكل أقل رسمية بتضمين جمل التحيات والمجاملات المتعارف عليه؛ لأن الرسالة عادة ما تكون بين الأصدقاء أو الأقارب أو المعارف.

Layout of E-mails

New message

To	:	اسم المرسل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني
From	:	اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني
Subject	:	موضوع الرسالة

Dear/Hi,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sender name
اسم المرسل

SEND

Sample Formal E-mail

New message

To : jim36@hrdtt.com — اسم المرسل اليه وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني

From : tdbusiness@hrdtt.com — اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني

Subject : A thank you message — موضوع الرسالة

Dear Mr. Jim Shaffer,

On behalf of our entire team at our company, we would like to take this opportunity to thank you sincerely for taking out so much time and effort in meeting us last Monday. Our meeting was very enlightening and we all had a very good experience.

The meeting helped us to communicate and understand your company's goal and objectives. It also helped us a great deal to learn about the various kinds of development projects that are presently undergoing in your company. We also hope that you liked our small presentation.

We thank you sincerely for the business you brought to us. And I hope that we both reach great heights in the near future. Thanks for your help and support. We ensure that we will do our best to deliver outstanding results. As per the discussion, I have attached in this email a rough project plan for our next venture.

Thank you once again for the wonderful meeting.

Yours sincerely,
Robert Spooner

Senior Vice President

SEND

Sample Informal E-mail

New message

To : john@gmail.com

From : sam@gmail.com

Subject : A visit plan

Hi John,

I am so glad that you are planning to visit my country. I know you like travel when the weather is moderate, so I suggest you should come on December or January and I promise you will never experience a better weather. I hope when you come you stay with me but I can book a hotel as you want.

As you know I always have a plan for myself, so I have made a plan for us. At first we should go to the Pyramids and the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. After that we will go to the Red Sea coast area. I'm sure you will love Sharm El Sheikh where you will enjoy the beautiful scenery and the marvelous water sports. Sharm El Sheikh is one of the most famous places for tourists. If you could stay for more than ten days, we can go to Luxor and Aswan where you will enjoy the famous Ancient Egyptian temples and the Valley of the Kings.

Please, contact me when you book your ticket, so I will be at the airport to meet you.

With love,
Sami.

SEND

Exercises

A) Write an essay of ONE HUNDRED EIGHTY (180) words on:

1. *The most successful day in my life.*
2. *A story ending in "..... At last I found safety after the bad experience in the forest."*
3. *Some people believe that internet access must be limited to students. Give your opinion.*
4. *How should we encourage industry in Egypt?*
5. *The importance of practising a useful hobby.*
6. *A person you look up to as a role model or an example to be followed.*
7. *Everyone should have a role in building our country.*
8. *Your ambitions for a better life.*
9. *Hard work is the key to success.*
10. *How to make good use of your spare time.*
11. *Great projects provide job opportunities and better living conditions for all Egyptians.*
12. *Tolerance and cooperation are the keys to the development of any society.*
13. *The qualities of a good teacher.*
14. *The school you dream about.*
15. *Life today is better than that in the past.*

B) Write an e-mail of ONE HUNDRED EIGHTY (180) words on:

1. *You are studying English at a private language school attended by many international students. You are planning a surprise birthday party for a friend who has been feeling particularly sad and homesick. Write to another classmate and invite him/her to the party.*
2. *You borrowed an important book from a classmate last term. You now realise your classmate had returned home overseas and you still have the book. Write an e-mail to him/her.*
3. *You live in an English speaking country and you want to do some voluntary, unpaid work in a developing country. Write an e-mail to a company called Cultural Expeditions, which organises such trips.*
4. *You live in a small university town. Last week, you drove to a big city about two hours away to buy a new laptop at a good price. You worked on the laptop all week and finished writing a long assignment that is due shortly. However, this week, the laptop doesn't even switch on. Write to the store.*
5. *You are going to take a short holiday in London and you want to rent a holiday apartment while you are there. Write to the tourist information office.*

Part 2



Integrated Skills

- Staying healthy
- Eating around the world
- The future of food
- Changing English
- Being smart online
- Learning from our mistakes

PART 2

Skills Integration Methodology

) نهدف من خلال تدريس هذا الجزء (Skills integration) إلى الارتقاء بمستوى تعلم مهارات اللغة الإنجليزية لدى الطلاب في بداية المرحلة الثانوية. وذلك من خلال ذلك الربط بين المهارات الأساسية للغة مثل مهارات القراءة والاستماع والكتابة (Reading & Listening & Writing) بصورة مترابطة عن طريق تدريس نفس الموضوع من جوانب عدة وذلك لتوسيع مدارك الطلاب بالإضافة إلى اكسابهم رؤى مختلفة يستطيعون من خلالها تكوين منظومهم الخاص. ثم تقديم المهارات بشكل يتواكب مع طريقة تلقي الطالب، فتم البدء بمهارة القراءة، ثم مهارة الاستماع وانتهاء بمهارة الكتابة بعد أن ينتهي الطالب من اكتساب مفردات لغوية جديدة في جزئيي القراءة والاستماع

) بدانا بتقديم مهارة القراءة Reading Skill في صورة قطعة فهم (Comprehension Passage) يليها أسئلة مشابهة لما قد يتعرض له الطالب أثناء أدائه الامتحان النهائي. يلي ذلك تقديم ومراجعة بعض الإرشادات الخاصة بقواعد اللغة الإنجليزية (Grammar Rules).

) يأتي بعد ذلك الجزء الخاص بتقديم مهارة الاستماع Listening Skill، ويعتبر كتاب (Skills) وافيا في تقديم تلك المهارة في قالب غير تقليدي لمساعدة الطلاب في تنميتها من خلال تقديم نص مسموع حول نفس موضوع قطعة الفهم، ثم تقديم ترجمة الكلمات الجديدة التي قد تساعد في فهم الطالب للموضوع وتكوين حصيلة لغوية لديه، ثم تقديم أسئلة حول هذه الكلمات للتأكد من فهم الطالب لها وقدرته على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة.

) في الجزء الأخير يطلب من الطالب تطبيق نتائج ما تم فهمه في الأجزاء السابقة من خلال ممارسة مهارة الكتابة Writing Skill عن طريق:

١- ترجمة لبعض الجمل المتعلقة بالموضوع.

٢- كتابة مقال مطابق للمعايير متعلق بالموضوع أيضا.

وبذلك يكون الطالب قد تحصل على معلومات إضافية في قالب غير تقليدي تساعده في الإجابة عن أية أسئلة محررة مسايرة لاتجاهات التقييم الحديثة.

Staying healthy

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

If you want to be healthy and fit, you need to follow certain rules, whether you're a boy, a girl, young or old. People are advised to eat healthy food. It is really important if you want to be healthy. You don't need to go on a diet, just pay attention to what you're putting in your body. You can eat three meals a day or 5-6 mini-meals a day. NEVER skip meals. Try healthy alternatives, instead of having a bowl of ice-cream, go for a frozen yogurt. Drink more water. This is basically the most important thing of all. If you drink more water, you will be much healthier because it flushes the toxins out of your body and gives your skin a healthy glow.

It's important to exercise more whether it's walking in the park, or cycling, do at least 20 minutes of physical activity several times a week. You should not exercise every day. Exercise will make you stronger and strengthen your muscles. You can go to the gym, swim or run. Exercising will make you healthier and happier about your body. It also reduces stress and helps to calm the mind!

During adolescence, you'll find you need more sleep. Sure, it's tempting to stay up late chatting with friends on the phone or computer, but the next morning you'll be miserable. You need to get a minimum of 8 hours of sleep every night. It may be tough if you get back late and have to wake up early on a normal school day, but if you put things in the right way, you will feel much more refreshed the next morning. This will help your concentration and you will be in a much happier and friendly mood.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What do you need to be healthy?
 - a) Go on a diet.
 - b) Follow certain rules.
 - c) Neglect meals.
 - d) Drink little water.
2. What can you eat instead of an ice-cream?
 - a) 5-6 mini-meals.
 - b) A kilo of meat.
 - c) A frozen yogurt.
 - d) Three meals.

3. What can exercising do to us?
 a) Makes us healthier and happier.
 b) Gives us stress.
 c) Reduces the peace of mind.
 d) Weakens our muscles.
4. What does the sentence "eat things in the right way" mean?
 a) Chat a lot with friends.
 b) Make extra effort.
 c) Get up early.
 d) Sleep well.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What will exercise do to your body? Mention two points.
6. There are a lot of advantages to getting enough sleep. Mention two.
7. Give two reasons why water is important to our bodies.
8. How do you think ,we can keep healthy? Mention two.

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. You need to follow certain rules.

- تعبر need to عن الضرورة مثلها مثل have to/has to/must

2. You don't need to go on a diet.

- تعبر don't need to عن عدم الإلزام مثلها مثل needn't /don't/doesn't have to

3. Instead of having a bowl of ice-cream, go for a frozen.

- بعد حروف الجر نستخدم v.ing ما عدا to و instead of معناها بدلاً من.

4. You should not exercise every day.

- تعبر should عن النصيحة سواء مثبتة أو منفية وتساوى ought to/had better

5. Exercise will make you stronger and strengthen your muscles.

- تعبر will عن اشياء كثيرة فى المستقبل ومنها الحقائق المستقبلية والتنبؤ.

6. It may be tough if you get back.

- تعبر may عن احتمال حدوث الشىء وهى بمعنى ربما و be هنا فعل منفصل عنها؛ لان هناك كلمة اخرى تأتى فى اول الجملة وبعدها جملة كاملة وهى maybe متصلة وبمعنى ربما ايضا.

3 Listening text

Listening

Listen to 3 students talking about healthy ways of life:

Student 1: I'm crazy about fast food. I eat junk food every day. I have got some problems with my stomach, but at the same time I'm sure that eating fast food isn't bad for health.

Student 2: Sometimes, I eat fast food because I'm always busy with my lessons and after-school activities. My parents have no time to cook because they are always at work. My parents and I are absolutely sure that modern life runs so quickly that people often don't have enough time even to eat.

Student 3: I lead a healthy way of life. I eat a lot of fruit and vegetables. I can't stand junk food. I go to the gym and swimming-pool. I enjoy cycling and going for a walk with my friends. I'm really healthy and fit. I use my computer only for study or in order to find some useful information.

Helping Vocabulary

absolutely	مطلقاً	cycling	ركوب الدراجات
activities	الأنشطة	fit	في حالة جيدة
can't stand	لا أتحمل	junk food	الوجبات السريعة
crazy about	مجنون/مفتون بـ	stomach	المعدة

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An infected person can pass the _____ to others.
 a) virus b) drug c) wound d) tumour
2. Antibiotics are not effective against viral _____ such as COVID-19.
 a) rays b) infections c) operations d) damages
3. Two players are out of the team in the next match because of _____.
 a) treatment b) training c) injury d) award
4. The _____ system is the system in your body that produces substances to help it fight against infection and disease.
 a) digestive b) nerve c) respiratory d) immune
5. Girls should be taught the basic _____ of childcare as they will be future mothers.
 a) devices b) techniques c) kits d) fashions
6. The disease in the patient's lungs made _____ very painful.
 a) hearing b) temperature c) breathing d) pressure
7. The moon's atmosphere cannot _____ human life.
 a) support b) risk c) neglect d) prevent
8. The new resort area in Galala is expected to _____ tourism in Egypt.
 a) detach b) mend c) damage d) boost
9. Scientists say there are many treatments which can destroy some kinds of cancer _____.
 a) calls b) cells c) bones d) organs
10. The surgeon who _____ the operation said it had gone well.
 a) performed b) explored c) discovered d) covered

2 Translation:

Writing

A) Translate into English:

يقول الأطباء إننا نحتاج جميعنا إلى تعزيز جهازنا المناعى بسبب الانتشار السريع للفيروسات فى عصرنا الحالى. ويقولون إن الحياة الصحية والغذاء السليم هما من أهم وسائل تحقيق ذلك.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Schools should have special courses to teach students how to do first aids. This will help them benefit themselves and their society if there is an emergency.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"To be healthy is easy and cheap. Write about the ways which enable you to lead a healthy life."

Eating around the world

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Food is the basic human need to stay alive. Moreover, it is the need of every living organism. Therefore it is important that we should not waste food. Our world consists of different types of cultures. These cultures have varieties of dishes of food in them.

Thus, all the dishes have different taste. Furthermore, our nature provides us a variety of food. From fruits to vegetables, from dairy food to seafood, everything is available. Different countries have their own specialty of dishes. Here are some of them:

In China people eat eight, ten or twelve dishes of food at New Year. A lot of the food at New Year has a special meaning. Seaweed means good luck and long noodles mean long life. They eat whole vegetables and don't use knives to cut things, because this means the end of your good luck.

In Russia there is lots of food on the table, so the next year will be happy and plentiful. At 11.59 people have their special drinks and wait for the clock to strike twelve. Then they make a toast for the New Year. They wish everybody good luck and happiness.

In Spain people eat twelve grapes – one with each chime of the clock at midnight. This brings good luck for the next twelve months. But it is difficult to eat twelve grapes in twelve seconds, so people usually have a mouth full of grapes at the end!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Food is necessary for _____.
 a) people b) animals
 c) trees d) all of these
2. People around the world have _____ cultures.
 a) the same b) different
 c) strange d) bad

3. In China people eat an _____ number of dishes of food.
 a) even b) odd
 c) eight d) eleven
4. Eating twelve grapes in twelve seconds in Spain means _____
 a) Bringing good luck for the next twelve months.
 b) Bringing good luck for the next twelve seconds.
 c) Having a mouth full of grapes.
 d) Leaving no grapes for the next day.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Where do our dishes of food come from?
6. What does using knives to cut things mean?
7. Do you think that the dishes of each country represent its culture? Why?
8. What do Egyptians eat to celebrate their different occasions?

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. Therefore it is important _____ .

- تعتبر therefore اداة ربط للنتيجة وقبلها السبب.

2. We should not waste food _____ .

- تعبر should عن النصيحة وهى التى تساوى oughtn't to/had better not + Inf.

3. Furthermore, our nature provides _____ .

- تعتبر furthermore من أدوات ربط الإضافة وبعدها جملة كاملة.

4. A lot of the food at New Year has _____ .

- استخدمنا has لأن a lot of food مفرد.

5. There is lots of food _____ .

- لاحظ أن lots of يأتى بعدها الذى يعد والذى لا يعد.

6. They wish everybody good luck.

- يأتى بعد wish إما فاعل ثم جملة كاملة لها شروط معينة، أو مفعول وبعدها الشىء الذى تتمناه.
ومثال الفاعل I wish he would attend my wedding party next week

7. It is difficult to eat _____ .

بعد التركيبة السابقة يمكن حذف for + object ونبقى to + inf. والجملة تكون كاملة.

It is difficult for them to eat _____ .

3 Listening text

Listening

Listen to a conversation about "Food on different occasions":

Birthdays

Speaker 1: When a child is born in China, the father gives red eggs to his friends and family – an even number for a girl and an odd number for a boy.

Speaker 2: The birthday party started in Europe in the Middle Ages. People were afraid of ghosts and bad spirits on their birthdays. Friends and family came to visit you with presents and special kinds food to stop them.

Speaker 3: In Mexico people fill a paper animal with sweets. Children close their eyes and hit the animal until the sweets fall out. Then everybody eats the sweets.

Weddings

Speaker 1: Italians eat doughnuts in the shape of bowties for good luck. They also eat sugared almonds when they hope for a baby.

Speaker 2: Many years ago in Britain the father of the bride gave the groom 'honey mead' (a honey drink) for a whole month. In this way the couple had a month of sweetness and happiness. We have now changed the word to 'honeymoon' – the holiday a couple goes on after their wedding.

Helping Vocabulary

almonds	اللوز	groom	العريس
bowties	لفواس	Middle Ages	العصور الوسطى
bride	العروس	odd	عدد فردى
doughnuts	الكعك	shape	شكل
even	عدد زوجى	spirits	أرواح
ghosts	أشباح	wedding	الزفاف

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young man made the trip home to _____ Christmas with his family.
 a) celebrate b) reward c) accept d) report
2. Some farmers still use _____ farming methods which have been used for hundreds of years.
 a) stylish b) modern c) inventive d) traditional
3. The sausage was too _____ for my children to eat.
 a) spicy b) warm c) cool d) cooked
4. Wearing a hat is now regarded as rather _____ .
 a) old-fashioned b) fashionable c) modernised d) updated
5. Many old customs عادات have _____ from earlier times in the Egyptian society.
 a) avoided b) affected c) survived d) flashed
6. These _____ are taken from a long essay about terrorism in the Middle East.
 a) words b) volumes c) extracts d) scripts
7. The Cairo International Film _____ takes place in November every year.
 a) Festival b) Ceremony c) Game d) Sport
8. The police are trying to find the _____ of the accident victims.
 a) officers b) relatives c) passengers d) reporters
9. It is important to know how to _____ a balance between work and family life.
 a) deceive b) remove c) hinder d) achieve
10. You have the _____ of walking to school or going by bus.
 a) task b) duty c) option d) assignment

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

- خلال السنوات القليلة الماضية انتشرت فى مصر مطاعم الطعام التى تقدم أطباقا من البلاد المختلفة كالمطعم السورى والإيطالى والهندى. وأوشك الشباب أن ينسى الأطباق المصرية اللذيذة.

B) Translate into Arabic:

A food festival uses food as its central theme. It can also be a means of uniting communities through celebrations of harvests and giving thanks for a plentiful growing season.

3 Writing:

Write an e-mail of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

How we celebrate the different feasts in Egypt and the different kinds of food we have in them. Your friend's e-mail is: tomgreen5000@yahoo.com. Yours is: ahmedtito23@gmail.com.

The future of food

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What sort of food are we likely to be eating in the year 2050? Most people, when you ask them a question like that, either say: "There won't be any left, or : "Whatever it is. There won't be much taste in it." Of course, there are good reasons for being pessimistic about the world's food supplies in the future. Nevertheless, not all experts share the general despondency. For one thing, although the world's population is rising fast, food production is keeping pace with it, even in developing countries. It is therefore argued that the main reason why people are hungry is not that there is a food shortage, but that methods of cultivation are not sufficiently advanced in some areas and the food is not fairly distributed to all those that need it. Moreover, in most industrialised countries, one important cause of the trouble is our conservative preference for meat. After all, we are already in a situation where we feed animals with grain to produce high-quality beef, even though the grain would feed the human population. By the time our grandchildren have grown up, it seems likely that many of these problems will have been resolved. Scientists are already capable of constructing steaks from vegetable ingredients like soya beans. However skeptical we may be about their claim that they can reproduce the substance, taste and colour of meat by these means, the fact is that the most common complaint about such "steaks" is that we will no doubt have discovered a way of including artificial bones skin and fat."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What do most people think about our food in the future?
 a) They are optimistic by thinking that there would be much food.
 b) They are pessimistic by thinking that there would be no food left.
 c) They are pessimistic by thinking that there would be no taste in it.
 d) Both b and c.

2. What does the underlined word "despondency" mean?
 a) Hope. b) Hopelessness.
 c) Care. d) Wish.
3. What gives us hope despite the pessimistic view?
 a) Food production is keeping pace with the growing population.
 b) There is food shortage in some poor countries.
 c) We throw some much food in dustbins.
 d) We eat three times a day.
4. What is the reason for the problem of food shortage?
 a) We eat much food every day.
 b) Some traders hide food in their shops.
 c) The food is not fairly distributed to all those that need it.
 d) We throw food in seas and oceans.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What are the main reasons for food shortage at the present time?
6. How can industrialised countries be a cause of the problem of food shortage?
7. How can scientists solve the problem of our preference for meat?
8. Do you think our diet is going to be the same or different in the future? Why?

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. _____ are we likely to be eating _____?
 - الجملة الخبرية are likely to تفيد الاحتمال وتساوى may تقدمت are على we لانها سؤال.
2. Nevertheless, not all experts _____ .
 - تعتبر nevertheless اداة ربط للتناقض مثل However ومعناها ومع ذلك.
3. _____ although the world's population is
 - تعبر although عن التناقض وبعدها جملة كاملة.
4. _____ distributed to all those that need it.
 - استخدمنا ضمير الوصل that لأن قبله كلمة all.
5. Moreover, in most industrialised countries
 - لاحظ استخدام moreover كأداة ربط للنتيجة بمعنى «علاوة على ذلك».
6. By the time our grandchildren have grown up, many of these problems will have been resolved.
 - تستخدم by the time للمستقبل وبعدها مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام والزمن الآخر مستقبل تام.
7. Scientists are already capable of constructing
 - بعد capable of الفعل به ing لأن بعد حروف الجر يأتى الـ gerund.

3 Listening text

Listening

Listen to an optimist and a pessimist about "The future of food":

An optimist : I think we have enough food for everyone in the world, but the problem is unequal distribution. In our technological age, it's easy to know the poor countries and the rich ones. With the help of modern machines and the advanced ways of farming, we'll be able to produce and export great amounts of food products. To know that I'm right, look at our past and present concerning food production and consumption. I think our present is better than our past, so our future will be the best.

A pessimist : I think nearly a billion are hungry due to poverty and unequal distribution. To feed those who are currently hungry—and the additional 2 billion-plus people who will live on the planet by 2050—we will need to increase between 60 and 100 percent. Moreover, look around you and you will find nothing but wars, diseases, poverty, illiteracy, pollution, scarcity of water, etc. I don't think there will be enough food for all people. Great and developed countries only are the ones that will live happily and luxuriously.

Helping Vocabulary

unequal	غير متساو	poverty	الفقر
distribution	توزيع	currently	حاليًا
advanced	متقدم	planet	الكوكب
products	منتجات	illiteracy	الأمية
concerning	بخصوص	scarcity	ندرة
consumption	استهلاك	luxuriously	بترف

PART 2

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some people cleared the forest land to use it for and raising livestock.
 a) economy b) agriculture c) literature d) culture
2. Inorganic غير عضوى are sprayed with highly toxic chemicals to prevent insect damage.
 a) dairy b) soil c) crops d) earth
3. Fortunately, all wood used in our company's furniture comes from forests.
 a) believable b) noticeable c) avoidable d) sustainable
4. The food in the food festival was and well-presented.
 a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) terrible
5. The businessman began in the stock market البورصة many years ago.
 a) exploring b) investing c) building d) spending
6. Through technology and, we can enhance the progress of our country.
 a) desertification b) exhibition c) innovation d) prohibition
7. The government has established trade with many countries.
 a) methods b) trips c) spaces d) links
8. is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
 a) Physics b) Hydroponics c) Biology d) Botany
9. The problem of air pollution is especially serious in areas.
 a) urban b) rural c) ocean d) desert
10. The new model of Toshiba laptops will go into next year.
 a) produce b) produced c) productive d) production

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

- يبحث العلماء عن طرق مستدامة لإنتاج الغذاء لحل مشكلة نقص الغذاء التى من المتوقع أن تزيد مع تزايد السكان وتناقص مساحة الأرض المتاحة للزراعة.

B) Translate into Arabic:

In the last fifty years, Egypt lost a large amount of its agricultural land. This is a great challenge as the population increase means millions of mouths to be fed.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your prediction about food production and its kinds in your country."

Changing English

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Language is always changing, evolving, and adapting to the needs of its users. This isn't a bad thing; if English hadn't changed since, say, 1950, we wouldn't have words to refer to modems, fax machines, or cable TV. As long as the needs of language users continue to change, so will the language. The change is so slow that from year to year we hardly notice it. Language changes for several reasons. First, it changes because the needs of its speakers change. New technologies, new products, and new experiences require new words to refer to them clearly and efficiently. Another reason for change is that no two people have had exactly the same language experience. We all know a slightly different set of words and constructions, depending on our age, job, education level, region of the country, and so on. We pick up new words and phrases from all the different people we talk with. At the same time, various groups in society use language as a way of marking their group identity; showing who is and isn't a member of the group. Many of the changes that occur in language begin with teens and young adults. As young people interact with others their own age, their language grows to include words, phrases, and constructions that are different from those of the older generation. We get new words from many different places. We borrow them from other languages (sushi, chutzpah), (*gym* from *gymnasium*) we create them by shortening longer words or by combining words.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The language is to the needs of its users.
 a) steady b) adaptable c) inflexible d) stubborn
2. Although the users of the language need it badly, it changes
 a) hardly b) quickly c) slowly d) individually

3. The antonym of the word "combining" is _____.

a) separating b) joining

c) uniting d) linking

4. Changing the language is most desirable by _____.

a) seniors b) teens and young adults

c) infants d) children

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why do you think youth and adults approve of language change?
6. Mention two things that make the language change necessary.
7. How does the language acquire its words?
8. Do ordinary people notice the language change? Why? Why not?

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. Language is always changing.

- دائما تأتى الكلمات الدالة بعد v.to be واستخدام always مع المضارع المستمر لبيان أن هذا الشيء يتغير كثيرًا.

2. This isn't a bad thing.

- تأتى الصفة دائما قبل الاسم لكن تأتى بعد كلمات معينة منها something/everything فلون الآتى:

Learning languages is a useful thing. Learning languages is something useful.

3. If English hadn't changed since, say, 1950, we wouldn't have words to.

- لاحظ أن بعد if الحالة الثالثة لكن جواب الشرط حالة ٢ وهذه تسمى mixed وموجود شرحها كاملا فى الوحدة السادسة الجزء الثانى.

4. The change is so slow that from _____.

- قاعدة so + adjective + that بمعنى جدًا لدرجة أن

3 Listening text

Listening

Listen to two students talking about languages change:

Student 1: Have you understood what the lecturer has already said?

Student 2: Yes, I have. I know that languages change from time to time because there are new technologies, new products, and new experiences require new words to refer to them clearly and efficiently. Moreover, old English no longer exists. For example, it used "not" after the verb, but now it doesn't.

Student 1: Can you give me an example?

Student 2: Of course. They used to say, "They toil not." and "Kill them not." But now we say; "They don't toil." and "Don't kill them".

Student 1: And he also said that the sounds of a language change over time. It's really amazing to know all this information.

Helping Vocabulary

clearly	بوضوح
efficiently	بكفاءة
experiences	الخبرات
lecturer	محاضر
products	المنتجات
refer to	تشير إلى
require	تتطلب
rules	قواعد
technologies	صور التكنولوجيا
toil	يكافح/يكدح

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites.
 a) picture b) emoji c) number d) photo
2. The actress got an anonymous text asking for money.
 a) message b) massage c) passage d) messenger
3. The "USA" is a/an for the United States of America.
 a) definition b) specialisation c) abbreviation d) expectation
4. Social are changing the way people communicate, work and shop.
 a) competition b) service c) course d) media
5. My younger brother spends hours playing games such as Pubg.
 a) online b) inline c) offline d) outline
6. COVID-19 news dominated newspaper around the world for a long time.
 a) addresses b) dresses c) headlines d) divisions
7. All advertising websites welcome from people who visit it.
 a) contents b) comments c) services d) symbols
8. The for logging on to the network involves a password.
 a) concept b) means c) provision d) procedure
9. The future of printed newspapers is a matter for great
 a) debate b) agreement c) search d) meeting
10. The actors feel that the people have completely the moral of their movie.
 a) mismanaged b) misunderstood c) misdirected d) misused

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

- يخشى كثير من الخبراء أن يؤدى استخدام الشباب المفرط لوسائل التواصل الاجتماعى إلى فقدانهم مهارات التواصل مع عائلاتهم وأقاربهم، بل قد يؤدى ذلك ببعضهم إلى أمراض نفسية معقدة.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Chatting and messaging language has changed some of the features of the language people have used for thousands of years. Some linguists fear that this will affect the language badly.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"A play of Shakespeare you have just finished and you recommend us to read"

Being smart online

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Internet is full of useful information. You can find everything from food recipes, new jobs, news, and information on various topics. Most students use the internet to find information because there is so much information about almost anything you can imagine on the web.

Since anyone can put up anything there, you are likely to find false information. It is important to be able to tell the difference between false and correct information. The result for "pollution," for example, will give you many different results and how do you know what to trust and what to use? Most people settle for the first three results. There are many things you should consider while searching on the web:

1. Don't use personal sites as they are presenting the page owner's opinions.
2. Trust the sites whose endings are the. com, org. or edu.
3. Consider the date of the publishing. If it was written ten years ago, the facts are very likely to have changed. It is very important to use up-to-date facts.
4. It is a very good idea to check out the sources the author has used. Maybe they are even better than what the author has created.
5. Google the author and see if you can find any information on him/her.
6. It is often a good idea to see what sort of pages that links to the page you are looking up. These simple steps can help you to evaluate whether the information you have found is false or not. It is always important to remember that everyone can post anything on internet, and it is important to check your sources twice.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most students use the internet to
 a) know the weather b) find jobs
 c) find information d) know the current news
2. Because the internet is for everyone, we find
 a) bad things b) false information
 c) correct information d) false and correct information

3. In order to find what we need quickly, we should be a/an
 a) explorer b) youtuber
 c) researcher d) gamer
4. The synonym of the word "evaluate" is "..... ".
 a) know b) value
 c) recognise d) find

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What do most people use the internet for?
6. Mention two of the tips that should be followed to be smart online.
7. Find two words from the passage that mean:
 a) untrue. b) outcomes.
8. Do you find the internet useful or useless? Why? Why not.

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. _____ there is so much information _____.

- المعلومات كلمة لا تجمع لذلك تأخذ much

2. Since anyone can put up anything there, you _____.

- لاحظ أن since هنا بمعنى لأن.

3. _____ to be able to tell the difference _____.

- لاحظ أن tell دائما يذير شخص بشيء ولكن هنا بمعنى يبين الفرق.

4. _____ the sites whose endings are _____.

- قاعدة whose يعدها اسم يملكه ما قبلها وهنا endings اسم بمعنى نهايات.

5. Google the author and see _____.

- كلمة google هنا فعل بمعنى يبحث فى المحرك البحثى ولذلك العطف عليها بـ see بعد and تكلاهما فعل.

3 Listening text

Listening

Ahmed and his teacher are talking about using the internet:

Teacher : Where is your essay on "Technology", Ahmed?

Ahmed : I'm sorry sir. I spent 5 hours searching, finding myself on hundreds of websites, meeting many people and giving my personal information, but in vain.

Teacher : You must be smart online.

Ahmed : What does this mean?

Teacher : "SMART" means 1. Safe 2. Meeting 3. Accepting 4. Reliable 5. Tell

1. Keep safe by not giving out personal information including your email address, phone number and password.
2. Meeting someone you have only been in touch with online can be dangerous. Remember online friends are still strangers even if you have been talking to them for a long time.
3. Accepting emails, IM messages, or opening files, pictures or texts from people you don't know or trust can lead to problems – they may contain viruses or nasty messages!
4. People might lie about their identities. If you like chatting online it's best to only chat to your real world friends and family.
5. Tell your parent or a trusted adult if someone or something makes you feel uncomfortable or worried, or if you or someone you know is being bullied online.

Helping Vocabulary

chat	يدردش	nasty	قبيح/كريه
contain	يحتوى على	reliable	يعتمد عليه
identity	هوية	smart	ذكى
in vain	بلا جدوى	trust	ثقة
including	متضمنا	uncomfortable	غير مريح

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can _____ your favourite songs by clicking here.
 a) load b) overload c) upload d) download
2. How much does it cost to _____ central heating?
 a) break b) smash c) attach d) install
3. A text message with more than 153 _____ will be divided into two messages.
 a) roles b) characters c) parts d) servants
4. The United Nations should be a _____ for solving international problems.
 a) forum b) view c) seminar d) tent
5. This course will help you to _____ your computer skills.
 a) diffuse b) upload c) upgrade d) secure
6. Names of website visitors have been deleted to ensure their _____ .
 a) accuracy b) expectancy c) privacy d) behaviour
7. _____ advertising is those advertisements that appear to people out of their interest and activity on the internet.
 a) Banner b) Commercial c) Amateur d) Targeted
8. This report _____ some of the problems faced by old people in winter.
 a) ends b) behaves c) highlights d) reduces
9. The baby's birth was _____ this morning.
 a) registered b) studied c) rehearsed d) reversed
10. Some people find it safer to use fake information in their Facebook _____ .
 a) address b) memory c) hardware d) profile

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

- يختلف الناس فى استخدامهم للانترنت فى مصر، فمنهم من يستخدمه للبحث العلمى، ومنهم من يستخدمه للتواصل مع الأصدقاء، لكن الغالبية العظمى تستخدمه لأغراض الترفيه كمشاهدة الأفلام وممارسة الألعاب.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Most websites force their users to accept cookies. These are mainly used for many kinds of advertisement which brings money to websites owners.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The pros and cons of using the internet."

Learning from our mistakes

Reading

1 Comprehension passage

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Most people are afraid to fail. They worry constantly about not meeting expectations, making a mistake, or trying something new. Because of this, many never get started on the path toward reaching their goals. You'll likely have to fail a few times, learn from your lessons, and only then be able to come through a winner. In the world of academics, mistakes are perceived as bad and need to be avoided. For the first twenty-two years of your life, you are taught that mistakes are bad and embarrassing fact, mistakes are simply opportunities to learn something new. The more mistakes a person makes, the more they will have learned and the greater chance they will have of succeeding on their next try.

The key, however, is to learn from your mistakes and never make the same mistake twice.

Thomas Edison would have never invented the light bulb if he did not take this principle to heart. Edison failed more than 10,000 times before he found the filament that would create light for a sustained period of time. He did not view these as failures, however. On the 6,635th try to find a proper filament for the light bulb, Edison did not see himself has having failed 6634 times. He reframed the situation so that to him he had successfully eliminated 6,643 possibilities, refining and narrowing his search as he proceeded, drawing him closer and closer to his goal. Levi Strauss and Christopher Columbus and many others wouldn't have succeeded unless they had made mistakes many times. By taking action and learning from your mistakes and failures, you'll gain new knowledge and become aware of many new opportunities.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many never get started on the path toward reaching their goals for fear of _____ .
 a) success b) poverty c) regret d) failure
2. Students, teachers, researchers and professors should consider mistakes as _____ .
 a) an excuse to stop trying
 b) the end of life
 c) opportunities to learn something new
 d) a chance to fail more and more

3. What do the underlined words "this principle" refer to?
 a) Inventing the light bulb.
 b) Learning from the mistakes.
 c) Failure leads to more failure.
 d) Mistakes are bad and embarrassing.
4. The antonym of the word "embarrassing" is "....." .
 a) enjoyable
 b) discomforting
 c) uncomfortable
 d) awkward

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How should people think of their mistakes?
6. Find words from the passage that mean:
 a) attentive.
 b) constant.
7. What do you think people should do when they make mistakes?
8. How do you think people should behave towards the person who does a mistake?

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. People are afraid to fail

- بعد afraid of نستخدم v.ing لكن لو استخدمنا to نستخدم المصدر وهى نفس المعنى.

2. You are taught that mistakes are bad

- لاحظ أن are taught مجهول ولا يمكن استخدام learnt فى المجهول وقبلها عاقل.

3. The more mistakes a person makes, the more they will have learned and

- هذه التركيبة بمعنى كلما كلما وهى استخدام الصفة فى المقارنة بعد the.

4. Thomas Edison would have never invented the light bulb if he did not take this principle to heart.

- قاعدة if هنا هى الحالة المختلطة mixed conditional اى أن اختراع المصباح حدث ماضٍ، ولذلك استخدمنا جواب شرط الحالة الثالثة ولكن الحديث عن تصحيح الأخطاء قائم على مدار الأزمنة كلها فهو مضارع يتحول إلى ماضٍ بسيط.

5. By taking action and learning from.

- بعد حروف الجر نستخدم gerund و and عطف لذلك بعدها يساوى ما قبلها فى الشكل (الزمن).

3 Listening text

Listening

Two teachers are talking about students' mistakes:

Teacher 1 : I see you are angry. What's the problem?

Teacher 2 : Many students have made many mistakes in doing today's exercise.

Teacher 1 : I think it isn't a problem. Making mistakes doesn't mean that they aren't clever. Success in the classroom shouldn't be determined by high marks and correct answers. But "make mistakes" is a goal I would love to see my students set for themselves! Why? Because mistakes are the essence of new learning! As teachers, it is important that we begin to normalise mistakes for our students.

Helping Vocabulary

determined	مصمم/عاقد العزم	goal	هدف
essence	جوهر	normalise	تطبيع

PART 2

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Although they had a few disagreement, the young couple on well with each other.
 a) got b) went c) came d) received
2. The poor woman ran to the nearest house and for help to save her sick child.
 a) ordered b) begged c) attacked d) delayed
3. The security man was for surfing the Internet during work time.
 a) breathed b) designed c) fired d) warmed
4. Our old neighbour was too to buy herself an air conditioner.
 a) cheerful b) generous c) careless d) mean
5. Mona feels that we didn't tell her the truth.
 a) pleased b) upset c) appointed d) delighted
6. A is a Christian religious song sung at Christmas.
 a) priest b) carol c) pray d) sonnet
7. The two friends out over some stupid little things.
 a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose
8. Someone made a rude noise, which the teacher decided to
 a) reply b) welcome c) apply d) ignore
9. The of the train accident is still clear in my mind.
 a) memory b) anniversary c) memorial d) souvenir
10. Some people believe that there is a close between poverty and crime.
 a) debate b) relationship c) argument d) quarrel

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

- لقد تأثرت علاقتى بأصدقائى كثيرًا منذ أن بدأت استخدام موقع الفيسبوك، لكننى ندمت الآن وأحاول تصحيح علاقتى بهم، فقد أدركت أنهم شىء مهم فى حياتى.

B) Translate into Arabic:

We can learn from our mistakes more than our achievements. When we make mistakes, we should analyse them and put strategies to avoid repeating them.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"An embarrassing situation you faced and the lesson you learnt from it."

Part 3



Ongoing Assessment

Unit (1)

Quiz on Part (1)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. The lifeguard pulled the child out of the swimming pool and did ____ for him to save his life.
 a) VCR b) CV c) CPR d) MRI
2. The fire has caused ____ damage to the building that it was knocked down.
 a) simple b) severe c) light d) imaginary
3. When I told my mother I lost the mobile, she ____ with anger.
 a) represented b) reacted c) acted d) protected
4. The doctor pressed tightly on the wound to stop the ____.
 a) breeding b) leading c) blading d) bleeding
5. The big project has involved ____ of three companies to finish in time.
 a) collaboration b) reservation c) preservation d) condensation
6. I ____ eat healthy food if I'm going to be an athlete.
 a) must b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) don't have to
7. You ____ exercise if you want to be healthy.
 a) don't have to b) have to c) mustn't d) can't
8. You ____ visit the Pyramids when you're in Cairo. They are amazing.
 a) mustn't b) needed to c) don't have to d) must

9. If you are busy, you ____ play football with them.
 a) mustn't b) must c) have to d) don't have to
10. You ____ eat things with a lot of salt or fat in them.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) have to

2 Choose the correct word: 6

A lot of factors play a role in (1) (staying / performing) healthy. In turn, good health can decrease your risk of developing certain conditions. These include heart (2) (treatment / disease), stroke and injuries. The first factor is having a healthy (3) (diet / right) and lifestyle. The second factor is (4) (making / doing) exercises which will also help you have a strong body. These will help us (5) (boast / boast) our immune (6) (style / system) to fight diseases.

Answers:

(1).....	(2).....	(3).....
(4).....	(5).....	(6).....

3 A) Translate into Arabic: 2

A medical emergency is an acute injury or illness that shows an immediate risk to a person's life. It requires assistance from another person, who should be suitably qualified.

.....

B) Translate into English: 2

- الاسترخاء والانفصال عن ضغوط الحياة من الوسائل الهامة التى تساعد على دعم صحة الإنسان، ويكون ذلك عن طريق ممارسة أنشطة الاسترخاء مثل تمارين اليوجا.

.....

Quiz on Part (2)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. While cleaning the house, the dust made her badly.
 a) cough b) train c) smell d) wave
2. Our teacher always in a friendly manner towards us.
 a) treated b) behaved c) cured d) misbehaved
3. Winning the cup the team's confidence.
 a) detached b) attracted c) reduced d) boosted
4. I shouldn't have gone to the party in the first ! I was not in a good mood.
 a) place b) post c) position d) situation
5. The Art design consists of both lectures and practical workshops.
 a) coarse b) section c) course d) centre
6. You pay to go in the museum. It is free to enter.
 a) must b) had to c) don't have to d) have to
7. Leila work hard if she wants to pass her exams.
 a) had to b) must c) mustn't d) needn't
8. You forget to bring a coat to the mountains. It will be cold!
 a) have to b) must c) don't have to d) mustn't
9. You buy a ticket before you get on the train.
 a) have to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) can't
10. Which book you read if you are interested in having a healthy heart?
 a) have to b) must c) did you have to d) mustn't

2 Fill in the gap with the correct forms of the verb: 8

Our trip to Matrouh(1)..... (be) always fantastic. We always have two rooms booked, so(2)..... (have to) look for empty rooms in the area. Our children are really happy because they(3)..... (need) go to bed early. The beach is half an hour from the hotel, so we(4)..... (have to) drive to it tomorrow. The children(5)..... (go) to the beach by themselves because there are sharks there. We(6)..... (remember) that our country is full of many fabulous places.

Answers:

(1).....	(2).....	(3).....
(4).....	(5).....	(6).....

3 A) Translate into Arabic: 3

If you wish to acquire a healthy lifestyle, you will certainly have to make some changes in your life. Maintaining a healthy lifestyle demands consistent habits and disciplined life.

B) Translate into English: 3

سيكون نظامك الغذائي المتوازن وممارسة التمارين الرياضية بانتظام عديمي الفائدة تمامًا إذا كنت تعيش في بيئة غير صحية. يجب علينا الحفاظ على النظافة في محيطنا لتجنب الإصابة بالأمراض المعدية.

Unit (2)

Quiz on Part (1)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

❶ The chef asserted that we should make sure to add the right of salt to the recipe.
a) account b) quality
c) length d) amount

❷ My elder brother often together with his friends after work.
a) goes b) makes
c) gets d) pretends

❸ Medals are usually worn only on ceremonial
a) accidents b) occasions
c) prohibitions d) intentions

❹ The Galapagos island is home to several species of trees.
a) strange b) native
c) modern d) deadly

❺ Breakfast is between 7 and 10 a.m. at this hotel.
a) served b) reserved
c) accepted d) perplexed

❻ The curry was too hot, it was the thing I've ever eaten!
a) spicier b) spicy
c) spiciest d) most spicy

❼ People in the countryside often cook food that's than the food people eat in cities.
a) more traditional b) traditional
c) the most traditional d) traditionally

❽ Many people think that nut biscuits are the other biscuits on the menu.
a) good than b) better than
c) the best d) so good as

❾ Vegetable curry costs 3 pounds and all the other meals at the restaurant cost than that.
a) much b) most
c) more d) many

❿ Nut biscuits are of all the other biscuits in the market.
a) much sweeter b) sweet
c) sweeter d) the sweetest

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:
(kinds – local – other – spicy – seafood – dish)

6

In the past, people made food from their available(1)..... ingredients in the same ways that their grandparents used to make their food. Nowadays, each country has their special ways of cooking. Some of these ways haven't changed up till now. Indian people like(2)..... food which has pepper and other spices. The Japanese like to eat(3)..... such as fish. They are famous for a special(4)..... called Sochi. The Chinese eat food less than any other people, but they eat many(5)..... of animals. Nowadays, people can enjoy food from(6).....countries in different ways.

Answers:

(1).....	(2).....	(3).....
(4).....	(5).....	(6).....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

2

Some people assert that our food should be organic, grown with traditional methods. However, others say that we can face food shortage problems if we do so.

.....

B) Translate into English:

2

- بعض المهرجانات التى تحتفل بها الشعوب ترجع إلى سنوات عديدة سابقة مثل عيد الشكر فى أمريكا الذى يحرص عليه الأمريكيون كتعبير عن امتنانهم لأجدادهم الذين غامروا بحياتهم لتعمير القارة الجديدة.

.....

PART 3

Quiz on Part (2)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. Good families teach their children to treat other people with
 a) disrespect b) rudeness c) power d) respect
2. Egypt faces a lot of problems which need creative ideas to solve.
 a) modern b) complicated c) implied d) updated
3. Most of the meat of factories must be checked well.
 a) examples b) purchases c) fashions d) products
4. I usually meet most of my close in Eid El Fitr and Eid Al Adha.
 a) enemies b) relatives c) heroes d) opponents
5. One of the good uses of Facebook and Twitter is that people can their ideas with each other.
 a) share b) divide c) spill d) unite
6. Why does he always come to see me at possible time?
 a) bad b) the worst c) worse d) badly
7. That hotel is building in the town.
 a) the oldest b) older than c) the eldest d) elder
8. I didn't spend as much money as you. You spent money than me.
 a) much b) more c) many d) most
9. The meal didn't cost as much as I expected. The meal cost I expected.
 a) little b) the least c) less than d) more than
10. Karema's hair isn't as long as it used to be. Karema used to have hair.
 a) the longer b) long c) longest d) longer

6

2 Choose the correct word:

Cairo is the (1) (biggest / bigger) city in Egypt. No other city is larger (2) (from / than) it. Cairo's underground system provides transport for (3) (most / more) than 40% of the city's work force. Cairo is as famous (4) (as / than) many other cities in the world because of its monuments and places of interest. The people in Cairo are famous (5) (as / for) their generosity and bravery. The (6) (taller / tallest) building in it is the Cairo Tower.

Answers:

(1)	(2)	(3)
(4)	(5)	(6)

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1

Food is truly a central point in many cultures and all countries have their own specialty of dishes. One of the most memorable aspects of travelling is a country's food.

B) Translate into English:

2

- تختلف طرق طهي الطعام من بلد لآخر ولو أردت أن تجرب هذه الطرق فلابد أن تتمتع بحس المغامرة والا تشمئز من طعم أو رائحة طعام؛ فقد يكون الطعام المحبوب في بلد غريبًا في أخرى.

Unit (3)

Quiz on Part (1)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. We should work hard to achieve gradual and economic growth which will eventually lead to great progress.
 a) unbelievable b) movable
 c) avoidable d) sustainable
2. I was impressed by the of dishes on the restaurant's menu.
 a) mixture b) variety
 c) collaboration d) collocation
3. Many cleaning products contain that can be harmful.
 a) chemicals b) ingredients
 c) toxin d) recipes
4. is animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
 a) Livestock b) Dairy
 c) Household d) Poultry
5. Rice is a main for more than half of the world's population.
 a) product b) receipt
 c) crop d) chemical
6. The police in my country are known to be very brave and strict. They any thief easily.
 a) are arresting b) will arrest
 c) are going to arrest d) will be arresting
7. This time next week, I for the airport.
 a) have left b) will leave
 c) will be leaving d) leave
8. Before I go to China next year, I some Cantonese.
 a) am learning b) am going to learn
 c) learn d) was learning

9. This building is old. It at any time.
 a) will collapse b) is collapsing
 c) collapses d) is going to collapse
10. Salah is shooting a penalty. He a goal.
 a) is scoring b) scores
 c) is going to score d) will be scoring

2 Choose the correct answer: 6

Rainforests are very important for life on the earth. In the past they covered many (1) (areas / districts) in Asia and South America. Unfortunately, farmers began to cut them (2) (up / down) or even set fire to them to grow (3) (crops / dairy). They are thirty percent smaller than they were in the past. This is one of the main causes (4) (for / of) climate change in the world. If we lose more of these forests, we won't be able to continue (5) (sustainable / avoidable) food production. This will affect the (6) (quality / amount) of oxygen for the earth.

Answers:

(1)	(2)	(3)
(4)	(5)	(6)

3 A) Translate into Arabic: 2

One of the most important causes of climate change is cutting down forests especially rainforests. This leads to more carbon dioxide which affects the earth badly.

B) Translate into English: 2

- يعتبر البناء على الأرض الزراعية جريمة؛ لأنه يقلل مساحة الأرض المتاحة لإنتاج الغذاء، مما يحد من الإنتاج المستدام للغذاء، وهذا يدفعنا إلى طرق جديدة قد تكون مكلفة.

Quiz on Part (2)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

❶ The lady was relieved when she know that the dress is also in larger sizes.
a) readable b) acceptable c) available d) probable

❷ Police experts are still collecting at the scene of the crime.
a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

❸ These photographs are a direct with the past.
a) method b) link c) space d) travel

❹ We're looking for someone to our secretary.
a) replace b) place c) renew d) destroy

❺ Why don't we have breakfast for a change?
a) indoor b) indoors c) outdoor d) outdoors

❻ In the future, scientists and engineers hard to reduce the effects of climate change.
a) will be worked b) will be working c) will have worked d) work

❼ Don't ask Ahmed to cook the meat – he it.
a) is burning b) is going to burn c) will be burning d) will burn

❽ I'm still not feeling very well, so I think I the doctor sometime this week.
a) am going to see b) won't see c) am seeing d) see

10

❾ Hala us to organise the party at 7 tomorrow. This is arranged.
a) will be helping b) will help c) helps d) is going to help

❿ I haven't tidied my room yet, but I promise I it this afternoon.
a) do b) will do c) am going to do d) have done

6

2 Fill in the gap with the correct form of the verb:

In the near future, robots(1)..... (be performing) more and more tasks for humans. This(2)..... (have) both positive and negative effects. On the one hand, while robots(3)..... (doing) the boring and dangerous jobs, humans(4)..... (be devoting) more time to solving their problems on earth. On the other hand, the widespread use of robots(5)..... (create) a lot of future unemployment. Man should decide what he(6)..... (do) with robots.

Answers:

(1).....	(2).....	(3).....
(4).....	(5).....	(6).....

2

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Experts suggest solutions to the food problem in the future and that new and innovative plans must be prepared, so that people can eat less food, but with better nutritional value.

.....

2

B) Translate into English:

- سيتغير حتمًا شكل ومكونات الطعام في المستقبل نتيجة لوجود الطعام المحسن وراثيًا وتغير المناخ واستخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في الزراعة لإنتاج أنواع جديدة من المحاصيل.

.....

Unit (4)

Quiz on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (20)

1. I had to buy a new suit because dress is preferable at job interviews.
 a) normal b) formal c) occasional d) feast
2. Our nursery teacher didn't punish any child who did wrong severely. She just (10)
 a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced
3. Bill Gates, the designer of Windows computer systems, is really a great
 a) searcher b) editor c) explorer d) innovator
4. It is a good idea to talk to your students in a friendly
 a) sound b) tone c) intention d) note
5. The website hasn't even given us the most information about our research topic.
 a) minor b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic
6. It was supposed to be a secret. You have told her.
 a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) could
7. Why did you not help Ahmed? You have given him a hand!
 a) could b) must c) shouldn't d) can't
8. The meat is a bit burnt. You have cooked it for so long.
 a) can't b) should c) shouldn't d) couldn't

9. Soha's late. She have forgotten about the meeting.
 a) should b) can't c) couldn't d) could
10. I thought I saw Yousif in town, but I have been wrong.
 a) should b) could c) shouldn't d) couldn't

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word: (6)

(sites – abbreviations – video – away – keep – messaging)

Smartphones have become an important part of children's life. They use them to (1) in touch with their friends. They are now used to (2) and its new language. They are even familiar with emojis, ... (3) and images. They also use them to play their favourite (4) games. They can use many (5) such as YouTube and Facebook easily. However we should watch them carefully as they can be harmed easily through harmful sites. Experts say that we shouldn't take smartphones (6) from them. We should teach them how to use them wisely, instead.

Answers:

(1)	(2)	(3)
(4)	(5)	(6)

3 A) Translate into Arabic: (2)

Using emojis, abbreviations and acronyms have become essential for messaging and chats. Young people say that this is a part of the fast life we live.

.....

B) Translate into English: (2)

- الهواتف الذكية من أهم الاختراعات التى أثرت كثيرًا فى حياة الناس وخاصة الشباب الذين يعتبرون استخدامه جزءًا هامًا فى حياتهم. لكنها تبعدهم عن ممارسة الهوايات ومقابلة الأصدقاء والأقارب.

.....

Quiz on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The actor was really angry at the rude _____ on his post.
 a) contents b) images c) comments d) symbols
2. The _____ of the story we studied last year was "Treasure Island".
 a) address b) title c) speech d) text
3. The mobile has become the easiest way to _____ in touch with other people.
 a) leave b) keep c) keep d) move
4. Facebook is the most widely used social _____ website in the world.
 a) service b) media c) status d) work
5. The computer company is doing an extensive _____ on their new software.
 a) inspection b) search c) survey d) estimation
6. Where's Ahmed's camera? He _____ have taken it with him.
 a) ought to b) can't c) should d) could
7. The plan _____ wrong, but in fact it was a great success.
 a) should have gone b) must have gone c) could have gone d) can't be
8. You _____ have met my brother. I haven't got one!
 a) shouldn't b) must c) couldn't d) should
9. I've done the washing up for you. - Oh, you really _____ have!
 a) should b) can't c) shouldn't d) may

10. She _____ have gone to the party with her friends, but she didn't.
 a) must b) could c) can't d) couldn't

2 Choose the correct word:

Doaa went for a day trip to Luxor last Saturday. She went by bus, but she (1) (could / couldn't) have gone by train. Although it was sunny in Cairo, it was raining there, so she (2) (shouldn't / should) have brought her umbrella. She wouldn't let the bad weather spoil her day. She (3) (visited / visit) lots of places of interest, museums and (4) (has / had) a lovely lunch in a nice restaurant. By the evening, she was really tired as she had been (5) (walked / walking) all day. When she returned back to Cairo, she told her friends what she (6) (could / shouldn't) do in Luxor.

Answers:

1) _____	2) _____	3) _____
4) _____	5) _____	6) _____

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Any language may change for many reasons. Maybe, it is because its speakers need this change. New technologies may require new words to refer to them clearly and efficiently.

B) Translate into English:

إن اللغة تتغير دوماً ولكثير من الأسباب. ولعلها تتغير بسبب التكنولوجيا والتي هي من أجل ذلك تحتاج إلى كلمات جديدة للإشارة إليها بوضوح وكفاءة. هل كانت كلمة إيميل وسيلفي مستخدمة من قبل؟

Unit (5)

Quiz on Part (1)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. My grandfather was a very _____ and honest man who would never betray anyone.
 a) doubtful b) distant
 c) reliable d) disorganised
2. The new engine can _____ reduce the amount of petrol used by cars.
 a) affectingly b) effectively
 c) terribly d) excitedly
3. Due to security reasons, every shop should _____ security cameras.
 a) break b) smash
 c) attach d) install
4. The rich man began _____ antiquities many years ago.
 a) cutting b) dragging
 c) collecting d) detecting
5. King Lear is the main _____ of the play we study this year.
 a) role b) character
 c) part d) servant
6. Although the ticket may _____ to be expensive, it is good value for money.
 a) mean b) be supposed
 c) seem d) be meant
7. Strange as it may _____, my father has never been to Cairo.
 a) seem b) be supposed
 c) mean d) suppose
8. A calculator _____ to help you do mathematical calculations quickly.
 a) supposed b) seems
 c) means d) is meant
9. The exam _____ to start at 10.00 sharp but the teacher was late.
 a) is supposed b) was supposed
 c) is seemed d) is meant

10. You _____ to listen during the lecture, not talk.
 a) seem b) mean
 c) are supposed d) suppose

2 Choose the correct answer : 6

Social media have their advantages and disadvantages. People can use them to stay (1) (connected / attacked) to their friends and relatives. They can also help people (2) (divide / share) their ideas and opinions with others. However, a lot of people have misused them. So, you must be (3) (careful / careless) when you use them. Don't believe all the information (4) (printed / posted) on them. You shouldn't share your (5) (public / personal) details with anyone you don't know. You should also update your privacy settings (6) (gradually / regularly).

Answers:

(1).....	(2).....	(3).....
(4).....	(5).....	(6).....

3 A) Translate into Arabic: 2

You need to be smart online. Keep a sharp eye out for threats like hackers and keep your personal information secure, and you'll have a safe internet experience.

.....

B) Translate into English: 1

- اضطرت الحكومة لإصدار قانون لمعاقبة كل من ينشر معلومات أو إشاعات غير صحيحة على الإنترنت أو مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي؛ وكان ذلك نتيجة لإساءة استخدام بعض الناس لهذه المواقع.

.....

Quiz on Part (2)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. The government is doing great efforts to help people who are _____ to drugs.
 a) addicted b) attained
 c) attacked d) applied
2. Winning the Premier League can be Mohamed Salah's in his career so far.
 a) headlight b) light
 c) highlight d) favour
3. The film _____ the way some greedy employers treat their employees.
 a) punished b) criticised
 c) rewarded d) praised
4. It can take a year to _____ a new vaccine for COVID-19.
 a) install b) reform
 c) develop d) treat
5. The _____ we had at the trip was vey affecting as we lost one of our friends.
 a) reward b) experience
 c) award d) cure
6. Although it _____ strange, I have never drunk coffee!
 a) means b) seems
 c) supposed d) is supposed
7. You aren't supposed to smoke in here. It means that it is not
 a) predicted b) necessary
 c) advisable d) allowed
8. ATM's _____ to let a bank's customers withdraw cash when they need it.
 a) meant b) seem
 c) are meant d) supposed
9. It to rain today as the weather forecast said it would be sunny.
 a) wasn't supposed b) was supposed
 c) was meant d) seemed

10. I didn't want to annoy him. I only _____ to make him forget about his sadness.
 a) seemed b) meant
 c) supposed d) seem

6

2 Choose the correct word:

There (1) (mean / seem) to be many good reasons why we should exercise. Sports are (2) (supposed / seemed) to be great for our health. Playing sports, running and swimming is (3) (supposed / supposing) to help us build strong bones and muscles. Exercise (4) (seems / is meant) to enable us to have much confidence in ourselves. A healthy person (5) (is / isn't) supposed to follow the rules of hygiene and sanitation and (6) (is / isn't) supposed to perform bad habits.

Answers:

(1).....	(2).....	(3).....
(4).....	(5).....	(6).....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

2

Some Facebook users use it to deceive other people. They put untrue and deceitful information in their profiles and trick people to steal their money or blackmail them.

.....

B) Translate into English:

2

- ينبغي على الإنسان أن يكون ذكيًا عند استخدام الإنترنت حتى يكون آمنًا. الوعي هو المفتاح. وعليه أن يتذكر دائمًا أن الإنترنت لا ينسى أبدًا.

.....

Unit (6)

Quiz on Part (1)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

❶ We all felt when we couldn't buy tickets for the final match.
a) appointed b) disappointed
c) acquainted d) imparted

❷ My parents are still my younger brother as a child although he is 18 years old.
a) treating b) curing
c) healing d) affecting

❸ Mona really wasting her time on that film; it was very boring.
a) pleases b) affects
c) regrets d) rejoices

❹ The longest running in the Olympics is the " Marathon".
a) match b) path
c) race d) passage

❺ The new student in our class is; he refuses to lend anything to us.
a) main b) generous
c) benevolent d) mean

❻ it doesn't rain tomorrow, we will go out for a walk.
a) If b) Unless
c) In case of d) Should

❼ If she plans things properly, she never into a mess.
a) got b) will get
c) would get d) gets

❽ If you saw her, ... her to call me?
a) tell b) you would tell
c) would you tell d) will you tell

❾ We wouldn't have taken the train if we the tickets.
a) had booked b) hadn't booked
c) booked d) didn't book

❿ What if you are in trouble?
a) do you do b) you will do
c) you would do d) did you do

6

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:
(treats – carol – dream – alone – employees – mean)

Charles Dickens' novel "A Christmas(1)....." is a novel about society. It raises the question about how characters can change. It tells the story of a rich man who is very(2)..... He doesn't give any presents to anyone. He(3)..... his factory(4)..... very badly. He doesn't even pay for a good fire although it is very cold. One day he had a bad(5)..... when he woke up, he felt(6)..... at Christmas. That's why he changes his opinion about money and starts to treat people kindly.

Answers:

(1).....	(2).....	(3).....
(4).....	(5).....	(6).....

3 A) Translate into Arabic: 2

If everyone focuses on their mistakes and accepts them, then they can get rid of them quickly, unlike the person who insists on his mistakes, and does not admit them.

.....

B) Translate into English: 2

- تمثل العائلة اساسا كبيرا في الشعور بالسعادة في الحياة؛ حيث توفر لك الدعم المعنوي المناسب للنجاح في الحياة، كما انها تشعرك بالأمان عندما يتخلى عنك الآخرون.

.....

Quiz on Part (2)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. Publishing the report about the murder brought sad memories to the relatives of the victim.
 a) about b) in c) back d) for
2. My cousin usually argue with his father out with his friends for a long time.
 a) changing b) hanging c) returning d) moving
3. The on the picture about the accident made us very angry.
 a) caption b) title c) subtitle d) address
4. My grandfather is 70 years old, but he still has a strong
 a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory
5. up a phone while talking to your friend can leave a bad impression on him.
 a) Holding b) Raising c) Moving d) Picking
6. Supposing you saved a lot of money, what?
 a) you'd do b) would you do c) will you do d) would you have done
7. We'll spend the day in the countryside. that the weather is good.
 a) Should b) Were c) Providing d) Whether
8. Ahmed to travel abroad, he would take his family with him.
 a) Were b) Providing that c) Should d) If
9. his carelessness, he wouldn't have been punished.
 a) In case of b) If c) If it weren't for d) Without
10. low blood pressure, consult your doctor immediately.
 a) Provided that b) In case of c) If it hadn't been for d) But for

6

2 Fill in the gap with the correct forms of the verb:

It's been two weeks since I started living in my new house. I honestly thought I(1)..... (enjoy) the quiet life of the village. The problem is that it's just so quiet here. If there(2)..... (be) more people of my age, I wouldn't feel so lonely. If my family(3)..... (moved) here, I wouldn't really have missed my friends in my old neighbourhood. Unless my dad had taken his new job; we(4)..... (wouldn't need) to move at all. I wish I(5)..... (adapt) to living here. If I forget my old days, I'm sure I(6)..... I (be) happier.

Answers:

(1).....	(2).....	(3).....
(4).....	(5).....	(6).....

2

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Many young people believe that money can bring us happiness. They forget the fact that many of the important things that make you happy such as love and success can't be bought with money.

.....

B) Translate into English: 2

- إن ارتكاب الأخطاء يختلف عن الفشل، لكنه يؤدى إلى الفشل، فيجب على الشخص تقبل الأخطاء وإصلاحها، والتعلم منها حتى ولو كان صعبًا على نفسه.

.....

Part 4



Important General Grammar

Important General Grammar

مراجعة بعض القواعد التى لم تدرس هذا العام

Tenses الأزمنة

1 The Present Simple المضارع البسيط

The Present Simple

- Form: I/They/We/You + Inf.
 Childrenlike ice cream.
- Form: He/She/It + Inf. + s/es/ies
 Halalikes ice cream.
- Negative: don't/doesn't + Inf.
 Wedon't/He doesn't play golf.

للحقائق العامة وقوانين الطبيعة.
Waterboils at 100°C.

للأحداث المتكررة والروتين اليومى.
Alicatches the bus to work.

المواقف الحقيقية لمدة طويلة.
Helives in Assuit.

- يستخدم مع تعبيرات زمنية تعبر عن حدوث الفعل لمدة طويلة فى المضارع.

usually, often, always, sometimes, never, ever, rarely, seldom, frequently, generally, every day/week/month/year, in the morning/afternoon/evening, at night, on Fridays

- I visit my relativeson Mondays .
- Shesometimes visits her relatives.

- تستخدم الكلمات الدالة قبل أى فعل أساسى وبعد v. to be

- Healways comes late.
- Heis always late.

Other uses استخدامات أخرى

بعد بعض الروابط الزمنية ليشير إلى المستقبل.
After hecomes , I'll tell him the news.

مع الجداول المحددة ليشير إلى المستقبل.
The planearrives at 8:30 tomorrow.

PART 4

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The earth _____ around the sun.
 a) went b) has gone c) go d) goes
2. Adel usually _____ his relatives on Fridays.
 a) visits b) is visiting c) visited d) has visited
3. Amr _____ to work by train every day.
 a) travelled b) is travelling c) travels d) will travel
4. After my father _____ his work, he will take us to the club.
 a) finishes b) had finished c) is finishing d) finish
5. Omar never smokes. That is why he _____ fit.
 a) always is b) always c) always does d) is always
6. It _____ rain in Egypt. It is usually hot and sunny.
 a) is often b) doesn't often c) has often d) won't often
7. Ask Ahmed to get me a packet of tea when he _____ by the grocer's.
 a) pass b) passed c) passes d) passing
8. When _____ from England tomorrow, I'll visit her.
 a) does she come b) she came c) did she come d) she comes
9. We _____ football in the streets. We play in the club.
 a) never play b) play never c) are never played d) doesn't play
10. According to the timetable, the train _____ at 9 a.m.
 a) arrived b) arrives c) will arrive d) is arriving

2 The Present Continuous المضارع المستمر

The Present Continuous

- Form: I am/ He - She - It + is + v.ing — I'm/ He is watching TV now.
- Form: They/We/You + are + v.ing — They're watching TV now.
- Negative: am/is/are + not + v.ing — Ahmed isn't sleeping now.

للأحداث التى تحدث لحظة الكلام.
Noha is washing the dishes.

للأحداث التى تحدث حول لحظة الكلام.
Ali is looking for a job these days.

للأحداث التى تم ترتيبها فى المستقبل.
We're travelling tomorrow.

- يستخدم مع التعبيرات الزمنية التى تعبر عن حدوث الفعل وقت الكلام.

Now, at the moment, these days, at present, still, nowadays, Look!, Listen!

- Look! A car is coming towards us.
- I'm trying to improve my English these days.

Important Notes

- الأفعال الآتية لا تأتى مع صيغة المضارع المستمر لأنها أفعال غير حركية stative verbs.

believe يعتقد - belong يخص - like يحب - own يملك - want يريد - seem يبدو - mean يقصد - hate يكره - know يعرف - love يحب - need يحتاج - prefer يفضل - understand يفهم - surprise يندهش.

- He believes that English is interesting.
- Ahmed owns two flats and has two cars.

- يمكن استخدام always مع المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المضايقة أو أن الفعل يتكرر كثيرًا.

- My brother is always coming late and my father is always shouting at him.

PART 4

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mariam is busy at the moment. She her hair.
 a) wash b) washes c) is washing d) has washed
2. Look! How fast that lorry!
 a) go b) went c) goes d) is going
3. Maya tennis at the moment. She is practising for a competition.
 a) plays b) is playing c) will play d) has played
4. We a card for my brother. Do you want to help?
 a) are making b) make c) have made d) made
5. My sister enjoys working with children. At the moment, she to be a primary school teacher.
 a) is training b) trains c) trained d) has trained
6. I bought my new camera last week. I a photo of you now.
 a) take b) 'm taking c) took d) had taken
7. At the moment we a history project at school. It is very interesting.
 a) do b) did c) are doing d) doing
8. We usually go abroad every year, but this year we at home.
 a) stay b) staying c) stays d) are staying
9. **A:** Where's Nada? **B:** She in a tennis match.
 a) played b) is playing c) has played d) plays
10. Everything is arranged for my travel next Saturday. It means I next Saturday.
 a) travel b) will travel c) am travelling d) was travelling

3 The Past Simple

الماضى البسيط

The Past Simple

- Form: التصريف الثانى + كل الضمائر — We built the High Dam.
- Negative: didn't + Inf. — We didn't play golf yesterday.
- استخدام was/were بدون فعل اخر — Osama wasn't ill yesterday.
- اى حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى. — Baird invented the TV.
- اى حدث ماض مع كلمة دالة عليه. — Ali visited me yesterday.
- عادات الماضى. — He lived in Assuit when he was young.

- يستخدم مع تعبيرات زمنية تعبر عن تمام حدوث الفعل فى الماضى.

yesterday, last night/week/month/year/Friday/two days/weeks/months ago, then, when, How long ago?, in 1900/2000/2019, the other day,

- He graduated in 1991.
- How long ago did she leave her work?

Other uses استخدامات اخرى

- يستخدم مع نفس كلمات المضارع البسيط ولكن مع كلمة دالة على الماضى.

- He always came to school late when he was young. = He was always late.
- When he was a child, he usually/never walked to school.

Used to

- didn't + use to + Inf. — I didn't use to be fat.
- تعبر عن عادات الماضى ولا تستخدم مع حدث قصير. — People used to travel on camels in the past.
- Osama used to smoke. = Osama no longer smokes.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last Saturday we _____ to visit our uncle in the countryside.
 a) went b) were going c) go d) have gone
2. We _____ a very good time on the beach two days ago.
 a) were having b) had c) have had d) having
3. **A:** When did they _____ married? **B:** 15 years ago.
 a) got b) have got c) getting d) get
4. I wasn't hungry so I _____ anything.
 a) was eating b) ate c) didn't eat d) haven't eaten
5. **A:** _____ you speak to Mr. Sayed? **B:** Yes, I phoned him.
 a) Did b) Have c) Were d) Had
6. My uncle _____ in hospital last month.
 a) is b) has been c) was d) was being
7. Ali always _____ to work when he was young.
 a) walks b) walked c) is walking d) was walking
8. When I was eight, I _____ a programme about a famous Egyptian doctor on TV.
 a) was seeing b) have seen c) am seeing d) saw
9. My father works in a bank in the city centre. He _____ there 15 years ago.
 a) started b) starts c) is starting d) was starting
10. The bus was terribly slow so it _____ us four hours to get home.
 a) takes b) took c) is talking d) was taking

4 The Past Continuous الماضى المستمر

The Past Continuous

للأحداث التى استمرت لفترة فى الماضى.
It was raining all day yesterday.

عند تحديد وقت معين فى الماضى.
He was sleeping at 10 yesterday.

لحدثين كان أحدهما مستمرًا وقطعه آخر.
As she was cleaning the room, she found the ring.

- **Form** (+): I - He - She - It + was + v.ing — I/He was watching TV then.
- **Form** (+): They/We/You + were + v.ing — We were driving at 7 yesterday.
- **Negative**: was/were + not + v.ing — It wasn't raining at 7 yesterday.

- يستخدم مع التعبيرات والروابط الزمنية الآتية:

While/ As/ Just as/ When/ All ... day/ night

While / When / As/Just as + **Past continuous** ماضى مستمر → **Past simple** ماضى بسيط

Past simple ماضى بسيط ← **while / when / as/just as** → **Past continuous** ماضى مستمر

- While he was walking in the street, he met his old friends.

Important Notes

- الأفعال الآتية لا تأتى مع صيغة الماضى المستمر لأنها أفعال غير حركية stative verbs
be يكون - believe يعتقد - belong يخص - like يحب - own يملك - want يريد - seem يبدو - mean يقصد - hate يكره - know يعرف - love يحب - need يحتاج - prefer يفضل - understand يفهم - surprise, etc.

- While I was ill, I took much medicine.
- As I was driving, I was phoning Ahmed.

- يمكن استخدام الحدثين مستمرين.

- يمكن استخدام v.ing بعد While إذا لم يوجد فاعل.

- While driving, I saw an accident.

- بعد during نستخدم الاسم وليس v.ing

- During the match, the light went out.

PART 4

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona _____ a beautiful dream when the alarm clock rang.
 a) is having b) having
 c) was having d) had
2. The train _____ when we arrived at the station.
 a) was waiting b) waited
 c) had waited d) waiting
3. When he was carrying a suitcase, he _____ it on his foot.
 a) was dropping b) dropped
 c) has dropped d) drops
4. While I was doing the homework, my mother _____ our dinner.
 a) prepare b) prepared
 c) will prepare d) was preparing
5. We _____ dinner when you phoned, so we couldn't answer the phone.
 a) were having b) had had
 c) was having d) have
6. I _____ my homework when the phone rang.
 a) did b) does
 c) was doing d) am doing
7. I _____ my lesson at 6 p.m. yesterday.
 a) reading b) was reading
 c) have read d) reads
8. While we _____ in Alexandria, we enjoyed ourselves a lot.
 a) are b) were being
 c) be d) were
9. _____ the flight, a passenger threatened to hijack the plane.
 a) While b) During
 c) In d) For
10. While _____ the tree, I fell down.
 a) climb b) climbed
 c) climbing d) was climbing

5 The Present Perfect

المضارع التام

حدث بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا ولكن مع stative verbs وwork/learn/study
I have known Omar since 2001.

عند ذكر العدد وعدم ذكر متى حدث الفعل.
I have visited 4 European countries.

حدث غير محدد تم قبل وقت الكلام
Ali has written 3 reports lately.

Form: have/has + P.P.
The train has just stopped.

عند الحديث عن خبرات الشخص.
My brother has qualified in medicine.

Negative: haven't/hasn't + P.P.
He hasn't come back yet.

حدث تم وانتهى ولكن له اثر واضح فى الحاضر.
There is glass. Omar has broken the window.



just | already | ever | never | since | for | recently | lately | so far | over the time | up till now

already	She has already fed the baby.
just	I have just come back from my holiday.
ever	This is the most expensive car I've ever bought.
never	They have never visited Luxor.
yet	I haven't finished breakfast yet. Has your course started yet?
so far/up till now	What have you done so far?
lately/recently	Have you bought any shirts recently/lately?
over	Egypt has changed over the last 5 years.
How long	How long has he had this car?
for	I haven't seen Mohammed for five years.
since	She hasn't visited us since October.

For & Since

For
- a day/a month/a year
- weeks/months/years
- several days/weeks/years
- 2 hours
- ages
- a long time
- the last week/year
- a/an مع كل ما انتهى بـ s او ندا for تاتى

Since
- + ماضى بسيط he left school.
- Friday/Monday الايام
- June/April الشهور
- 2000 السنوات
- 2 o'clock الساعات
- + عبارة اسمية his childhood
- last week/last year
- then منذ ذلك الحين (يدل ماضى بسيط)

Have been (to)/ Have gone (to)

have been to — ذهب الى مكان وعاد منه
- He has been to Cairo.
- Ahmed, where have you been?

have gone to — ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد أو فى الطريق إلى هناك
- They have gone to school.
- Where has Omar gone? I can't find him.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look! What you _____! How can we clean the floor now?
 a) will do b) has done c) have done d) had done
2. **A:** Where is Mai? **B:** She _____ to the shops. She will be back soon.
 a) has gone b) has been c) goes d) is going
3. My brother has _____ joined the football club.
 a) ever b) just c) yet d) since
4. I _____ a break since this morning.
 a) haven't b) had c) am not having d) haven't had
5. I don't need to wash my car. My brother _____ it for me already.
 a) had washed b) is washing c) has washed d) washes
6. She hasn't written to me _____ she travelled.
 a) yet b) ever c) for d) since
7. I _____ to be a doctor since I was ten.
 a) have wanted b) wanted c) wanting d) was wanting
8. I _____ in Cairo for ten years. I'm still living.
 a) have lived b) lived c) had lived d) living
9. Many people have studied it since it _____ in the 1980s.
 a) has written b) was written c) wrote d) writing
10. This is the best book I _____.
 a) have never read b) was reading c) have ever read d) am reading

6 The Past Perfect الماضى التام



1 After / As soon as + Past perfect (ماضى تام) , Past simple (ماضى بسيط)

2 Before / By the time + Past simple (ماضى بسيط) , Past perfect (ماضى تام)

- After I had saved enough money, I bought the car.
- Before I bought the car, I had saved enough money.

3 didn't + inf. (ماضى بسيط منفى) till/until had + P.P. (ماضى تام)

- My son didn't cross the street until he had looked both ways.
- I wasn't happy until I had passed my exams.
- He wasn't given the job until the boss had signed his application form.

4 After / Before + N./v.ing , (ماضى بسيط / ماضى تام)

- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد After أو Before نستخدم v.ing

- After finishing his work, he helped me.
= After he had finished his work, helped me.
- Before helping me, he had finished his work.
= Before he helped me he had finished his work.

5 No sooner / Hardly / Scarcely + had + subject + P.P. (لم يكد حتى) + than / when / when + Past simple (ماضى بسيط)

- No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات فى أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة وإذا لم تأت فى أول الكلام يكون الآتى:

had + الفاعل / no sooner / hardly / scarcely + P.P. + than / when / when + Past simple (ماضى بسيط)

- Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported the police.

6 On + (v-ing) = When + (clause)
- On seeing the thief, he ran away. = When he saw the thief, he ran away.

7 By + فترة فى الماضى + Past perfect ماضى تام
- By yesterday بحلول أمس he had reached Paris.

8 Having + P.P. = After + Past perfect
- Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit.
= After I had booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ordered our food after we _____ at the restaurant.
 a) sitting b) had sat c) sit d) were sitting
2. As soon as I _____ a story, I started the next one.
 a) 'd finished b) finish c) have finished d) was finishing
3. We got very wet because we _____ to take our umbrellas.
 a) forgotten b) forget c) had forgotten d) have forgotten
4. What did you do after _____ school yesterday?
 a) had left b) left c) leave d) leaving
5. When I _____ the station, the train left. I caught it.
 a) have reached b) had reached c) reach d) was reaching
6. No sooner had my brother joined the army _____ he had his hair cut.
 a) than b) when c) that d) then
7. Having _____ his ankle, he gave up playing football.
 a) had broken b) break c) broke d) broken
8. As soon as I _____ a space, I parked my car.
 a) was finding b) find c) had found d) have found
9. I _____ in the essay until I had completed it.
 a) have handed b) didn't hand c) handed d) had handed
10. When I reached home, father wasn't there. He _____ out.
 a) had gone b) went c) goes d) has gone

7 Question Tags

السؤال المذيل

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يكون آخر الجملة المذيلة لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم عمل هذا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فقط ويعقد الضمير العائد على الاسم.
- إذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفي والعكس صحيح.
- يستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
- لابد أن يكون السؤال المذيل مختصر.

Positive statement +	negative question tags —	Positive statement —	negative question tags +
You are a student ,	aren't you?	Hala is not a nurse ,	is she?

+ Sentence		— Tag
Ali is Egyptian	,	isn't he?
You study hard	,	don't you?
He lives in Cairo	,	doesn't he?
You were at home	,	weren't you?
Ola visited her uncle	,	didn't she?
Omar was watching TV	,	wasn't he?
You have seen my bag	,	haven't you?
You have a new car	,	don't you?
She's finished the report	,	hasn't she?
She has blond hair	,	doesn't she?
He'd finished by 6 p.m.	,	hadn't he?
He'd rather leave now	,	wouldn't he?
He'd better find a job	,	hadn't he?
They'll help us	,	won't they?
He can ride a horse	,	can't he?
We need more money	,	don't we?
He used to get up early	,	didn't he?
I think he is a thief	,	isn't he?
I'm right	,	aren't I?

— Sentence		+ Tag
John isn't Egyptian	,	is he?
You don't study hard	,	do you?
He doesn't live in Cairo	,	does he?
You weren't at home	,	were you?
Ola didn't visit her uncle	,	did she?
Omar wasn't watching TV	,	was he?
You haven't seen my bag	,	have you?
You don't have a new car	,	do you?
She hasn't finished yet	,	has she?
She doesn't have a car	,	does she?
He hadn't come by 6 pm	,	had he?
He'd rather not come	,	would he?
He'd better not go now	,	had he?
They won't help us	,	will they?
He can't ride a horse	,	can he?
We needn't more money	,	need we?
He didn't use to help us	,	did he?
I don't think he is a thief	,	is he?
I'm not mistaken	,	am I?

حالات خاصة

Let's go out اقتراح	,	shall/shan't we?	Let us go out طلب	,	will/won't you?
Interesting	,	isn't it?	Beautiful	,	isn't she?
This/That is Ahmed's car	,	isn't it?	These are Ali's pens	,	aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	,	isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	,	aren't there?
Stop talking	,	will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly	,	will you?

ملاحظات

- الجملة التى تحتوى على no – few – little – neither – nor – seldom – rarely – hardly – never
 - تعتبر جملا منفية، لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتا.

▸ He can hardly run, can he?

▸ He rarely visits you, does he?

- إذا كان الفاعل Everything - Something - Nothing يكون الضمير it.

▸ Nothing can live without energy, can it?

- إذا كان الفاعل Everyone, body - Someone, body - No one, body يكون الضمير they

▸ Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They're leaving soon, ...?
 a) aren't they b) don't they
 c) are they d) they aren't
2. She likes classical music, ...?
 a) isn't she b) did she
 c) does she d) doesn't she
3. He has been to Paris, ...?
 a) doesn't he b) hasn't he
 c) has he d) haven't they
4. She used to like it here, ...?
 a) used she b) wasn't she
 c) didn't she d) wasn't it
5. They had a party last night, ...?
 a) hadn't they b) weren't they
 c) do they d) didn't they
6. I'm shorter than her, ...?
 a) am I b) aren't I
 c) have I d) don't I
7. There is some coffee for me, ...?
 a) isn't there b) isn't it
 c) aren't they d) is there
8. Don't leave the door open, ...?
 a) won't you b) do you
 c) will you d) are you
9. Let's consult a specialist, ...?
 a) don't we b) do we
 c) shall we d) aren't we
10. Everyone has a mobile phone these days, ...?
 a) don't they b) haven't they
 c) does he d) hasn't he

17 Few students knew the answer, _____?
a) didn't they b) don't they
c) do they d) did they

18 Life _____ different in a hundred years' time, won't it?
a) will not be b) would be
c) will not d) will be

19 We can go out now; the danger is over, _____?
a) is it b) isn't it
c) hasn't it d) isn't he

20 It's been a long time since you've seen him, _____?
a) haven't you b) isn't it
c) hasn't it d) is it

21 You've never had a Mercedes before, _____ you?
a) have b) haven't
c) had d) hadn't

22 You hardly ever panic, _____ you?
a) aren't b) have
c) do d) don't

23 There is little we can do about it, _____?
a) isn't it b) is there
c) isn't there d) aren't they

24 You have no money to lend me, _____ you?
a) can't b) haven't
c) do d) don't

25 You'd never say such a thing behind my back, _____ you?
a) did b) would
c) should d) had

26 You do have sugar in your coffee, _____ you?
a) haven't b) aren't
c) isn't d) don't

8 Participle clauses عبارات اسم الفاعل

Participle clauses are groups of words which begin with a verb in the -ing form. These clauses can come before or after the main part of a sentence.
- عبارات اسم الفاعل هى مجموعة من الكلمات التى تبدأ بـ ing. وهذه العبارات تأتى قبل أو بعد الجملة الرئيسية.

Usage الاستخدام

1. Use participle clauses instead of clauses starting with as or when:
تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل لاستبدال الجمل التى بها When/As/While/After وبعدهم فاعل وفعل.

- As Sara was walking to town yesterday, she saw two of her friends.
- Walking to town yesterday, Sara saw two of her school friends.
- When they arrived home late, they found that the door was locked.
- Arriving home late, they found that the door was locked.

2. Participle clauses can also be used instead of clauses starting with and.
تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلاً من الجمل التى تبدأ بـ and.

- The bird flew away and made a very loud noise.
- The bird flew away, making a very loud noise.

3.The subject of the participle clause must be the same as the subject of the main clause:
فاعل عبارة اسم الفاعل يجب أن يكون هو نفس الفاعل للجملة الرئيسية.

- I heard the phone ring and I picked it up.
- Hearing the phone ring, I picked it up.
- The car crashed into a garden and knocked down a tree.
- The car crashed into a garden, knocking down a tree.

4. To replace a clause of reason (because, as, since + subject + verb).
تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلاً من جمل السببية (because, as, since).

- Because I felt extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.
- Feeling extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.

5. To replace a relative clause in the active voice.
لاستبدال عبارة موصولة فى المبنى للمعلوم.

- The boy who is talking to Jim is my brother.
- The boy talking to Jim is my brother.

6. To form the negative of participles, we add not before the participles.
لصياغة النفى من اسم الفاعل أو اسم المفعول به فإننا نضيف not قبلهما.

- Not wanting to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop.

7. After the verbs of sensation see, hear, feel, smell, listen, watch and notice.
بعد أفعال الشعور والإحساس السابقة لتعبر عن رؤية أو سماع جزء من الحدث وعند سماع أو رؤية الحدث كاملاً تستخدم المصدر.

- I saw my neighbours leaving the house early this morning.

8. After the verbs: catch, find, leave, go, come, spend time, waste the time and be busy.

- **He was** busy painting **the room.**
- **They** wasted **the time** playing **cards.**
- **I** left **my children** doing **their homework.**

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We broke the computer _____ to my father.
 a) belonged **b)** belongs **c)** which belonging **d)** belonging
2. _____ for her gloves, she dug through the entire wardrobe.
 a) Search **b)** Searched **c)** Searching **d)** Being searched
3. _____ in the street, the police considered it a sign for the thieves to enter the shop.
 a) Whistling **b)** Whistle **c)** To whistle **d)** Whistled
4. _____ in the shade, we ate cake and drank coffee.
 a) To sit **b)** Sitting **c)** Sat **d)** Sit
5. People _____ late will not be allowed to enter.
 a) arrived **b)** arrive **c)** to arrive **d)** arriving
6. The child sat at the desk _____ a picture.
 a) painting **b)** paint **c)** painted **d)** paints
7. _____ to the bus stop, she lost her shoe.
 a) Run **b)** To run **c)** Running **d)** Ran
8. _____ on the beach, we watched many people swimming in the sea.
 a) Lied **b)** Lying **c)** Lie **d)** To lie
9. _____ on their beds, the children couldn't do their homework.
 a) To sit **b)** Sat **c)** Sit **d)** Sitting
10. The man _____ a blue jumper is in the garden.
 a) wore **b)** wearing **c)** to wear **d)** wear
11. _____ enough courage, they couldn't walk during the night.
 a) Had had **b)** Had **c)** Having **d)** Not having
12. _____ to travel abroad, my brother bought a lot of his belongings.
 a) Not wanting **b)** Wanted **c)** Wanting **d)** Being wanted
13. _____ to meet his friend, the boy didn't go to school.
 a) Wanting **b)** To want **c)** Wanted **d)** Not wanting
14. _____ your room, Amira.
 a) Cleaning **b)** Cleaned **c)** To clean **d)** Clean
15. _____ my brother in trouble, I offered to help him solve his problem.
 a) To find **b)** Finding **c)** Found **d)** Find

9 Linking words (Conjunctions) أدوات الربط

1 Cause أدوات ربط السبب

Because / As / Since / For	+	subject فاعل	+	verb فعل	Because of / On account of / As a result of / Owing to / Due to / Thanks to / Through يتبعها اسم	+	noun / adj.+ noun / (v + ing)

- Because (As/Since) he is clever, he always comes first.
- Because of his cleverness (being clever), he always comes first.

Being لكونه/لكونها + adj.

- Being polite, his teachers respect and love him.

لاحظ

(because of/due to the fact that + جملة)

- Because of the fact that **he made mistakes**, he was punished.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was _____ his stupidity that we got into trouble.
 a) as b) because c) because of d) as a result
2. He found it difficult to work in China _____ he could not understand Chinese.
 a) because of b) because c) due to d) so
3. Ramy didn't play _____ his illness.
 a) because b) as c) for d) owing to
4. She was very unhappy _____ she missed her children.
 a) for b) owing to c) due to d) because of
5. _____ the bad weather, we cancelled the trip.
 a) As b) Because c) Due to d) Owing
6. _____ I was having a nice time, I decided to stay longer.
 a) Although b) Because of c) Due to d) As
7. She couldn't walk _____ she had broken her leg.
 a) so b) because c) owing to d) despite
8. She passed the test _____ she had a good teacher.
 a) because b) so c) in spite of d) in addition
9. Thousands of people lost their jobs _____ the recession.
 a) so b) as c) because d) because of
10. The government banned that movie _____ the public opinion was against it.
 a) despite b) owing to c) because d) so

2 Contrast

ادوات رابطة التناقض

Although / Though / Even though / Even if	+ subject	+ verb	Despite / In spite of / For all / Regardless of	+ Noun / adj.+ noun / (v + ing)

- Although (Though) he is strong, he can't carry the bag.
- Despite (In spite of) his strength (being strong), he can't carry the bag.

Subject	+ verb	, but / . However, / , however, / , yet,	subject	+ verb

ملحوظة

He is strong, but (, However, / , however) he can't carry the bag.

- يمكن استخدام although/despite في أول الجملة أو وسطها.

- Although our team played badly, they won the match.
- Our team won the match although they played badly.

لاحظ

(In spite of/Despite the fact that + جملة)

- In spite of the fact that **he ran** fast, he couldn't win the race.

However	مهما	+	adj./adv.	+	فاعل	+	فعل
Whatever	مهما	+	noun	+	فاعل	+	فعل
Adj.	كل صفة حسب معناها	+	as	+	فاعل	+	فعل

- However strong he is, he can't carry the bag.
- Strong as he is, he can't carry the bag.
- Whatever strength he has, he can't carry the bag.
- Whatever you do, I'll forgive you.

PART 4

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ he was injured, he continued to play.
 a) Despite b) However c) But d) Though
2. She did not get the job, _____ the fact that she did well in the interview.
 a) in spite b) in spite of c) despite of d) although
3. My husband did not like the movie; _____, I enjoyed it a lot.
 a) however b) despite c) in spite d) in spite of
4. _____ fast our car was, we took 5 hours to reach Assuit.
 a) Whatever b) Although c) However d) As
5. _____ mistakes he made, he wasn't punished.
 a) However b) Although c) Owing to d) Whatever
6. _____ I was invited to the party, I did not go.
 a) Because b) Although c) Besides d) If
7. He failed _____ working hard.
 a) without b) incase of c) despite d) because of
8. _____ the headache, I enjoyed the movie.
 a) Despite of b) In spite of c) However d) But for
9. He passed the test, _____, he didn't get the job.
 a) besides b) but for c) because d) however
10. She passed her exam _____ having many problems.
 a) in case of b) without c) despite d) in spite

3 Addition

أدوات ربط الإضافة

In addition to / As well as / Besides	بالإضافة إلى	+ v-ing	subject فاعل	verb فعل
In addition to / As well as / Besides		+ studying her lessons,	Mona	helped her mother.

فاعل	فعل	مفعول	as well as / in addition to / and	مفعول ثان السم
Osama	plays	football		tennis.

فاعل	+	as well as	+	فاعل ثان	+	فعل يتبع الفاعل الأول
Omar		as well as		his friends		is a doctor.

Not only but also ليس فقط ولكن ايضا

لاحظ ان الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى.

- Not only Ahmed but also his friends are going to the party.
- Not only did Manal do her homework, but also she helped her mother.

لاحظ ان الفعل يأتى فى صيغة الاستفهام.

4 Result

أدوات ربط النتيجة

Subject فاعل	+	verb فعل	therefore / so / consequently / that's why / as a result	subject فاعل	+	verb فعل

- Our team played badly, so/therefore they lost the match.
- Forests are being destroyed. As a result a lot of animals are losing their homes.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The rent has increased drastically, we've decided to change the flat.
 a) although b) because
 c) consequently d) however
2. doing her homework, she helped her mother.
 a) Not only b) As well
 c) In addition to d) In addition
3. The teachers the principal were there.
 a) as well as b) in addition
 c) as well d) but also
4. She has got not only a motorbike, ... a car.
 a) as well as b) and
 c) but d) but also
5. I've always wanted to study philosophy, ... I've decided to go back to school.
 a) as b) so
 c) because d) but
6. The cricketer played badly., he was extremely rude to a press photographer.
 a) because b) although
 c) as d) In addition
7. She has got a car a motorbike.
 a) as well b) as well as
 c) as d) in addition
8. He sustained severe injuries and, ..., spent the rest of his life in a wheel chair.
 a) consequently b) because
 c) although d) despite
9. Not only much time on the internet, but she finds time to play as well.
 a) she spends b) she does spend
 c) does she spend d) she spent
10. He visited many places of interest meeting his friends at the hotel.
 a) as well b) besides
 c) not only d) so

5 Purpose

أدوات ربط الهدف/الغرض

Subject فاعل + Verb فعل + in order to to / so as to + Inf. مصدر

- He studies hard to/so as to/in order to get high marks.

Subject فاعل + verb فعل + so that / in order that + sub. + can/will/could/would + inf.

- He studies hard so that/in order that he can get high marks.
- He studied hard so that/in order that he could get high marks.

جملة + for لأجل + Noun/v-ing.

- He went to the doctor's for a check-up.

• لاحظ أننا نستخدم for + v.ing للتعبير عن الغرض العام من الشيء وليس لعلة يفعل الشخص الشيء.

- We use a pen for writing. I use this brush for washing the dishes. Or (to wash)
 I went into the kitchen to wash the dishes. (not for washing)

• في النفي نستخدم so as not to/in order not to

- He put his keys in his briefcase in order not to lose them.

PART 4

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to his office _____ meet him
 a) so that b) because
 c) so d) in order to
2. I am planning to move house _____ be closer to my place of work.
 a) so b) so as to
 c) so that d) because of
3. I talked to the shy girl _____ she would not feel left out.
 a) in order to b) so as not to
 c) so that d) because
4. A barometer is used _____ measuring pressure.
 a) for b) to
 c) owing to d) thanks to
5. He got up early _____ miss the first bus to the factory.
 a) so as to b) so as not to
 c) so that d) to
6. I warned him _____ he would not repeat the same mistake.
 a) so as not to b) so as to
 c) to d) so that
7. I took the phone back to the store _____ a replacement.
 a) so that get b) to get
 c) to getting d) so as not to get
8. I am putting the meat in the oven now, _____ it will be ready by eight o'clock.
 a) because b) so as not to
 c) so that d) so
9. I went to Canada _____ my brother.
 a) so that see b) for seeing
 c) to see d) in order see
10. He borrowed some money from his friend so that he _____ buy a car.
 a) might b) will
 c) can d) may

10 Phrasal verbs

Verbs followed by prepositions

- able to: قادر على — He was able to climb the hill.
- ability at: القدرة على (good at - bad at - clever at - skilful at - quick at)
 She shows great ability at drawing. — He is not good at mathematics.
- absorbed in: منهمك فى (much interested in)
 Tareq is absorbed in solving the problem.
- accused of: متهم بـ — He was accused of killing his wife.
- accustomed to اعتاد على — I am accustomed to getting up early.
- afraid of: خائف من (scared of - frightened of - terrified of)
 Are you afraid of darkness? — Some people are scared of black cats.
 Maha is frightened of snakes. — Few people are terrified of thunder.
- agree with: يوافق شخصًا (a person)
 I always agree with you.
- agree about: يوافق على موضوع (a subject of discussion)
 I agreed about most things.
- agree to: (suggestion) — At last he agreed to my suggestion.
- aim at: يهدف إلى — She aims at getting high marks.
- aim at: يصوب إلى — The hunter aimed at the bird.
- alarmed at: منزعج من — Nadia is alarmed at the noise.
- angry with: (a person) غاضب من شخص:
 I am angry with him.
- angry about/for (something) — I am angry about/for his bad behaviour.
- anxious (worried) about قلق
 He is anxious about the results of his examinations.
- apologise for يعتذر عن — I apologised for my mistake.
- apply for a job: يتقدم لوظيفة — He can apply for this job.

- ask for: يطلب — Don't ask for troubles.
- arrive in : يصل الى اماكن كبيرة — What time does the plane arrive in London?
- arrive at: يصل الى اماكن صغيرة — When did you arrive at the village?
- ashamed of: خجلان من — She was ashamed of her behaviour.
- astonished at: مندهش/مصدوم
- surprised at/shocked at — I was astonished at his bad conduct.
- attach to : (join) يتصل بـ — He attached the wire to the radio.
- aware of : مدرك بـ — I was aware of what had happened.
- back up: يساند
- The members backed him up in the parliament.
- believe in يؤمن بـ — We believe in one God.
- belong to (someone) ينتمي الى — This coat does not belong to me.
- beware of : يحذر (be careful) — Beware of dogs.
- blame ... for: يلوم على
- The policeman blamed him for driving carelessly.
- blow up: ينفجر/يكبر الصورة
- He blew the photo up so it looked nicer.
- The building was blown up by the terrorists.
- boast of (about) يتفاخر — He boasted of his famous uncle.
- borrow ... from يستعير من — I borrowed this book from the library.
- bored with: يمل من شيء
- She is bored with doing the same thing every morning.
- break down: يتعطل — I need a mechanic. My car broke down.
- break down: ينهار
- She broke down when she heard the bad news.
- break into: يقتحم — The thief broke into the house.
- break off: ينهي — They broke off their engagement.
- break out: نشب الحرب/الحريق
- War broke out in 1973. — Fire broke out all night.

- bring about/happen
- Science has brought about many changes in our life.
- bring up: يربي — Bringing up children is not an easy task.
- buy for: يشتري بـ — Noha bought this dress for 200 $.
- call on (visit) يزور — We can call on Suzy tomorrow.
- call after: يسمي باسم — She was called after her mother.
- call back: يعود — The salesman will call back in the evening.
- call off: يؤجل
- The football match was called off because of the rain.
- calm down: يهدأ — Calm down and don't lose your temper.
- care about: يهتم بـ — Do you care about winning a prize?
- carry on: (continue) — We can carry on our discussion at night.
- carry out: ينفذ — Surgeons carry out operations.
- capable of: [thing] قادر على
- He is capable of doing a lot of things.
- careful of: يراعي — You should be careful of your health.
- charge with: متهم بـ — This man was charged with murder.
- check in: يفحص [report one's arrival at a hotel/an airport]
- You must check in at the airport two hours before the plane leaves.
- check out: ينهي اجراءات مغادرة الفندق — You can't leave the hotel without checking out.
- collide with: يتصادم بـ [someone/something]
- A bus collided with a train.
- come about: يحدث — How has it come about that it rains in July?
- complain to: يشكو إلى — I complained to the manager about the food.
- complain about (of): يشكو من — Mary is complaining about the noise.
- composed of: يتكون من — Water is composed of hydrogen & oxygen.
- concentrate on: يركز على — Please, concentrate on your work.

- consist of: يتكون من — The robot consists of several parts.
- congratulate on: يهنئ على — She congratulated Noha on her success.
- confidence in: ثقة فى — You should have confidence in me.
- covered with: مغطى بـ — The table is covered with dust.
- crowded with : مزدحم بـ — The cinema is crowded with people.
- crash into: (drive into — run into) يصطدم بـ
 His car crashed into the wall.
- cure of (v.): يعالج من — This medicine cured me of the cold.
- cure for + (n.) علاج لـ — Doctors didn't find cure for some diseases.
- curious to: فضولى أن — Rana was curious to know the secret.
- cut out: يفصل بالقطع — He cut out the funny picture from the magazine.
- cut off: يفصل/يقطع — The company cut off electricity last night.
- deal with: يتعامل مع — This book deals with many subjects.
- deal in: يتاجر فى — This company deals in buying and selling cars.
- depend (rely) on: يعتمد على — Children usually depend on their mothers.
- die down: يهدأ/يخمد
 Wait until her anger dies down. — The fire died down at last.
- die of: يموت من — Many people die of hunger in Somalia.
- different from: مختلف عن — She is completely different from her mother.
- difficulty in: صعوبة فى — He found great difficulty in learning Latin.
- disappointed in/with:
 My parents will be disappointed in/with me if I fail.
- disappointed about/at:
 I am disappointed at/about losing the race.
- divide into: يقسم إلى — She divided the cake into two parts.
- draw up: reach/stop — The car drew up at the station.
- dress up: put on special clothes يتخفى فى
 The clown dressed up funny clothes to make people laugh.

- dream of: يتخيل — I always dream of becoming a millionaire.
- dream about: (asleep) يحلم بـ
 I dreamt about a fire that broke out in the room.
- dressed in: — The waiter was dressed in black.
- drop in: [a short informal visit] يمر من غير ميعاد
 You can drop in for a cup of tea.
- drop off: (sleep for a short time) ينام
 My father always drops off for a few minutes in the afternoon.
- drop off: ينزل شخصا — You can drop me off at the end of the street.
- drop off: يخفض — His interest in chess has dropped off.
- drop down: يسقط — The apple dropped down from the tree.
- due to: نتيجة لـ — The accident was due to his careless driving.
- eager for: شغوف بـ — They are eager for success.
- effect on: تاثير على — Soft music has a good effect on me.
- engaged in: منهمك فى — Sami is engaged (busy) in his new job.
- envious of: غيور من — She is envious of her friend.
- exchange for: يستبدل بـ — Farmers exchange cotton for wheat.
- exception to: مستثنى من — What he said is exception to his behaviour.
- excited about: worried متاثر لـ — Jane was excited about meeting her uncle.
- excuse for: يعذر — He excused his son for not coming early.
- fade away: تذبل/تبهت — Plants need water otherwise they fade away.
- famous for: مشهور بـ — He is famous for his bravery.
- fail in: يفشل فى — He failed in winning the prize.
- fond of: مغرم بـ — She is fond of chocolate.
- full of: مملوء بـ — This bottle is full of oil.
- fill in: يملأ استمارة — You should fill in this application form.
- fill with: يملأ ... بـ — He filled the pen with ink.
- get across: make clear يوضح — He got the problem across to me.

- get by: يكسب بالكاد — having just enough money to live
- get away with: يفلت من العقاب — escape punishment
- get over: يتغلب على/يشفى من مرض — He got over his serious illness.
- get rid of: يتخلص من — At last he got rid of his bad habits.
- get along with: يساير — Tom couldn't get along with his classmates.
- get on: يصعد — The bus is full. We cannot get on it.
- get off: يهبط — We should get off the bus at the next stop.
- get up: يستيقظ — What time did you get up?
- get through: ينجح — Dina got through her test.
- give away: يفضح — His shaking hand gave him away.
- give in: yield يستسلم — It was such a difficult problem that I gave in.
- give up: يقلع عن — He gave up smoking.
- glad of/about: مسرور من — She is glad of the news.
- good at: جيد فى — I am good at marketing.
- good for: حسن لـ — Much food is not good for health.
- good to: عطوف على — You must be good to your mother.
- grieve at: يحزن على — She grieved at the death of her grandmother.
- guilty of: متهم فى — He was guilty of murder.
- hope for: يأمل فى — Everyone hopes for success.
- ignorant of: جاهل بـ — He is ignorant of even the simplest facts.
- indebted to: (grateful to) مدين لـ — Students should be indebted to their teachers.
- insist on: يصر على — He insisted on telling lies.
- interested in: مهتم بـ — I am interested in fishing.
- indifferent to غير مهتم بـ — He is indifferent to what his friend said.
- kind to: nice to/polite to لطيف — We should be kind to animals.

- kind of: عطف من — It's very kind of you to come to my party.
- keen on: متحمس لـ — I am not very keen on coming.
- knock down: يلقى ارضا — He was knocked down by his opponent boxer.
- laugh at: يسخر من — People laughed at him because of his haircut.
- leave for: يغادر إلى — He is leaving for America.
- listen to: يستمع إلى — Listening to the BBC improves your English.
- live on: يعيش على — He lives on his wife's income.
- look at: ينظر إلى — Why are you looking at me like that?
- look after: يعتنى بـ — A child needs someone to look after him.
- look for: يبحث عن — I am looking for my lost keys.
- look forward to: يتطلع إلى — I look forward to hearing from you.
- look on: [without taking part] يتفرج — Don't stand looking on. Try to help me.
- look out: يحترس — You should look out before crossing the road.
- look round: [at everything] ينظر إلى كل شىء — Hanan likes to look round the shops.
- look up : يبحث عن كلمة فى قاموس — You can look up new words in the dictionary.
- make-up: ماكياج — Too much make-up looks unnatural.
- make up : (a story, an excuse) يختلق قصة — He is a big lair. He always makes up stories.
- make out: see يرى/يميز — I can make out a star in the sky.
- make for: go يتجه نحو — We made for Alexandria at dawn.
- make up for: يعوض — The referee should make up for the lost time.
- married to: متزوج من — She is married to a millionaire.
- pass by: a place يمر بالقرب من — Are you going to pass by the restaurant?
- pay for: يدفع لـ — You should pay for your drink.

- pick out : يختار
 - Can you pick out a blouse for me to wear in the party?
- pick up: hear/receive يستلم
 - The ship picked up signals for help.
- play for: يلعب لـ
 - Hamada Imam used to play for Al Zamalek.
- pleased with: مسرور من شخص at (something) مسرور من شيء
 - He is pleased with Mona.
 - He is pleased at the good result.
- point at/to يشير الى
 - Noha pointed at/to the yellow flower in the garden.
- point at : يصوب
 - The policeman pointed the gun at the thief.
- point out: draw attention يجذب انتباه
 - The teacher pointed out my spelling mistakes.
- popular with: محبوب من
 - President Nasser was popular with his people.
- put out: يطفئ
 - The fireman could put out the fire.
- put on: يرتدى
 - She put on a new dress at the party.
- put off: يؤجل
 - The meeting was put off.
- put up: يشيد
 - He planned to put up a house near the garden.
- put up with: يتحمل
 - Sometimes we have to put up with our neighbours.
- prevent from: يمنع من
 - The cover prevents steam from escaping.
- proof of: برهان على
 - This is a proof of my honesty.
- prefer. to: يفضل ... على
 - I prefer winter to summer.
- protect from: يحمى من
 - You should protect your head from the sun.
- provide with: يمد بـ
 - Cows provide us with milk.
- proud of: فخور بـ
 - I am proud of my country.
- reason for: سبب لـ
 - There is no reason for his absence.
- reason with: يجادل
 - He agreed to come after reasoning with him.
- regard as: يعتبر
 - I always regard him as my friend.
- rejoice at/in: يفرح بـ
 - The mother rejoiced at/in her daughter's marriage.

- rely on: [count on] يعتمد على
 - You can rely on me to help you.
- remind of: يذكر بـ
 - Please remind me of what I said.
- responsible for: مسئول من
 - Who is responsible for this mistake?
- retire at: يتقاعد
 - He retired at the age of sixty five.
- run after: يطارد
 - The policeman ran after the thief.
- run into: يقابل
 - He ran into his old friend.
- run out of: run short of ينفذ
 - I have run out of money.
- run over: يدهس/يدوس
 - The car ran over the poor dog.
- satisfied with: راضٍ عن
 - He is not satisfied with his work.
- search for: يبحث عن
 - I'll search for my lost wallet everywhere.
- see off: يودع
 - He went to the airport to see his friend off.
- send for: يرسل فى طلب
 - Please, send for the doctor at once.
- set back: انتكاسة
 - She had a set back after her recovery.
- set off: ينطلق/يبدأ
 - Mr. Bill set off on a trip round the world.
- set out: ينظم
 - The meal was set out on a long table.
- set out: يعرض موضوع
 - He could set out his ideas clearly.
- shiver with: يرتعد من
 - She was shivering with fear.
- shoot at: يطلق على
 - The hunter will shoot at the bird.
- shout at: يصرخ فى
 - The teacher shouted at the pupils.
- shout to: call to: ينادى على
 - He shouted to me from the other direction.
- short of: نقص
 - I am short of money.
- similar to: مشابه لـ
 - Bread is not similar to cake.
- sit at: يجلس على
 - The manager is sitting at a big desk.
- sorry about: (something) يأسف بسبب
 - I am sorry about the accident.
- sorry about/for: (doing something) يعتذر عن
 - I am sorry for/about shouting at you.
 - People are sorry for him because he is blind.

• spend on: ينفق على	▸ He spent the money on his holiday.
• speak to (with): يتحدث مع	▸ Could I speak to Bill, please?
• speak for: يتحدث بالنيابة عن	▸ The lawyer speaks for people in court.
• succeed in: ينجح فى	▸ She succeeded in getting full marks.
• suffer from: يعانى من	▸ Many people suffer from anemia.
• superior to: يتفوق على	▸ He is superior to his brother in many things.
• sure about: متأكد من	▸ He is sure about the result of the exam.
• surprised at: مندهش لـ	▸ He was surprised at his honesty.
• suspect of: يشك فى	▸ He suspected his servant of stealing the vase.
• take after: يشبه	▸ He took after his father.
• take off: يخلع	▸ He took off the shirt to try another one.
• take off: يقلع	▸ The plane will take off at 7 o'clock.
• take up: يتعلم	▸ We took up playing the piano.
• take in : (deceive) يخدع	▸ Don't be taken in by his promises.
• take out: يخلع	▸ He had his tooth taken out by the dentist.
• take out: يخرج	▸ I'm taking the children out to the zoo.
• take over: يتولى مهمة	▸ After the manager had left, Mr. Jack took over.
• thank for: يشكر على	▸ I thanked my friend for typing the letter.
• think of/about: يفكر فى	▸ He always thinks of/about travelling abroad.
• throw at: يلقى	▸ Maha threw the stone at the dog.
• throw to: يقذف إلى	▸ She threw the ball to her but she couldn't catch it.
• throw away: يرمى	▸ Don't throw cigarette ends away. They may cause fire.
• tired of: متعب من	▸ I am tired of your stupid remarks.
• translate ... from ... into: يترجم إلى	
▸ Translate this passage from Arabic into English.	
• tremble with: يرتعد من	▸ He was trembling with fever.
• turn on/off: يفتح/يغلق	▸ When did you turn off the radio?
• turn up: يظهر	▸ We shouted when our friend turned up.

•wait for: ينتظر	▸He has been waiting for the bus.
•walk about: يتجول	▸They walked about the streets aimlessly.
•warn (a person) of/against danger: يحذر	
▸He warned him of/against driving fast.	
•wear off: يقل	▸I am happy because the pain in my teeth is wearing off.
•white with: شاحب بسبب	▸She was white with fear.
•worthy of: جدير بـ	▸He is worthy of the prize.
•wrong with: خطأ	▸There is something wrong with him.
•worried about: قلق على	▸He was worried about his health.
•write in ink/in pencil: يكتب بـ	▸Cheques should not be written in pencil.
•by cheque: مستخدمًا شيكًا	▸Will you pay in cash or by cheque?
•by (accident/chance): صدفة	▸I met him by chance.
•turn on/off: يشغل/يغلق	▸TV/light/machines, etc.
•by day: نهارًا	▸He works by day.
•by: بواسطة	▸This story is written by Nagib Mahfouz.
•in love with: فى علاقة غرامية مع	▸Romeo fell in love with Juliet.
•in my opinion: فى رأى	▸In my opinion the story was boring.
•in the habit of: فى عادة	▸He is in the habit of smoking a cigar.
•on fire: مشتعل	▸The house was on fire all night.
•on the phone: عبر الهاتف	▸I've spoken to her on the phone.
•on TV/on the radio: فى التليفزيون/الراديو	▸I heard the news on the radio.
•on a diet: يتبع نظامًا غذائيًا	▸I want to lose weight. I'll go on a diet.
•on strike: مضرب عن العمل	▸Workers were on strike yesterday.
•on business: من أجل العمل	▸He travelled to London on business.
•on holiday: فى إجازة	▸Now, he is on holiday.
•for a walk: من أجل التمشية	▸It is nice to go for a walk in the afternoon.
•in touch with: يكون على اتصال بـ	▸I can't get in touch with you.

PART 4

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

❶ Ahmed is extremely proud _____ his students' rapid progress.
a) from b) about
c) for d) of

❷ Mr. Mohamed is not very good _____ remembering his students' names.
a) on b) for
c) at d) about

❸ He's very unpredictable. He's always full _____ surprises!
a) from b) of
c) about d) off

❹ My father objected _____ my going to the cinema.
a) to b) about
c) on d) for

❺ A lot of diseases resulted _____ pollution.
a) in b) from
c) to d) of

❻ They were furious _____ me for not inviting them to my party.
a) of b) to
c) with d) about

❼ Are you excited _____ going on holiday next week?
a) on b) of
c) about d) to

❽ We stayed at home because Mary wasn't very keen _____ going out in the rain.
a) to b) on
c) of d) about

❾ She is very terrified _____ spiders.
a) of b) at
c) about d) on

❿ The flat is nice , but we object to _____ without electricity.
a) being living b) being lived
c) live d) living

⓫ He is very fond _____ animals.
a) on b) about
c) to d) of

⓬ She doesn't often go out in the night because she's afraid _____ the dark.
a) from b) ut
c) of d) to

⓭ She is brilliant _____ repairing things.
a) on b) at
c) to d) with

⓮ They are interested _____ sports.
a) on b) in
c) by d) about

⓯ I'm angry _____ him for telling lies about me.
a) about b) at
c) with d) from

⓰ I'm looking forward _____ getting my driving licence.
a) from b) on
c) to d) about

⓱ Why are you always so rude _____ your parents?
a) about b) on
c) of d) to

⓲ I can't understand people who are cruel _____ animals.
a) at b) about
c) from d) to

⓳ Your shoes are similar _____ mine but they are not exactly the same.
a) on b) to
c) from d) with

⓴ The airline is responsible _____ the safety of its passengers.
a) on b) to
c) for d) of

ALADWAA

Gem

New Hello!

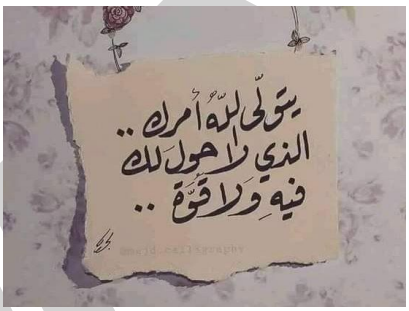


الصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Final Revision & Tests

ملحق المراجعة النهائية والاختبارات



By

Emad Fawzy Mohamed Abdel Aal Ahmed Fadel Ayman M. Ebrahim Yacoub Moawad



حمّل تطبيق الأضواء الآن

ابحث عن كودك الشخصى الموجود فى ظهر الغلاف واحصل مجاناً على جميع مزايا التطبيق.

1234567890

طالب

- اختبارات تفاعلية
- شرح الدروس
- تقارير وإحصائيات
- هدايا ومكافآت
- اسأل الأضواء
- تحدى الأصدقاء

ولى أمر

- تابع مستوى أولادك الدراسى من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات.
- تعرّف أهم مستجدات العملية التعليمية.

معلم

- تابع مستوى طلابك الدراسى من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات.
- كون مجموعة من طلابك وتواصل معهم.

www.aladwaa.com Follow Us

NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE

Contents

Part 1

General Revision

1 Revision (1) (Units 1-3) 4
2 Revision (2) (Units 4-6) 42

Part 2

Final Tests

Final Tests 84

ALPHA Gem

Part 1

General Revision

General Revision

Part 1

Revision (1) (Units 1-3)

Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

agriculture (n)	الزراعة
amount (n)	مقدار/كمية
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ
CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	عملية التنفس الصناعى
crop (n)	محصول
eat out (v)	يأكل بالخارج
get together (v)	يتجمع/يتقابل
infection (n)	عدوى
innovation (n)	إبداع/ابتكار/فكرة مبتكرة
livestock (n)	ماشية
occasion (n)	مناسبة
perform (v) (ed)	يقوم بـ/يؤدى
prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
production (n)	إنتاج
react (v) (ed)	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل
serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعام
severe (adj)	شديد/خطير
sustainable (adj)	مستدام
technique (n)	طريقة/أسلوب
traditional (adj)	تقليدى
variety (n)	تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة

Helpful Vocabulary

abroad (adv)	بالخارج
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق
advertisement (n)	أعلان
algae (n)	طحالب
area (n)	منطقة
argument (n)	جدال/حجة
arrive (v) (d)	يصل
article (n)	مقال
attractive (adj)	جذاب
available (adj)	متوفر/متاح
bandage (n)	ضمادة (للجرح)
base (n)	أساس/قاعدة الشىء
belief (n)	اعتقاد/إيمان
bleed (v) (ed)	ينزف
boost (v) (ed)	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس
breathing (n)	التنفس
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب
cell (n)	خلية
central (adj)	وسط/متوسط
champion (n)	بطل رياضى

Al-Wa Cem

championship (n)	بطولة
charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية
check (v) (ed)	يفحص/يراجع
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية
chest (n)	صدر
chopstick (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى
collaboration (n)	تعاون/اشتراك
complicated (adj)	معقد
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام
confused (adj)	مرتبك
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على
continent (n)	قارة
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج
curious (adj)	فضولى
damage (v) (d)	يفسد/يتلف
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)
decide (v) (d)	يقرر
description (n)	وصف
dessert (n)	تحلية (بعد الطعام)
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر
details (n)	تفاصيل
diet (n)	نظام غذائى
distant (adj)	بعيد
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب
education (n)	التعليم
efficiently (adv.)	بكفاءة
electric (adj)	كهربى

else (adv.)	أخر
emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
energy (n)	طاقة
environment (n)	البيئة
event (n)	حدث
evidence (n)	دليل
examination (n)	فحص/اختبار
Executive Director (n)	مدير تنفيذى
expert (n)	خبير
extract (n) (v) (ed)	مقتبس/يقتبس
extraordinary (adj)	مميز/رائع
factual (adj)	واقعى/حقيقى
feed (v)	يطعم/يغذى
festival (n)	مهرجان
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية
flat (adj)	مسطح/مستو
focus (v) (ed)	يركز
foreigner (n)	أجنبى
gap (n)	فجوة/فراغ
general (adj)	عام
giant (adj) (n)	عملاق
guide (v) (d)	يوجه/يرشد
heat up (v)	يزداد حرارة
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى
include (v) (d)	يشمل/يتضمن/يُشمل
increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة
injury (n)	إصابة

ALAWA Gem

introduce (v) (d)	يقدم
invest (v) (ed)	يستثمر
involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/يتورط
kit (n)	عدة/طقم أدوات
land (n)	أرض
level (n)	مستوى
link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط/يربط
local (adj)	محلى
lung (n)	الرئة
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
menu (n)	قائمة طعام
muscle (n)	عضلة
native (adj)	أصلى
negative (adj)	سلبى
normal (adj)	طبيعى
old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
operation (n)	عملية
options (n)	اختيارات
ordinary (adj)	عادى
organ (n)	عضو
organisation (n)	منظمة
outdoor (adj)	خارج المنزل
oyster (n)	محار
perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
performance (n)	أداء
personally (adv.)	شخصيا
persuasive (adj)	مقنع
pioneer (n)	رائد
pleasure (n)	سعادة/سرور
population (n)	السكان
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
press (v) (ed)	يضغط
produce (n)	إنتاج زراعى

products (n)	منتجات
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
pump (v) (ed)	يضخ
quantity (n)	كمية
questionnaire (n)	استبيان/استطلاع رأى
rainfall (n)	سقوط المطر
rainforest (n)	غابات استوائية (مطيرة)
rare (adj)	نادر
recent (adj)	حديث
regularly (adv.)	بانتظام
relatives (n)	أقارب
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
respect (v) (ed)	احترام/يحترم
respond (v) (ed)	يستجيب
responsibility (n)	مسئولية
rude (adj)	وقح/غير مؤدب
rule (n)	قاعدة
seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية
seaweed (n)	الأعشاب البحرية
separate (adj) (v) (d)	منفصل/يفصل
seriously (adv.)	بجدية/بخطورة
share (v) (d)	يشارك
shellfish (n)	المحار
sign (n)	علامة
solution (n)	حل
source (n)	مصدر
southern (adj)	جنوبى
space (n)	مساحة/فراغ/فضاء
specific (adj)	محدد
spicy (adj)	حار (بالتوابل)
suitable (adj)	مناسب
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم/يساند

ALAWA Gem

survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق
tasty (adj)	ذو مذاق جيد
Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
tourism (n)	السياحة
tradition (n)	تقليد
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
United Nations	الأمم المتحدة

unusual (adj)	غير عادى
urban (adj)	مدنى
vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتى
vertically (adv.)	عموديًا
wake (v)	يوقظ/يستيقظ
windy (adj)	عاصف
wrap (v) (ped)	يلف

Expressions & Idioms

according to	طبقا لـ
achieve a great deal of	يحقق قدرًا كبيرًا من
around the country	حول البلد
around the world	حول العالم
as a result	نتيجة لذلك
at all	أبدا/مطلقا
at any time	فى أى وقت
at least	على الأقل
by that time	بحلول ذلك الوقت
catch up with	يلحق بـ/يجارى/يعرف أحوال
do an action	يقوم بالتصرف
do CPR	يجرى عملية التنفس الصناعى
do sport	يمارس رياضة
do the course	يدرس منهج تعليمى
fall asleep	ينام فجأة
feel strong and healthy	يشعر بالقوة والصحة
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن
for example	على سبيل المثال
get ... ready	يجهز/يعد ...

get better	يتحسن
get ill	يصاب بمرض
get worse	يسوء
go abroad	يسافر للخارج
have a meal	يتناول وجبة
have an infection	يصاب بعدوى
have the flu	يصاب بالأنفلونزا
in fact	فى الحقيقة/الواقع
in my view	فى رأيى
in the first place	فى المقام الاول
make more money	يدر مالًا
make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
make notes	يدون ملاحظات
make sense	ذو معنى
make sure	يتأكد
over the next few decades	عبر العقود القليلة التالية
perform a play	يمثل مسرحية
show respect	يظهر الاحترام
sound nice	يبدو لطيفا

ALAWAL Gem

sound perfect	يبدو رائعا (ممتازا)
stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
take up a new sport	يمارس (يتخذ) لعبة جديدة
tell the difference	يميز الفرق(الاختلاف)
years to come	السنوات القادمة

Phrases & Prepositions

amount of	كمية من
ask about	يسأل عن
available for	متوفر لـ
based on	معتمد (مرتكز) على
care about	يهتم بـ
come off	يسقط/يخرج من مكانه
complete ... with	يكمل ... بـ
cut down	يقطع
difference between	اختلاف بين
disagree about	لا يوافق (يعترض) على
focus on	يركز على
good for	جيد لـ
great at	رائع (عظيم) فى
grow to	ينمو إلى
happy with	سعيد بـ
hope for	أمل لـ
increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة
instead of	بدلا من
interested in	مهتم بـ
keep out of	يبتعد عن
kind of	نوع من
learn about	يعرف عن
link to	رابط لـ
lock ... together	يغلق ... معا
look after	يعتنى بـ
look at	ينظر إلى/يفحص
look for	يبحث عن
look forward to	يتطلع إلى
made from	مصنوع من
opinion on/about	رأى عن
remove from	يزيل من
reply to	يرد علي/يستجيب لـ
rise up	يرفع (يرتفع) لأعلى
solution to	حل لـ
source of	مصدر لـ
spend on	ينفق على
start with	يبدأ بـ
take place	يحدث
taste of	مذاق لـ
tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
think of/about	يفكر في
travel to	يسافر إلى
variety of	تنوع من
wait for	ينتظر
work with	يعمل مع
worried about	قلق عن
wrap ... around	يلف ... حول
write about	يكتب عن

ALAWA Gem

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف	action	عمل/فعل	acting active	قائم بعمل (فعل) نشيط
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
allow	يسمح	allowing	سماح	allowed	مسموح
arrive	يصل	arrival	وصول	----------	
bleed	ينزف	bleeding	نزيف	----------	
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالى
collaborate	يتعاون/يشارك	collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	collaborative	تعاونى
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation	خلق/إنتاج	creative	مبدع
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
destroy	يدمر	destruction	دمار/تدمير	destroyed	مدمر (تم تدميره)
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existing	موجود
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
guide	يوجه/يرشد	guidance guide	توجيه/إرشاد مرشد	guiding	مرشد/موجه
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected infectious	مصاب بعدوى معدى
injure	يصيب/يجرح	injury	إصابة/جرح	injured	مصاب/مجروح
innovate	يبدع/يبتكر	innovation	إبداع/ابتكار	innovative	مبدع
operate	يقوم بعملية/يشغل	operation	عملية جراحية	operative	جراحي/مشغل
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظم
perform	يؤدى	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدى
popularise	يعمم	popularity	شهرة	popular	محبوب/مشهور
prepare	يجهز	preparation	إعداد	prepared	معد/جاهز
produce	ينتج	production	إنتاج	productive	منتج
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	ذو رد فعل
serve	يخدم	service servant	خدمة خادم	serving	خادم
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح
survive	ينجو	survival	النجاة	surviving	ناجى
sustain	يساند/يؤازر/يدعم	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	مختلف/متنوع
wake	يوقظ/يستيقظ	waking	الاستيقاظ	awake	مستيقظ

ALADWA Gem

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	commemorate	reproach/dishonour	يعاتب/يوبخ
collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	participation/ partnership	separation	انفصال
continue	يستمر	proceed	stop/cease	يتوقف
decide	يقرر	determine	delay/postpone	يؤجل
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	tasteless	بلا طعم
destroy	يدمر	smash	construct	يشيد
disease	مرض	illness	health	صحة
examination	فحص/اختبار	observation	neglect/ignorance	إهمال/تجاهل
exist	يوجد	live	depart	يغادر
extraordinary	مميز/رائع	amazing	common/ordinary	عادى
flat	مسطح/مستو	straight	rough	خشن/غير مستقيم
fun	مرح	amusement	sorrow	أسى/حزن
gather	يتجمع	assemble	separate	يفصل
guide	يوجه/يرشد	advise	misguide	يسئ التوجيه
immediately	فورا	instantly/soon	later	فيما بعد
increase	يزيد	raise	decrease	يخفض
infection	عدوى	contagion	sterility	تعقيم
injury	إصابة	wound	comfort	راحة
mention	يذكر	name	ignore	يتجاهل
negative	سلبى	adverse	positive	إيجابى
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated	fashionable	ذو طراز حديث
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	behave	give up	يتوقف/يقلع
popular	محبوب	attractive	unpopular	غير محبوب
press	يضغط	squeeze	release	يطلق
probably	من المحتمل	possibly	unlikely	من غير المحتمل

ALAWA Gem

rare	نادر	scarce		common	شائع
react	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	proceed		cease	يتوقف
responsibility	مسئولية	duty		irresponsibility	عدم مسئولية
severe	شديد/خطير	acute		gentle	بسيط/لطيف
skill	مهارة	proficiency		incompetence	عدم كفاءة
source	مصدر	origin		outcome	ناتج
success	نجاح	achievement		failure	فشل
surprised	مندهش	astonished		unsurprised	غير مندهش
survive	ينجو	remain		die	يموت
sustainable	مستدام	continuous		temporary	مؤقت
traditional	تقليدى	conventional		modern	حديث
variety	تنوع	diversity		similarity	تشابه
welcome	يرحب بـ	greet		exclude/deny	يستبعد/ينكر

Notes on Vocabulary

1

another — آخر (للمفرد)
- I had to change my old suit with another one.

other
١- الآخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط)
٢- أخرون (للجمع/اسم لا يعد)
- I can't find my other shoe.
- I've got some other friends I'd like to invite.

others
الأخرون (يأتى بعدها فعل ووضعت «s» بعد حذف الاسم)
- Some people are at greater risk from the virus than others.

else
١- آخر/أيضا تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ (some - any - every - no)
٢- آخر/أيضا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)
- There's something else I'd like to talk about as well.
Where else can we meet?

2

sign
١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/تحذير/تعليمات
٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)
- The sign in the store window says "OPEN."
- All the signs point to him as the guilty party.

signal
١- إشارة (تليفون/إذاعة/تليفزيون)
٢- إشارة (ضوئية/صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشىء
- Satellite dishes receive television signals.
- The teacher gave us the signal to finish what we were doing.

landmark
علامة بارزة (تميز مكان) مثل برج أو مبنى
- The Empire State Building is a familiar landmark on the New York skyline.

3	**athlete** رياضى (شخص يمارس رياضة وخاصة ألعاب القوى)	▸ The athletes are training hard for the Olympics.
	athletic رياضى (صفة لوصف شخص أو شىء رياضى)	▸ He was a true champion, a man among men, known for his kindness as well as athletic powers.
	athletics ألعاب القوى (مجموعة من الألعاب تشمل الجرى والقفز والرمى)	▸ Athletics is largely an individual sport.
4	**kit** عدة/طاقم أدوات (مجموعة من أدوات تستخدم لغرض معين)	▸ My uncle runs a shop which sells sewing kits.
	tool آلة (غالبا يدوية) تستخدم لإصلاح أو تركيب أو العمل على شىء	▸ A saw is a tool for cutting wood.
5	**operation** ١- عملية جراحية ٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة	▸ She's going to need an operation on her ankle. ▸ Britain will carry out a joint military operation with the US.
	process ١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شىء ٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شىء)	▸ Breathing and the circulation of blood are life processes. ▸ Learning a foreign language can be a long process.
6	**advertisement** إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أو وظيفة	▸ The advertisement will appear in three magazines.
	announcement تصريح/إذاعة خبر	▸ The minister will make a formal announcement tomorrow.
7	**organ** عضو من أعضاء الجسم	▸ The liver is an extremely complex organ.
	member عضو/فرد فى مجموعة كنادى أو فريق	▸ She's a member of the local band.
8	**champion** بطل رياضى	▸ The show will be opened by the former world boxing champion.
	hero بطل فى المجتمع أو فى قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية	▸ His father was a war hero, a former fighter pilot.
9	**arrive** ١- يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول) ٢- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بعد حروف الجر in/at)	▸ When will the plane from Paris arrive? ▸ We arrived at the hotel very late after the party.
	reach ١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر) ٢- يصل إلى شىء معنوى	▸ We were the first people to reach the party. ▸ Finally, they reached their goal and became professional footballers.
10	**event** ١- حدث مهم ٢- حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى/مؤتمر سياسى)	▸ Getting married is a major event in anyone's life. ▸ The conference was an important social event.
	incident ١- حدث (عارض/غير معتاد) ٢- حدث (فى فيلم/قصة/مسرحية)	▸ The report describes a number of related incidents. ▸ The film was boring and it didn't have many incidents.
	accident حادث (شئ خاطئ أو مؤذى حدث بغير ترتيب)	▸ Ahmed had an accident at work and had to go to hospital.

ALAWA Gem

11	special — خاص (من نوع خاص)	I don't want an ordinary wedding. I want something special.
	private — خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)	He didn't want to discuss his private life.
12	menu — ١- قائمة طعام (فى مطعم)	He looked at the menu and decided to have the salad.
	٢- قائمة (مهام/إعدادات) فى جهاز	Select PRINT from the main menu.
	list — قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)	Make a list of all the things you have to do.
13	outdoor (adj) — بالخارج/خلوى (خارج الأماكن المغلقة ...) صفة يأتى بعدها اسم	The programme of outdoor activities includes skiing, climbing, and hiking.
	outdoors (adv) — بالخارج (خارج الأماكن المغلقة ...) حال تصف فعلً ولا يأتى بعدها اسم	They could play outdoors.
14	lose — يفقد/يخسر	Hundreds of people lost their homes in the floods.
	miss — يفتقد/يفوته شئ	It was great living in Prague, but I really missed all my friends.
		By the time we got there, we'd missed the beginning of the movie.
15	earn — يكسب (مالًا عن طريق العمل غالبًا)	You don't earn much money being a nurse.
	gain — يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)	In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager.
	win — يفوز بـ (مباراة/جائزة/مسابقة)	How does it feel to have won the gold medal?
	beat — يهزم/يتغلب على	My brother easily beats me at chess every time we play.
16	tasty — ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)	The breakfast is complete and tasty.
	tasteful — ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)	The room is filled with tasteful furniture.
17	local — ١- محلى (خاص بمنطقة/قرية/مدينة)	You can find all these books in your local library.
	٢- أحد السكان المحليين	We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.
	national — قومى (خاص ببلد)	These buildings are part of our national heritage.
	international — دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)	The island now has an international airport.
18	earth — الكرة الأرضية/تراب	The Earth is the third planet from the sun.
	ground — أرض فضاء	He fell to the ground, crying out in pain.
	land — اليابسة	The army fought both at sea and on land.
	soil — تربة (زراعية/رملية)	Herbs should be planted in warm soil.
	floor — طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	He grabbed a broom and began sweeping the floor.
19	cause — ١- سبَب (يتبعها حرف الجر of)	We do not know the cause of the building collapse till now.
	٢- يسبب	The infection can cause severe pain.
	reason — ١- سبب/تبرير (يتبعها حرف الجر why/for)	We'd like to know the reason why she didn't accept the job.
	٢- يفكر/يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير	They reasoned that other businesses would soon copy the idea.

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1. Egypt is investing more in energy resources such as solar and nuclear energy.
 a) removable b) avoidable c) sustainable d) acceptable
2. Mary the new job with a party for family and friends.
 a) celebrated b) rejected c) recommended d) reminded
3. The training has the students to deal with any small medical emergency.
 a) expired b) accepted c) appeared d) prepared
4. In modern farming, the are regularly sprayed with pesticides مبيد آفات.
 a) products b) crops c) roots d) ingredients
5. Scientists are trying to trace يتتبعوا the source of of the COVID-19 in China.
 a) perfection b) treatment c) infection d) vaccine
6. The new hotel's 200 rooms come in a of sizes; single, double or suites.
 a) property b) variety c) difference d) site
7. In America, it is to eat turkey and cranberry sauce on Thanksgiving.
 a) traditional b) fashionable c) modernised d) recent
8. This powerful computer can many tasks at once.
 a) design b) assign c) make d) perform
9. The number of people employed in has fallen in the last few years because many people left the countryside to live in the city.
 a) industry b) agriculture c) commerce d) economy
10. We aren't used to eating a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
 a) inside b) down c) out d) across
11. The recent in information technology have completely transformed the way students work.
 a) invitations b) decorations c) acceptances d) innovations
12. Firefighters are trained to quickly to emergency.
 a) react b) represent c) introduce d) inspect
13. The storm caused damage to the farmer's house and garden which were destroyed.
 a) severe b) gentle c) high d) deep
14. Heart surgery..... have improved considerably in the last few years.
 a) statuses b) techniques c) qualities d) quantities
15. are the animals kept on a farm, for example cows or sheep.
 a) Household b) Population c) Livestock d) Poultry
16. We wished our son all the best on the of his 20th birthday.
 a) accident b) assignment c) promotion d) occasion

17 The patient must take some medicine to boost his body's of red blood cells.
a) invention b) consumption c) destruction d) production

18 Car designers from some countries got and held a joint exhibition.
a) out b) away c) together d) up

19 In all five-star hotels, meals can be to you in your room.
a) sold b) served c) prepared d) consumed

20 Doctors say that we should all try to reduce the of fat in our diet.
a) amount b) quality c) intent d) expectance

Helpful Vocabulary

21 We had a/an with the waiter about the bill as it was very high.
a) fight b) treaty c) argument d) truce

22 With the internet it is possible to make learning wherever it is needed.
a) avoidable b) invincible c) exceptional d) available

23 The accident victim was from the wounds in her face and hands.
a) bleeding b) paining c) relieving d) breeding

24 The desert land which the government reclaimed has wheat production by 25 percent.
a) blasted b) boosted c) damaged d) consumed

25 Caustic soda الصودا الكاوية is a/an which is often used to make cleaning products.
a) acid b) metal c) chemical d) induction

26 The book is the product of a/an between two writers.
a) examination b) coherence c) collaboration d) inspection

27 The factory owner offers a pay rise only for the workers who work
a) lazily b) hardly c) carelessly d) efficiently

28 Athletes should have a regular heart especially before major championships.
a) surgery b) examination c) treatment d) operation

29 I have read only some from the new novel, but I liked it much.
a) addresses b) experiments c) extracts d) headlines

30 is a method of growing plants in water rather than in soil.
a) Hydroponics b) Mathematics c) Micronics d) Gymnastics

31 To fight this new virus, you must try hard to make your system stronger.
a) security b) immune c) alarm d) nerve

32 It took the wounded soldier six months to recover from the
a) quarrel b) process c) invention d) injury

33 For elderly people, TV is an important with the outside world.
a) search b) outlet c) link d) exit

34 Regular mild exercise will help to strengthen your as much as training.
a) muscles b) vessels c) results d) substances

ALAWAM Gem

35 The island's bird population began disappearing due to exposure to التعرض لـ diseases.
a) foreign b) native c) international d) vague

36 Selling the house was our only to overcome our financial problems.
a) result b) consequence c) option d) relevance

37 All the fans were impressed by their team's at the final match.
a) training b) performance c) relaxation d) avoidance

38 The young politician is a very speaker, so he was chosen for the Parliament.
a) aggressive b) convinced c) disorganised d) persuasive

39 A working woman has to deal with a lot of family and work
a) rights b) promotions
c) researches d) responsibilities

40 The best for water shortage is to greatly reduce our use of water.
a) evolution b) analysis c) solution d) exception

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes

41 Nurses are taught how to CPR as part of their first-aid course.
a) do b) make c) design d) operate

42 One of the main reasons of climate change is cutting rainforests.
a) in b) about c) down d) for

43 All vaccines will be safe and if they are used properly.
a) affect b) effect c) effective d) affecting

44 The noun "contagion" is similar in meaning to the noun "....." .
a) affection b) reflection c) perfection d) infection

45 People always come to this old restaurant because the food is very there.
a) taste b) tasty c) tasteful d) tasteless

46 The mother wrapped a scarf her child's neck as it was cold.
a) around b) away c) about d) off

47 If our son's illness any worse, we'll call the doctor or take him to hospital.
a) falls b) gets c) turns d) devises

48 The adjective "gentle" can be the opposite to the adjective "....." .
a) nice b) ordinary c) severe d) giant

49 My aunt has a severe allergic to Penicillin and some other drugs.
a) react b) reaction c) reactive d) reactor

50 Clubs insist that children must have a medical examination if they want to up a new sport.
a) make b) change c) play d) take

51 Major changes have taken in the Egyptian society in the last few years.
a) part b) place c) apart d) down

52 Most people are more in the morning than other times of the day.
a) produce **b)** production **c)** productive **d)** product

53 The verb "squeeze" is a synonym to the verb "....." .
a) release **b)** press **c)** iron **d)** shield

54 I asked my wife to make a of the ingredients she needs for the pizza.
a) list **b)** menu **c)** brochure **d)** notice

55 I heard a/an on the loudspeaker saying that the hypermarket was closing in 10 minutes.
a) intention **b)** commercial **c)** announcement **d)** advertisement

56 Everyone should keep an emergency first-aid in their car.
a) tool **b)** instrument **c)** device **d)** kit

57 The word "temporary" is an antonym to the word
a) sustainable **b)** regular **c)** gradual **d)** timeless

58 Please, tell the children to go and play somewhere I'm trying to work.
a) another **b)** other **c)** others **d)** else

59 The old man was walking up and down the room, which was a that he was worried.
a) sign **b)** signal **c)** landmark **d)** note

60 Our small factory began to more money after three years of building it.
a) do **b)** perform **c)** make **d)** assign

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

hunger – Agriculture – member – countries – food – Nations

One of the important organisations of the United Nations is Food and(1)..... Organisation (FAO) which is the specialised organisation of the United(2)..... that leads international efforts to defeat(3)..... . Its main goal is to achieve(4)..... security for all and make sure that people have regular supply of enough high-quality food to lead active, healthy lives. With over 194(5)..... states, FAO works in over 130(6)..... worldwide. It believes that everyone can play a part in ending hunger.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

serve – tasty – menu – spicy – types – dishes

When you come to Egypt you should try different(1)..... of Egyptian food because the Egyptian dishes are very(2)..... and worth the experience. One of the famous Egyptian(3)..... is koshari, which is a mix of rice, brown lentils and macaroni topped with fried onions and a(4)..... tomato sauce, koshari is normally eaten in dedicated koshari restaurants that(5)..... the dish exclusively. Some hotels even put it in their(6)..... to provide tourists with a delicious traditional meal.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

4 Choose the correct answer:

On January 30, 2020, the WHO declared the COVID-19 outbreak a public economic / health emergency of international concern and, in March 2020, began to characterise it as a pandemic in order to emphasise the gravity of the situation / location and urge all countries to take action in detecting infection / destruction and preventing spread. Although there are cures for illnesses and developments made by the virus, the strongest and most defective / effective weapon that society has against this virus is the prevention of its spread. The main points in preventing the spread in society are hand bathing / hygiene, social distancing and quarantine. With increased testing capacity, detecting more COVID-19 positive patients in the community will also enable the reduction of secondary cases with stricter quarantine rules / directions.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

5 Choose the correct answer:

There are some rules that you should follow if you are helping a person with wounds. The most important one to consider with any open wound is control of operation / bleeding and infection. Before providing care, put on protective / infective gloves or use a barrier between you and the victim to reduce the chance of disease infection while assisting the sound / injured person. In case of bleeding, apply direct pressure with a clean cloth or absorbent dressing until bleeding stops. Wash the affected area / region with an antibacterial soap to improve / remove any foreign matter. Cover the dressing with a bandage / belt. Check for the person's feeling, warmth, and wound colour.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

ALAWWAL Gem

Language

Unit (1)

1) Necessity **2) Lack of necessity** **3) Prohibition**

1 Necessity الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
have to	It's necessary for ... to + Inf.	had to	It was necessary for ... to + Inf.	will have to	It will be necessary for ... to + Inf.
has to					
must					
have got to		no past			
has got to					
need to/needs to		needed to		will need to	

- It is necessary for all of us to fight diseases.
- All of us must/have to/have got to/need to fight diseases.
- It was necessary for him to find a job to support his family.
- He had to find a job to support his family. ضرورة فى الماضى وتم فعلها.
- It will be necessary for the new government to solve the problems related to health and education.
- The new government will have to solve the problems related to health and education.

have to/must الفرق بين	
Have to	ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لديك اختيار فى فعلها. As I'm very ill, I have to wait until the doctor arrives.
Must	strong advice نصيحة قوية You must wash your hands before you eat.
	a warm invitation دعوة حارة You must come and see us at the weekend.
	a strong reminder to ourselves رسالة تذكير قوية We must remember that tourism is important.
Mustn't	Prohibition المنع والحظر والتحريم You mustn't drive fast on this road. The maximum speed limit is 60 km/h.
	Strong negative advice للنصيحة القوية المنفية You mustn't play football in the flat. You may break something.

ALADWAA Gem

2 Lack of necessity عدم الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
don't have to	It isn't necessary for ... to	didn't have to لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء فلم نفعله	It wasn't necessary for ... to	won't have to won't need to	It won't be necessary for ... to
doesn't have to		needn't have + P.P لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله			
needn't (to بدون)					
don't/ doesn't need to		didn't need to			

- It isn't necessary for her to buy many dresses.
- She doesn't have to/needn't/doesn't need to buy many dresses.
- It wasn't necessary for me to travel abroad.
- I didn't have to travel abroad. لم يكن واجبا فلم افعل.
- I needn't have travelled abroad. لم يكن واجبا ولكنى فعلت.

Unit (2)

Adjectives (comparatives – superlatives)

	Adjective		Comparative	Superlative
			adj. + er + than	the + adjective + est
One syllable	tall	طويل	taller than	the tallest
	young	صغير السن	younger than	the youngest
	soft	ناعم	softer than	the softest
			adj. + r + than	the + adjective + st
One syllable ending in e	large	واسع	larger than	the largest
	wide	عريض	wider than	the widest
One syllable		- تضعيف الحرف الساكن ونضيف er		
			adj. + er + than	the + adjective + est
ساكن + vowel + ساكن	big	كبير الحجم	bigger than	the biggest
	hot	ساخن	hotter than	the hottest
		- حذف حرف y ونضيف ier		
			adj. + ier + than	the + adjective + iest
Two syllables ending in y	heavy	ثقيل	heavier than	the heaviest
	happy	سعيد	happier than	the happiest

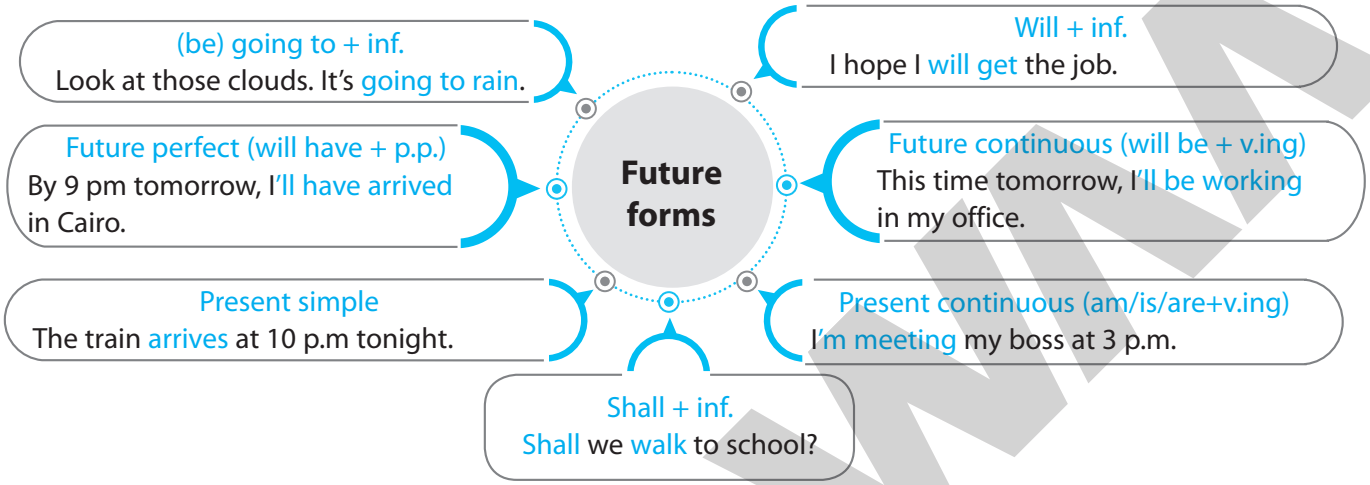
			more + adjective	the most + adj.
Two or more syllables	modern	عصرى	more modern than	the most modern
	expensive	غالى	more expensive than	the most expensive
	حالات خاصة تحفظ			
Irregular adjectives	good	جيد	better than	the best
	bad	سيئ	worse than	the worst
	little	قليل	less than	the least
	much/many	كثير	more than	the most
	far	بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/ furthest

as + adj.+ as /not as (so)+ adj.+ as	تساوى أوعدم تساوى الصفات
Omar is as clever as Ahmed.	فى التساوى الصفة بين as ... as
Eman isn't so/as young as her sister Rana.	فى نفى التساوى isn't as/so ... as
Special cases	حالات خاصة
Rana is the younger of two sisters.	فى التفضيل بين اثنين the + er/more
Gold is much/a lot more expensive than wood.	قبل المقارنة مع الفارق الكبير much/a lot
Silver is a bit/a little cheaper than gold.	عند الفرق القليل a bit/a little
No boy in class is cleverer than Ahmed.	نستخدم no فى المقارنة.
I've never met a stronger person than Ali.	نستخدم never فى المقارنة.
Ali is the strongest person I've ever met.	نستخدم ever فى التفضيل.
Summer is less cold than winter.	less قبل أى صفة فى المقارنة.
The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.	صفة مقارنة + the, صفة مقارنة +The كلما كلما

ALAWA Gem

Unit (3)

Future forms



1 Will + inf.



٦-يستخدم مع تعبيرات زمنية وأفعال معينة.

sure, hope, think, expect, predict, promise, perhaps, probably, etc.

- I'm sure Ali will win the race.
- I expect that she will visit us tomorrow.

2 (be) going to + inf.

(be) going to + inf.

- ١- التنبؤ بدليل
 Look! He is going to fall.
- ٢-القرارات المتخذة مسبقا
 He is going to join university.
- ٣-للنوايا والخطط
 We're going to buy a new car.
- ٤-للطموحات الشخصية
 I'm going to be a doctor.

Form
- I'm going to + inf.
- He/She/It is going to + inf.
- They/we/you are going to + inf.

Negative
- I'm not going to + inf.
- He/She/It is not going to + inf.
- They/we/you are not going to + inf.

3 Future continuous

Future continuous

- ١- حدث سوف يستمر لفترة فى المستقبل
 This time tomorrow, I'll be travelling.
- ٢-احداث ستكون فى استمرار نتيجة للروتين
 I'll be meeting Ahmed as usual.
- ٣-مع التعبيرات الزمنية الاتية:
 This time tomorrow/next
 At + time + tomorrow/next
 In two hours' time

Form
- Subj + will be + v.ing

Negative
- Subj + won't be + v.ing

4 Present simple

Present simple

- مع الجداول المحددة ليشير إلى المستقبل
 The plane arrives at 8:30 tomorrow.
- للجداول المحددة مسبقا مثل الطائرات والقطارات والبرامج والمباريات
 The train leaves at 5 p.m tomorrow.

Form
- He/ She/ It + v-s/es/y ies
- We/ You/ They + inf

Negative
- He/ She/ It + doesn't + inf.
- We/ You/ They + don't + inf.

5 Present continuous

Present continuous

- للأشياء التى تم ترتيبها مسبقا
 I'm having dinner with Ahmed next weekend.

Form
- I'm + v. ing
- He/ She/ It is + v. ing
- They/ We/ You are + v. ing

Negative
- I'm not + v. ing
- He/ She/ It isn't + v. ing
- They/ We/ You aren't + v. ing

Gem

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Unit (1)

1 She take this medicine because she isn't ill.
a) must b) doesn't have to c) had to d) has to

2 The players check their hearts before they were allowed to play.
a) have to b) needn't c) had to d) don't have to

3 In the past, football clubs check players' hearts; they believed it wasn't necessary.
a) didn't have to b) had to c) must d) don't have to

4 You visit the White Desert when you're in Farafra. It's amazing!
a) needn't b) didn't have to c) had to d) must

5 The manager travel to London to attend an important conference last week.
a) had to b) didn't have to c) doesn't have to d) mustn't

6 I wash my father's car; my brother had already washed it.
a) had to b) didn't have to c) don't have to d) mustn't

7 You whisper. Nobody can hear us.
a) must b) didn't have to c) have to d) don't have to

8 You drive so fast. It's very dangerous.
a) don't need b) don't have to c) must d) mustn't

9 Fahmy wear a tie at work. It's the rule of his company.
a) has to b) must c) have to d) mustn't

10 Yesterday, I stay at home with my brother as my parents were out.
a) has to b) must c) had to d) mustn't

11 Children play with matches or cleaning liquids.
a) have to b) must c) needn't d) mustn't

12 You take an umbrella. It isn't raining.
a) needn't to b) don't need to c) mustn't d) need to

13 You wash your hands before you eat.
a) must b) have c) need d) needn't

14 Yesterday, I meet my friend at the airport.
a) have to b) must c) had to d) need

15 We lock the car. It's safe here.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) can't d) shouldn't

16 You aren't permitted to stay here. You stay here.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) should

17 I'm going to the shops because I buy some tea.
a) must to b) don't need to c) need to d) has to

ALPHA Gem

18 In Egypt, most employees work 6 hours a day, 6 days a week.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) should d) have to

19 You pass your exams or the university will not accept you.
a) needn't b) have to c) didn't have to d) don't have to

20 You forget to do your homework tonight. The teacher wants it tomorrow.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have to d) must

Unit (2)

21 I'm not keen on football. For me, it is important sport.
a) the least b) the most c) the best d) the little

22 Mr Naser is the director that can solve your problems.
a) more intelligent b) intelligent c) most intelligent d) intelligence

23 He is of the two champions competing to win the race.
a) the best b) better than c) better d) the better

24 Some people think that the more money you have, the you become.
a) happy b) happier c) happiest d) more happy

25 The experience in my life was when I saw a big bear in the wild.
a) frightening b) least frightening
c) most frightening d) more frightening

26 You should buy the green trousers. They are the in the shop.
a) more expensive b) less expensive
c) expensive d) least expensive

27 Abeer and Omar are the same height. They are each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) as tall than d) more tall than

28 Mr. Hamdy is the teacher I've ever had. His students respect him much.
a) inspiring b) most inspiring c) much inspiring d) more inspiring

29 Tamer is a much calmer person than Omar, so before their exams Omar was much Tamer.
a) more nervous than b) nervous than
c) more nervous as d) more nervous

30 The animal which I have seen in Egypt is a camel.
a) most big b) biggest c) more big d) bigger

31 Video cassettes are not DVDs.
a) moderner than b) so modern so c) as modern like d) as modern as

32 This English exercise is the exercise in the book!
a) more challenging than b) more challenging
c) most challenging d) biggest challenging

33 No one in my family is my grandfather. He is the oldest person.
a) older than b) elder c) younger than d) the youngest

ALAWA Gem

34 All the other books in the library are than the book I am reading.
a) interesting b) most interesting
c) more interesting d) much interesting

35 The apple tree and the pear tree are both the same height. They are each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) most taller d) most tallest

36 Omar can run than all the other boys in his class.
a) much quickly b) most quickly c) quickly d) more quickly

37 water flooded into the house than I expected.
a) Few b) Less c) Much d) Most

38 There are people here than promised to come.
a) fewer b) many c) less d) much

39 Tennis is a far game than football.
a) hardest b) hard c) harder d) hardly

40 The more you protest, the guilty you look!
a) many b) much c) most d) more

Unit (3)

41 Scientists say that the satellite to Earth sometime this afternoon.
a) is going to fall b) is falling
c) falls d) won't fall

42 I've got a job in Luxor, so I there for the next two years.
a) was working b) will have worked
c) work d) will be working

43 He will tell me the details after he the boss.
a) meets b) will meet c) is going to meet d) is meeting

44 The government road repairs over the next two days.
a) do b) will do c) will be doing d) have done

45 It's unbelievable to think that this time tomorrow we to Matrouh.
a) will be driving b) will drive c) are going to drive d) drive

46 What next, now that you've finished your course?
a) do you do b) did you do
c) will you have done d) are you going to do

47 **A:** Chicken or meat, madam? **B:** I meat, please.
a) am having b) will have c) am going to have d) have

48 I won't have time to meet you next weekend, I'm afraid. I the school timetable for the next year.
a) will organise b) will be organising
c) organise d) will have organised

ALAWAM Gem

49 Ramy and his brothers two of the shops in our street before long.
a) are owning
b) will be owning
c) are going to own
d) own

50 to the supermarket today? Yes. Do you want me to get you something?
a) Will you have gone
b) Will you have been going
c) Are you going
d) Will you be gone

51 Look out! A car you.
a) will hit
b) may hit
c) is hitting
d) is going to hit

52 This time next week, I for the airport.
a) have left
b) will leave
c) will be leaving
d) leave

53 I have already told you why I can't see you tomorrow. I guests.
a) can have
b) am having
c) have
d) will have

54 The museum at 10 tomorrow morning as usual.
a) opens
b) will open
c) is opening
d) opening

55 I'm buying flour and eggs because I a cake.
a) will make
b) make
c) making
d) am going to make

56 Reham can't see her friend at the weekend as she relatives.
a) has visited
b) visiting
c) is visiting
d) visits

57 The match at 7.30. Don't call me at that time.
a) starts
b) will start
c) is starting
d) is going to start

58 He a geologist when he leaves university. This is his plan.
a) will become
b) has become
c) is going to become
d) becomes

59 In the future, we new cells from patients to repair parts of their body.
a) use
b) may be used
c) will be used
d) 'll be using

60 He in an hour. He has arranged that with his boss.
a) is leaving
b) will leave
c) is going to leave
d) leaves

ALAWAA Gem

2 Choose the correct answer:

My brother has been living in a new city for about 3 months now. There is no public transport , so he(1)..... (has to / needn't) drive everywhere. He(2)..... (has / had) to sign up for driving lessons a week ago. In order to get a licence, he(3)..... (needn't / has to) pass a test. There are a lot of laws that must(4)..... (follow / be followed). It's the law there that everyone(5)..... (mustn't / must) wear a seat belt. Luckily, he can work from home, so he(6)..... (needn't / has to) go to work every day.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

3 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the adjectives:

My father has bought a new house lately. It's lovely. It's much(1)..... (large) in size and looks(2)..... (modern) than our last one. I finally have a room that I don't have to share with my(3)..... (young) brother who is still in primary school. The neighbours are also very kind. They are definitely the(4)..... (friendly) people I have ever met. My room overlooks a(5)..... (wide) street than the old street. It's also the(6)..... (clean) street in the area.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

4 Choose the correct answer:

The first day of the term will(1)..... (be / have been) horrible, for everybody(2)..... (must / will) be talking about their holidays and the photographs of marvellous foreign beaches, and as I haven't been anywhere I(3)..... (will / can) feel terribly out of it. Certainly, my friends will(4)..... (ask / be asked) me about my vacation. I have decided that I(5)..... (tell / am going to tell) them the truth. This year I haven't visited any place, but this time next year, I will(6)..... (be having / have) fun on one of the best beaches in the world.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

ALPHA Gem

King Lear
Act (1) scenes (i - ii - iii - iv)

Key Vocabulary

anger	غضب
answer	رد/إجابة
attendants	الحاضرين
beauty	جمال
behave	يتصرف
cart	عربة
deceive	يخدع
deserve	يستحق
disguise	يتنكر
divide into	يقسم ... إلى
Duke	الدوق
duty	واجب
encourage	يشجع
exit	يخرج
foolish	أحمق
give away	يتخلى عن
guilty	مذنب
income	دخل
inheritance	ميراث
kingdom	مملكة
lie	يكذب
loyalty	انتماء/ولاء
riches	ثروة
rude	وقح
send away	ينفى/يبعد
servant	خادم
shout about	يتحدث بصوت عالى عن
sir	سيد
succeed	ينجح
sword	سيف
third	ثلث
title	لقب
trust	يثق فى/ثقة
truth	الحقيقة
wise	حكيم

Phrases & Expressions

give an answer	يقوم بالرد
have a plan	لديه خطة
have a taste of her own medicine	تتذوق نتيجة أفعالها
my heart is broken	قلبى محطم/حزين
say goodbye to	يودع
the cart is pulling the horse	العربة أمام الحصان

ALAWAIL Gem

Summary

Scene i

The play opens in King Lear's palace with a conversation between Kent, Gloucester, and Gloucester's son Edmund. We also learn that Gloucester has two sons. The older, Edgar, is his heir وريث , and the younger, Edmund. King Lear enters followed by his two sons-in-law — Albany and Cornwall — and his three daughters — Goneril, Regan, and Cordelia. Lear announces that he has divided his kingdom into three shares to be given to his daughters as determined by their declarations of love for him. Goneril, as the eldest, speaks first. She tells her father that her love for him is more than riches. Regan, as the middle child, speaks next. Her love, she says, is even greater than Goneril's. Finally, it is Cordelia's turn to express the depth of her love for her royal father. Cordelia replies that she loves him as a daughter should love a father, no more and no less. She reminds her father that she also will owe devotion ولاء to a husband when she marries, and therefore cannot honestly give all her love toward her father. Lear sees Cordelia's reply as rejection, saying that she will now be a stranger to him. King Lear then divides his kingdom between Goneril and Regan, giving each an equal share. Kent interferes يتدخل by asking Lear to reconsider his rash action. Lear, in anger, sends Kent away for defending Cordelia and for confronting تحدى/مواجهة the king. At Kent's departure, the King of France and Duke of Burgundy enter, both of whom are suitors خاطبين for Cordelia's hand in marriage. They are told that Cordelia will not receive a inheritance ميراث from her father. The King of France says that Cordelia is a prize, even without her share of Lear's kingdom, and announces his intent to marry Cordelia. Cordelia says goodbye to her sisters, and leaves with the King of France.

Scene ii

Edmund enters the scene — set in the Earl of Gloucester's house — talking out loud to himself. Edmund reveals يكشف his plan to undermine يقلل من his brother's position by tricking his father with a forged مزيف letter, which he presents to Gloucester in this scene. Edmund also succeeds in convincing Edgar that he's looking out for his brother's safety when he suggests that Edgar carry a sword as protection from their father's anger.

Scene iii

Set in the palace of Goneril and the Duke of Albany, this scene opens with Goneril asking her servant, Oswald, if Lear hit him. Oswald confirms the encounter. Goneril asked Oswald to keep Lear waiting when he needs something, and if the king is unhappy with this treatment معاملة, he should be told to move to Regan's palace. Goneril then commands her servants to treat the king's company with coldness since the king's soldiers are behaving badly.

Scene iiii

The setting is a hall in Goneril's palace. Kent, earlier banished منفى by Lear, reappears in disguise. Lear enters and begins asking Kent questions about his identity and his intent نية. Kent asserts his loyalty and willingness to serve the king. Kent's obvious admiration impresses Lear. When the king asks to see Goneril, Oswald leaves without responding to the request. A soldier reports that Goneril is unwell and unavailable. The soldier also tells Lear that all the members of Goneril's household are treating the king's entourage حاشية rudely. Goneril enters, complaining about the king's soldiers. Goneril demands that Lear reduce the number of soldiers in his service. In anger, the king declares that he will pack up his people and move to Regan's palace, where he is sure to receive a warmer reception.

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the tourists admired the of the beaches in Hurghada.
 a) stability b) rudeness c) beauty d) surprise
2. The restaurant owners were by a young man claiming to be the son of a millionaire.
 a) accepted b) deceived c) honoured d) awarded
3. Parents have a to make sure that their children receive a good education.
 a) duty b) right c) plan d) research
4. I advise you to give your old clothes to a charity as they are still good to wear.
 a) into b) off c) out d) away
5. You must feel about not visiting your parents more often.
 a) shy b) guilty c) innocent d) proud
6. The new owner of the club is a rich man who had a large from his parents.
 a) inheritance b) heritage c) loss d) act
7. A citizen's primary should be to his country.
 a) research b) right c) loyalty d) performance
8. The present duke inherited his and property from his father.
 a) rank b) address c) headline d) title
9. Working together is going to be difficult if you don't each other.
 a) agree b) trust c) trick d) deceive
10. As the actors the stage, the lights went on.
 a) decorated b) prevailed c) exited d) exempted
11. Who does King Lear want to give the largest part of his land to? SB
 a) The King of France. b) The daughter who loves him best.
 c) The daughter who is the oldest. d) The daughter who is the wisest.
12. How much does Goneril say she loves her father? SB
 a) More than health, beauty and riches. b) More than anyone else.
 c) As much as a daughter should love her father. d) More than her husband.
13. What does King Lear decide to do after listening to Cordelia? SB
 a) Give Cordelia all of his kingdom.
 b) Give his kingdom to his two other daughters.
 c) Give none of his daughters any of his kingdom.
 d) Give his kingdom to the dukes.
14. What does Kent tell King Lear? SB
 a) That he has made a bad decision. b) That he has made a good decision.
 c) That he wants to marry Cordelia. d) That he deceived his daughters.

ALAWAM Gem

SB

15 Who will Cordelia leave with?

a) The Duke of Burgundy.
b) The King of France.
c) The Duke of Kent.
d) The King's soldiers.

16 Edmund intends to undermine his brother's position to

a) fight with him
b) help him fight the king
c) get his money back
d) get his father's title and inheritance

17 Goneril asked her servants to

a) respect the king and do what he asked for at once
b) obey the king all the time
c) keep the king waiting when he needs something
d) accept the king's wishes

18 When King Lear visited Goneril's palace, she treated him

a) coldly
b) warmly
c) heartily
d) nicely

19 Kent came back in disguise in order to

a) trick the king
b) help the king
c) revenge himself
d) get the title

20 King Lear decided to move to Regan's palace because

a) Cordelia left England
b) his soldiers advised him to go there
c) Regan's husband treated him very well
d) Goneril complained about his soldiers

2 Answer the following critical thinking questions:

1 What do you think of King Lear's decision to divide his kingdom among his three daughters?

.....

.....

2 If you were King Lear, would you send Cordelia away for not saying much about her love for her father? Give reasons.

.....

.....

3 What do you think of the King of France's decision to marry Cordelia?

.....

.....

4 Although King Lear sent him away, Kent came back in disguise to help Lear. What does this show about him?

.....

.....

5 Do you think that King Lear will be treated better in Regan's palace? Why? Why not?

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

Test 1 Units 1-3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many Egyptian football fans Liverpool's winning of the Premier League because of Mohamed Salah.
 a) celebrated **b)** rejected **c)** recommended **d)** reminded
2. The Egyptian cuisine فن الطبخ has a lot of dishes which are liked by foreigners such as Mahshi and Koshari.
 a) traditional **b)** fashionable **c)** modernised **d)** recent
3. The head teacher angrily at our request to leave school early to watch the match.
 a) reacted **b)** represented **c)** introduced **d)** inspected
4. Our grandmother is a old woman, and we all value her advice.
 a) lazy **b)** distracted **c)** wise **d)** foolish
5. The police were able to arrest a terrorist before they could carry out any action.
 a) sign **b)** call **c)** tumour **d)** cell
6. Father always tells us to keep of his office.
 a) on **b)** out **c)** about **d)** up
7. You take things that don't belong to you.
 a) don't have to **b)** mustn't **c)** have to **d)** must
8. You buy a pen. I can lend you one.
 a) must **b)** need to **c)** don't need to **d)** have to
9. He visit his uncle as he was ill in hospital.
 a) has to **b)** is necessary to **c)** didn't have to **d)** had to
10. I work every day from 9 to 4. If I don't, I will be fired.
 a) don't have to **b)** must **c)** have to **d)** mustn't
11. That's by far dam I've ever seen.
 a) the large **b)** the larger **c)** the largest **d)** largest
12. My sister is probably person in my life.
 a) important **b)** the most important
 c) more important **d)** the more important
13. Out of the two of them, she was far and away singer.
 a) a better **b)** the good **c)** the best **d)** the better
14. According to the schedule, the bus at 8:00 tomorrow.
 a) will leave **b)** leaves
 c) is leaving **d)** is going to leave
15. Where do you think you when you're 50?
 a) shall work **b)** will be worked **c)** will be working **d)** work
16. In my opinion, the population of Egypt by 20% next year.
 a) is increasing **b)** has increased **c)** is going to increase **d)** will increase

© ALPWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You go to bed at night, close your eyes, and drift off to sleep. Have you ever wondered how exactly sleep works? Plus, where do dreams come from? When you fall asleep, you go through the four stages of the sleep cycle.

Stage 1. This is when you feel yourself becoming drowsy. Your muscles begin to relax and your brain activity slows down. Your eye movements are slow during Stage 1. It lasts several minutes and you can be woken up easily.

Stage 2. When your sleep becomes a bit deeper. You won't wake up as easily.

The slow eye movements continue and your brain waves slow down even more. Your body temperature goes down and your heart rate slows down.

Stage 3 is known as deep sleep. It's more difficult for you to be woken up. And although you are sleeping deeply, this is when sleepwalking or sleep talking occurs. So all those sleepwalkers out there may not actually remember doing anything strange in their sleep the next day.

Then finally, you move into REM. That stands for rapid eye movement. During the REM stage, your eyes move quickly beneath your closed eyelids. This is caused by certain brain activity. You may have vivid dreams during this stage. Your brain waves are more active than in Stages 2 and 3. They're similar to when you're awake. It's easier for someone to wake you up, but you may feel groggy or sleepy.

Once your REM phase is over, the cycle starts all over again with Stage 1.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 "You begin to feel drowsy. Your muscles relax." This happens in stage

a) one **b)** two

c) three **d)** four

18 What happens in stage two?

a) Sleepwalking or sleep talking occurs.

b) The person's body temperature goes down.

c) The person can be woken up easily.

d) The person may have vivid dreams.

19 The synonym of the word "drowsy " is

a) active **b)** vivid

c) sleepy **d)** awake

20 When you are asleep, the quick eye movement is caused by

a) the person's movement **b)** the person's thoughts

c) the light around the person **d)** certain brain activity

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What changes could you make to help yourself get enough sleep?

.....

.....

.....

22 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) happening at a quick pace.

b) a course of events that is repeated over and over again.

.....

.....

.....

23 In your opinion, what are the benefits of getting enough sleep?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think is better: sleeping during the day or the night? Why?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into English:**

- مع استمرار انتشار فيروس كوفيد-١٩ لجأت وزارة التربية والتعليم إلى وضع خطة للمزج بين التعليم فى المدارس والتعليم عبر الإنترنت لكى يعود الطلاب إلى المدارس هذا العام.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Peace among nations is vital. It gives every country the chance to carry out its development plans and it saves the money spent on wars and destructive weapons.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- The importance of friendship.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

Test 2 Units 1-3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Schools in Egypt must have their plans to prevent COVID-19
 a) perfection b) treatment c) infection d) vaccine
2. Teachers should be regularly trained on modern teaching to cope with modern education styles.
 a) processes b) techniques c) qualities d) quantities
3. Many young writers are used to getting in seminars of Cairo Book Fair.
 a) out b) away c) together d) up
4. Leaving my job was a decision to make as it was well-paid.
 a) foolish b) wise c) gentle d) complicated
5. The singer gave a/an performance that made all the fans excited.
 a) electronic b) electric c) election d) devastating
6. I can never the difference between these twins. They are much alike.
 a) do b) make c) design d) tell
7. When we are on holiday, we go to bed early.
 a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to
8. You smoke in hospitals. It's forbidden.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) didn't have to
9. **A:** What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?
 B: Well, it be big - that's not so important. But it have a nice garden - that's essential.
 A) mustn't/mustn't b) mustn't/must c) must/must d) needn't/must
10. The thing about being unemployed is having no money.
 a) worst b) better c) worse d) best
11. Tamer and Galal are easily students in my class.
 a) better b) good c) well d) the best
12. The slower you work, the the job will take you to finish.
 a) longest b) long c) longer d) more long
13. The computer seems to be more and in the future.
 a) more complex b) complex
 c) most complex d) the most complex
14. Get out of the building! It sounds like the generator
 a) explodes b) will explode
 c) is going to explode d) will be exploding
15. I think I home across the park. 'That's a good idea.'
 a) am walking b) am going to walk c) walk d) will walk
16. At this time tomorrow Sameh for his exam.
 a) will sit b) will be sitting c) has sat d) may sit

NAWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

All of us know how important recycling is. Recycling is when you take old things and turn them into new things. It sounds like magic. But it's actually very scientific.

Only certain materials can be recycled. These include things made out of paper, metal, glass and plastic. Can you think of everyday items made out of these materials? Soda cans are a good example. They are made out of metal. Magazines and newspapers are made out of paper. So are cereal boxes. Some bottles of juice are made out of glass. Bags and yogurt containers are made out of plastic. There are many things that can be recycled.

These things are usually stamped with the recycling loop. It has 3 arrows that go in a triangular circle. This shows that the cycle continues. Items are thrown away but continue their lives as something else. Once you put all your items in a recycling bin, a truck comes to pick them up. Everything goes to a recycling plant.

There, the materials get separated. They go into different piles. There are special machines that crush each pile together. The materials get squashed into square cubes. They are really heavy. You would need a forklift to carry them. Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products. Old paper is torn into tiny pieces. Then special water with chemicals is poured onto it. The fibers start to stick together. In time, a brand new roll of paper is created! If there were things written or printed on the first paper, they disappear.

Recycling keeps our planet healthy. It reduces waste. It also saves energy. You can do your part. So just remember the golden rule: always recycle your products!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 When old paper is transformed into new paper, what causes the fibers of the tiny pieces of paper to stick together?

a) A thick, sticky paste.
b) Special water with chemicals poured onto it.
c) A very strong glue.
d) A yellow powder.

18 Which one of the following isn't of the steps in the process of recycling?

a) The new recycled items are sold cheaper than the original ones.
b) The materials get separated into different piles.
c) Special machines crush each pile into a square cube.
d) Companies buy the cubes of crushed materials and turn them into new products.

19 What does the word "plant" mean in "Everything goes to a recycling plant."?

a) Tree.
b) Vegetable.
c) Factory.
d) Flower.

20 Recycling is a/an process.

a) difficult
b) old
c) easy
d) scientific

ALPHA Gem

B) Answer the following questions:

21 According to the article, give four examples of household items that can be recycled.

22 What do the three arrows of the recycling loop show?

23 What are two ways that recycling keeps our planet healthy?

24 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) to go out of view **b)** a box used to store things

25 Translate into English:

- يقال أن الأدب والفن هما مرآة المجتمع التى تعكس حضارته وقيمه التى تتطور على مر العصور لذا تهتم الدولة بهما وتحاول توفير الدعم اللازم لتطويرهما.

26 Translate into Arabic:

We should be optimistic and always think about the good sides in our life. Pessimism is a deadly enemy that defeats our hopes and hinders our ambitions.

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- Our duty towards our great heritage and ancient monuments.

ALAWA Gen

Test 3 Units 1-3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The paramedics couldn't CPR to the patient in the street, so they did that inside the ambulance.
 a) design **b)** assign **c)** make **d)** perform
2. The people who suffer illness due to COVID-19 are taken to intensive care units.
 a) severe **b)** gentle **c)** high **d)** simple
3. It is believed that taking care of people's health will certainly lead to an increase of in all fields.
 a) invention **b)** consumption **c)** destruction **d)** production
4. The young man took on extra work to increase his
 a) outcome **b)** income **c)** tax **d)** cost
5. We must remain alert for any of danger as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic.
 a) signs **b)** signatures **c)** landmarks **d)** notes
6. The students must finish the test within the of two hours, no more.
 a) location **b)** area **c)** space **d)** region
7. We paint the house. It hasn't been painted for many years.
 A) needn't **b)** don't have to **c)** need to **d)** mustn't
8. You eat a lot of fresh fruits to keep healthy.
 a) must to **b)** must **c)** needn't **d)** didn't have to
9. There's a lift in the building, so we climb the stairs.
 a) must **b)** mustn't **c)** have to **d)** don't have to
10. This house is the other one we saw.
 a) as big as **b)** much big as **c)** as bigger as **d)** the biggest
11. Your father is than anyone I have ever seen.
 a) a friend **b)** friendlier **c)** friendly **d)** more friendlier
12. It's becoming and harder to secure a good job nowadays.
 a) hard **b)** hardest **c)** harder **d)** hardly
13. The train to Alexandria from platform 5 at 10 p.m. This is the timetable.
 a) is leaving **b)** will be leaving **c)** will leave **d)** leaves
14. If I were you, I wouldn't walk across that old bridge. It looks like it
 a) is going to collapse **b)** will be collapsing **c)** will have collapsed **d)** collapses
15. Dr Sameh isn't in his office at the moment. In that case, I him at home.
 a) phone **b)** am phoning
 c) will phone **d)** will have phoned
16. Don't call her after half an hour. She a nap.
 a) will have **b)** will be having **c)** has **d)** is having

ALADWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the UK, the diseases connected to smoking are a big problem. Doctors think that the annual medical cost for lung cancer, heart disease, and other illnesses connected to smoking is between 12 and 35 million pounds.

And smoking costs society money in other ways. Between 27 and 61 billion pounds are spent each year on sick days when people don't go to work, on wages that you don't get when you don't go to work, and on work lost at the company when you are sick.

This money counts the wages from people who die of cancer at young age and stop paying taxes. This does not count fire started by cigarettes, which kill fifteen hundred people yearly and injure another four thousand. Smoking costs every man, woman and child in the UK from one hundred and ten to two hundred and fifty pounds each year in the lost work and wages. When you add another fifty to one hundred and fifty pounds yearly in insurance cost, that comes to one hundred and sixty to four hundred and ten pounds. If everyone stopped smoking, a family of four could have up to one thousand six hundred and forty pounds a year more.

In the end, the value of a non-smoking nation is not in pounds. The good health of the people is the true value for us all.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 If everyone stopped smoking, all the United Kingdom

a) would have more money **b)** would live longer

c) would have less money **d)** would have no more problems

18 Every year companies lose because of the disease.

a) money **b)** work

c) wages **d)** time

19 The true value for the UK of not smoking is

a) more working **b)** more taxes

c) good health **d)** more money

20 This text is about

a) taxes which are not paid by smokers

b) diseases that smokers get

c) how much smoking costs the UK

d) how much the UK gets if everyone stopped smoking

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How could families earn more money if they are non-smokers?

.....

.....

.....

22 Smoking cigarettes causes many problems other than the person's health. Show how.

.....

.....

.....

23 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) hurt **b)** importance

.....

.....

.....

24 In your opinion, what other problems does smoking cause?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into English:**

- يحذر كثير من الخبراء من الاستخدام المفرط للتليفون المحمول لأن ذلك قد يؤدى إلى مشكلات صحية ونفسية واجتماعية خطيرة وخاصة لدى الأطفال.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Besides being an important source of national income, tourism strengthens ties among the nations of the world. It also helps to spread peace, love and understanding.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an e-mail of (180) words to your friend about:**

The house you dream to live in.

Your name is Rania and your e-mail address is: rania10@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Hana and her e-mail address is: hana200@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWAM Gem

Revision (2) (Units 4-6)

Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

abbreviation (n)	اختصار
banner adverts (n)	إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)
beg (v) (ged)	يرجو/يتوسل
carol (n)	ترنيمة (أغنية دينية مسيحية)
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد
consult (v) (ed)	يستشير
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط
download (v) (ed)	يقوم بتنزيل ملفات
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى
fire (n) (v) (d)	نار/مدفأة/يطلق الرصاص/يفصل من العمل
follower (n)	متابع
formal (adj)	رسمى
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/لا يستحسن
innovator (n)	مبدع
linguist (n)	عالم لغوى
mean (adj) (v)	بخيل/يعنى/يقصد
misunderstand (v)	يسئ الفهم
necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة
pile (n)	كومة
post (n) (v) (ed)	نشر/ينشر (على الإنترنت)
reliable (adj)	موثوق فيه
search result (n)	نتيجة البحث
sigh (v) (ed) (n)	يتنهد/يتحسر/تنهيدة
sponsored adverts (n)	الإعلانات الممولة
subscribe (v) (d)	يشترك فى موقع
take down (v)	يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت
targeted advertising (n)	الإعلانات المستهدفة
tone (n)	نبرة صوت
update (v) (d)	يُحَدِث
upgrade (v) (d)	يرقى/ترقية
upload (v) (ed)	يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت
up-to-date (adj)	حديث
views (n)	مشاهدات

Helpful Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة
access (n)	مدخل/سبيل
acronym (n)	أوائل حروف الكلمات
actually (adv)	بالفعل
adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم
addicted (adj)	مدمن
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف
advantage (n)	ميزة

ALAWAA Gem

advertiser (n)	مُعلِن
aim (n)	هدف
apparently (adv)	بوضوح
appear (v) (ed)	يظهر
apply (v) (~~y~~ied)	يتقدم بطلب
arrangement (n)	ترتيب
assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع
author (n)	مؤلف
basic (adj)	أساسى
behaviour (n)	سلوك
blog post (n)	منشور على مدونة
boss (n)	رئيس العمل
breath (n)	نفس
browser (n)	متصفح
button (n)	زر
call (v) (ed)	يتصل
caption (n)	شرح/عنوان لمقال أو صورة
care (v) (d)	يهتم
character (n)	شخصية/حرف أو رمز بالكمبيوتر
cite (v) (d)	يستدعى
close (adj)	قريب/مقرب
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع
comment (n) (v) (ed)	تعليق/يعلق
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
confused (adj)	مرتبك
connect (v) (ed)	يصل
continue (v) (d)	يستمر
copy (n) (v) (~~y~~ied)	نسخة/ينسخ
criticise (v) (d)	ينتقد

deal (v)	يتناول/يتعامل
debate (n)	مناظرة
develop (v) (ed)	يطور
disappointed (adj)	محبط
donation (n)	تبرع
employee (n)	موظف
employer (n)	صاحب العمل
entertain (v) (ed)	يسلى/يستضيف
everyday (adj)	يومى
excuse (n)	عذر
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة/تجربة/يجرب/يمر بتجربة
expression (n)	تعبير
extra (adj)	إضافى
face-to-face	وجها لوجه
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل
fake (adj)	مزيف
feelings (n)	مشاعر
findings (n)	اكتشافات
forum (n)	منتدى
frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر
friendship (n)	صداقة
generous (adj)	كريم
gift (n)	هدية
guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن
guide (v) (d) (n)	يرشد/مرشد (كتاب إرشادى)
headline (n)	عنوان رئيسى
health (n)	صحة
highlight (v) (ed)	يسلط الضوء/عمل بارز
identity (n)	شخصية/هوية

ALAWAA Gem

ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل
image (n)	صورة
immediate (adj)	فورى
improve (v) (d)	يحسن
including	مشتملا على/بما فيه
increase (v) (d)	يزيد
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر على
install (v) (ed)	يركب جهاز/يثبت برنامج
instant (adj)	فورى/عاجل
interest (n)	اهتمام/يثير اهتمام
junk food (n)	الطعام السريع
knowledge (n)	معرفة
large (adj)	كبير
leader (n)	قائد
logical (adj)	منطقى
lovely (adj)	جميل
mark (n)	درجة/علامة
meeting (n)	اجتماع
memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
message (v) (d)	يرسل رسالة
moral (n)	مغزى/درس اخلاق/خُلق
necklace (n)	قلادة
nephew (n)	ابن الأخ (الأخت)
obvious (adj)	واضح
online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
own (v) (ed)	يمتلك
parcel (n)	طرد بريدى
personal (adj)	شخصى
platform (n)	منصة/رصيف القطار
poor (adj)	فقير/مسكين
positive (adj)	إيجابى
powerful (adj)	قوي/ذو نفوذ
presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
pretty (adj)	جميل
privacy (n)	خصوصية
procedure (n)	إجراء
profile (n)	الملف الشخصى
prompt (n)	مثير/محفز
proper (adj)	مناسب/صحيح
provide (v) (d)	يوفر/يزود
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر (كتب/مجلات)
purpose (n)	غرض
race (n)	سباق
rain (n) (v) (ed)	مطر/تمطر
rank (n) (v) (ed)	رتبة/يضع فى رتبة (ترتيب)
recognisable (adj)	يمكن تمييزه/مميز
record (v) (ed) (n)	يسجل/سجل
register (v) (ed)	يسجل
regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
relationship (n)	علاقة
remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/يظل
reply (v) (~~y~~ied)	يرد
represent (v) (ed)	يمثل/ينوب عن
request (n)	طلب
require (v) (d)	يتطلب
resource (n)	منبع/مورد

ALAWWAL Gem

response (n)	رد/استجابة
reunion (n)	إعادة جمع (اتحاد)/لم الشمل
scan (v) (ned)	يتصفح (يقرأ) بسرعة
section (n)	قسم
series (n)	سلسلة
site (n)	موقع
skim (v) (med)	يتصفح (يقرأ) للبحث عن شئ محدد
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
spread (v)	ينشر
stamp (n) (n) (ed)	وسم/يوسم/يختم
steal (v)	يسرق
sub-heading (n)	عنوان فرعى
suddenly (adv)	فجأة
suitable (adj)	مناسب
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
symbol (n)	رمز
task (n)	مهمة
teen (n)	مراهق
teenager (n)	مراهق
title (n)	عنوان
treat (v) (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد
upset (v) (ed) (adj)	يضايق/يزعج/منزعج
version (n)	إصدار/نسخة (من برنامج)
victim (n)	ضحية
voice (n)	صوت آدمى
warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
waste (v) (d)	يهدر/يسرف
wish (v) (ed) (n)	يتمني/أمنية

Expressions & Idioms

according to	طبقا لـ
after all	على أية حال
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ
as usual	كالمعتاد
at that time	فى ذلك الوقت
at the beginning	فى البداية
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر
change his mind	يغير رأيه
do a blog post	يعد لمنشور على مدونة
do a history essay	يعد مقال تاريخى
do exercise	يمارس تمرينات
do research	يقوم ببحث علمى
do the same	يفعل نفس الشىء
ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة
feel healthy	يشعر بصحة جيدة
feel sad	يشعر بالحزن

ALWAN Gem

feel sorry	يشعر بالأسى
feel special	يشعر أنه مميز
feel uncomfortable with	يشعر بعدم الراحة مع
for ages	لعصور(لفترة طويلة)
get burnt	يحترق/يتأثر بحرارة الشمس
get lost	يضل الطريق
get upset	يصبح منزعجا
get worse	يسوء
give advice	يعطى نصيحة
give opinion	يعطى رأيا
go online	يستخدم الإنترنت
have a cold	يصاب بالبرد
have a problem	لديه مشكلة
have access to	يمتلك (يحصل على) وسيلة للوصول إلى
have an effect on	له تأثير على
have experience in	لديه خبرة بـ
have much fun	يتمتع بمرح كبير
in a few years' time	فى خلال سنوات قليلة
in general	بشكل عام
in person	شخصيا
in short	باختصار
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارا جديدة

keep warm	يحافظ على الدفء
keep safe	يحافظ على آمنا
keep entertained	يسلى/يجعلهم مسرورين
keep attention on	يبقى اهتماما بـ
keep in contact with	يبقى على اتصال مع
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
lose touch	يفقد الاتصال
make communication quicker	يجعل الاتصالات أسرع
make different sounds	يصدر أصواتا مختلفة
make friends	يصادق/يكون صداقات
make rules	يضع القواعد
miss the train	يفوته القطار
on your own	بمفردك
pass an exam	يجتاز اختبار
pay attention to	يهتم بـ
post personal information	ينشر معلومات شخصية
share sad moments	يشارك اللحظات الحزينة
stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
take a selfie	يأخذ صورة شخصية (أمامية)
take an interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ
take notes	يدون ملاحظات
that's why	لهذا السبب

© ALAWAM Gem

Prepositions

adapt to	يتأقلم مع
add to/into	يضيف إلى
advice about	نصيحة بشأن
apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة
argue with	يجادل مع
ask for	يطلب
bad for	سيء لـ
breath out	زفير
bring back	يعيد ذكريات
careful about	حريص بشأن
chat with	يدردش مع
deal with	يتعامل مع
disagree with	لا يتفق مع
divided into	مقسم إلى
fall out	يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع
feel about	يشعر بشأن
find out	يكتشف
full of	ملىء بـ
get into	يبدأ (الاستمتاع/الاهتمام بـ)
get on with	ينسجم مع
go back	يرجع
go past	يمر بـ
hang out with	يقضى وقتا مع
information about	معلومات عن
interested in	مهتم بـ
loads of	كثير من
pay for	يدفع مقابل
plenty of	وفرة (كثير) من
run off	يجرى بعيدا
set of	مجموعة من
share with	يشارك مع
smile at	يبتسم بوجه
suitable for	مناسب لـ
take away	يأخذ بعيدا عن
talk about	يتحدث عن
talk to	يتحدث إلى
thank for	يشكر على
work for	يعمل لصالح
worry about	يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يتأقلم	adaptation	تأقلم	adapted	متأقلم
addict	يدمن	addict addiction	مدمن إدمان	addictive addicted	يؤدى إلى الإدمان مدمن
advertise	يعلن عن	advertiser advertisement	مُعلِن إعلان	----------	
aim	يهدف	aim	هدف	aimless	بلا هدف
appear	يظهر	appearance	ظهور/مظهر	apparent	واضح/ظاهر

Al-Wa7a Gem

apply	يطبق	application (app)	تطبيق	applicable	يمكن تطبيقه		
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	assisting	مساعد		
browse	يتصفح	browse browser	تصفح متصفح	----------			
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعى		
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصالات	communicative	اتصالى		
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative compared	نسبى مقارن		
connect	يتصل	connection	اتصال	connected	متصل		
consult	يستشير	consultation	إستشارة	consultative	إستشارى		
continue	يستمر	continuation	استمرار	continuous	مستمر		
criticise	ينتقد	criticism	نقد/انتقاد	critical criticised	نقدى منتقد		
donate	يتبرع	donor donation	متبرع تبرع	----------			
employ	يوظف	employment employee employer	توظيف موظف صاحب العمل	employed employable	موظف صالح للعمل		
entertain	يسلى	entertainment	تسلية/ترفيه	entertaining	مسلى		
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر		
fail	يفشل	failure	فشل/شخص فاشل	failing	فاشل		
guess	يخمن/يظن	guessing	تخمين/ظن	----------			
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorance	جهل	ignorant	جاهل		
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالى (مبدع) خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)		
improve	يحسن	improvement improving	تحسين/تحسن تحسين	improved	محسن		
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ		
innovate	يبدع	innovation innovator	إبداع مبدع	innovative	إبداعى		
memorise	يحفظ	memory	ذاكرة	memorable	بارز/جدير بالذكر		
recognise	يتعرف على/يميز	recognition	تمييز	recognisable	مميز/يمكن تمييزه		

ALADWA Gem

record	يسجل	record	سجل	recorded recordable	مسجل قابل للتسجيل
register	يسجل	registration	تسجيل	----------	
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	ندم	regrettable regretful	مأسوف عليه نادم
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه
represent	يمثل	representation	تمثيل/إنابة عن	representative	ممثل
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب	----------	
----------		similarity	تشابه	similar	متشابه
subscribe	يشترك فى	subscription	اشتراك	----------	
suppose	يفترض/يظن	supposition	افتراض	supposed	من المفترض
treat	يعامل/يعالج	treatment	معاملة/علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى
waste	يهدر/يسرف	waste	هدر/إسراف	wasteful	مبذر

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust	reject يرفض/ينبذ
adult	بالغ	grown-up	adolescent طفل
apparently	بوضوح	obviously	unlikely غير محتمل
appear	يظهر	come out	disappear يختفى
assistant	مساعد	helper	opponent خصم
basic	أساسى	main	minor فرعى/غير أساسى
beg	يرجو/يتوسل	request	give يعطى
care	يهتم	pay attention	ignore يتجاهل
compare	يقارن	contrast	discard يستبعد
criticise	ينتقد	condemn	approve يستحسن
deal	يتعامل	handle	refuse يرفض
debate	مناظرة	argument	agreement اتفاق
disappointed	محبط	depressed	cheerful مرح
donation	تبرع	charity	blockage غلق/منع
entertain	يسلى/يستضيف	amuse	annoy يضايق
fake	مزيف	forged	genuine أصلى/حقيقى

Al Awa Gen

fantastic	رائع	wonderful		boring	ممل
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss		employ	يوظف
frown	يعبس بوجهه/يقطب حواجبه	disapprove		approve	يستحسن
generous	كريم	hospitable		mean	بخيل
guess	يخمن/يظن	suppose		question	يتساءل
highlight	يسلط الضوء على	focus		neglect	يهمل
honest	مخلص/أمين	sincere		deceitful	مخادع
instant	فورى/عاجل	immediate		delayed	مؤجل
interest	اهتمام	concern		indifference	لا مبالاة
memory	ذكرى	remembrance		forgetfulness	نسيان
misunderstand	يسئ الفهم	misjudge		understand	يفهم
modern	حديث	contemporary		old/ancient	قديم
obvious	واضح	apparent		ambiguous	غامض
organise	ينظم	arrange		ruin	يدمر
privacy	خصوصية	secrecy		publicity	دعاية/شهرة
procedure	إجراء	method		inaction	عدم إجراء
prompt	مثير/محفز	hint		discouraging hindrance	مثبط إعاقة
proper	مناسب/صحيح	convenient		improper	غير مناسب
recognisable	مميز	definite		ambiguous	غامض
register	يسجل	enroll		erase	يمحو/يزيل
regret	يأسف/يندم	repent		praise	يمدح
relationship	علاقة	connection		separation	انفصال
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy		dishonest	غير أمين
represent	يمثل	serve		differ	يختلف
request	طلب	demand		reply	يرد
require	يتطلب	involve		offer	يعرض
response	رد/استجابة	reaction		request	طلب
similar	مشابه	alike		different	مختلف
subscribe	يشترك فى	contribute		refuse	يرفض
support	دعم	assistance		discouragement	عدم تشجيع
survey	دراسة/تقييم	analysis		negligence	إهمال
task	مهمة	duty		irresponsibility	انعدام المسئولية
treat	يعامل	deal with		abandon	يترك
upgrade	يرقى	promote		reduce	يقلل/يخفض
warn	يحذر	alert		mislead	يخدع
waste	يسرف/يهدر	exhaust		maintain	يحافظ على

Notes on Vocabulary

1	everyday (adj) يومى (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم)	Stress has become one of the common qualities of everyday life.
	every day (adv) كل يوم (ظرف)	When I was young, I used to play football every day.
2	communicate يتواصل/يتفاهم	Many people all over the world use English to communicate with others.
	contact يتصل بـ/يحتك بـ/اتصال	Anyone with tickets will be contacted by phone. Have you kept in contact with any of your friends from school?
	connect يصل/يربط بين شيئين	A ferry connects the island with the mainland.
3	meeting (اجتماع) لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد	The club's monthly meeting will be held next Monday evening.
	conference (مؤتمر) لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة	The 1991 Middle East peace conference was in Madrid.
	interview (مقابلة شخصية) لوظيفة/صحافة/إذاعة	The magazine has an exclusive interview with the couple.
	appointment (موعد) مع صديق/طبيب	Why don't you make an appointment with one of our doctors?
4	يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل بأكثر من صيغة 1. make + مفعول + (to المصدر بدون) 2. make + مفعول + adjective 3. make + it + adjective + (to + المصدر)	My parents always made us do our homework before going to bed. The writer's first novel made him famous. Modern means of communication make it easy to share ideas with all people.
5	debate مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون	The university is hosting a debate on gun control between the main candidates.
	discussion مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شىء مهم)	Discussions about the peace plan took place in Washington last week.
6	society المجتمع (عموم الناس الذين يربطهم قانون واحد وتنظيمات واحدة)	We need to do more to help the poorer members of our society.
	community المجتمع/الجالية/جماعة (الناس الذين يعيشون فى منطقة أو مدينة واحدة)	Small rural communities rely on agriculture.

ADWA Gem

7	title	١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية) ٢- لقب ٣- مسمى وظيفى
	address	١- عنوان (مكان) ٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى ٣- خطاب/يخاطب
8	load	يحمل (بضائع/برامج)
	unload	يفرغ حمولة
	overload	يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)
	download	يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت
	upload	يرفع إلى الإنترنت
9	effective	(مؤثر/فعّال) له تأثير
	impressive	مؤثر (يترك انطباعًا جيدًا)
	affecting	مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)
10	experience	١- خبرة (اسم غير معدود) ٢- تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)
	experiment	تجربة (علمية/معملية)
11	publish	(ينشر)ومن الممكن أن تبنى للمجهول
	spread	١- ينتشر/يمتد ٢- ينشر (خبرًا/إشاعة/مرضًا)
12	each نستخدم (each) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، كل واحد فى مرة	
	every نستخدم (every)عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معًا، فى مجموعة تعنى (كل شئ) أو (الجميع) أو (الكل)	
13	platform رصيف القطار/منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث) منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعى)	
	pavement	رصيف الشارع

- What's the title of her new book?
- The title "Mr." is used with a grown-up male.
- He has an impressive job title in the company.
- Write your name, address, and phone number in the spaces provided.
- Do you have the address of our website?
- She was asked to give a formal address at the ceremony.
- The port workers are loading the truck now.
- It was my job to unload the boxes from the van.
- The truck was overloaded with wood.
- Wait until the program has finished downloading.
- It might take 10 minutes to upload these files to the Internet.
- You need more effective communication within the organisation.
- The list of Mohamed Salah's achievements is pretty impressive.
- King Lear is really an affecting drama with the death of the hero.
- You don't need any experience to work here.
- I had a bad experience in the last place I worked in.
- Researchers now need to conduct further experiments.
- The newspaper is published daily.
- Cholera spread quickly through the refugee camp.
- Some websites help spread rumours about people.
- Grill the fish for five minutes on each side.
- Each of these people has some useful talent or experience.
- I can remember every detail of our conversation.
- The train to Paris will depart from platform 3.
- The two candidates shared a platform for the question and answer session.
- Facebook is the most famous social platform all over the world.
- The man suddenly stepped off the pavement into the road.

ALAWA Gem

14	represent	يمثل/ينوب عن (منظمة/مجموعة)	Mr Michael was chosen to represent the company at the conference.
	act	١- يتصرف	He's been acting strangely ever since his mom died.
		٢- يمثل (يقوم بدور) فى فيلم/مسرحية/مسلسل/اعلان	She is acting the role of Lady Macbeth six evenings a week.
15	treat	يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)	The clinic has treated several thousand patients free of charge.
	cure	يعالج/يشفى (من مرض)	The doctor managed to cure her of her illness.
	heal	تلتئم (الجروح والكسور)	This will help to heal your cuts and scratches.
16	work with	يعمل/يتعامل مع	He joined a course to learn how to work with disabled children.
	work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	My father works for a small factory which makes children's clothes.
			We all should work for making our country a better place to live in.
	work in	يعمل فى	My friend hopes to work in the field of computer software.
	work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The researchers are working on a new machine to save energy.
	work as	يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My cousin has been working as a police officer for fifteen years.
17	let	يترك/يسمح المصدر بدون (to)	My teacher lets our class do a quiz before the lesson.
	make	يجعل (المصدر بدون to)	My teacher makes our class do a quiz before the lesson.
	cause	يسبب المصدر (to)	The corona crisis caused a lot of factories to close down.
	allow	يسمح (المصدر + to)	We refused to allow our children to stay up until midnight.
18	memory	ذاكرة/ذكرى (شئ معنوى غير ملموس)	He suffered memory loss for weeks after the accident.
			Her poems are often based on childhood memories.
	souvenir	تذكار (شئ مادى يُذكر برحلة/حدث)	I bought the ring as a souvenir of Greece.
	anniversary	ذكرى سنوية	He bought her a diamond ring on their tenth wedding anniversary.
19	title	عنوان رئيسى فى جريدة أو مجلة لمقال أو خبر/عنوان كتاب/لقب لوظيفة	The title of the first chapter is "Getting Started."
	subtitle	١- عنوان فرعى (تحت عنوان رئيسى)/عنوان فرعى لكتاب	The opera's subtitle is 'The School for Lovers'.
		٢- ترجمة لفيلم أو فيديو تظهر مكتوبة أسفل الصورة	The film is in Chinese with English subtitles.
	caption	تعليق مكتوب فوق أو تحت صورة مطبوعة أو منشورة	The caption on the picture says "This year's contest winners."

ALPHA Gen

Prefix / Suffix

Prefix البادئة

- البادئة هى مجموعة من الحروف تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديد ومنها (mis- re – un) واستخدام كل منها كالتالى:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples			
mis	تعطى معنى يسئ	misunderstand	يسئ الفهم	misuse	يسئ الاستخدام
re	تعطى معنى مرة ثانية	reread	يعيد قراءة	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
un	تعطى العكس	undo	يلغى العمل	unrecognisable	لا يمكن تمييزه

Suffix اللاحقة

هى مقاطع تضاف إلى آخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديد أو لتحديد نوع الكلمة ومنها (able- er - less) واستخدام كل منها كالتالى:

Suffix	Meaning	Examples			
able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	understandable	يمكن فهمه	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	carer	مهتم/مراعى	writer	كاتب
less	تعطى العكس	careless	غير حريص	useless	بلا فائدة

ALAWAA Gem

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1 are used in text messages to save space and time.
a) Sentences b) Abbreviations c) Essays d) Forms

2 A advert is an advertisement that appears across the top of a page on the internet.
a) banner b) radio c) cookie d) hidden

3 You should not attempt these heavy exercises without first your doctor.
a) preventing b) applying c) advising d) consulting

4 Most websites use to arrange the content of the website in a way that matches your preferred interests.
a) antiviruses b) versions c) cookies d) updates

5 The new program makes videos and songs from the internet faster.
a) downloading b) loading c) uploading d) overloading

6 Sometimes I'm lazy and just send a heart in a message to show how I feel about something.
a) character b) emoji c) abbreviation d) signal

7 The factory owner had to several workers due to the economic crisis.
a) hire b) deploy c) fire d) apply

8 Father with annoyance when he read my younger brother's bad school reports.
a) smiled b) smelled c) signed d) frowned

9 Omar Khairat is known as a great in the field of modern Egyptian music.
a) user b) innovator c) consumer d) inviter

10 Don't me—I'm not criticizing your decision.
a) mismanage b) misuse c) misunderstand d) misbehave

11 I found the missing certificate in a of documents on my desk.
a) pile b) hole c) hill d) pool

12 More details about the new invention will be on the website tomorrow.
a) passed b) delivered c) spread d) posted

13 You must look for scientific information only from sources.
a) removable b) reusable c) reliable d) complex

14 The clerk wearily بضجر as he looked at all the documents he had to do.
a) laughed b) sighed c) perplexed d) marked

15 To watch the full movie, you should to the official website.
a) subscribe b) ascribe c) describe d) unsubscribe

16 The criminal's sounded sincere but I knew he was lying.
a) sign b) tone c) mark d) stone

17 The computer company has just recently their server software.
a) doubled b) duplicated c) dated d) updated

18 Windows users can it to the new version if their own version is original.
a) upload b) enroll c) upgrade d) rule

ALAWAM Gem

19 The famous actor's posts and videos receive millions of from his fans.
a) sponsors b) views c) prizes d) awards

20 The homeless boy came to a free meal from the cafe owner.
a) beg b) order c) reply d) deliver

Helpful Vocabulary

21 The lazy student that he had made a mistake.
a) adapted b) advised c) admitted d) devised

22 All governments should provide people with their needs like food, shelter and security.
a) luxurious b) free c) basic d) costly

23 The organisation will be hosting a two-day on childcare.
a) procedure b) search c) interview d) forum

24 The report the importance of exercise to maintain a healthy body.
a) lined b) highlighted c) dimmed d) signalled

25 You should be careful about the programs you on your mobile.
a) inhale b) export c) install d) report

26 You have to register to be able to post a/an in this website.
a) comment b) mark c) letter d) abbreviation

27 Mother stood looking at me with an angry when she saw the broken vase.
a) impression b) depression c) progression d) expression

28 The wedding of the famous actor and actress made news.
a) address b) headline c) subtitle d) tale

29 All the information you need for the report is now available from many websites.
a) inline b) off line c) online d) airline

30 We should all be about the future of our country.
a) positive b) negative c) affirmative d) affective

31 The of joining the club will take two weeks at least.
a) timetable b) procedure c) program d) timing

32 The bird is easily because of its bright red feathers.
a) available b) acceptable c) recognisable d) affectionate

33 The new Facebook policy is designed to protect the of your personal information.
a) publicity b) property c) prosperity d) privacy

34 The use of computer technology has into all fields of work.
a) published b) printed c) spread d) copied

35 Mandela became a of searching for freedom and honesty.
a) flag b) symbol c) view d) sight

36 You can get only a free trial from the antivirus website.
a) version b) session c) perfection d) fiction

37 The charity thanked the businessman for the generous to help the poor.
a) request b) expense c) donation d) cost

38 My friend says he's unable to give up smoking; he's completely
a) affected b) addicted c) reflected d) infected

GLADWIN Gem

39 The password of the twitter account may be up to 12 long.
a) characters b) words c) expressions d) personalities

40 Everyone difficult problems at some time in their lives.
a) exhales b) experiments c) expires d) experiences

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes

41 My friend believes that nothing will make him his mind about his work.
a) change b) make c) intense d) avoid

42 My younger brothers seem to argue each other all the time.
a) at b) with c) about d) over

43 My parents have been the most people in my life.
a) influence b) influencing c) influential d) influenced

44 The verb "maintain" can be the opposite to the verb
a) accept b) preserve c) keep d) waste

45 My father has lots of happy of his stay in Saudi Arabia which he will never forget.
a) memories b) souvenirs c) anniversaries d) occasions

46 Ahmed had to buy a lot of different numbers of magazines to..... his research.
a) make b) devise c) do d) discover

47 The minister will make a/an to the Parliament to explain the new plan.
a) title b) reform c) report d) headline

48 Samy spent most of the day out with his school friends.
a) improving b) removing c) hurting d) hanging

49 We decided not to tell mum about losing the mobile as she'll upset.
a) fall b) get c) make d) give

50 I was able to in touch with some of my friends after university.
a) lose b) miss c) guard d) keep

51 The museum has a big of ancient Egyptian statues.
a) collect b) collection c) collective d) collected

52 The young man had out with his parents before moving out.
a) got b) woken c) fallen d) flown

53 The young doctor is attending a three-day on new treatments of the virus.
a) conference b) meeting c) interview d) appointment

54 The adjective "genuine" is an antonym to the adjective
a) original b) fake c) modern d) native

55 The new secretary seems to get with everybody in the company.
a) at b) off c) below d) on

56 The group of the manager will include representatives from all areas of the company.
a) consult b) consultant c) consultative d) consuming

57 The verb "condemn" is similar in meaning to the verb
a) criticise b) reward c) praise d) approve

58 The word "concern" is a synonym to the word
a) negligence b) apology c) interest d) ignorance

ALAWAM Gem

59 Antibiotics are still the most treatment for some diseases.

a) effective **b)** affecting **c)** impressive **d)** sorrowful

60 The athlete was given the VIP after winning gold for her country at the Olympics.

a) treat **b)** treatment **c)** treated **d)** treatable

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

linguists – rise – save – media – emojis - abbreviations

With the popularity and(1)..... in use of online text-based communications came a new texting language, tailored to the new communication(2)..... . Today, text and chat(3)..... are used in many online communications including Twitter, instant messaging, email, and in online games. In time, ...(4)..... which look like pictures were also introduced to messages and chats. Some(5)..... think that this can affect language badly. However, young people think that this is part of the development in all fields and this can(6)..... time and efforts.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

passwords – download – website – post – privacy – online

There are some simple rules which you must follow if you want to stay safe online. Don't(1)..... any personal information online – like your address, email address or mobile number. Think carefully before posting pictures or videos of yourself. Once you've put a picture of yourself(2)..... most people can see it and may be able to(3)..... it, it's not just yours anymore. Keep your(4)..... settings as high as possible. Never give your.....(5)..... to anyone. Don't meet up with people you've met online. Speak to your parents or teachers about people suggesting you do. If you see something online that makes you feel uncomfortable, unsafe or worried: leave the(6)....., turn off your computer if you want to and tell a trusted adult immediately.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

4 Choose the correct answer:

The internet has made meeting new people who share your interests / conflicts so much easier! However, making friends online is still a topic for much agreement / debate. Like most other things, online friendships have their pros and savings / cons. You can be friends with people from different countries. The internet has no boundaries, it allows you to meet people from all over the world. You won't meet most of them in fictional / real life. Maybe some of your online friends live close / remote enough and you will arrange meetings with them, but you surely won't be able to meet all of your online friends. You will never be able to stay / hang out together, laugh at stupid jokes or go to the cinema with them.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

Language

Unit (4)

Could/couldn't have + past participle
Should/shouldn't have + past participle

1 Could + inf.

Could

- Affirmative: كل الضمائر + could + inf.
- Negative: كل الضمائر + couldn't + inf.
- ١- طلب مؤدب فى المضارع
 Could you help me carry this bag?
- ٢- للاقتراح فى المضارع
 You could study science at college.
- ٣- للتوصيات
 You could read Hamlet. It's fantastic.
- ٤-للمقدرة فى الماضى
 I could swim when I was 10.
- ٥-تستخدم couldn't لعدم المقدرة فى الماضى
 I couldn't answer all the questions.

2 Could have + P.P.

Could have + P.P.

- Affirmative: could have + P.P.
- Negative: couldn't have + P.P.
- ١- احتمال حدوث شىء فى الماضى
 Ali could have got the licence.
- ٢- شىء كان فى الاستطاعة ولكن لم يحدث
 I could have booked 2 tickets, but I booked only one.
- ٣- تستخدم couldn't have + P.P. عن استحالة حدوث شىء فى الماضى.
 My father couldn't have paid the pill. He didn't have the money.

3 Should/shouldn't have + P.P. for regrets للندم

Rule	Meaning
should have + P.P. ought to have + P.P.	to talk about regret in the past. للتعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغى فعل شىء ولم نفعله)
e.g. He should have looked for another job. He is now penniless.	
shouldn't have + P.P. oughtn't to have + P.P.	to say that something in the past wasn't a good idea. شىء حدث فى الماضى ولم يكن واجبًا فعله
e.g. I shouldn't have wasted much time. I'm sorry for this now.	

Gem

Reported speech (الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر
Reported imperatives, requests, suggestions and advice
(الأمر والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة)

١- لتحويل الأوامر والطلبات والنصيحة إلى غير المباشر، نستخدم مجموعة من الأفعال التى يتبعها مفعول غير مباشر ثم فعل فى المصدر مع to
verb + object + to/not to + inf.

advise	يَنْصَح	help	يُسَاعِد	teach	يُعَلِّم
ask	يَسْأَل	instruct	يُوَجِّه/يُعَلِّم	tell	يخبر
encourage	يُشَجِّع	invite	يَدْعُو	want	يُرِيد
expect	يَتَوَقَّع	order	يَأْمُر	warn	يُحَذِّر

- "Bring your books tomorrow."
 - The teacher *told / asked /ordered* us *to bring* our books the next day.
- "If I were you, I'd do my homework daily."
 - My mother *advised* me *to do* my homework daily.
- "Don't come late again."
 - My teacher *advised* me *not to* come late again.
- "Join the local club to do sports."
 - Ali *encouraged* his friend *to join* the local club to do sports.

٢- لا نجد علامات الاقتباس فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها بـ to/not to ثم المصدر.

٣- إذا كان فعل القول ماضٍ فلا يوجد إلا المصدر الذى بعد to والحالات الخاصة.

٤- يتم تحويل الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان كما فى النوعين الخبرى والاستفهامى.

Unit (5)

1 seem

seem

١- seem to + inf. بمعنى يبدو وتفيد الشك
Ali seems to be nervous.

٢- seem + adj.
You seem happy today.

٣- It seems that + sentence
It seems that he is getting better.

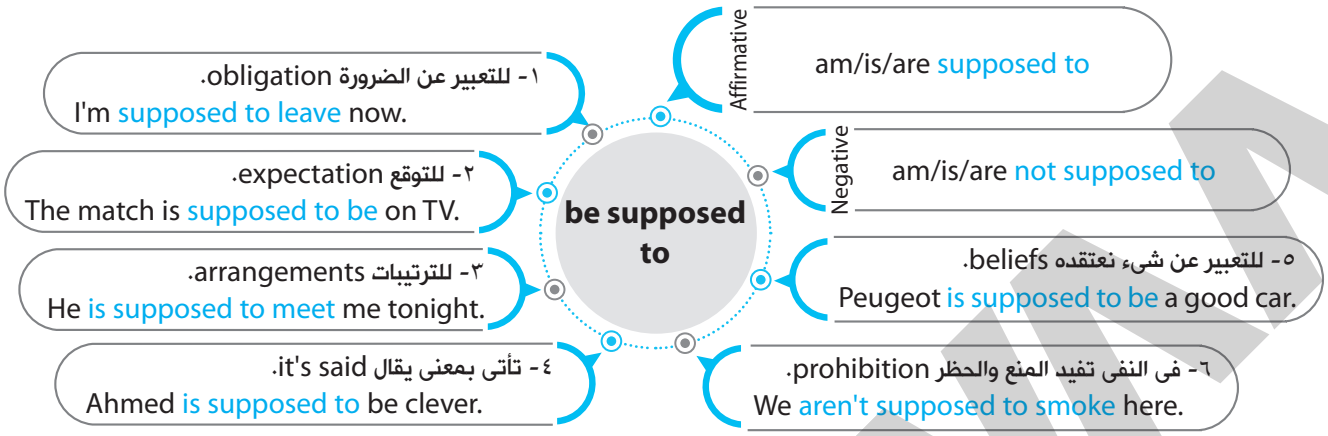
Affirmative
I/they/we/you seem
He/she/it seems

Negative
I/they/we/you don't seem
He/she/it doesn't seem

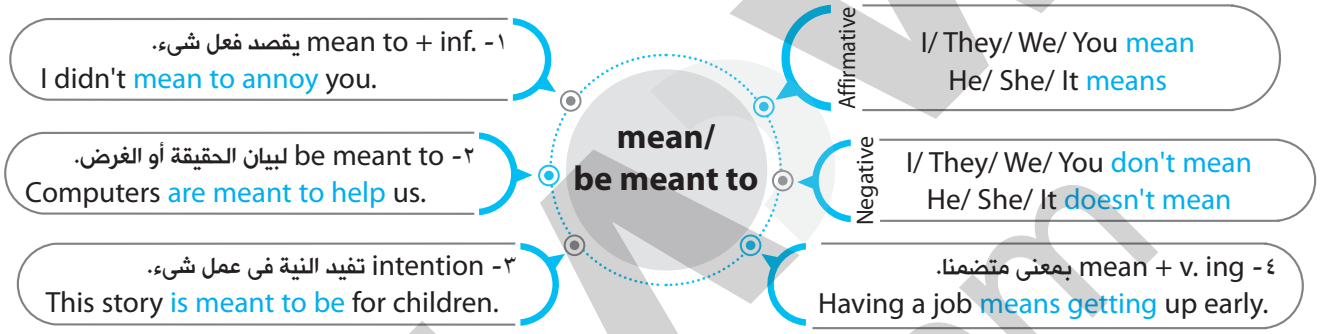
٤- seem like + noun
It seems like a good idea to live here.

ALADWAA Gem

2 be supposed to



3 mean/be meant to



Unit (6)

The conditionals

1 The zero conditional



تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية (شيء لا نتحكم فيه).

If/When you drop something, it falls to the ground.

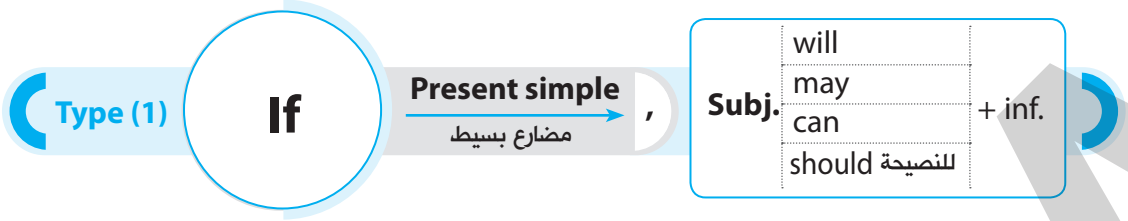
If/When we heat air, it rises.

وتستخدم الحالة الصفرية أيضا مع الأشياء التى أصبحت عادة لدى الشخص.

If/When I have a fever, I stay in bed.

If/When I use the computer for long, I always have a headache.

2 The first conditional



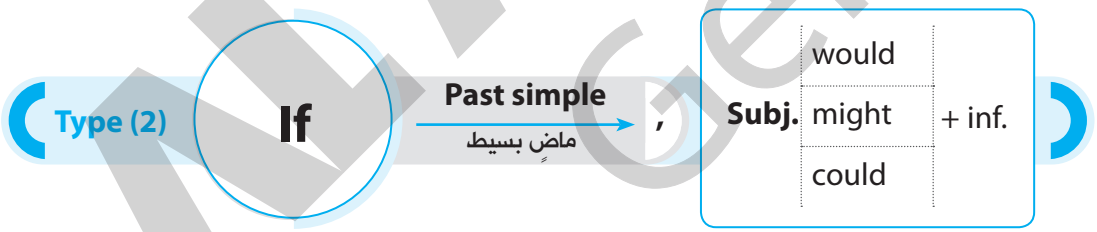
نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.

If Ali arrives late again, the headmaster will punish him.
If she doesn't earn much money, she won't be able to fly to the USA.

استخدامات خاصة فى جواب شرط الحالة الأولى

	جملة جواب الشرط	
If الحالة الأولى	should/'d better	If you want to succeed, you should study hard.
	must/have to	If you are robbed, you have to tell the police.
	may	If I know more than 2 languages, I may take the job.
	can/will be able to	If there is an airport here, we'll be able to travel easily.
	السؤال بـ *will* أو *may*	If you finish early, will you help me?
	فعل أمر	If you are not ill, go to school.

3 The second conditional



تعبر الحالة الثانية عن حدث غير محتمل فى المضارع أو المستقبل وفى إعطاء النصيحة.

If I were a bird, I could fly. (I'm not a bird. Untrue in the present)
If I were you, I'd help him. (Giving advice)

4 The third conditional



نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.

If they had known I was ill, they would have visited me. (لم يعلموا بمرضى ولم يزورونى)

wish / If only

Wish & If only	+ past simple ⟶ refers to the present
	+ past perfect ⟶ refers to the past
	+ would / could ⟶ refers to the future

١- نستخدم wish + past simple للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص موقف نتمنى أن يكون مختلف.

- I wish he were/was with us now.
- I wish I lived near my school.

بعد wish نستخدم were / was مع I / he / she / it و were فقط مع they/ we/ you

٢- نستخدم wish + could للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص عدم القدرة لفعل شىء.

- I wish he could know Spanish.
- I wish I could make my own clothes.

٣- نستخدم wish + past perfect للندم عن شىء حدث أو لم يحدث فى الماضى.

- I wish he hadn't insulted his friend.

٤- نستخدم wish + would/could للتعبير عن الرغبة فى تغيير مستقبلى غير محتمل الحدوث أو الرغبة فى التعبير عن عدم الرضا أو الحزن .

- I wish they would build a new station near my home.

٥- نستخدم could مع كل الضمائر ونستخدم would مع كل الضمائر ما عدا I/We.

- If only he would help me.
- I wish I could play Squash.

٦- عند استخدام wish وبعدها would لا بد أن يكون الفاعلين مختلفين مثل:

- He wishes he could play tennis.
- ~~He wishes he would play tennis~~.

٧- تعبر could بعد wish عن عدم القدرة وتعبر would عن عدم الرغبة

- I wish my son would drive my car. (He doesn't want to …)
- I wish my son could drive my car. (He can't drive ….)

٨- نستخدم (could have + P.P.) بدلًا من الماضى التام للتعبير عن (ندم) عن موقف فى الماضى.

- If only I could have studied French at university. I know English only.

٩- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد wish يأتى to + inf.

- My brother wishes to have a better job.

ALADWA Gem

Alternatives to using if — بدائل if

Alternative		Example
provided that on condition that as long as	جملة (حالة 1 و 2)	He can go and play with his friends, provided / on condition (that) / as long as he finishes his homework first.
Suppose /Supposing / Imagine (that)	جملة	Suppose / Supposing / imagine (that) you met the president, what would you ask him to do?
Unless	فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة) + جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية)	
	I can't buy the car unless I have enough money.	
Without	N/v.ing	You won't succeed without studying hard.
But for	Noun	But for doctors, we might die.
In case of	Noun	In case of emergency, call this number.
In case	جملة	Bring the washing from outside in case it rains.
Should حالة أولى أو ثانية	Subj. + inf.	Should you take this medicine, take it before meals.
Were حالة ثانية	Subj. + n/adj.	Were I you, I wouldn't spend so much money.
Were حالة ثانية	Subj. + to + inf.	Were he to travel, he'd be sad.
Had حالة ثالثة	Subj. + P.P.	Had you finished early, you'd have watched the film.
If it weren't for حالة 2	N/v.ing	If it weren't for money, we couldn't buy anything.
If it hadn't been for حالة 3	N/v.ing	If it hadn't been for Ahmed, I'd have been helpless.

ALAWA Gem

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Unit (4)

1. We had a lovely room in the hotel. We a fantastic view.
 a) couldn't have seen b) should have seen
 c) could see d) could have seen
2. Father didn't find any tickets, he have booked earlier.
 a) could b) should c) shouldn't d) must
3. I bread but I didn't know we needed it.
 a) could buy b) shouldn't have bought
 c) could have bought d) might have bought
4. My father advised me a ticket in advance if I want to travel in August.
 a) to buying b) buying c) to be bought d) to buy
5. When I was a student, I study all night before an exam.
 a) could b) should c) can d) shouldn't
6. You have heard me right. I definitely said 74 not 47.
 a) must b) shouldn't c) could d) couldn't
7. You really have taken so much trouble over me.
 a) shouldn't b) could c) should d) can't
8. Father ordered his daughters the door for anyone while he is out.
 a) to open b) not to open c) opening d) to not open
9. Samir hasn't arrived yet. He have lost the way.
 a) couldn't b) shouldn't c) should d) could
10. As he was innocent, he wanted people what he had done.
 a) knowing b) not to know c) to know d) to be known
11. Ahmed's parents warned him university without getting a degree.
 a) not to leave b) to leave c) leaving d) not leaving
12. I don't know who rang, but it have been Kamal.
 a) must b) could c) can't d) shouldn't
13. When the new road was built, I to work in half an hour.
 a) should drive b) could have driven
 c) could drive d) should have driven
14. Khaled is expecting his friends very soon.
 a) arrive b) to arriving c) arriving d) to arrive
15. He have bought the same car. He was wrong to do it.
 a) shouldn't b) would c) should d) could
16. We have left the dog on its own. So we didn't.
 a) could b) should c) shouldn't d) couldn't

ALAWAM Gem

17 Ali's father warned him too much money.
a) to spend b) not to spend c) to not spend d) to spending

18 After only six months, Suzan the violin quite well.
a) could have played b) couldn't play
c) could play d) couldn't have played

19 It's a pity you didn't ask because I you.
a) could have helped b) can't help
c) must help d) shouldn't have helped

20 The lifeguard instructed people near the rocks.
a) to not swim b) to swimming c) to swim d) not to swim

Unit (5)

21 I advise you to do whatever best to you.
a) supposed b) seems c) meant d) is supposed

22 You to buy a ticket. You will be fined if you take the train without one.
a) seem b) are meant c) means d) are supposed

23 Come on, Hala , you to be helping me.
a) are meant b) seem c) are seemed d) supposed

24 Although the exam easy, some students see it very difficult.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) seems d) is seemed

25 You to be here an hour ago!
a) meant b) seem c) are supposed d) were supposed

26 I thought we to be met at the airport.
a) supposed b) seem c) were supposed d) meant

27 These new rules to protect people not to frighten them.
a) are meant b) means c) supposed d) seem

28 He can't think properly. It clear that he has had some problems.
a) is seemed b) is supposed c) supposes d) seems

29 The diagram to show the different stages of the process.
a) meant b) is meant c) is seemed d) supposed

30 The candidate is liked by only few people. It likely that he will lose the election.
a) seemed b) is seemed c) doesn't seem d) seems

31 How to know you were waiting for me?
a) I was supposed b) do I seem c) was I supposed d) do I mean

32 The play to be really good.
a) is meant b) meant c) is seemed d) supposed

33 Strange as it may, exactly the same symptoms happened to me.
a) suppose b) mean c) seem d) be seemed

34 I haven't seen it myself, but it to be a great movie.
a) is seemed b) is supposed c) means d) supposed

35 Dieting being careful about which foods you buy.
a) seems b) is supposed c) is meant d) means

36 She to be a smart woman. She can find a solution to any problem.
a) is seemed b) seems c) supposed d) was meant

37 She to have had hundreds of lovers.
a) is supposed b) is seemed c) supposed d) seem

38 The high cost of housing that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
a) seems b) supposes c) is supposed d) means

39 Don't make decisions now. You to be nervous.
a) seem b) mean c) are meant d) supposed

40 You are not supposed to walk on the grass. This means that it is
a) allowed b) no allowed c) forbidden d) advisable

Unit (6)

41 If the trip to Egypt longer, I would have visited my friends in Assuit.
a) is b) was c) were d) had been

42 It's cold today. I wish it warmer.
a) is b) has been c) were d) had been

43 The star difficult to see unless the sky is very clear.
a) is b) would be c) was d) would have been

44 It is best to keep a medical kit عدة طبية ready emergency.
a) unless b) in case of c) if d) without

45 I wish I the answer, but I don't.
a) know b) would know c) had known d) knew

46 If I had known that you were joining the discussion group, I too. I love birds!
a) will join b) would join c) would have joined d) joined

47 If I, I will become very fat.
a) don't exercise b) won't exercise c) wouldn't exercise d) hadn't exercised

48 If I a gun in the street, I would take it to the police.
a) find b) found c) had found d) will find

49 She wishes she blue eyes.
a) had b) has c) had had d) would have

50 Anyone can join the course, ... there is space available.
a) in case of b) provides c) unless d) provided that

51 If I drink too much coffee, I always awake all night long.
a) would stay b) will stay c) stay d) may stay

52 I have to work on Sunday. I wish I have to work on Sunday.
a) don't b) won't c) wouldn't d) didn't

53 He was offered the job he went on a month-long training course.
a) unless b) on condition that c) in case of d) without

54 We leave on Monday if it snows today.
a) will have to b) would c) would have to d) have to

55 If I with people I didn't know very well, I would never be rude to them.
a) were b) am c) had been d) will be

ALPWA Gem

56 I wish you borrow my things without permission.
a) don't **b)** won't **c)** wouldn't **d)** shouldn't

57 If you had worked harder, you your exams.
a) will pass **b)** would pass
c) would have passed **d)** wouldn't have passed

58 If I go to bed late, I drowsy in the morning.
a) felt **b)** won't feel **c)** might feel **d)** feel

59 What to your family if you were to immigrate?
a) would happen **b)** is happening
c) will happen **d)** would have happened

60 He wouldn't have visited me unless I him.
a) hadn't phoned **b)** had phoned **c)** phoned **d)** would phone

2 Choose the correct answer:

When Hesham was a student, he was very clever. He was(1)..... (seemed / supposed) to be a doctor, but he got 90% and(2)..... (joined / joins) the faculty of science. All his friends said that he(3)..... (could / couldn't) have got better marks, but he wasted much time. He wishes he(4)..... (has / had) joined the faculty of medicine. He said that he(5)..... (should / must) have done his best to achieve his ambition. His father has told him that he can achieve his goal by(6)..... (be / being) a doctor in the faculty of science.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

3 Choose the correct answer:

My friend is tired and upset. He(1)..... (seems / supposed) to have a lot of problems. He is(2)..... (supposed / seemed) to buy a large flat, but he doesn't(3)..... (has / have) the money needed. The flat he lives in(4)..... (supposed / seems) to be small and unhealthy. I've advised him(5)..... (look / to look) for one in the new areas built by the government. The flats, there, are(6)..... (meant / seemed) to be healthy and the streets are wide.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

4 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the verbs:

Jomana is a famous, well-paid actress and this was all due to luck. If she(1)..... (not be) famous, we(2)..... (not know) her. If she(3)..... (not be) surfing on the internet, she wouldn't have found an acting website. Unless she(4)..... (posted) a profile and picture, a talent agent wouldn't have called her. If a talent agent hadn't called her, she(5)..... (wouldn't do) such a great job in the film and(6)..... (become) famous!

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

Act (2) scenes (i - ii - iii)
Act (3) scenes (i - ii - iii - iv)

Key Vocabulary

apologise	يعتذر
beggar	متسول
call out	ينادى بصوت عال
disagreement	عدم اتفاق
disbelief	عدم اعتقاد
double	ضعف
faithful	مخلص
follow	يتبع
forgive	يسامح/يصفح عن
guard	حارس/يحرس
hard-hearted	قاسى القلب
hut	كوخ
joke	مزحة/نكتة
lightning	البرق
lock ... out	يحبس ... خارجا
mice	فئران
patience	الصبر
persuade	يقنع
philosopher	فيلسوف
plot against	يتأمر ضد
port	ميناء
pretend	يتظاهر
profit	ربح/يربح
reward	مكافأة/يكافئ
rise	ينهض
room	فراغ
shelter	ملجأ/يلجأ إلى
spies	جواسيس
straw	قش
torch	مصباح

Phrases & Expressions

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الظهر
change his mind	يغير رأيه
go mad	يصاب بالجنون
set eyes on you	يلمح/يرى
try walking in a poor person's shoes	يجرب التصرف مثل الفقير
turn his back on	يدير ظهره لـ

ALPHA Gem

Summary

Act (2) Scene i

The setting is the Earl of Gloucester's castle. Edmund knows that the Duke of Cornwall will be arriving that evening. Edmund engages his brother in a fake battle معركة مزيفة, intentionally عمدا wounding himself to draw Gloucester's sympathy تعاطف. In response to Edmund's explanation of his brother's attack, Gloucester promises to find Edgar and bring him to justice العدالة. Gloucester also reveals his wish to make Edmund his heir. Regan and Cornwall enter. Without hesitation تردد, they fall for Edmund's story and join in condemning ادانة Edgar. Cornwall proclaims يزعم that Edmund shall join forces with him. Regan and Cornwall flatter ينافق Gloucester by asking his advice on an appropriate response رد مناسب to letters received from Lear and Goneril.

Act (2) Scene ii

The scene opens on Edgar, alone in the woods. Edgar makes a plan in which he will disguise himself as a beggar, changing his clothes and making his face and hair look dirty. In this costume زى, he will be known as Poor Tom. Lear and his followers arrive at Gloucester's castle. Kent hails يحيى the King, who asks who has placed his messenger in stocks أداة تعذيب. Lear refuses to believe that Regan and Cornwall would imprison and humiliate يهين someone in the King's service. Regan greets her father with seeming affection, and Lear expresses the sorrow that Goneril has caused him. Regan advises Lear to seek Goneril's forgiveness, which provokes يثير the King to anger and cursing لعنة.

Act (2) Scene iii

Regan refuses to host يستضيف her father and his soldiers. Goneril, conspiring يتأمر with her sister, proposes that Lear dismiss his soldiers. The King, angered by his daughters' rejection, calls for his horse. Lear states that he would rather live outside under the stars or beg shelter in France than stay in the company صحبة of those who disrespect his proper place as father and King. Regan and Goneril instruct Gloucester not to stop their father from wondering into the night. Regan and Goneril remain unmoved and unconcerned that the old King is going out in a severe storm.

Act (3) Scene i

The setting is a field in the countryside in a storm. Talking with a soldier, Kent learns that Lear and his Fool are out in the storm. Kent relates that the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall are in disagreement. Kent also knows that the King of France is moving with an invasion غزو force to offer assistance to Lear. Kent instructs the soldier to go quickly to Dover, and when there, to make known the treatment that Lear has suffered. Kent gives the messenger a ring for delivery to Cordelia. Kent leaves to search for Lear.

ALAWA Gem

Act (3) Scene ii

The storm continues in the fields. Lear's mood matches the nature as he rages يثور against his daughters' treatment. The Fool attempts to reason يجادل with his King, noting that the shelter of a dry house is better to a stay in the storm's fury. Kent arrives and points to a nearby hut, which promises some protection, while he returns to Goneril and Regan's house to ask that they admit the King.

Act (3) Scene iii

The setting is Gloucester's castle, where Gloucester and Edmund are talking. Gloucester tells his son that he isn't satisfied راضي at Regan and Goneril's treatment of King Lear. Gloucester also tells Edmund that he has a letter which he is hiding in his bedroom about the French soldiers who have already arrived in England. Gloucester exits to look for the King and help him. Alone, Edmund plans to win Cornwall's trust by revealing the plan to aid the King and the letter.

Act (3) Scene iv

Although Kent directs Lear to a hut for shelter, the King refuses to protect himself from the storm. The Fool runs from the hut, exclaiming that a mad man has taken possession of the hut. The mad man is Edgar disguised as Poor Tom. The King has a conversation with Edgar not knowing him. Gloucester enters the scene, carrying a torch. He has found both warm shelter and food for the King, but Lear declines, claiming that he needs to talk more with the beggar. The disguised Edgar complains of the cold and everyone moves into the shelter. Gloucester persuades the King to go with him with Kent and the Fool. Kent asks Gloucester to take the mad man with them.

ALADWAA Gem

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should to your customers for making them wait for a long time.
 a) punish b) apologise c) afford d) stand
2. We stood watching in as the car rolled into the water.
 a) disbelief b) pleasure c) satisfaction d) planning
3. Despite his problems, his friends have remained to him and helped him a lot.
 a) useless b) unaffected c) faithful d) influenced
4. I'll never my friend for losing my expensive camera which I had lent him.
 a) comply b) forge c) forget d) forgive
5. A flash of lit up the sky during yesterday's violent storm.
 a) thunder b) lightning c) rain d) earthquake
6. I don't have the to wait in line for hours just to buy a ticket.
 a) patience b) planning c) organisation d) acceptance
7. They were accused of against their country and helping the enemy.
 a) innovating b) suspecting c) playing d) plotting
8. I not to see Lamia, and carried on walking down the street.
 a) protected b) prevented c) pretended d) ignored
9. We sat in the shade, ... from the burning heat of the sun.
 a) sheltering b) subjecting c) improving d) assigning
10. Farmers usually use to feed their animals and make beds for them to sleep on.
 a) cream b) wood c) straw d) wool
11. Why does Edmund wound himself intentionally?
 a) To defend his country. b) To donate blood.
 c) To help his father. d) To convince his father of Edgar's plot.
12. To escape from his father's soldiers, Edgar disguised as a
 a) beggar b) soldier c) philosopher d) fool
13. King Lear was angry when he saw Kent in the stocks because
 a) he didn't want to reward him
 b) he was in his service
 c) he hurt Oswald
 d) he didn't want to please his daughters
14. Goneril wanted King Lear to keep of his soldiers.
 a) all b) none c) half d) quarter

ALADVA Gem

15 To whom does Kent ask the soldier to give the ring?

a) Regan. **b)** Goneril.

c) The King of France. **d)** Cordelia.

16 Why would Edmund tell the Duke about the letter which his father keeps?

a) To win his trust. **b)** To defend his country.

c) To be rewarded with money. **d)** To be given more land.

2 Answer the following critical thinking questions:

1 What do you think of Edmund?

.....

.....

2 What is your opinion of Regan and Goneril's treatment of their father?

.....

.....

3 If you were King Lear, would you prefer to wonder in the storm rather than accept Regan and Goneril's conditions to host him? Why? Why not?

.....

.....

4 Why do you think King Lear called the beggar a "philosopher"?

.....

.....

5 Do you think Cordelia will help her father? Why? Why not?

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

Test 1 Units 4-6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The YouTube website enables customers to only trailers of new movies legally.
 a) download b) loading c) uploading d) overloading
2. A/An an icon, similar to an emoticon, used in electronic messages and on websites.
 a) character b) emoji c) abbreviation d) signal
3. The head teacher's was sharp with anger because of the student's bad behaviour.
 a) sign b) mark c) tone d) stone
4. I didn't want to go to the party, but my friends me into it.
 a) protected b) prevented c) discouraged d) persuaded
5. Everyone admire the Baron palace's beautifully restored gardens which were reopened lately.
 a) normal b) formal c) disorganised d) disgusted
6. The government made it easier to have many official service as a precaution against COVID-19.
 a) inline b) off line c) online d) airline
7. It's your own fault, you have gone to bed so late.
 a) should b) must c) can't d) shouldn't
8. You to pay the rent before the third day of the month.
 a) are supposed b) mean c) seem d) are seemed
9. As it was the time to close, all the customers were politely asked the shop.
 a) leaving b) to leaving c) to leave d) to have left
10. He didn't find the keys anywhere. You have left them on the bus.
 a) mustn't b) can't c) couldn't d) could
11. When she went out this morning, she left her briefcase here. She to leave it behind.
 a) couldn't mean b) could mean
 c) could have meant d) couldn't have meant
12. It like a good idea to postpone the meeting until next Monday.
 a) seemed b) is supposed c) is meant d) is seemed
13. Doctors said they could not treat the boy unless his parents their permission.
 a) had given b) gave c) give d) were given
14. I'm sure he didn't any harm.
 a) seem b) suppose c) mean d) supposed
15. He wishes he buy a new car.
 a) might b) could c) should d) would
16. If I hear any news, I you.
 a) would phone b) phoned c) phone d) will phone

© NAWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The winter months in North America are December, January, February, and March. Winter is the best season of the year. During the winter months, temperatures are usually colder and there are fewer hours of daylight. Cold winter temperatures are caused by the tilting of the Earth. When Earth's Northern Hemisphere is tilted away from the sun, there are fewer hours of daylight and the temperature is colder. When the Northern Hemisphere tilts towards the sun, there is more daylight time and the temperatures are warmer. The tilting of the Earth as it spins causes the seasons to change.

Animals have special ways of preparing themselves for winter. Some animals, like birds and butterflies travel long distances, or migrate, to warmer temperatures during the winter months. Other animals go to sleep, or hibernate, during the winter. Bears, gophers, snakes, and bats hibernate. Squirrels and raccoons don't migrate or hibernate. Instead, they gather extra food during the fall months and store it away so they have plenty to eat during the winter.

In some areas, winter is a time when snow falls and gathers on the ground. People who live in these places can enjoy special winter activities like skiing, sledding, or snowboarding. They can also build snowmen and snow castles. When the water in lakes and ponds freeze, people can ice skate or play ice hockey. Some people even cut a hole in the ice and go ice fishing!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Which sentence is an opinion?

a) The winter months are December, January, February and March.

b) Winter is the best season of the year.

c) There is more daylight during the summer months.

d) The tilting of the Earth causes the seasons to change.

18 During the winter months, the Northern Hemisphere is

a) tilted away from the sun **b)** tilted towards the sun

c) tilted away from the moon **d)** tilted towards the earth

19 The synonym of the word "tilting" is

a) leaning **b)** straightening

c) flattening **d)** destroying

20 All the following animals hibernate during the winter months except

a) bats **b)** gophers

c) bears **d)** butterflies

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What do squirrels and raccoons do to prepare for the winter?

.....

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

22 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) travel long distances.

b) to sleep through the winter.

23 Name three activities mentioned in the article that require a frozen pond or lake.

24 Write two sentences describing some things you like to do in the winter.

25 **Translate into English:**

- تعمل الحكومة على إنشاء العديد من مراكز الشباب وتزويدها بالإمكانيات الحديثة لتسهل عليهم ممارسة الرياضة وقضاء أوقات فراغهم بطريقة مفيدة.

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Television with its varied programmes has its great influence on the minds of people everywhere. It has become an important means of shaping the public opinion.

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- How has the development of medical sciences made our life better?

ALAWA Gem

Test 2 Units 4-6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher at the naughty student and asked him to sit down.
 a) smiled **b)** smelled **c)** signed **d)** frowned
2. Experts warn us not to our personal and financial data on unknown websites.
 a) pass **b)** deliver **c)** publish **d)** post
3. All the fans gave a of relief when the referee gave the final whistle.
 a) cry **b)** sigh **c)** site **d)** view
4. I couldn't my antivirus software because it cost much money.
 a) upload **b)** enroll **c)** upgrade **d)** rule
5. My suitcase was so full that I didn't have for anything else.
 a) room **b)** line **c)** rooms **d)** rule
6. Parents always put their own needs to the bottom of the They care for their children first.
 a) hill **b)** mountain **c)** land **d)** pile
7. The words to be a good name for the shop , but no one liked them.
 a) meant **b)** means **c)** were meant **d)** meaning
8. I strongly encourage everyone or see King Lear. It's an important play.
 a) read **b)** to read **c)** reading **d)** to reading
9. You have refused the cake. It was rude.
 a) mustn't **b)** should **c)** shouldn't **d)** can't
10. The traffic policeman didn't give him a ticket. He have noticed that he was using the mobile phone while driving.
 a) might **b)** shouldn't **c)** must **d)** couldn't
11. It to me that students have to work hard to get high marks.
 a) is supposed **b)** seems **c)** is meant **d)** is seemed
12. Students to bring electronic devices into the exam room.
 a) are not supposed **b)** are seemed **c)** supposed **d)** are supposed
13. Ali the news if he wanted to know what was happening in the world.
 a) will watch **b)** would have watched **c)** can watch **d)** would watch
14. It to be some kind of joke, but it turned to be something silly.
 a) means **b)** was meant **c)** is supposed **d)** seems
15. If scientists' predictions are correct, average global temperatures by 6 degrees.
 a) may rise **b)** are risen **c)** rose **d)** should rise
16. Visitors are welcome, ... they don't make troubles.
 a) without **b)** unless **c)** as long as **d)** provides

ALPHA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My tooth hurt through the night. I had to take a painkiller to lessen the pain. Worst of all I did not get a wink of sleep the whole night through.

The next morning. I told my mother about my toothache. It was obvious I could not go to school. So, instead she took me to the dentist. I was horrified, but I had no choice.

At nine o'clock we waited outside the dentist's office. The nurse came and opened the door. I was the first patient. She wrote down my particulars and told me to wait a moment. The dentist had not arrived yet. Meanwhile the tooth still ached like mad.

The burly dentist arrived and I was ushered to the dentist's chair. Normally I would run away from the frightening surgery with all its horrible drills and pliers, but I did not. I had to get the offending tooth out.

So, I sat down on the reclining chair while the dentist kept saying some reassuring words. I relaxed somewhat. He asked me to open my mouth. I did so. He said that the tooth had to come out. I nodded dumbly in reply.

I felt a slight prick of pain when he gave me an injection, but that was nothing compared to the toothache. Soon, miraculously, all pain disappeared. The anaesthetic definitely worked very quickly. Then before I knew it, the dentist told me that I could go. I looked at him quizzically and he told me he had already pulled the tooth out. What wonder, I did not even feel it.

The dentist put a wad of cotton over the wound and he told me to keep my mouth shut for a while. I nodded, smiled and went out into the waiting room where my mother was waiting for me. The visit to the dentist was not too bad after all.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The writer's tooth made him all night.

a) angry **b)** awake **c)** horrified **d)** happy

18 In the writer's opinion, the surgery was

a) fantastic **b)** frightened **c)** terrifying **d)** untidy

19 On leaving the dentist's office, the writer was completely

a) happy **b)** terrified **c)** sad **d)** angry

20 The synonym of the word "obvious" is

a) easy **b)** difficult **c)** obscure **d)** clear

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) to show someone where they should go.

b) amazingly

.....

.....

.....

22 In two sentences describe the dentist.

23 How do you think people felt during operations before inventing anaesthetic?

24 Modern technology has helped medicine a lot. Explain.

25 **Translate into English:**

- يقول خبراء الاقتصاد أن جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية أحد أهم الحلول للمشكلات الاقتصادية التى نعانى منها مما يدفع الحكومة لتقديم المزيد من التسهيلات للمستثمرين.

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Individuals differ in their ability to understand complex ideas and to adapt effectively to the environment. So, they must be taught in different ways.

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- How can we make schools an exciting place for education?

ALAWAM Gem

Test 3 Units 4-6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should your lawyer before exchanging contracts.
 a) prevent b) apply c) advise d) consult
2. Firefighters took more than an hour to bring the under control.
 a) quarrel b) battle c) fire d) fight
3. Eating sensibly and taking regular exercise is a fairly method of losing weight.
 a) removable b) reusable c) reliable d) complex
4. It isn't acceptable to see children food from strangers.
 a) begging b) ordering c) replying d) delivering
5. The film is basically a story of a who gave important information to the enemy.
 a) leader b) spy c) king d) duke
6. I have never to the view that schooldays are the happiest days of your life.
 a) ascribed b) approved c) subscribed d) frowned
7. The president has instructed the government more houses for youth.
 a) to have built b) building c) build d) to build
8. It wasn't necessary to tell the police. You have solved the problem personally.
 a) could b) might c) must d) shouldn't
9. We have taken a taxi when it rained. I'm sorry we didn't.
 a) ought to b) shouldn't c) must d) can't
10. I think you have listened to him. He told us very useful things about technology.
 a) shouldn't b) could c) should d) couldn't
11. This area to be safe, but there are fierce dogs that can harm anyone.
 a) is seemed b) supposed c) seems d) means
12. He is a comic person. He to make people laugh.
 a) seems b) is supposed c) means d) is seemed
13. Do you know what "luxurious"?
 a) means b) mean c) supposes d) seems
14. She misses him. She wishes he her a letter.
 a) would send b) has sent
 c) will send d) would have sent
15. Your letter won't be delivered unless it the correct postage.
 a) had b) will have c) has d) had had
16. If I hadn't stayed up late last night, I up early.
 a) will get b) wouldn't have got
 c) would have got d) would get

ALADWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Think about all the history and stories of our culture. We preserve them by writing them down in books. Today, we also have technology to use. In the early days, though, people did not have a language that could be written. They had only their own voices. They used their voices to pass down their history.

They told special stories and spoke about their customs. These stories are called folklore. Primitive people did not have a written language. Many of their stories were in the form of myths that explained mysteries of nature. Some were legends about past heroes of their culture. Many of the stories included elements of religion and magic. Modern methods of storytelling are available today. However, many tribes choose to continue the custom of oral storytelling and folklore. It is part of their cultural experience.

Many tribes have a history of believing in spirits. They believe that the spirits often take the form of animals found in nature. The animal spirits watch over them.

However, they also see the ancient gods as animal tricksters. A trickster is a character who plays tricks and jokes on others. A trickster often causes trouble or inconvenience. It really doesn't mean any terrible harm, though.

Many traditional ceremonies use animal costumes. The ceremonies honour the animals in the hopes that they will save their tricks for someone else. Other ceremonies are held to help the tribe prepare for a special event. They celebrate things like marriages, births, battles, harvests or hunts.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 People in the past used to pass down their history.
- **a)** one language
- **b)** technology
- **c)** different languages
- **d)** voices

18 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to
- **a)** history
- **b)** history and stories
- **c)** culture
- **d)** stories

19 People in the past believed that their gods could be in the form of
- **a)** religious men
- **b)** hunters
- **c)** animal tricksters
- **d)** magicians

20 The antonym of the adjective "primitive" is
- **a)** advanced
- **b)** original
- **c)** simple
- **d)** ancient

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why do you think many people continue storytelling even though other methods are available today?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

22 What is a trickster?

23 Why do the ceremonies include animal costumes?

24 What kind of stories do you like? Why?

25 Translate into English:

- يجب على المدرسين فى الوقت الحاضر مواكبة الطرق الحديثة فى التربية واستخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة التى أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة اليومية.

26 Translate into Arabic:

The government is carrying out a lot of industrial and agricultural projects in Upper Egypt. This leads to providing job opportunities for the citizens there.

27 Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:

- Living in new cities has a lot of advantages and disadvantages.

ALAWA Gem

Part 2



Final Tests

Part 2

Final Tests

Practice Test 1 (Modified)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother has a delicious meal of chicken and rice.
 a) prepared **b)** celebrated **c)** done **d)** cook
2. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or food such as fish and nuts?
 a) salt **b)** salty **c)** spicy **d)** small
3. Where do you have to put your hands when you CPR?
 a) prepare **b)** make **c)** perform **d)** act
4. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your
 a) muscle **b)** cell **c)** surface **d)** lungs
5. All family members sang many while we decorated the Christmas tree.
 a) concerts **b)** carols **c)** albums **d)** gifts
6. The verb "neglect" can be the opposite to the verb "....." .
 a) highlight **b)** frown **c)** enjoy **d)** persuade
7. There will be food at the family party, so you to eat before you come.
 a) must **b)** have **c)** mustn't **d)** don't have
8. In next week's radio programme, we to a famous scientist.
 a) talk **b)** will be talking **c)** talking **d)** have talked
9. There was food at my friend's party, so I eat before I went there.
 a) mustn't **b)** didn't have to **c)** had to **d)** don't have to
10. Did you know that Indian food is one of the foods in the UK?
 a) most popular **b)** poor **c)** best popular **d)** popular
11. You to take more than three books a week. It's the rule.
 a) are not supposed **b)** don't seem **c)** mean **d)** don't suppose
12. You can't share my apartment you pay the rent.
 a) in case **b)** provided **c)** if **d)** unless
13. Fatma said she was hungry, but she didn't eat very much after all. She
 a) couldn't like the food **b)** couldn't have liked the food
 c) can't like the food **d)** couldn't have been hungry
14. My parents have invited one of my friends with us for the weekend.
 a) to stay **b)** not to stay **c)** to staying **d)** to be stayed
15. I you with the barbeque if you like.
 a) help **b)** am helping **c)** will help **d)** will be helped
16. Things are better organised now – we have problems than before.
 a) fewer **b)** less **c)** more less **d)** least

ELT Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What do you have to give to a plant in your home? Most people would say food, water and light. However, an Englishman did an experiment and he found that you only have to give a plant sunlight for it to grow. In 1960, David Latimer put a plant inside a large glass bottle with a little soil. In 1972, he gave the plant some water, then he closed the bottle. He has not opened the bottle since that time, and years later, the plant is still growing inside the bottle. The plant, which is in David Latimer's house, needs light from a nearby window, but nothing else. He doesn't have to water it or give it food.

The plant produces oxygen, which also puts water into the air. This means that the plant can use the water to survive. The plant's food source is its old leaves, which the water in the bottle helps to recycle. The plant is now more than 50 years old and it will continue growing inside the bottle for many more years.

Scientists are interested in this experiment because they think we will be able to learn important lessons about using plants like this in space. The plants will be a sustainable food source, and they will also help to take pollution from the air of a spaceship.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What does David Latimer give to his plant every day?

a) Some water. **b)** Food and water. **c)** Old leaves. **d)** Nothing.

18 When did David Latimer last open the glass bottle?

a) 1960. **b)** 50 years ago. **c)** 1972. **d)** Last year.

19 What does the plant need from outside the bottle?

a) Light. **b)** Water. **c)** Oxygen. **d)** Leaves.

20 In the future, this plant will

a) go into space **b)** stop growing

c) be a sustainable food **d)** take pollution from the air

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How was the plant able to live inside the glass bottle?

.....

.....

.....

22 Why are scientists interested in this plant?

.....

.....

.....

23 How might plants like this help people in space?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

24 Suggest two other things that can replace traditional food types.

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

The immune system is made of the cells and organs in our bodies working together to protect us from infections and diseases. The immune system keeps us healthy because people with strong immune systems get ill less often.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- الكل يخطئ، لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف أن يستفيد من أخطائه المختلفة. التعلم من الأخطاء مهارة علينا جميعا اكتسابها، فمن لا يتعلم من أخطائه لا ينجح أبدًا.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of about (180) words on:

- Describe a dish that has a great deal of popularity in Egypt but is not Egyptian. Why do people eat it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

Practice Test 2 (Modified)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. CPR is a famous
 a) abbreviation b) acronym c) word d) punctuation
2. Ali what the teacher said and did the wrong homework last night.
 a) misunderstood b) deceived c) ruined d) fell out with
3. They have just the timetable, so we know these train times are correct.
 a) deleted b) got into c) solved d) updated
4. It is not to share a box of chocolates.
 a) mean b) nasty c) careless d) wise
5. Poor hygiene can increase the danger of of diseases.
 a) affection b) infection c) defection d) perfection
6. Mohamed Salah is considered the cream of the in the Egyptian football team.
 a) product b) wheat c) crop d) manufacture
7. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you me!
 a) could phone b) should have phoned
 c) should phone d) would have phoned
8. The teacher told the students their books at page 150.
 a) to open b) open c) you open d) opening
9. I send the report to the General Manager; he needed it urgently.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) had to d) didn't have to
10. My brother would have been a doctor if he his exams.
 a) passed b) would pass c) had passed d) pass
11. I have friends in the world.
 a) the best b) good c) best d) the better
12. What do you mean about the leaky pipes?
 a) to do b) doing c) to doing d) to have done
13. I wish I, I wouldn't have felt guilty.
 a) will apologise b) apologised c) hadn't apologised d) had apologised
14. I don't have enough money to buy lunch. you lend me a couple of dollars?
 a) Might b) Could c) May d) Shall
15. I read in the paper that they the price of gas again.
 a) increase b) are going to increase c) are increased d) will be increasing
16. The better the party the night before, the it is to get up in the morning.
 a) most difficult b) difficult c) more difficult d) least difficult

ALAWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last year, my friend Hamid and I decided to visit an old friend called Adam. We had first met Adam at Cairo University, but we lost touch with him when he moved to Thessaloniki in the north of Greece. I had always wanted to see Athens and so Hamid agreed to spend a few days there before we went to meet our friend. We decided to use an old guidebook of the city that my cousin, Sami, had given to me. It was supposed to be the best guide to the city. It seemed to be very detailed and it had a lot of maps.

At the time, I didn't realise that it had been more than fifteen years since my cousin last visited Athens. If we had known that his book had been written in 2003, we wouldn't have used it! It told us to avoid a lot of hazardous places in the city, so we did. Adam later told us that those areas were fantastic. We should have realised that a lot of changes had been made to the city for the 2004 Olympic Games. Areas that had not been very interesting in 2003 became very interesting after they were improved. If we had known about them, we would have gone to see those areas for ourselves.

When we left Adam, he gave us an up-to-date and reliable new guide to Greece, which we used to visit some of the islands. You could also read it online and download maps and updates. It was fantastic! If I went travelling again, I would definitely use an up-to-date guide.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Why didn't Hamid and the writer keep in touch with Adam?

a) They fell out with him. **b)** He lived in a different country.
c) He went to a different school. **d)** He spoke a different language.

18 What did the writer first think of the guidebook his cousin gave him?

a) It seemed to be good. **b)** It was very old.
c) He did not trust it. **d)** It was new and reliable.

19 Why did the writer and Hamid not visit some parts of Athens?

a) Adam ordered them not to go there.
b) The guidebook did not recommend them.
c) The Olympic Games were happening.
d) They did not have time.

20 How did they get information to travel around the islands?

a) From an online guide. **b)** From a guide that Adam wrote.
c) From a book. **d)** From a man who knew the islands.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What had changed in Athens since 2003?

.....

.....

.....

ALARWA Gem

22 What do you think the word "hazardous" in the text means?

23 What do you think the writer learnt from his trip to Greece?

24 What problems do you think online guides might have?

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

You can benefit from using the internet if you are careful. You mustn't share your password with anyone. If you do, they will be able to see your private information.

26 **Translate into English:**

- لقـد تأثـر سـوق العمل والاقتصاد العالمى كثيراً فى كل أنحـاء العالم بجائحة كورونا حيث تضررت العمالة اليومية، كمـا ظهرت العديد من الوظائف التى تـؤدى من البيت وانتشر التسوق عبر الإنترنت.

27 **Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:**

Write a blog about your life so far. What are your wishes and regrets?

ALAWA Gem

Practice Test 3 (Modified)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Firefighters have to quickly when there is an emergency.
 a) sigh b) divide c) persuade d) react
2. This cave is very dark. Does anyone have a?
 a) sword b) post c) torch d) frown
3. If you are rude to someone, you should
 a) apologise b) perform c) shelter d) deceive
4. In their game, some of the children to be animals.
 a) rewarded b) did c) pretended d) looked
5. I love reading my favourite writer's blog because I learn so much.
 a) passes b) posts c) pasts d) views
6. The film review was moderate in as it didn't attack the actors much.
 a) sound b) detail c) tone d) a hurry
7. You sit on that wall. It is dangerous.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) had to
8. The students all feel now that the exams have finished.
 a) the happiest b) happier c) more happy d) happiest
9. In the future, I think we electric cars.
 a) drive b) be driving c) will be driving d) are driving
10. Ahmed feels ill and wishes he eaten so many sweets.
 a) hasn't b) didn't c) won't d) hadn't
11. He happy to be chosen as the best player in the match.
 a) seems b) seems to c) is supposed d) means
12. Look! Our car isn't in the driveway! Somebody it.
 a) could have stolen b) must be stealing c) must have stolen d) might have stolen
13. Don't sit on that bench, I it.
 a) will paint b) am going to paint c) will be painting d) will have painted
14. The more spices a meal has, the expensive it becomes.
 a) most b) more c) little d) much
15. If dad here, he would know what to do.
 a) had been b) were c) will be d) is
16. Hesham doesn't speak very clearly.
 a) It is difficult to understand b) He is difficult to understand
 c) He is difficult to understand him d) It is difficult to understand it

ALPHA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When you learn English, you should remember that languages are always changing. New words and phrases will appear and sometimes old words start to have new meanings. If you want to be really effective at learning a language, it is important to know about these new words. A list is published online every year. For example, unfriend is a new verb that is used when you stop being friends with someone on social media. The phrase fake news was added to dictionaries in 2019 after many false stories started to appear on social media. The phrase social distancing was first used in 2020 during the health emergency, and it means keeping away from other people.

The German word uber has recently been used in informal English to mean 'very successful', adding to the many other foreign words used in English, such as café (from French) and the small motorbike called a moped (from Swedish).

You might wish that English followed the example of the Portuguese language to make spelling easier. Portugal and Brazil both speak the same language, but the Portuguese recently changed the spelling of many words to follow the same rules that they use in Brazil because they are much easier. At the moment, however, if you learn English in many parts of the world, you usually have to learn the British English spellings, which can be more difficult than American English spellings.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 It is important to changes to the English language.

a) be aware of **b)** take control of

c) be tempted by **d)** bring back

18 You can use the verb "unfriend" when you want to stop friends on social media.

a) losing touch with **b)** keeping in touch with

c) subscribing **d)** uploading

19 The German word uber is an example of

a) an informal use of an old word

b) a foreign word used by successful people

c) a new informal word in English

d) a very common word in English

20 They changed the spelling of Portuguese because they wanted it to be

a) like English **b)** more traditional

c) the same as the American spelling **d)** easier

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why were phrases such as fake news and social distancing added to dictionaries recently?

.....

.....

.....

ALARMA Gem

22 What has not changed about the English language, according to the article?

.....

.....

.....

23 Why do you think English uses words from other languages?

.....

.....

.....

24 Do you think people should change the rules of a language to make it easier to learn? Why/Why not?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

The world is experiencing a lot of epidemics, such as COVID-19. So, we should all follow the rules of cleanliness to avoid being infected with serious diseases.

26 Translate into English:

- يُـعتبر التعليم فى المنزل إحدى الطرق التى يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتسـاب المعرفة بمسـاعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت. ومع ذلك، فإن هذا يفتقر إلى العمل الجماعى ولا يطور المهارات.

27 Write an essay of about (180) words on the topic:

- Persuade a friend of yours of how it is important to stay safe and healthy.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new supermarket has a giant a flashing neon at the entrance.
 a) signal **b)** mark **c)** sign **d)** landmark
2. The of calories a person needs each day depend on the type of work they do.
 a) account **b)** quality **c)** weight **d)** amount
3. The Corona Virus pandemic increased the importance of to provide food for our own country.
 a) economy **b)** agriculture **c)** literature **d)** culture
4. A/An is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.
 a) linguist **b)** botanist **c)** astrologist **d)** biologist
5. My new car is a better and more car than my last one.
 a) doubtful **b)** distant **c)** reliable **d)** disorganised
6. I believe that people of the world can all work together, regardless of their and religions.
 a) heights **b)** wealth **c)** competitions **d)** races
7. You leave your bags with someone you don't know.
 a) have to **b)** mustn't **c)** had to **d)** don't have to
8. I must finish this essay today. It be handed in by tomorrow.
 a) has to **b)** mustn't **c)** had to **d)** needn't
9. They are confident. It that they know what they're doing.
 a) is meant **b)** supposed **c)** supposes **d)** seems
10. We find that we have far time to relax now that we have children.
 a) less **b)** much **c)** many **d)** a lot of
11. There aren't as many people at this meeting at the last one.
 a) so **b)** than **c)** as **d)** like
12. This time next week, I at the Hilton if you need to contact me.
 a) will wait **b)** will be staying **c)** am going to wait **d)** wait
13. Although he is a liar, he expects people him.
 a) to believe **b)** to be believed **c)** believing **d)** believe
14. I wish I help you.
 a) can **b)** will **c)** would **d)** could
15. I don't like stories have unhappy endings.
 a) which **b)** they **c)** who **d)** whose
16. Everything is going well. We any problems so far.
 a) didn't have **b)** don't have **c)** haven't had **d)** hadn't had

ELAWM Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Scientists study the world and learn about how it works. As they study the world, the scientists use a process called the scientific method. They ask important questions and search for the answers. Sometimes they make amazing discoveries! There are times when a scientist is unable to answer his own question.

If he has taken good notes, another scientist may come along later and use his notes to find the answer. Every year there is new knowledge.

The scientific method is a step-by-step process. You can use it to conduct an experiment. You start by making observations about something that interests you. Based on your observations, you make a hypothesis. A hypothesis is a smart guess you make by using what you know. You guess what you think could happen. Now you are ready to begin your experiment.

During your experiment you should take notes. These notes are your experiment data. You constantly make observations during this time. You may discover things that make you to revise your experiment. Eventually, you conclude your experiment.

Next, you begin to look over your notes. You decide what you found out in your experiment. You make a final statement about whether or not your hypothesis was correct. You use reasons and evidence to support your statement.

Using the scientific method can be challenging. However, it can also be rewarding. All the steps are organised in a process. When you provide observations and data as evidence to support your conclusion, your ideas are more likely to be accepted.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What is the scientific method?

a) Doing a step-by-step process for studying the world.
b) Asking important questions.
c) Searching for the answers.
d) Conducting an experiment.

18 What is the last step in the scientific method?

a) Taking notes. **b)** Making a hypothesis.
c) Making a final statement. **d)** Making observations.

19 When you find something that interests you, how do you make a hypothesis?

a) By making observations. **b)** By taking notes.
c) By making a hypothesis. **d)** By making a final statement.

20 The antonym of the word "conclude" is

a) close **b)** start **c)** finish **d)** end

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What do scientists do to study the world and learn about how it works?

.....

.....

.....

22 Why is it important to take good notes when you are conducting an experiment?

23 How do you think scientists should be honoured?

24 Name two things you might like to investigate this year for a science project.

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

The attack of the Coronavirus known as COVID-19 forced governments to impose strict precautionary measures. They closed schools, universities and entertainment places and imposed curfew.

26 **Translate into English:**

- بسبب المشروعات الزراعية الكبيرة فى مصر فى السنوات القليلة الماضية زادت صادرات مصر من المنتجات الزراعية إلى كل دول العالم بشكل كبير مما ساهم فى زيادة الدخل القومى.

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- What are the ways in which technology is changing our lives and what can we expect in future?

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all father not to drive in the storm, but he wouldn't listen to us.
 a) ordered **b)** begged **c)** attacked **d)** delayed
2. My grandmother always keep a sewing in her handbag.
 a) kit **b)** tool **c)** device **d)** machine
3. Egypt its Victory Day on the enemy on the 6th of October.
 a) accept **b)** reward **c)** celebrate **d)** report
4. The Nile is our most important water supply, so we should all try to keep it clean.
 a) believable **b)** noticeable **c)** avoidable **d)** sustainable
5. We intend to make a/an written complaint against the car agency.
 a) normal **b)** formal **c)** occasional **d)** feast
6. The applicant no time in introducing himself to the interviewer.
 a) wasted **b)** missed **c)** profited **d)** benefited
7. I see the head teacher yesterday as she had called me to her office.
 a) have to **b)** needn't **c)** had to **d)** mustn't
8. When did you give the books back?
 a) had to **b)** must **c)** needn't **d)** have to
9. Vegetable curry is usually than the other meals on the menu.
 a) spicier **b)** spicy **c)** spiciest **d)** most spicy
10. Yesterday it was 39°C, the day of the year so far.
 a) most hottest **b)** hottest **c)** hot **d)** hotter
11. If you get late again tonight, I for you. So, we're clear.
 a) wait **b)** will be waiting **c)** won't be waiting **d)** am waiting
12. Khalid didn't know where the ball was, but he thought his sister have been playing with it.
 a) could **b)** must **c)** can't **d)** mustn't
13. I'm going to buy this book. It to be very good.
 a) seemed **b)** is seemed **c)** is supposed **d)** supposed
14. Do you think I'd be here if I a choice?
 a) had had **b)** have **c)** were **d)** had
15. "Do you think it will rain?"
 a) I hope not **b)** I don't hope **c)** I don't hope so **d)** I hope no
16. "You don't know where Hany is, ...?" "Sorry, I have no idea".
 a) don't you **b)** do you **c)** are you **d)** is he

© ALAWAM Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Every day many people are involved in road accidents. Some are killed. Many more are injured or maimed. So it is important for us to learn to use the roads properly and safely. No sane person would like to be involved in an accident.

As the roads are very busy nowadays, we should be very careful when crossing one. It is safer to use a pedestrian crossing or an overhead bridge whenever one is available. Never cross a road by dashing across it. That is inviting trouble. If there are no crossings, then we must look carefully left and right and cross only when it is safe to do so.

Some of us take the bus to school. It is important that we do not try to get on or off a bus while it is still moving. I tried to get on a moving bus once. It dragged me a short distance and nearly ran over me. I was lucky to escape with only some scratches on my legs. Also we must not fool around while on the bus. A suddenly lurch can send us knocking our heads against something hard.

Using a bicycle can be dangerous too. We must pay attention on the road and never cycle too far out to the middle of the road. We must obey all traffic rules. Also we must make sure our bicycles are in good conditions with working brakes, light, etc.

These are some things we can do to avoid accidents. However there is no guarantee that we will never be involved in one. The important thing is to stay alert at all times while using the roads.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 In order to prevent accidents, how should people use the roads?
- **a)** All the time.
- **b)** Properly and safely.
- **c)** Two or three days a week.
- **d)** Only on holidays.

18 Bicycles are in good conditions if they
- **a)** have working brakes and lights
- **b)** cycle in the middle of the road
- **c)** are in many bright colours
- **d)** equal wheels

19 The synonym of the word "available" is
- **a)** unavailable
- **b)** restricted
- **c)** accessible
- **d)** closed

20 What is the alternative to crossing busy roads?
- **a)** Using a pedestrian crossing.
- **b)** An overhead bridge.
- **c)** Waiting for holidays to cross them.
- **d)** Both a and b.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What should we do if we decide to catch the bus? Mention two things.

.....

.....

.....

22 What should a person do if there are no crossings?

.....

.....

.....

ALARMA Gem

23 Accidents might occur while we are on the bus. Explain.

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think will happen if we use the roads carefully or carelessly?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Cheating is a dishonest way of gaining success. That's why; strict measures are taken by the Ministry of Education to prevent cheating.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into English:**

- أظهرت أزمة فيروس كورونا المستجد أهمية تعاون الدول لحل المشكلات المختلفة التى تواجه العالم التى أصبح البحث عن لقاح لهذا الفيروس من أهمها.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- Fighting pollution and its bad effects are the responsibility of governments and individuals.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was able to only a trial version of the games from the Internet for free.
 a) load **b)** overload **c)** upload **d)** download
2. The airline some of its stuff to decrease their losses.
 a) breathed **b)** designed **c)** fired **d)** warmed
3. The artist painted the of a boat against the setting sun.
 a) direction **b)** profile **c)** character **d)** site
4. All laws have very penalties for people who sell drugs.
 a) simple **b)** severe **c)** fragile **d)** merciful
5. The young writer began his career writing for the local magazine.
 a) leaflets **b)** brochures **c)** articles **d)** captions
6. Many Egyptian farmers keep such as cows and buffaloes to help them in their fields.
 a) livestock **b)** dairy **c)** household **d)** poultry
7. I go to the post office to receive the parcel. The postman delivered it.
 a) didn't have to **b)** don't have to **c)** have to **d)** had to
8. She come with us if she doesn't want to.
 a) has to **b)** needn't **c)** mustn't **d)** must
9. This exercise is too difficult. I think you should make it
 a) as simple **b)** most simple **c)** more simpler **d)** simpler
10. When she comes, they dinner.
 a) have **b)** will be having **c)** are going to having **d)** have
11. I'm not feeling well. In fact, I think I sick!
 a) am **b)** will be being **c)** am going to be **d)** will have been
12. He said that he never wanted to see you, but I'm sure he didn't it.
 a) meant **b)** seem **c)** suppose **d)** mean
13. The plastic melts if it too hot.
 a) gets **b)** got **c)** is getting **d)** had got
14. My friends have invited me the pyramids with them.
 a) visiting **b)** to visiting **c)** to visit **d)** to have visited
15. You can't stop me what I want.
 a) that I do **b)** do **c)** doing **d)** to do
16. a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.
 a) Having found **b)** Finding **c)** After founding **d)** We found

ALADWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Mount Everest is the tallest mountain on Earth. Mount Everest is still growing a few millimeters every year! Its peak is located on the border between Nepal and Tibet in China. It is part of the great Himalayan Mountain range.

For many years, climbers tried and failed to reach the summit of Mount Everest. In 1953, the British put everything they had into giving it one more try. They hoped that their climbers would reach the top in time for the coronation of Queen Elizabeth.

Ten different climbers from all over the world were chosen to make the trek. In April and May, supplies were relayed up the mountain, and camps were set up every 1,000 to 2,000 feet.

On May 29, 1953, two of the climbers set out for the summit from their camp at 27,900 feet. On that morning, Edmund P. Hillary (from New Zealand) and Tenzing Norgay (from Nepal) accomplished one of the greatest climbing feats ever. They were the first to reach the summit of Mount Everest. When they returned home, journalists kept asking the two men who reached the summit first. Each time they were asked, the response was the same: "We reached it together, as a team."

Between 1921 and 2007, over two thousand people have climbed Mount Everest, some more than once. Since the first ascent in 1953, more than 600 climbers from 20 different countries have reached the summit. However, over two hundred climbers have died attempting to climb Mount Everest, most commonly from avalanches, but also from falls in crevasses, cold, or high-altitude sicknesses.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What is this passage mostly about?

a) The first people who climbed on Mount Everest.
b) The location of Mount Everest.
c) The first climbers to reach the top of Mount Everest.
d) The first time Queen Elizabeth climbed Mount Everest.

18 Read the following sentence from the article and choose the meaning for the underlined word.
They hoped that their climbers would reach the top before the coronation of Queen Elizabeth.

a) Birth.
b) Special feast held by a king or queen.
c) Birthday celebration.
d) Ceremony for crowning a king or queen.

19 Where is Mount Everest located?

a) In Asia.
b) In Western Europe.
c) In North America.
d) In South America.

20 Which sentence is an opinion?

a) On May 29, 1953, two climbers reached the summit of Mount Everest.
b) For many years, climbers had tried to reach the summit of Mount Everest.
c) Mount Everest is part of the great Himalayan Mountain range.
d) Edmund P. Hillary and Tenzing Norgay accomplished one of the greatest climbing feats ever.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Do we know the name of the first person to reach the summit of Mount Everest? Explain.

.....

.....

.....

22 Find words from the passage that give the antonym of:

a) descent **b)** succeeded

.....

.....

.....

23 What do you think of all those people who climbed Everest?

.....

.....

.....

24 Why do you think people want to do this dangerous things like climbing Everest? Give two reasons.

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Music eases our nerves and renews our energies. It inspires us with courage and fills us with hope. It cures sick minds and heals troubled souls.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into English:**

- للسياحة دور هام فى الاقتصاد فى مصر فهى توفر الكثير من فرص العمل كما أنها ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الأجنبية التى تحتاجها مصر.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:**

"An exciting journey that you will never forget"

- Your name is Yasser and your e-mail address is: yasser_19@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Medhat and his e-mail address is: medhat200@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALARWA Gem

Final Test 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Being able to adapt to different situations is one of the life skills.
 a) fictional **b)** extra **c)** additional **d)** basic
2. Within less than an hour, the fire had to the fuel stores.
 a) published **b)** spread **c)** printed **d)** sprayed
3. Nowadays, all should spend money on training their staff.
 a) customers **b)** buyers **c)** employers **d)** clients
4. All airports have special machines to passengers' bags.
 a) scan **b)** skim **c)** expect **d)** state
5. Modern freezing enable the chickens to be stored for weeks.
 a) diseases **b)** routes **c)** techniques **d)** causers
6. A is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information.
 a) licence **b)** degree **c)** permission **d)** questionnaire
7. If I hadn't broken my leg. I the race.
 a) would win **b)** might have won **c)** will win **d)** win
8. You keep medicines where children can get them.
 a) have to **b)** must **c)** mustn't **d)** needn't
9. Was the film funny as his last one?
 a) much **b)** as **c)** more **d)** less
10. Do you like my new solar watch? Here, I you how it works.
 a) show **b)** will be showing **c)** am showing **d)** will show
11. I have taken the job if they had offered it to me earlier.
 a) could **b)** shouldn't **c)** must **d)** couldn't
12. I to have left my book at home.
 a) supposed **b)** am meant **c)** mean **d)** seem
13. late, we will have to start without him.
 a) Were he to be **b)** Should he be **c)** Had he been **d)** Unless he is
14. The planet in the solar system is Jupiter.
 a) large **b)** larger **c)** largest **d)** most large
15. I'm tired. I'd rather out this evening, if you don't mind.
 a) not going **b)** not to go **c)** don't go **d)** not go
16. Have you been to?
 a) Canada or United States **b)** the Canada or the United States
 c) the Canada or United States **d)** Canada or the United States

ALARMA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Let me out," the explorer said, "or I'll make the sun go away. Right here in the middle of the day I'll make something eat up your sun." The jungle people did not believe him. They laughed and poked sticks at him through the bars of the cage. "All right," he said, "You'll see. My magic is strong. Now I'll make the sun go away in the middle of the day."

And the sun did go away! At least it seemed to. Something seemed to eat up the sun a little at a time until it was all gone and the day was as dark as midnight. The jungle people moaned and cried. They were very afraid of this explorer whose magic was strong enough to take their sun away. "Make the sun come back," they cried, and we'll do anything you say. We'll set you free and give you food and great treasures." "All right," the explorer said. "I'll make the sun come back." And the sun did come back after a while.

What the jungle people did not know was that day, the sun was eclipsed by the moon. Eclipse means to hide something by coming in front of it. When this happens, it can turn as dark as night right in the middle of the day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main idea in the passage is

a) the explorer's trick to be set free
b) magic and the sun
c) the jungle people's kindness
d) the explorer's power to hide the sun

18 The thing that was really eating up the sun was

a) magic
b) a dragon
c) an eclipse
d) the explorer

19 The explorer seemed to have much knowledge with

a) primitive people
b) astronomy
c) medicine
d) magic

20 The synonym of the word "moaned" is

a) slept
b) ran
c) frightened
d) groaned

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What did the jungle people do when the explorer threatened to take the sun?

.....

.....

.....

22 How was the explorer more knowledgeable than the jungle people?

.....

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

23 Why do you think the jungle people imprison the explorer?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think of what the explorer did?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Many of our old cities don't suit modern life. They consist of a variety of buildings and narrow streets full of petrol fumes and noise which affect people's health.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into English:**

- إن مصر هبة النيل وبدونه ستصبح مصر صحراء جرداء لذلك يجب علينا الحفاظ عليه وترشيد استهلاكنا من المياه مما يساعدنا فى مواجهة أزمة سد النهضة.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- The pros and cons of modern means of transport.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor encouraged the child to increase the of food that he eats.
 a) mixture **b)** variety **c)** combination **d)** collocation
2. To do this job done, you need a computer to the Internet.
 a) connected **b)** contacted **c)** communicated **d)** chattered
3. It's important to a virus checker on your mobile or tablet.
 a) break **b)** smash **c)** attach **d)** install
4. If you change your about the wall colour, it's easy to just paint over it.
 a) head **b)** mind **c)** brain **d)** matter
5. The shoe factory has come under for using child labour.
 a) rocket **b)** fire **c)** pocket **d)** shot
6. The famous actress complained that the magazine had invaded her by printing the photos with her children.
 a) privacy **b)** priority **c)** protect **d)** coverage
7. You see a doctor. It's not so serious.
 a) had to **b)** didn't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** needn't
8. For some students mathematics is the subject they take.
 a) difficult **b)** more difficult **c)** most difficult **d)** much difficult
9. If the weather stays good, we a game of tennis tomorrow.
 a) would play **b)** will play **c)** would have played **d)** will be playing
10. My elder brother taught me how a bike.
 a) to ride **b)** riding **c)** to be riding **d)** ride
11. Why hasn't the teacher come to school today? She to be ill.
 a) means **b)**is meant **c)** was seemed **d)** is supposed
12. If you much money last year, you wouldn't have suffered a lot.
 a) had wasted **b)** hadn't wasted **c)** wasted **d)** didn't waste
13. At the same time tomorrow, we through the streets of downtown.
 a) will walk **b)** are going to walk **c)** will be walking **d)** walk
14. If you had this house, a husband, and three children to look after, you tired like me.
 a) looked **b)** would have looked **c)** will look **d)** would look
15. Are you looking forward on holiday?
 a) to going **b)** that you go **c)** to go **d)** going
16. I haven't seen her for, I've forgotten what she looks like.
 a) so along **b)** a such long time
 c) such a long time **d)** so long time

©ALPHA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I live in a housing estate like all my neighbours. The one thing about living in a housing estate is that we have many neighbours.

Next to my house on the right lives a family whose parents seem to be always scolding the children. I do not know them very well because they always appear angry. Never a day passes without hearing the children crying and the parents shouting at the top of their voices.

On the other side of my house, however, lives a very quiet and polite family. Mr. Saber is a quiet man who seems to manage his family very well. Though he has four children, which is one more than the other family, I never hear him scold his children. So his children never cry.

Further down the road is a family whose radio is switched on most of the time, except late at night. His immediate neighbours must have a tough time putting up with the noise of the radio.

Then there is a family whose members seem to live in a world of their own. Many times we have met along the road and not once has any of them even nod his or her head in acknowledgement. They are not blind or deaf. Yet they can walk straight past as if I am not there at all. I would not say that they are unfriendly. I guess they are simply not interested in knowing their neighbours.

These are some of the neighbours living near me. There are others that I have yet to meet. However I am careful not to intrude on their privacy. The friendly ones smile or raise their hands. The not-so-friendly ones look away. I have to live among them, friendly or not.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 How many children does the first family have?

a) Four. **b)** Two. **c)** Three. **d)** Five.

18 Which one of the following isn't true about the writer and his neighbours?

a) All the writer's neighbours are bad.

b) All the writer's neighbours live in housing estates.

c) The writer doesn't intrude on his neighbours' privacy.

d) The writer has to live among his good and bad neighbours.

19 The antonym of the word "scolding" is

a) making angry **b)** praising

c) surprising **d)** punishing

20 The children's behaviour is affected by

a) the number of the family **b)** the name of the family

c) the neighbours' behaviour **d)** the parents' management

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) interfere **b)** greeting

.....

.....

.....

ALAWAM Gem

22 What do the members of the family who seem to live in a world of their own do?

23 How would you like your neighbours to be?

24 What would you do if your neighbours are not good?

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Online learning is becoming more popular today as more people have access to computers and the Internet. It was the only solutions for students to complete their study during the crisis of COVID-19.

26 **Translate into English:**

- تحقق أفلام الخيال العلمى وأفلام الحركة أرباحًـا كبيرة فى جميع أنحاء العالم بسبب إعجاب الشباب بها بينما أصبحت الأفلام الرومانسية فى ذيل قائمة الإيرادات فى كثير من بلاد العالم.

27 **Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:**

"A goal you hope to achieve in the future"

- Your name is Wafaa and your e-mail address is: wafaa1000@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Hanan and her e-mail address is: hanan200@yahoo.com.

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doctors say that the small blood vessels in the nose easily, so some fighting sports player wear a face mask.
 a) breed **b)** heal **c)** treat **d)** bleed
2. It was real fun to together with his old school friends.
 a) go **b)** make **c)** get **d)** intend
3. There is clear that smoking causes heart disease.
 a) law **b)** case **c)** invention **d)** evidence
4. What was the of that book you were reading last week?
 a) address **b)** title **c)** rank **d)** award
5. If your memory problems do not improve, you should a specialist.
 a) consult **b)** detect **c)** predict **d)** hire
6. The two villages are similar in size but very different in
 a) feeling **b)** character **c)** letter **d)** assumption
7. You stand on the plane. There are seats for everyone.
 a) had to **b)** have to **c)** must **d)** don't have to
8. There were lots of buses, so we drive to the airport.
 a) didn't have to **b)** needn't **c)** must **d)** had to
9. *The Lord of the Rings* was the film I have ever seen.
 a) much exciting **b)** most exciting **c)** exciting **d)** more exciting
10. The plane from Saudi Arabia Cairo Airport at 4:30.
 a) will have reached **b)** is reaching **c)** is going to reach **d)** reaches
11. Nobody knows where the jewels have gone. They have been stolen.
 a) should **b)** must **c)** could **d)** can't
12. He is a liar, which that we'll never believe him.
 a) seem **b)** means **c)** suppose **d)** mean
13. I you twenty pounds if you fix my computer for me.
 a) would have given **b)** would give **c)** will give **d)** give
14. they seen us, we would have been in trouble.
 a) Should **b)** If **c)** Had **d)** Were
15. When Marwa came to Britain, she had to get used on the left.
 a) for driving **b)** to drive **c)** to driving **d)** driving
16. We don't have on holiday right now.
 a) enough money to go **b)** money enough to go
 c) enough money for go **d)** money enough for going

ALAWWAL Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Interests are important to think about. But it is most important to know about your values. Work values seem to affect one's choice of jobs even more than interests. So, sometimes one may go through a conflict between his interests and his work values. Some people, for instance, might accept jobs that don't fit their work values. That means that something important to them is missing. In other words they have to do something in their job which doesn't fit their work values.

One work value is working under pressure. Some people like to work that way. Others can't stand it. Suzan loves pressure. She works best when she has to meet a deadline. She loves a job where she has to hurry. She would be bored in a job without pressure. On the contrary, Fatma can't stand pressure. She gets nervous and makes mistakes. Pressure even makes her sick. She won't be able to stay very long in a pressure cause job. Some occupations are more likely to have time pressure than others. For example, working for a newspaper always has deadlines. All jobs involve some degree of pressure, whether it's hitting targets, meeting deadlines or managing multiple tasks at once – some jobs more than others (think: surgeons or firefighters, for example). In other words, the ability to work under pressure is a skill highly sought after by employers, and it is, therefore, important you provide an answer that proves you're perfectly capable of keeping your cool in difficult and stressful situations.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 According to the writer our choice of jobs is influenced by
a) our education **b)** work values **c)** personality **d)** salaries

18 According to the passage working under pressure means
a) meeting a deadline **b)** finishing at any time
c) making mistakes **d)** enjoying our job

19 The synonym of "conflict" is
a) balance **b)** agreement **c)** harmony **d)** struggle

20 In most time, pressure leads to
a) relaxation **b)** satisfaction **c)** freedom **d)** sickness

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What happens to people who don't like their jobs?

.....

.....

.....

22 Explain in two points how working under pressure is something bad.

.....

.....

.....

23 What skills should a person have to work under pressure? Mention two skills.

24 Do you like working under pressure or not? Why?

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

One of our environmental problems is the rise in the temperature of the earth. The heavy rains that we have witnessed lately is a warning to man to stop polluting the atmosphere.

26 **Translate into English:**

- تضرب مصر مثالًا كبيرًا للتسامح بين الأديان من خلال التعايش بين المسلمين والمسيحيين الذى يرجع لمئات السنين والذى حماها من الفتنة الطائفية على مر العصور.

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- A famous person and the services he/she did to humanity.

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People complained that the rubbish lay in on the street and this was collected at once.
 a) piles **b)** hays **c)** holes **d)** wreckages
2. The famous tennis player Venus Williams won several important singles before retiring.
 a) titles **b)** names **c)** headings **d)** tours
3. To healthy, you should follow the rules of personal and public cleanliness.
 a) leave **b)** move **c)** stay **d)** remove
4. The Japanese bride insisted on wearing a/an Japanese kimono on her wedding.
 a) styled **b)** technological **c)** inventive **d)** traditional
5. My uncle made a fortune by in used cars and new flats.
 a) inspiring **b)** investing **c)** moving **d)** respecting
6. Mona's teaching experience gives her a/an when working with children.
 a) disadvantage **b)** danger **c)** advantage **d)** experiment
7. We to school tomorrow as it is a holiday.
 a) needn't go **b)** needn't have gone **c)** have to **d)** must
8. As you get older, you get
 a) tolerant **b)** more tolerant **c)** most tolerant **d)** the most tolerant
9. What at the party tonight?
 a) you wearing **b)** do you wear **c)** are you worn **d)** are you wearing
10. They were warned the mountain in such bad weather.
 a) to climb **b)** climbing **c)** not to climb **d)** to not climb
11. She has been on the phone for an hour. She to have an interesting conversation!
 a) is meant **b)** supposed **c)** seems **d)** is seemed
12. his phone number, I would call him.
 a) Were I to know **b)** If I know **c)** Unless I knew **d)** Had I known
13. Which of the three supermarkets do you think has range of products?
 a) widest **b)** the widest **c)** wider **d)** the most wide
14. Hisham at the club tonight. We should go and see him. He's a great player.
 a) will be playing **b)** will play **c)** is going to play **d)** plays
15. I phoned the restaurant a table.
 a) for reserve **b)** to reserve **c)** for reserving **d)** for to reserve
16. It's two years Joe.
 a) that I don't see **b)** since I last saw
 c) that I haven't seen **d)** since I didn't see

ALAWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I walk a kilometre or so to school every morning. Sometimes I come across a mad woman dressed in a dark dirty sari. She probably has not had a bath for years. Her hair is matted, teeth stained red with betel-nut and eyes blood-shot with the look of madness. I always keep my distance from her for my own safety for I cannot be sure what she will do next. Also she smells terrible up close.

She is by no means violent but she has the nasty habit of following people who pass by. Normally when I see her I cross over to the other side of the road just to avoid her. Usually that works. Sometimes she crosses the road too. So I run. Fortunately she cannot run very fast and gives up after a while.

One morning, as I crossed the road to avoid her, she tried to cross too. I started to run. She started to run too but tripped on her sari. She fell down hard on the road and lay there in a heap. I wanted to keep running but I saw that she was in great danger of being run over by a car. So I ran over to her to pull her to the roadside.

As much as I disliked it, I had to help her. The other passers-by did not seem to bother. So I held my breath and pull her by her arms towards the roadside. By now people and cars had stopped to watch. No one helped but at last I managed to drag her to safety.

She opened her eyes and gave me a smile. I could only stare at her dumbly. Then I turned and hurried to school to wash my hands.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 One of the following isn't true about the old woman.

a) Her clothes were dirty and her air was untidy.

b) She was violent.

c) She follows and runs after people who pass her.

d) She liked the writer's help.

18 The expression "I held my breath" means

a) I stopped breathing **b)** I didn't have oxygen

c) I was sad **d)** I hated it

19 When people saw the woman in danger, they

a) came to help **b)** did nothing

c) ran away **d)** thanked the writer

20 The writer proved to be

a) violent **b)** fool

c) coward **d)** kind

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How does the mad woman look?

.....

.....

.....

22 Give two reasons that make the writer walk away from the woman.

.....

.....

.....

23 What do you think would have happened if the writer hadn't helped the woman?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think we should do to the street people?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork, together with tolerance, is essential for the success of any project.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

مهما كان طموحك للمستقبل عليك أن تعمل بجد وصبر لكى تستطيع تحقيقه ولكن تذكر أيضًا أن التخطيط الجيد يساعدك فى ذلك.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- Many people think that money is the main cause of happiness. State your opinion.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. advertising are those advertisements who appear to people out of their interest and activity on the Internet.
 a) Banner **b)** Commercial **c)** Amateur **d)** Targeted
2. Maher spent a lot of time listening to records and just hanging with some friends.
 a) on **b)** in **c)** out **d)** at
3. British Airways has a very good safety Accidents are rare on their flights.
 a) prize **b)** record **c)** revision **d)** medal
4. The advertisement campaign has succeeded in sales of the new product.
 a) pulling **b)** depriving **c)** boosting **d)** discouraging
5. Hossam Hassan has gained much for his successful football career.
 a) disrespect **b)** rudeness **c)** affection **d)** respect
6. At the end of the 17th century England was still, depending mainly on agriculture.
 a) rural **b)** urban **c)** space **d)** spicy
7. The bigger the flat is, the time she takes to clean it.
 a) longer **b)** longest **c)** long **d)** more long
8. I often work at the weekend to get everything done.
 a) mustn't **b)** have to **c)** don't have to **d)** didn't have to
9. I for my results all the next month.
 a) wait **b)** will wait **c)** will be waiting **d)** will be waited
10. Why did you leave the exam room? You have checked your answers more thoroughly.
 a) shouldn't **b)** should **c)** must **d)** oughtn't
11. I'm to give a conference in Cairo tomorrow but I think I'm going down with flu.
 a) seemed **b)** suppose **c)** seem **d)** supposed
12. I would have been in bad trouble, if she me.
 a) hadn't helped **b)** were **c)** is **d)** will be
13. The mobile phone must be one of the inventions of all time.
 a) useful **b)** most useful **c)** less useful **d)** more useful
14. We have to hurry. The train in five minutes.
 a) is leaving **b)** leaves **c)** will have left **d)** won't leave
15. I didn't hear you You must have been very quiet.
 a) came **b)** to come **c)** come **d)** to coming
16. It took us quite a long time to get here. It was journey.
 a) three hours **b)** three hour **c)** a three-hours **d)** a three-hour

© ALADWAA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My hobby is reading. I read story books, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that I find interesting.

This hobby got started when I was a little boy. I had always wanted my parents to read fairy tales and other stories to me. Soon they got fed up and tired of having to read to me continually. So as soon as I could, I learned to read. I started with simple ABC books. Soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories. Now I read just about anything that is available.

Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would otherwise not know. I learned about how people lived in bygone days of magic and mystery. I learned about the wonders of the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things of our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, I do not have to catch a disease to know that it can kill me. I know the danger so I can avoid it. Also I do not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about it in a book.

Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. I am better equipped to cope with living. Otherwise I would go about ignorantly learning things the hard way.

So I continue to read. Besides being more informed about the world, I also spend my time profitably. It is indeed a good hobby.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The writer has liked reading since

a) his graduation **b)** his childhood **c)** his marriage **d)** his youth

18 Through reading, the person becomes

a) knowledgeable **b)** available **c)** famous **d)** honourable

19 The word "bygone" means

a) the things that will happen in the future **b)** the things that happen daily

c) the things that will never happen **d)** the things that happening in a past time

20 In addition to helping the person to know many things, reading is a

a) disaster **b)** responsibility **c)** hobby **d)** danger

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What books does the writer like reading?

.....

.....

.....

22 Reading can save you from danger. Give two examples.

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

23 Find words from the passage that mean:

1. to deal successfully with a difficult situation
2. having a lot of knowledge

24 Do you like reading? Why? Why not?

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

In the past, trade was on a small scale. Today, trade has greatly developed and increased. Goods are now transported quickly and safely.

26 **Translate into English:**

- تعانـى العديد من دول العالم من مشـكلة اللاجئين الذين تجبرهم الحروب والصراعات والمشـكلات الاقتصادية الكبيـرة على ترك أوطانهم والبحث عن حياه أفضل.

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Your favourite social networking site.

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story of the president's visit dominated newspaper around the world.
 a) addresses b) headquarters c) headlines d) backlines
2. I couldn't in contact with many of my relatives when I moved to Sharm El Sheikh.
 a) keep b) leave c) depart d) pay
3. She was told to go back to the doctor in two weeks if she hadn't
 a) proved b) approved c) disapproved d) improved
4. Most Arab young people have a/an of the USA as a very rich country.
 a) photo b) location c) site d) image
5. A specialist did a full heart for the patient before the operation.
 a) examination b) process c) intention d) surgery
6. Ahmed Helmy's films are popular because his ideas are to many people.
 a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted
7. We have a ticket with your name on or we couldn't travel.
 a) have to b) had to c) must d) needn't
8. Employees accept the new conditions or be dismissed.
 a) will have to b) don't have to c) needn't d) can't
9. The higher the temperature, the the demand for ice cream.
 a) great b) greatest c) greatly d) greater
10. I haven't made up my mind yet. But I think I something nice in my wardrobe.
 a) find b) am going to find c) will find d) am finding
11. The presenter asked the writer about Shakespeare's early life.
 a) to talk b) to talking c) talking d) talk
12. A company's logo to help people easily identify its products.
 a) meant b) means c) meaning d) is meant
13. If you like it, ... it?
 a) you will buy b) would you have bought
 c) would you buy d) will you buy
14. If we had a map, we able to get out of here.
 a) shall be b) would be c) should have been d) would have been
15. This isn't my book. It's
 a) my sister b) from my sister c) of my sister's d) my sister's
16. They are very kind to me. They treat me their own son.
 a) as if I were b) as if I would be c) as if I had d) as I am

ALAWAM Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Our home is usually our favourite place to spend time in. However many accidents occur at home. There are dangerous things in the house and we should be aware of them. Thus we can avoid unnecessary pain or injury.

Electricity runs many of our home appliances. It is a very useful thing. It is also a very dangerous thing if used carelessly, for it can kill. Electrical sockets and power points are to be handled with utmost care. Young children should never be allowed to go near them. Unless we are very sure of what we are doing, repairs should only be done by a competent electrician. It is only too easy to get electrocuted. Old or faulty appliances should be discarded. If used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches it.

The kitchen has many dangerous things. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns. Flies and rats can contaminate food. Thus the kitchen is not a place to be careless in. If we are careful and know how to handle things there, then the chance of an accident occurring is lessened.

The biggest danger in a bathroom is when the floor is slippery with water or soap. I have heard of many incidents of people, especially old folks, falling in the bathroom. Sometimes the fall is fatal. Often it leaves the victim bedridden. Utmost care is needed here.

Finally the medicine cabinet should be inaccessible to young children. Dangerous drugs and pills can look like sweets to these young ones. If taken, the consequences can be disastrous. Other dangers do exist. It is up to us to watch out for them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Although it is a very useful thing, electricity can

a) run factories **b)** end your life **c)** make you happy **d)** darken your room

18 If there is something wrong with electricity at home, who should do the repairs?

a) The electrician. **b)** The children. **c)** The parents. **d)** The neighbours.

19 Utmost care is needed in the bathroom as

a) there is much electricity in it **b)** hot water can scald your skin

c) you may slip easily and become bedridden **d)** fire can break out at any time

20 Young children may take dangerous drugs and pills thinking that they are

a) milk **b)** medicine **c)** fruit **d)** sweets

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why should old or faulty appliances be discarded? Mention two dangers.

.....

.....

.....

22 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) to kill someone by causing electricity to flow through their body.

b) to burn the skin with boiling liquid or steam.

.....

.....

.....

23 Why is the kitchen considered a dangerous place to cause accidents?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think is the most dangerous place at home? Why?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills and values. It helps people become useful members of the society. Parents and teachers have the chief responsibility for education.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- رغم فوائدها الكثيرة إلا أن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى أحيانًا تتسبب فى نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى فى المجتمع لذلك يؤيد الكثيرون فرض الرقابة الحكومية عليها.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- The role teachers can play in developing society.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 13

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This furniture is still in its condition, so it is valuable.
 a) back b) original c) dispensing d) infecting
2. The government must now deal the problem of high unemployment.
 a) in b) at c) with d) of
3. Social media have attracted because of their increasing popularity.
 a) clerks b) consumers c) advertisers d) rivals
4. In this programme, old soldiers talk about their of the war.
 a) memories b) souvenirs c) memorials d) anniversaries
5. The two little sisters arms happily as they walked to school.
 a) wrapped b) contacted c) linked d) called
6. My brother is doing a in economics to have a promotion.
 a) journey b) course c) search d) trip
7. To get a cheap ticket, he book in advance.
 a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) needn't d) had to
8. She earns at least as much Maher, and probably more.
 a) as b) than c) more d) of
9. This is my last day here. I to England tomorrow.
 a) am going back b) go c) will be gone d) won't
10. The results were completely wrong. As a scientist she have planned the experiment more carefully.
 a) must b) might c) shouldn't d) should
11. A lot of students can't answer the maths problem. It difficult.
 a) is meant b) seems c) is supposed d) is seemed
12. If I had another 5000 pounds, I a car.
 a) would have bought b) could have bought c) could buy d) will buy
13. That chocolate ice cream tastes
 a) deliciously b) more deliciously c) delicious d) the most deliciously
14. Samy has told us that he when we arrive at the station so we will have to get a taxi.
 a) is working b) works c) will work d) will be working
15. I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. is getting married.
 a) A friend of mine b) A friend of me c) One my friends d) A friend's
16. They live on a busy road. a lot of noise from the traffic.
 a) It must have b) There must be c) It must be d) There must have

ALAWWAL Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Computers are machines that can help us in many ways. But they cannot think or do things on their own. Humans have to feed them with information and tell them what to do with it. They can save much time and work. For example, all the information and the office files can be stored in a computer's "memory".

The first computers were huge and costly. They filled up almost the whole floor of large offices. Later, because of the usefulness and demand for computers in business, scientists soon found ways to produce cheaper and smaller computers. They invented chips which made it possible to store more information in less space.

Today, computers are not only cheaper, but also *more compact*. They can just be placed on top of an ordinary writing table. They can even be carried from place to place easily. Computers are not only used in offices by companies, but they are also used at home, by families who can afford them.

Robots, on the other hand, are not mechanical people. They are only moving parts controlled by a computer. A robot can do the same work for twenty four hours, and yet, it does not complain or get tired. In Japan and in some places in America, robots are used in factories to assemble cars. As computers become more common businesses and factories, people fear that one day computers and computer controlled robots will put human workers out of work.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Humans fear that one day computers and robots
- **a)** are busier than humans
- **b)** are cleverer than humans
- **c)** will make humans jobless
- **d)** will make humans listen to certain noise

18 The BEST title for this passage would be
- **a)** Computers and Robots
- **b)** Old and New Computers.
- **c)** Robots are Security Guards
- **d)** The Electronic Invention

19 Find a word in the passage that has the same meaning as *more compact*.
- **a)** Huge.
- **b)** Cheaper.
- **c)** Smaller.
- **d)** Costly.

20 Which of the following statements in NOT TRUE?
- **a)** Robots are controlled by a computer.
- **b)** Robots are mechanical people.
- **c)** Robots do not get tired of working.
- **d)** Robots are used in factories in Japan.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why did the first computers fill up almost the whole floor?

.....

.....

.....

ALADDIN Gem

22 Why do humans have to feed the computers with information and tell them what to do?

.....

.....

.....

23 Find words from the passage that give the meaning of:

a) expensive **b)** collect

.....

.....

.....

24 In your opinion, how would computers will be like in the future?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Despite the challenges the Egyptian economy is facing, there is determination to overcome them. The economy is expected to witness a growth in the following years.

26 **Translate into English:**

- عـلاوة علـى المناظر الطبيعية الخلابة والطقـس المعتدل تمتلك مصر العديد من الأعمال الهندسـية المذهلة القديمة والحديثـة لذلك تجذب الزائرين والسائحين من جميع أنحاء العالم.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

"A country or city you would like very much to visit."

- Your name is Magdy and your e-mail address is: magdy4@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Ayman and her e-mail address is: ayman_2020@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAYMAN Gem

Revision Test 14

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kareem was thankful for his friends' during his health problems.
 a) support **b)** seduction **c)** neglect **d)** struggle
2. Egypt proved to be good at organising international sporting
 a) accident **b)** event **c)** incidents **d)** process
3. There's no room for more books – we've used up all the space.
 a) readable **b)** acceptable **c)** available **d)** proper
4. The Egyptian Food Bank's is to provide food for homeless people.
 a) report **b)** procedure **c)** article **d)** aim
5. A spy is someone who against his country and give secrets to its enemy.
 a) innovates **b)** suspects **c)** plays **d)** plot
6. The discussions between the two men were simple, but they gradually started up and turning into a quarrel.
 a) warning **b)** cooling **c)** decreasing **d)** heating
7. To get there on time, I leave home by 8:30.
 a) mustn't **b)** don't have to **c)** had to **d)** needn't
8. We had a great holiday. In fact, I think it was the I have ever had.
 a) most enjoyable **b)** more enjoyable **c)** enjoyable **d)** less enjoyable
9. Hurry up! The conference in 20 minutes.
 a) will be beginning **b)** begins **c)** won't begin **d)** has begun
10. Ali's mother taught him and encouraged him to become a doctor.
 a) read **b)** to reading **c)** reading **d)** to read
11. She to speak Italian in an English class.
 a) is supposed **b)** is meant **c)** is not supposed **d)** is seemed
12. If we there, we would never have found what was happening.
 a) didn't go **b)** hadn't gone **c)** haven't gone **d)** weren't
13. I studied a lot for the exam. I
 a) am not failing **b)** am not going to fail **c)** don't fail **d)** won't be failing
14. It's not beautiful a house as I'd imagined.
 a) much **b)** more **c)** the **d)** as
15. We couldn't buy anything because of the shops were open.
 a) all **b)** nothing **c)** no-one **d)** none
16. We watched TV all evening we didn't have anything better to do.
 a) because of **b)** while **c)** since **d)** when

ALADWA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Asian elephant is another type of elephant found in the world, besides the African elephant. They share some similarities. Elephants are social creatures and live in herds. Asian elephants are normally found in countries like India, Indonesia, Malaysia and Myanmar. An adult Asian elephant stands at two to three metres and weighs approximately 5000 kilograms. At birth, it stands at around one metre and weighs approximately 100 kilograms. Like most humans, they give birth to a single baby at a time but the fetus stays much longer in the mother's womb compared to the human baby; 23 months! An Asian elephant has a life span of about 60 years.

The diet of an Asian elephant is somewhat similar to African elephants. They feed mainly on vegetation, bark, fruits and flowers.

Living in a herd means that the baby elephant has a large group of adults to look after it, besides its own mother. An orphan elephant is often adopted by another female elephant. As the largest land animal in the world, an elephant requires about 150 kilograms of food and 75-95 litres of water a day.

The largest threats to the Asian elephant are poaching and habitat loss. Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market, so large-tusked males are in constant danger of being poached. Elephants are also captured alive for domestic use, such as tourist attractions.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 There are types of elephants in the world.

a) one **b)** two

c) three **d)** many

18 The Asian elephant can be found in

a) Indonesia **b)** America

c) Australia **d)** Holland

19 The synonym of the word "poaching" is

a) slaughtering **b)** immigrating

c) killing **d)** stealing

20 What happens to an orphan elephant?

a) It is looked after by another female elephant.

b) It is abandoned.

c) It is looked after by the whole herd.

d) It is killed.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How is the elephant similar to humans in terms of giving birth?

.....

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

22 There are similarities between the African and Asian elephants. Mention two.

.....

.....

.....

23 Give two reasons why elephants are captured alive.

.....

.....

.....

24 Why do you think the elephant is found only in Asia and Africa?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

School education plays an important role in shaping the character of children. That's why all governments try to develop it all the time.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- للرياضة أثر كبير فى محاربة مشـكلات المجتمع المختلفة مثل العنف والجريمة كما يمكنها تعزيز المبادئ الأساسـية لشـخصية الأطفال بجانب فوائدها الصحية الكبيرة لكل الناس.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:

- You bought a new TV, but it had a lot of problems after a week. Write to the company which sold it to you complaining and asking them to replace it for you. Your name is Ehab Ahmed Ibrahim. The company's e-mail address is: service@ted.eg.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWAM Gem

Revision Test 15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the top-selling is Microsoft Office.
 a) apply b) application c) applied d) applicable
2. This ointment is very strong and it will help the wound.
 a) heal b) cure c) treat d) spread
3. Gmail websites must check all mails for any before allowing upload and download.
 a) virus b) germ c) bacterium d) tumour
4. People living in town are not happy the decision to build the nearby nuclear power station.
 a) at b) with c) over d) in
5. I'll never Samy for what he did to my pet cat.
 a) comply b) forge c) forget d) forgive
6. Strong measures are still needed to the COVID-19 epidemic in many countries.
 a) contain b) involve c) enclose d) include
7. Before you buy a house, you consider all the costs.
 a) need to b) had to c) didn't have to d) mustn't
8. It's getting to find a good job.
 a) so more difficult b) more and more difficult
 c) more harder d) the most difficult
9. He on the garden so we won't see him when we get home.
 a) will work b) works c) will have worked d) will be working
10. The information you sent have included details of courses taken at university.
 a) mustn't b) should c) shouldn't d) may not
11. Pay no attention to Samy's remarks. He it.
 a) doesn't seem b) doesn't suppose c) wasn't meaning d) didn't mean
12. I would get up earlier, if there a good reason to.
 a) was b) have been c) is d) had been
13. Scientists claim that oil pollution is now the cause of death among sea birds.
 a) more common b) common c) commonest d) commoner
14. Osama will be working in the garden while Hala
 a) will cook b) is cooking c) was cooking d) cooks
15. I asked two people the way to the station, but help me.
 a) either b) none c) neither d) both
16. I couldn't sleep very tired.
 a) although being b) in spite of being c) despite of being d) despite I was

ALADWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Sally loved animals. All her favourite programs on television were about animals. The same goes for her school supplies and clothes. Her favourite animal was the cat. She had wanted to own a cat since she was eight years old. Unfortunately, her mother's feelings towards animals *were the opposite of hers*. So Sally was forbidden to own a cat, but one day, something happened that helped Sally get her wish.

She was on her way to the shop across the street from her house. The traffic was quite heavy that day so she was extremely careful before crossing the road. When she got to the other side, she heard something and went over to the grassy area near the pavement. It was a kitten! It was badly injured and was lying here all curled up and looking very frightened. Sally gently picked it up and went home as quickly as she could.

She told her mother how sorry she felt for the kitten and begged her mother to let her look after it. Seeing how upset Sally was, her mother agreed. After a few weeks with the family, the kitten was soon loved by all and became Sally's pet. Even her mother loved the kitten. And that was how sally got her wish at last!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What shape was on Sally's school supplies and clothes?

a) Trees and nature. **b)** Food.
c) Sportsmen. **d)** Animals.

18 The phrase "were the opposite of hers" means

a) she was against owning a cat at home
b) she liked animals more than her daughter
c) she didn't like her daughter
d) she didn't like to help her daughter

19 The word "....." is the antonym of "curled up".

a) twisted **b)** bowed
c) straight **d)** bent

20 What was Sally's wish?

a) To wear clothes with animals on them. **b)** To have a cat as a pet.
c) To visit the place where animals live. **d)** To make her mother love animals.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why did Sally love to watch programs about animals?

.....

.....

.....

22 Why did Sally's mother refuse to allow her to own a cat?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

23 What do you think Sally heard when she was near the pavement?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think happened to the cat?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Food shortage is one of the most serious problems threatening the world and causing starvation in many countries. All people should work hard to find solutions for this serious problem.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- لم يعد التعليم التقليدى مناسبًا للأجيال الجديدة ومواكبة التطور المستمر فى جميع مجالات الحياة الحديثة. لذلك بدأت وزارة التربية والتعليم فى النظام الحديث للتعليم وخاصة فى المرحلة الثانوية.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- A story of a man who conquered great difficulties to reach his ambition.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 16

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flood great problems for the local farmers.
 a) reasoned **b)** applied **c)** caused **d)** shared
2. Bill Gates is one of the greatest of computer technology.
 a) poets **b)** editors **c)** explorers **d)** innovators
3. When we were young, our grandfather's stories us a lot.
 a) entertained **b)** delayed **c)** inspected **d)** trained
4. In time, the new students gained confidence and on with other classmates.
 a) went **b)** got **c)** came **d)** received
5. My mother has always remained to the values she learned as a child.
 a) useless **b)** unaffected **c)** faithful **d)** influenced
6. My father always advises us to be to the power of advertising and not to buy things which we don't need.
 a) immune **b)** respiratory **c)** prohibited **d)** allowed
7. I see the head teacher. I want to discuss something with him.
 a) needn't **b)** don't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** must
8. A Mercedes is one of the cars you can buy.
 a) more expensive **b)** expensive **c)** most expensive **d)** little expensive
9. My horoscope برج الحظ says that I an old friend this week.
 a) am going to meet **b)** am meeting **c)** meet **d)** will meet
10. The teacher wanted her students their homework before the new lesson.
 a) do **b)** to do **c)** doing **d)** to doing
11. Don't speak to the boss now. He to be angry about something.
 a) seems **b)** means **c)** is meant **d)** supposed
12. they had much time, they would have studied better.
 a) If **b)** Were **c)** Had **d)** Have
13. The youth conference in Sharm El-Sheikh next Saturday.
 a) ends **b)** are ending **c)** end **d)** will end
14. I chose this car as my favourite because it's all the ones I have driven.
 a) the fastest from **b)** the fastest of **c)** more faster than **d)** the fastest as
15. These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to
 a) take off **b)** take them off **c)** take off them **d)** take it off
16. I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything was true.
 a) what was said **b)** what they said **c)** that they said **d)** they say

ALADWA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Clocks are used to measure and show the time. Clocks are used so that people can agree on the time. People use clocks to measure units of time that are shorter than natural units. Natural units are the day, the month, and the year.

The clock is a very old invention. Sundials were used in ancient times. Sundials work by measuring shadows that are cast by the sun. Candle clocks were used a very long time ago. Candle clocks work by measuring the time it takes for the wax to melt. Hourglasses are similar to candle clocks because they also measure the time it takes for something to happen. Hourglasses work by measuring the time it takes for sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.

Mechanical clocks appeared in the 13th century in Europe. They work with a system of moving gears. The gears always move at the same speed. Pendulum clocks work with a swinging weight.

The swinging weight is called a pendulum. The pendulum makes the clock parts move. Now people typically use mechanical clocks or digital clocks. Digital clocks show numbers on a screen. The numbers represent the time. Some people use *auditory* clocks. Auditory clocks use language to tell the time aloud. Computers also use internal clocks in order to work properly.

Clocks are everywhere – in homes, schools, offices, and public places.

People go to work and return home according to the clock. School days start and end according to the clock. Airplanes take off and land according to the clock. It is fun to imagine a world without clocks!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The clocks are used to measure the

a) smaller units of time **b)** day

c) month **d)** year

18 What is the main idea of the third paragraph?

a) Why clocks are used.

b) How sundials work.

c) How hourglasses are similar to candle clocks.

d) What types of clocks have been invented.

19 The synonym of "melt" is

a) dissolve **b)** harden

c) solidify **d)** freeze

20 The word "*auditory*" most closely means

a) related to machines **b)** related to numbers

c) related to hearing **d)** related to the sun

B) Answer the following questions:

21 If it weren't for clocks, what would the world be like?

.....

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

22 How can airplanes depend on the clock?

.....

.....

.....

23 How are mechanical clocks different from those before?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think we will use to measure time in the future?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Hosting the African Cup of Nations in 2019 confirmed Egypt's prominent role in Africa. It was also a chance to show our civilisation to the whole world.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- يزخر تاريخ الحركة النسائية فى مصر بالعديد من النماذج الناجحة الكبيرة التى أكدت على دور المرأة وحقوقها مثل نبوية موسى وعائشة عبد الرحمن.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- Some people think that life today is better than the past. State your opinion.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 17

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We spent our journey in a youth hostel that was not expensive.
 a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'
2. Since his at the club, the coach has brought in several star players.
 a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived
3. There was and other seaweed growing on the top layer of the deserted lake.
 a) algae b) palm c) crop d) shrimp
4. The report is based figures from six different cities.
 a) at b) for c) on d) about
5. The title passes by from the queen to the eldest son.
 a) inheritance b) heritage c) loss d) act
6. The tumor in the patient's brain was surgically by a team of top surgeons.
 a) exerted b) tied c) extracted d) healed
7. Asmaa have at least eight hours' sleep a night.
 a) needn't b) doesn't have to c) has got to d) mustn't
8. Hossam has been working and harder since he graduated.
 a) hard b) hardest c) hardly d) harder
9. Look at these big black clouds! It
 a) will rain b) is going to rain c) rains d) is raining
10. This medicine went bad. you have kept it in a cool place as the label says.
 a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) mustn't
11. Why are you late? You to be here at 9 o'clock.
 a) seem b) were supposed c) seemed d) mean
12. If he should be late, we to go without him.
 a) will have b) have c) would have had d) had
13. There are more accidents on this road because it's than the others.
 a) narrow b) more narrow c) narrower d) the narrowest
14. Next year, no doubt, more people the competition as the prize money increases.
 a) will enter b) are going to enter c) are entering d) will be entering
15. Robert away two or three times a year.
 a) is going usually b) goes usually c) is usually going d) usually goes
16. We by a loud noise during the night.
 a) woke up b) are woken c) were woken up d) were waking up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Light from the sun or a light bulb moves in straight waves. When the light waves hit an object, they bounce off of it. This action is called reflection. For most objects, the light bounces in many directions at the same time. When this happens, it allows us to see the object. A picture of the object is sent to the brain from the eye. The brain helps us understand what we see.

Light waves also bounce when they hit a smooth, shiny surface. Hitting a surface like a mirror makes the light waves bounce directly back to your eyes. This movement allows you to see yourself. It creates a reflection. You see the objects around it instead of the mirror itself. Anything shiny may act like a mirror when the light hits it. Have you ever seen your face reflected in the rounded side of a pot or pan? You can even see reflections on the surface of water if it is smooth and still. You have probably seen beautiful pictures of mountain scenes. Often the mountains and sky are reflected on the smooth surface of the lake.

Water and glass have a special ability. They can refract, or bend, light. That's why a spoon in a clear glass of water will look bent when it really is not. The ability of glass to refract light has given us some useful products. Eyeglasses help us see clearly. Magnifying glasses enlarge our view of an object.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The thing that helps us understand what we see is the

a) light **b)** reflection **c)** eye **d)** brain

18 How does light travel?

a) In black waves. **b)** In strange waves. **c)** In straight waves. **d)** In reflected waves.

19 We can see when the light waves hit a surface like a mirror.

a) the mirror **b)** ourselves **c)** the light wave **d)** our eyes

20 The ability to refract, or bend, light allows us to

a) magnify, or make things larger

b) see ourselves through glasses

c) to see mountains in water

d) see things in the dark

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why can we see objects?

.....

.....

.....

22 How do light waves act when they hit a smooth or shiny surface?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

23 Why doesn't a lake filled with people boating and swimming act like a mirror?

.....

.....

.....

24 Which science specialises in studying light and reflection?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Many people don't have the knowledge or awareness of health care. So, it's the role of educated people to spread awareness about such health issues to face medical emergency.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- يختلف الناس فى نوع الطعام الذى يفضلونه والطريقة التى يتم طهيه بها أو حتى مكوناته لكنهم جميعًا يتفقون فى البحث عن الطعم اللذيذ والقيمة الغذائية العالية.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- Write a blog post about the dangers of using social media unwisely.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 18

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This report some of the problems faced by old people after retirement.
 a) perplexes **b)** denies **c)** lightens **d)** highlights
2. The new owners have changed the of the whole building.
 a) appear **b)** appearance **c)** appeared **d)** apparent
3. The child must be from his mother while she receives the radioactive treatment.
 a) united **b)** separated **c)** kept **d)** stayed
4. My little brother always refuses to his toys with any other child.
 a) share **b)** divide **c)** spill **d)** unite
5. I feel really about forgetting my wife's birthday again.
 a) shy **b)** guilty **c)** innocent **d)** proud
6. The old woman her husband by only a few years.
 a) kept **b)** dissolved **c)** called **d)** survived
7. I'd like to know who up all the mess after the party because it is not going to be me.
 a) cleans **b)** does clean **c)** will be cleaning **d)** will have cleaned
8. This is a dangerous tour. Children accompanied by an adult.
 a) mustn't be **b)** needn't have been **c)** must **d)** must be
9. We wash these tomatoes. They've already been washed.
 a) must **b)** don't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** have to
10. The expensive holidays are often the best.
 a) less **b)** lesser **c)** little **d)** least
11. Here is the weather forecast. Tomorrow dry and sunny.
 a) is being **b)** will be being **c)** will be **d)** will have been
12. You may be older than me, but that doesn't you're cleverer.
 a) mean **b)** seem **c)** supposed **d)** meaning
13. Had I realised what you intended, I my permission.
 a) wouldn't give **b)** will give **c)** would not have given **d)** won't give
14. We could change the colour, I suppose. This is a/an
 a) ability **b)** request **c)** permission **d)** suggestion
15. Galal in Assuit for ten years. Now he lives in Alexandria.
 a) lived **b)** has lived **c)** has been living **d)** is living
16. She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help
 a) laughing **b)** to laugh **c)** that she laughed **d)** laugh

ALPHA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Being an only child, there was not much that Sara could do when she was alone. Reading her books made her life seemed so much more interesting. She read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'. Because of all the reading that she did, her grasp of the English language was so good that no one in her level could ever beat her at it.

Her teachers were all so proud of her. They especially enjoyed her compositions as she had a very good imagination and could write very well. One day, a surprise waited for Sara in school. Her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend of hers who was a book publisher. The publisher was so impressed with Sara's writing that he offered Sara the chance to write her own novel. Sara wasn't so sure at first whether she had the talent to write a novel. But with her teacher's encouragement she agreed. A few months later, Sara's book was published and put on sale. They sold like hotcakes! Everyone was proud of her and Sara discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author.

Sara received a "pat on the back" from friends, family, or coworkers. She continued develop her style of writing and her own personal sense of pride and accomplishment.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What did Sara do to make her life more interesting?

a) She wrote books. **b)** She read books.
c) She wrote compositions. **d)** She wrote novels.

18 Sara was called 'bookworm' because

a) she kept worms in her books
b) she liked worms
c) she liked to read books about worms
d) she loved to read

19 How many brothers and sisters does Sara have?

a) One. **b)** Two. **c)** Three. **d)** None.

20 The phrase 'sold like hotcakes' means

a) the books were selling very well
b) the books were sold together with hotcakes
c) the books were hot like cakes when sold
d) the books were sold near a bakery selling hotcakes

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why did the publisher want to publish Sara's work?

.....
.....
.....

22 Why was Sara reluctant to write the novel at first?

.....
.....
.....

23 Find words from the passage that give the antonym of:

a) ashamed **b)** earlier

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think the role of the family and friends in the person's success?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Everyone in society has the right to have their own opinions and beliefs. In civilised societies, there is no problem to be different from the others, but it's a must to respect each other.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into English:**

- مع تناقص مساحة الأرض الزراعية لاستخدامها فى أغراض أخرى فى كل أنحاء العالم أصبح لزامًا على العلماء البحث عن طرق جديدة لتوفير الغذاء للعدد المتزايد من السكان.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- The reasons why people travel abroad.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 19

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young man a lot of weight when she was ill.
 a) missed **b)** lost **c)** won **d)** earned
2. The frozen-foods is in the back area of the shop.
 a) college **b)** centre **c)** section **d)** sale
3. The club provides a for people who share an interest in history.
 a) home **b)** view **c)** seminar **d)** forum
4. Egypt has always had a good with the neighbouring countries.
 a) debate **b)** relationship **c)** argument **d)** quarrel
5. The publishing company is giving a free diary with tomorrow's newspaper.
 a) into **b)** off **c)** on **d)** away
6. It is known that iron with water and air to produce rust.
 a) refers **b)** rejects **c)** reacts **d)** reforms
7. She drink two cups of coffee in the morning before she felt really awake.
 a) has to **b)** had to **c)** must **d)** mustn't
8. She was not as intelligent as the others, but she was the
 a) more pretty **b)** most pretty **c)** prettiest **d)** pretty
9. They dinner at seven. It's best to call later.
 a) will be having **b)** will have **c)** are going to have **d)** have
10. Most teachers encourage their students harder.
 a) to work **b)** work **c)** working **d)** to working
11. When to take your next exams?
 a) supposed you **b)** you supposed **c)** you are supposed **d)** are you supposed
12. If she well in her exams, she will go to college in October.
 a) did **b)** does **c)** had done **d)** will do
13. Mr. Kareem early before he reaches 60. He mentioned it at the meeting recently.
 a) is retiring **b)** will retire **c)** is going to retire **d)** will have retired
14. His results are not his colleague's.
 a) so good like **b)** to good like **c)** as good as **d)** so good than
15. I'm not going to bed yet. I'm not tired. If I to bed now, I wouldn't sleep.
 a) go **b)** went **c)** had gone **d)** am going
16. The police officer stopped us and asked us where
 a) were we going **b)** are we going **c)** we are going **d)** we were going

ALAWWAL Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are wild dogs and pet dogs. Pet dogs are helpers and friends to people. There were no pet dogs 15,000 years ago. Men and women learned how to work with dogs. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend".

They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things.

There are many colours of dogs. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs. A dog's fur can be short or long. Dogs have curly hair or straight fur. There are very small dogs. They are only 6-8 inches tall. There are very big dogs. They are about 3 feet tall.

Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well. All dogs can hear well. They can hear sounds that people cannot hear. They can hear high sounds and low sounds. They can hear sound very far away. All dogs can smell very well. They can smell 40 times better than humans! Dogs live 5 to 13 years, but some dogs live much longer. One dog lived to be 24 years old!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Dogs helped people go to America by

a) pulling sleds in the snow **b)** helping with farming

c) helping find things **d)** none of the previous answers

18 The best antonym for pet is

a) wild animal **b)** domestic animal

c) large animal **d)** friendly animal

19 A dog's fur is the dog's

a) nose **b)** eyes

c) hair **d)** ears

20 Straight hair is

a) curly **b)** long

c) brown **d)** not curly

B) Answer the following questions:

21 In what can all dogs do well?

.....

.....

.....

22 How old was the oldest dog?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

23 Dogs are useful animals. Give evidence.

.....

.....

.....

24 There are differences between dogs. Mention two.

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Although the internet has become the most important means for information and knowledge, terrorists use it to spread their evil beliefs. It also helps them find young people to enlist them for their violent actions.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into English:**

- يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على فهم الاتجاهات العلمية والثقافية الحديثة كما يمكننا من مواكبة التطور الكبير فى مجالات العلوم والتكنولوجيا المختلفة.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- The role of art in enhancing our social values.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can achieve much by than by using force.
 a) persuade **b)** persuasion **c)** persuasive **d)** persuaded
2. The young architect is noises about starting his own business.
 a) making **b)** doing **c)** replying **d)** applying
3. is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
 a) Dermatitis **b)** Hydroponics **c)** Astronomy **d)** Botany
4. Some archaeologists discovered some of deer and hunters dating back to prehistoric time on French cave walls.
 a) photos **b)** images **c)** accounts **d)** decryptions
5. The car agency was accused of the customer about the condition of the car.
 a) accepting **b)** awarding **c)** honouring **d)** deceiving
6. The ship was forced to change its main during the storm.
 a) road **b)** technique **c)** course **d)** coarse
7. Your flat has been robbed! This that you have to report to the police.
 a) seems **b)** means **c)** meant **d)** is meant
8. You come and visit us soon. It would be so nice to see you again.
 a) have to **b)** needn't **c)** must **d)** mustn't
9. My dog is than the other dogs in the neighbourhood.
 a) bigger **b)** the biggest **c)** big **d)** biggest
10. There is a banana skin lying just a few metres in front of her. Oh dear! She!
 a) is slipping **b)** will slip **c)** is going to slip **d)** slips
11. He by the time he was four.
 a) won't swim **b)** could swim **c)** should swim **d)** mustn't have swum
12. We at home if it hadn't rained.
 a) would stay **b)** would have stayed **c)** wouldn't have stayed **d)** won't stay
13. In the last few months, competition has become
 a) much tougher **b)** more tough **c)** more tougher **d)** much more tougher
14. **A:** Can we meet at 10:00 outside the station? **B:** Okay. I you there.
 a) will be seeing **b)** see **c)** will have seen **d)** will see
15. There's somebody walking behind us. I think
 a) we are being followed **b)** we are following
 c) we are being following **d)** we are followed
16. I had no a place to stay. In fact it was surprisingly easy.
 a) trouble to find **b)** difficulty finding
 c) difficulty to find **d)** trouble find

ALPHA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A material is what something is made of. There are 5 basic materials. Most things are made metal, glass, wood, cloth and plastic. There are some other materials. But they are not used as much as these 5 materials.

Metal is very heavy. And it is very hard and strong. It usually feels cool when touched. We use metal to make forks, knives, keys and cars. We use it for these things because it is very strong.

Glass is very smooth. It feels cool to touch. It is not as heavy as metal. It is hard. But it is not strong. It breaks very easily! Then why do we use it? We use it because it is clear! You can see through glass! That's why we use it for windows and glasses.

Wood is lighter than metal and glass. It is not as strong as metal. But it is much stronger than glass. We use wood to make lots of things. Things made from wood are usually light and hard and strong. Chairs, pencils and tables are made from wood.

Cloth is very light. It is much lighter than wood. And it is very soft. We use cloth to make lots of things. For example, it is used to make clothing and blankets.

Plastic is also very light. But it is different from cloth. Sometimes it is soft. And sometimes it is hard. Plastic can be used to make thin plastic bags. These are light, soft, and strong. But plastic can also be used to make bicycle helmets. These are light, hard, and strong. A helmet and a bag seem different. But they are both made from plastic.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Which sentence from the passage best describes the main idea?

a) We use cloth to make lots of things. **b)** Metal is very heavy.
c) There are 5 basic materials. **d)** A helmet and a bag seem different.

18 According to the passage, which of these things is a material?

a) Chairs. **b)** Clothing. **c)** Windows. **d)** Wood.

19 According to the passage, how does glass feel?

a) Smooth and cool. **b)** Warm and soft.
c) Light and hard. **d)** Sharp and heavy.

20 In paragraph 4, the passage says, "Wood is lighter than metal and glass." What is the main purpose of this sentence?

a) To explain something. **b)** To recommend something.
c) To compare something. **d)** To demonstrate something.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What are the five materials mentioned in the passage?

.....

.....

.....

22 Which material would you use if you wanted to make something that was strong and very light?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

23 In this passage, we learn about 5 different materials. Which of these materials do you think is best? Why?

.....

.....

.....

24 What materials are used if we want to make a wardrobe with a mirror in the middle?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Critical thinking is the ability to think clearly and rationally about what to do or what to believe. It includes the ability to develop your own independent thinking.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- يمثل العام الدراسى الجديد تحديًا كبيرًا فى ظل استمرار جائحة فيروس كورونا حيث تفتح المدارس والجامعات أبوابها للطلاب مع اتخاذ كل الإجراءات اللازمة للوقاية من هذا المرض الخطير.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:

Your friend has been using social media and neglecting social relationship with his friends and relatives. He regrets this and asks you to help him make up for it.
Your name is Wael and your e-mail address is: wael30@gmail.com.Your friend's name is Sameh and his e-mail address is: sameh100@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٠/١٤١٧٨

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ١٠٤/١٣/٢/١١١

NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE

ALADWAA Gem

Answers to the Main Book Exercises and Tests

Unit 1 Staying healthy

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) CPR
2. b) severe
3. a) performed
4. b) react
5. c) techniques
6. d) bleeding
7. b) instructions
8. d) sign
9. a) examination
10. a) wrapped
11. a) risen
12. c) allow
13. d) experts
14. b) else
15. c) responsibility
16. b) performance
17. a) immediately
18. b) make
19. a) about
20. b) collaboration
21. d) to
22. c) doing
23. c) stay
24. d) infection
25. b) injury
26. a) acute / d) extreme
27. a) performed / c) did
28. c) technique / d) method
29. b) do / e) take up
30. b) reacted / d) responded

Language Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) must
2. a) have to
3. d) had to
4. b) have got to
5. b) needn't have seen
6. d) had to
7. a) Do you have to
8. d) doesn't have to
9. b) had to
10. a) didn't have to
11. c) must
12. c) don't have to
13. a) had to
14. d) weren't allowed to
15. a) must
16. b) didn't have to
17. c) don't have to
18. a) had to
19. c) don't have to
20. b) have to
21. d) mustn't
22. b) must
23. c) needn't have worried
24. a) you can't
25. c) it's against the law

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. c) doesn't have to / d) needn't
27. b) mustn't / e) can't
28. b) It wasn't necessary for us to wear coats yesterday.
 c) We didn't need to wear coats yesterday as it was so hot.
29. b) Yasser had to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
 d) Yasser needn't go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
30. b) Osama had to find another job.
 c) Osama has got to find another job.

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) doing
2. c) kit
3. d) doing
4. b) aid
5. d) normal
6. b) regularly
7. a) another
8. b) trophy
9. d) have to
10. a) doesn't have to
11. b) had to stay
12. a) mustn't
13. c) didn't have to
14. a) mustn't
15. d) have to
16. a) didn't have to

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) There are many running clubs and teams you can become involved in.
2. c) to persuade readers to try running
3. a) heart, lungs and muscles
4. b) immune system

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Discipline, perseverance and concentration.
6. 1. Running strengthens your heart, lungs and muscles.
 2. Running develops coordination and makes you more aware of your body.
 3. Running gives you energy by increasing your oxygen intake.
 4. Running can help you stay more focused in school because exercise helps.
7. 1. Running Boosts your Confidence
 2. Running has the Power to Eliminate Depression
8. Students' own answer.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. لقد أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحية أكثر أهمية مع انتشار الأمراض الجديدة و يعتبر الطعام الصحى والرياضة أهم عوامله.

٢. أحدث فيروس كورونا المعرف بكوفيد-١٩ تغيرات كبيرة لأسلوب حياتنا ولا قتصاد الدول ومن المتوقع أن تظل هذه التغييرات معنا لمدة سنوات.

٣- السياحة هى ثانى أهم مصادر العملة الصعبة فى مصر كما أنها تضيف كثيرًا إلى الدخل القومى لذلك توليها الحكومة الاهتمام اللازم.

٤- إن شباب مصر هو طاقة متجددة يجب استثمارها والاستفادة منها فبجهودهم يمكن أن نحظى بأمة عظيمة وتحقيق التقدم فى كل المجالات.

٥- تعتبر منظمة الصحة العالمية المياه النظيفة والطعام أحد الحقوق الأساسية للجنس البشرى ولهذا تدعو إلى مكافحة التلوث.

٦- الشباب ليسوا فقط شركاء اليوم لكنهم قادة المستقبل فهم مليؤن بالطاقة والحماس للتعلم والعمل والإنجاز.

B) Translate into English:

1. Scientists assert that keeping precautionary measures is the most successful way to beat/overcome coronavirus. Even with the presence of vaccines, that may take a long time to ensure their effectiveness to eliminate the virus.
2. We are proud of our great scientists such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz who made great scientific achievements that shared in/contributed to the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.
3. Football has become a big industry which attracts a lot of investments and makes greater profits than many other industries. In addition, it receives more media interest/ coverage than the other sports.
4. A book is considered man's friend and it is one of the best ways to widen knowledge and fulfill cultured people's needs/wishes. That's why we should encourage children and young people to read in all different fields.

4 Students' own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) support
2. c) cell
3. a) coughing
4. b) immune
5. c) persuasive
6. d) diet
7. b) behaved
8. a) reminded
9. b) separated
10. a) reason
11. d) boost
12. a) persuade
13. b) improve
14. d) mistake
15. b) Olympic
16. a) about
17. b) made
18. c) explanatory
19. a) place
20. b) in
21. d) support
22. c) do
23. d) stay
24. b) addition
25. c) boost
26. b) perfect / c) brilliant
27. a) boost / d) improve
28. c) sadness / e) sorrow
29. c) became / d) got
30. d) about / e) of

Language Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) don't need to
2. a) mustn't
3. d) need to
4. b) needn't
5. d) mustn't
6. b) had to
7. a) have got to
8. c) don't need to
9. b) need to
10. d) mustn't
11. a) don't have to
12. b) must
13. d) needn't
14. a) had to
15. b) mustn't
16. c) must
17. a) have to
18. d) need
19. b) mustn't
20. c) have to
21. d) mustn't
22. a) don't have to
23. c) have to
24. d) need to
25. b) mustn't

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. a) You must see the headteacher at 3 o'clock.
 c) It's necessary for you to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock.
27. c) don't have to / d) needn't
28. a) needn't have written / b) didn't have to write
29. a) We can't just go away! We must help him! / c) I mustn't forget to call him today.
30. b) It is not allowed / d) It is forbidden

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) situation
2. c) get
3. c) perfect
4. b) organ
5. c) champion
6. c) course
7. b) had
8. a) with
9. d) mustn't
10. a) don't need
11. d) must
12. c) has got to
13. c) had to
14. b) have to
15. c) has to
16. a) does your sister have to/doesn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) eat before going to sleep.
2. b) A nightmare
3. d) a quiet and less clear sound.
4. c) much eating and good sleep

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Sometimes I seemed to be flying while at other times I seemed unable to move.
6. She was an ugly old woman with shiny golden teeth. She had claw-like fingers. She was frightening.
7. a) drift off b) search high and low
8. Because nightmares aren't happy experiences.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. أفضل طريقة لمكافحة الفيروسات والبكتيريا هى تعزيز جهازك المناعى. ويمكن أن يتم ذلك بطرق بسيطة مثل النظام الغذائى الصحى والتمرينات الجيدة.

٢. سببت أزمة فيروس كورونا خسائر اقتصادية كبيرة فى الكثير من دول العالم ففقد الناس وظائفهم وتناقص الطلب على الكثير من المنتجات بشكل كبير.

٣- تلعب المدرسة دورًا هامًا فى تعليم الشباب قيم الانضباط والعمل الجاد والعمل الجماعى ومن الأفضل أن يتم اكتسابها فى سن صغيرة.

٤- يتأثر الكتاب بالخبرات التى يمرون بها فى حياتهم والمشكلات التى يواجهونها فأعمالهم هى مرآة المجتمع.

٥- البطالة والأمية سببان رئيسيان يؤديان إلى الجرائم والعنف لذلك يجب أن نكافحهما.

٦- الناس المحظوظون هم من يستطيعون الموازنة بين متطلبات العمل وايجاد وقت للقراءة والاستمتاع بوقت الفراغ.

B) Translate into English:

1. Reforming education involves new methods to combine students with special needs with their colleagues with the same curricula. This will help them combine with their society in a better way.
2. Education aims at developing students' abilities and preparing them to fulfill the needs of the work market/workplaces coping with the increasing technological development. This led to the establishment of new schools and colleges in the last few years.
3. Nowadays, air pollution is considered one of the most dangerous problems all over the world especially in big cities because of the large level/standard of the industry.
4. With the coronavirus crisis, online education has become more important. It has become the only way for the students to complete their education after the closure of schools and universities in many world countries.

4 Students' own answer.

King Lear Exercises (Act 1 – Scene I)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Kingdom
2. d) answer
3. a) divides
4. c) beauty
5. d) riches
6. b) third
7. a) duty
8. c) title
9. a) away
10. b) sword
11. d) marry
12. c) cruel
13. d) foolish
14. b) honest
15. a) promised

Test (1)
Based on Unit (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) label
2. b) protect
3. c) technique
4. a) perform
5. c) emergency
6. a) sign
7. c) mustn't
8. a) had to buy
9. c) needn't have bought
10. b) have to
11. a) necessary
12. d) need to
13. b) had to
14. c) need
15. b) mustn't
16. d) must

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) Obesity and our health
18. a) Three times
19. b) Obesity affects the level of intelligence of all people.
20. d) Outbreak

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Obesity is a condition that is associated with having an excess amount of body fat. It is classified as having a Body Mass Index (BMI) of 30 or greater.
22. Behaviour, environment and genetics are among the main contributors to obesity.
23. Today's society has developed a more sedentary lifestyle. Walking has been replaced by driving cars, physical activity has been replaced by technology and nutrition has been overcome by convenience foods.
24. Students' own answer.
25. **Translate into English:**

- Reading is a very useful hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say that it has a pacifying effect which can relieve stress levels and helps you to relax. In addition, it enriches your culture.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

- يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم توظيفه/استغلاله فى تطوير شخصية الإنسان جسديًا ومعنويًا/عقليًا، لذلك يجب أن ندرك جميعًا أهميته.

27. **Students' own answer.**

Unit 2 Eating around the world

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** amount
2. **b)** celebrated
3. **a)** got
4. **c)** occasion
5. **d)** traditional
6. **b)** native
7. **c)** survived
8. **d)** fun
9. **b)** prepare
10. **a)** serve
11. **b)** dessert
12. **c)** extracts
13. **b)** passengers
14. **d)** spicy
15. **c)** exist
16. **d)** taste
17. **c)** arrive
18. **d)** least
19. **d)** rare
20. **b)** arrival
21. **c)** keep
22. **a)** place
23. **c)** expected
24. **c)** popular
25. **b)** probably
26. **b)** assemble / **e)** collect
27. **a)** amounts / **d)** quantities
28. **b)** served / **e)** prepared
29. **c)** recipes / **d)** dishes
30. **b)** deny / **d)** exclude

Language Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** more intelligent
2. **c)** the most powerful
3. **a)** the nearest
4. **d)** taller
5. **c)** the prettiest
6. **b)** more populated
7. **a)** the best
8. **d)** the heaviest
9. **b)** better
10. **c)** more serious than
11. **a)** healthier
12. **d)** far
13. **b)** the least
14. **a)** rather
15. **b)** more important
16. **c)** big/bigger
17. **d)** both a and b
18. **c)** quieter
19. **b)** the most
20. **d)** more
21. **a)** happier
22. **c)** much easier
23. **b)** a lot
24. **c)** more and more
25. **b)** more

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. **b)** solar / **e)** red
27. **a)** I find physics more difficult than English.
 d) I find English much easier than physics.
28. **b)** What is the world's most popular sport?
 d) What is the world's best sport?

29. d) The blue dress costs more than the red dress.
 e) The red dress costs less than the blue dress.
30. c) I bought a nice, red Italian dress.
 d) All society should take care of the disabled.

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) traditional
2. a) snow
3. c) passengers
4. c) event
5. a) seafood
6. c) celebrate
7. b) quantity
8. a) customer
9. a) earlier
10. b) much
11. c) the nicest
12. b) the worst
13. c) nice
14. b) better
15. a) the most modern
16. c) the hungriest

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) People in ancient times, such as the Greeks chewed different types of tree sap as a form of gum.
2. d) He blew a 20-inch bubble in 2004.
3. b) latex
4. a) cause food or drink to pass down the throat

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Chicle is not used to make bubble gum anymore because chemists now make artificial gum in labs. The ingredients in modern-day bubble gum help the flavour to last longer.
6. 1. If you swallow bubble gum, it will block everything in your stomach.
 2. If you swallow bubble gum, it will stay inside you for seven years.
7. a) impressive b) chemist
8. Students' own answer.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. سرعان ما تصبح مهرجانات الطعام جزءًا من صناعة السياحة الغذائية وهى نفسها أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من صناعة السياحة عبر العالم.

٢. فى الماضى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الغذاء المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة لكنهم الآن يأكلون طعامًا مصنوعًا فى أجزاء عديدة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة العالمية.

٣- ينصح الأطباء الموظفين الذين يعملون بالمكتب أن يقوموا بممارسة التمرينات فهى طريقة جيدة للتخلص من الضغوط والإحباط فى مكان العمل.

٤- تواجه معظم البلاد المشكلات بسبب نقص وظائف العمل للشباب، لذلك تعمل الحكومات بجد لحل مشكلة البطالة.

٥- نحن نعيش فى عصر السرعة الهائلة حيث لا مكان للكسل وهذه السرعة تزيد الضغوط وتؤدى إلى أمراض خطيرة.

٦- يعتقد الكثيرون أن الفن يمكن أن يلعب دورًا فى تعزيز القيم الاجتماعية، فالأفلام والمسرحيات يمكن أن تكافح التدهور الأخلاقى بين الشباب.

B) Translate into English:

1. Experts warn young people that fast food can be a threat to their health. Despite its delicious taste, it contains a large quantity of fats and other materials which can lead to weight increase.
2. We hope that charities in Egypt such as Resala and the Egyptian Food Bank will take part in relieving people's suffering and eliminating poverty everywhere.
3. Reclaiming the desert is the most important way to solve the problem of food shortage in many developing countries. So, the Egyptian government is planning to reclaim one and half thousand feddans from the desert in Egypt.
4. We should look after the old people so that they can feel comfortable after their hard work for us. Many of them sacrificed their health and their time for the next generations.

4 Students' own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** traditions
2. **c)** considered
3. **a)** general
4. **c)** light
5. **a)** mean
6. **b)** relatives
7. **b)** achieve
8. **c)** repeat
9. **b)** confuse
10. **d)** details
11. **a)** suitable
12. **c)** dry
13. **c)** soil
14. **d)** share
15. **d)** questionnaire
16. **a)** produce
17. **b)** introduction
18. **d)** with
19. **a)** belief
20. **a)** distant
21. **c)** attractive
22. **c)** on
23. **a)** make
24. **b)** belief
25. **c)** show
26. **c)** goes / **e)** travels
27. **a)** considered / **d)** believed
28. **b)** close / **d)** near
29. **a)** relations / **e)** relatives
30. **c)** appreciation / **e)** esteem

Language Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** as long as
2. **a)** ever
3. **c)** safer
4. **d)** younger
5. **a)** longer
6. **d)** less
7. **c)** as beautiful
8. **c)** the cleverest
9. **a)** age
10. **c)** funnier
11. **d)** much better
12. **a)** most intelligent
13. **b)** harder – better
14. **b)** more and more
15. **a)** as
16. **c)** harder
17. **b)** the cleverer
18. **d)** more
19. **b)** last
20. **c)** older
21. **a)** elder
22. **b)** further
23. **d)** the least
24. **c)** latter
25. **a)** What a good teacher

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. **b)** friendly / **c)** spacious
27. **b)** My sister lives nearer my mother than me.
 c) I live further from my mother than my sister.
28. **a)** My brother is as tall as my father.
 c) My father and my brother are the same height.
29. **a)** The poor people always wish to live as comfortably as the rich people.
 d) Poor people always wish to live as comfortably as rich people.
30. **c)** Bassam is as intelligent as every person in my class.
 d) Bassam is not as intelligent as any person in my class.

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** respect
2. **d)** products
3. **d)** rules
4. **c)** include
5. **d)** respected
6. **a)** introduce
7. **a)** share
8. **a)** climate
9. **b)** the sunniest
10. **a)** oldest
11. **b)** so
12. **b)** least
13. **c)** faster
14. **d)** as precious
15. **a)** fewer
16. **b)** happier than them

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** Nahla never had a chance to attend school.
2. **a)** don't have to be old
3. **d)** Child employment and manipulation.
4. **c)** farms

B) Answer the following questions:

5. When she was looking for the sports section in the newspaper
6. Because she knew that Karima El-Said and she were the same age. Nahla just couldn't imagine what it was like to work all day seven days a week and never have a chance to attend school or play.
7. Students' own answer.
8. Students' own answer.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد لآخر، فبعض الناس يتميزون بالطعام الصحى بينما يفضل آخرون الطعام الشهى سواء أكان صحيًا أم لا.

٢. نقص الغذاء إحدى أهم المشكلات الخطيرة التى يواجهها العالم فى الوقت الحالى، ويقول الخبراء إن ذلك يرجع إلى سوء توزيع الغذاء وليس وجود عجز فيه.

٣- تفرض معظم الحكومات قوانين لتأكيد أمان الغذاء لشعوبها ومع ذلك فنحن جميعا مسئولون عن طاعة القوانين بحزم فى كل مكان.

٤- تحدث مشكلات التعلم بسبب الطريقة التى يقوم بها المخ باستقبال المعلومات واجراء العمليات عليها، ولهذا من المهم أن نفهم كيف يعمل.

٥- يتطلب تحقيق تنمية اقتصادية التخطيط الجيد والاهتمام بالتقدم العلمى، ولذلك يجب أن تقوم الحكومات بالاستثمار فى المؤسسات العلمية.

٦- ان صحارينا من أهم موارد الثروة الرئيسية لدينا التى يجب أن نعطيها اهتمامًا كبيرًا وبهذه الطريقة سوف نضيف كثيرًا إلى اقتصادنا.

B) Translate into English:

1. The Egyptians, like the rest of the peoples of the world, celebrate different fests/festivals which are characterized by a specific type of food. Meats are eaten in Eid Al Adha and different sweets are eaten in Eid El Fitr and Christmas.
2. With the spread of coronavirus in the world, doctors advise us to pay attention to healthy food which contains vitamins. These help our bodies to protect ourselves/prevent this dangerous virus.
3. Learning difficulties didn't prevent some famous people from success in life and investing their abilities and talents. Yet, they reached success with persistence and hard work.
4. Despite some people's objection of using animals in experiments, many people think that if we hadn't used them, we wouldn't have many of the medicines/drugs which save people's lives.

4 Students' own answer.

King Lear Exercises (Act I Scenes i (Continued) -ii)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** anger
2. **a)** beat
3. **d)** deceive
4. **c)** decision
5. **b)** deserves
6. **a)** forgives
7. **b)** income
8. **c)** inheritance
9. **d)** loyalty
10. **b)** power
11. **d)** away
12. **a)** succeed
13. **c)** trust
14. **b)** truth
15. **c)** lie

Test (2)
Based on Unit (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** serve
2. **d)** expect
3. **c)** festival
4. **d)** oyster
5. **a)** together
6. **c)** prepare
7. **b)** cheaper
8. **a)** expensive
9. **c)** more
10. **d)** better
11. **a)** Box B is the smallest box.
12. **b)** later
13. **c)** the easiest
14. **d)** the saddest
15. **b)** more correct
16. **d)** Carrots are better for you than cakes.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** has begun to give much attention to football.
18. **a)** highest point
19. **c)** lose enjoyment
20. **c)** Nations that win in international games prove best on the sports field at least.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. It can put the country on the map or the country becomes important after winning the game. The people of the country feel proud.
22. They sold their cars, and even their houses, and spent all their money travelling to Argentina, where the finals were played.
23. International games can help world peace. We can solve the global warming problem through advertisements.
24. Students' own answer.

25. **Translate into English:**

- Unemployment is a very serious problem. It doesn't only affect individuals but also the progress of the country as it has a negative effect on the economic and social growth and the spread of crime in society.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

- على الفرد أن يزن/يوازن الإيجابيات والسلبيات بعناية قبل الاندماج بإفراط فى مواقع التواصل الإجتماعى، فلو تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة فستكون نعمة للبشرية.

27. **Students' own answer.**

Unit 3 The future of food

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** agriculture
2. **c)** crop
3. **a)** sustainable
4. **d)** variety
5. **a)** electric
6. **d)** innovation
7. **c)** production
8. **d)** create
9. **c)** energy
10. **c)** involve
11. **b)** negative
12. **c)** researcher
13. **d)** charity
14. **c)** save
15. **a)** solutions
16. **d)** destroyed
17. **a)** name
18. **b)** success
19. **c)** by
20. **b)** effect
21. **c)** making
22. **c)** of
23. **b)** got
24. **b)** organisation
25. **a)** source
26. **c)** smash / **d)** devastate
27. **b)** produce / **e)** production
28. **a)** to / **d)** for
29. **a)** grown / **b)** increased
30. **b)** say / **c)** tell

Language Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** will see
2. **d)** will
3. **a)** be using
4. **b)** will be
5. **a)** am going to spend
6. **b)** will be seeing
7. **d)** will be preparing
8. **b)** am going to
9. **d)** will be watching
10. **c)** is going to travel
11. **b)** am going to read
12. **b)** will be sunbathing
13. **b)** is going to be
14. **a)** be driving
15. **d)** will be
16. **a)** Will you go
17. **b)** will be performing
18. **d)** will close
19. **b)** is going to be
20. **c)** will be doing
21. **a)** will cut
22. **b)** are going to invite
23. **c)** will never be
24. **a)** are going to
25. **b)** will be wasting

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. **a)** It's cold in here. I will close the window.
 e) It's cold in here. Will you close the window?
27. **b)** I will help you with your homework if you want.
 d) Shall I help you with your homework?
28. **b)** Liverpool will win the next match.
 d) Liverpool is going to win. They're three nil up already.

29. a) won't go out today.
 d) will stay at home today.
30. b) What do you do next weekend?
 e) What will you do next weekend?

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) sustainable
2. b) production
3. d) energy
4. a) researchers
5. b) result
6. d) down
7. c) decade
8. b) southern
9. d) will start
10. c) is going to be
11. b) am going to sneeze
12. d) will win
13. c) will be playing
14. a) will be like
15. c) be still living
16. a) will go

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) the Constitution
2. d) The citizen's rights and responsibilities
3. a) Obeying
4. b) Respectable and noble

B) Answer the following questions:

5. A person who meets the requirements to become a citizen of a country other than the one who was born in.
6. They have a duty to serve in the army when asked. They should obey all laws. In wartime, they must serve in the armed forces when required to. They must pay taxes to support the services and programs of the government.
7. A citizen has the right to speak freely and the right to religious freedom.
8. Students' own answer.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. خلال الخمسين عامًا الماضية غيرت التكنولوجيا بالفعل الطريقة التى يقوم بها الفلاحون فى إنتاج الغذاء فلقد تطورت الزراعة الآن بمساعدة الآلات التى توفر الوقت والجهد.

٢- يعتبر قطع الغابات الاستوائية خطرًا حقيقيًا على وجودنا على الأرض، فهذا سوف يؤدى إلى آثار كارثية على التغير المناخى.

٣- إن تنظيم حياتك ضرورة إذا أردت أن تحقق أهم أهدافك، فالناس المنظمون جيدًا هم الأفراد الأكثر نجاحًا وفاعلية/ كفاءة فى الحياة.

٤- للهجرة من الريف إلى المدينة آثار سلبية على المجتمع المصرى وذلك لأنها تؤدى إلى مشكلات اقتصادية خطيرة.

٥- كان لمصر دور قيادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط ، ولذلك يجب أن نحاول استرداد هذا الدور.

٦- تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل الرأى العام والوعى المؤثر فى بلدنا، ولذلك يجب استخدامها بشكل صحيح فى أغراض مفيدة.

B) Translate into English:

1. It is important for farmers to realise the importance of keeping sustainable agriculture to preserve the food supply for us and for the next generations. Thus, we can solve the problem of food shortage.
2. Cruelty and violent scenes in film and serials affect children's behaviour who watch them. Therefore, we should stop children from watching a lot of them to improve their behaviour.
3. One of the most important disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is widening the gap between young people and their parents. They spend long hours using them without communicating with their parents and family. Therefore, we should face/deal with this serious phenomenon.
4. Throughout history, Egypt has always been known as the land of religious tolerance and co-existence of Muslims and Christians. They lived peacefully for centuries; which is considered an important factor of its people's unity.

4 Students' own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** algae
2. **c)** available
3. **b)** chance
4. **d)** conclusion
5. **c)** evidence
6. **b)** fashion
7. **a)** heated
8. **d)** link
9. **b)** tasteful
10. **a)** topic
11. **c)** summary
12. **b)** win
13. **c)** predict
14. **d)** fresh
15. **b)** Hydroponics
16. **c)** specific
17. **c)** flow
18. **a)** view
19. **d)** boring
20. **c)** on
21. **b)** control
22. **d)** make
23. **c)** about
24. **b)** factual
25. **b)** description
26. **b)** forecast / **d)** anticipate
27. **a)** topics / **c)** subjects
28. **c)** fresh / **e)** new
29. **c)** ignore / **e)** overlook
30. **a)** conclusion / **c)** end

Language Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** am leaving
2. **d)** is going to be
3. **a)** will be
4. **c)** am going to
5. **d)** am revising
6. **c)** are flying
7. **b)** are playing
8. **a)** starts
9. **b)** aren't going to rent
10. **d)** finishes
11. **c)** leaves
12. **d)** comes
13. **a)** are having
14. **c)** is having
15. **b)** get
16. **a)** Will you be going
17. **d)** takes
18. **c)** will be published
19. **d)** will see
20. **a)** is travelling
21. **b)** are coming
22. **d)** are going to fall
23. **c)** will be watching
24. **a)** is coming
25. **b)** would increase

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. **b)** I am meeting my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
 d) I will be meeting my friends for dinner at 7 p.m. tomorrow.
27. **b)** have done / **c)** do
28. **b)** will be meeting / **e)** am meeting
29. **a)** am going to visit / **b)** am visiting
30. **b)** This time tomorrow, I will be watching the new film.
 c) I'm watching the new film at the cinema tomorrow.

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** chance
2. **d)** make
3. **b)** conclusion
4. **c)** evidence
5. **b)** fashion
6. **a)** replaced
7. **b)** link
8. **a)** tasty
9. **c)** am going to visit
10. **b)** will be revising
11. **a)** am going to
12. **d)** will recognise
13. **c)** will lend
14. **a)** won't arrive
15. **b)** will have
16. **d)** am going to spend

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** Lions are the only wild cats to live in cooperative groups.
2. **c)** The females are smaller than the males and can sneak closer to their prey in the tall savannah grasses.
3. **d)** both a and b
4. **b)** victim

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Mother lions have help from members of the pride in feeding and protecting their cubs, while other wild cats have to raise their young alone.
6. Cheetahs and leopards must hide their prey from lions, who will steal their kills.
7. Vocally, by roaring, meowing, and snarling. They also use facial expressions, scent, and touch, including rubbing and licking.
8. Cooperative benefits.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. يبحث العلماء دائمًا على طرق جديدة لإنتاج الغذاء فهم يعتقدون أنه بدون طرق جديدة ومبتكرة سوف يواجه العالم الجوع الشديد.

٢- يعتقد الكثيرون أن إنتاج الغذاء فى المعامل خيال علمى فقط ولا يستطيعون تحمل فكرة أكل لحوم أو فاكهة منتجة بطرق صناعية.

٣- تعتبر الأمم المتحدة استخدام البشر فى التجارب العلمية جريمة، كما أنه أحد أهم أخلاقيات المهن الطبية.

٤- لا أحد يولد كاملًا أو مثاليًا. ويجب على الآباء والمعلمون مضاعفة الجهود لإخراج الإمكانيات الكامنة فى الطفل.

٥- قد يدهش المعاقون الأصحاء/الناس العاديين بأشياء رائعة لا يستطيعون هم أنفسهم القيام بها كما قد يحققون أرقامًا قياسية مذهلة.

٦- يجب أن يعتنى المجتمع بالأطفال المشردين لمساعدتهم على أن يكون مستقبلهم أفضل. ولهذا السبب تحاول معظم الجمعيات الخيرية تدبير/جمع المال لمساعدتهم.

B) Translate into English:

1. The United Nations is trying, through its organisations, to secure enough food and medicine for all the people of poor countries which face severe lack especially with the spread of the novel coronavirus.
2. History is full of many prominent Arab writers who enriched the international literature such as Taha Hussein and Naguib Mahfouz; the only Arab writer who won the Nobel Prize for Literature.
3. Population increase is one of the most important obstacles to development in society. Therefore, the government is working on finding suitable solutions for this problem such as family planning programmes.
4. There should be strict laws to punish all factories which manipulate expiry date on cans of different food products. This represents a danger on people's health and food safety.

4 Students' own answer.

King Lear Exercises (Act I, Scenes iii-iv)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** attendant
2. **a)** behave
3. **c)** disguised
4. **a)** guilty
5. **d)** encourages
6. **c)** holding
7. **d)** noticed
8. **a)** rude
9. **a)** servants
10. **c)** soldiers
11. **d)** taste
12. **b)** wise

Test (3)
Based on Unit (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** agriculture
2. **a)** sustainable
3. **c)** national
4. **d)** continent
5. **c)** evidence
6. **c)** solution
7. **c)** will play
8. **b)** will be skiing
9. **d)** am going to watch
10. **a)** will show
11. **c)** will be working
12. **a)** will increase
13. **d)** will probably get
14. **b)** will be swimming
15. **a)** have finished
16. **b)** get/will be waiting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** safe
18. **d)** meteorologist
19. **a)** a rainbow
20. **c)** appears

B) Answer the following questions:

21. A prediction of temperature and air conditions in the near future.
22. Either thermometer (air temperature), rain gauge (amount of rain) or wind vane (wind direction).
23. Students' own answer.
24. Students' own answer.
25. **Translate into English:**

- All trials to devastate the Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity which stands as a great obstacle in front of anyone who tries to miss/manipulate the stability of the Egyptian people.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

- يحتـاج مجتمعنـا إلى أفراد كثيرين يتمتعون بالأخـلاق الحميدة لكى ينمو ويتطور بالطريقة الصحيحـة؛ فالأخلاق هى بالفعل العلامات الجيدة على المجتمع المتحضر.

27. **Students' own answer.**



Test on Units 1, 2 & 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** techniques
2. **a)** support
3. **b)** celebrate
4. **c)** relatives
5. **d)** crop
6. **a)** contain
7. **d)** the nicest
8. **b)** mustn't
9. **c)** am going to call
10. **a)** the most valuable
11. **a)** don't need to
12. **c)** will be playing
13. **d)** as far as
14. **c)** must/mustn't
15. **b)** will be running
16. **a)** fewer

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **d)** motivate us to do well
18. **a)** Admit your failure
19. **b)** confidence
20. **c)** How to achieve success

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Using confidence and knowledge, strike firmly towards your goal, and never be diverted from it by a mild success.
22. A premature celebration can easily obscure the task to be performed.
23. Confidence is the good trait to have where a person is sure about his course of action or activity and it comes from past success and right decisions. Overconfidence is excessive belief in their own abilities ignoring the fact that their decision can be wrong.
24. Students' own answer.
25. **Translate into English:**

- Each country has its own style of cooking and the ingredients which chefs use in their dishes. What seems strange in one country becomes familiar and popular in another.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

- نقص الغذاء أحد أهم المشكلات التى من المتوقع أن يواجهها العالم فى السنوات القليلة القادمة؛ لهذا يعمل العلماء على إيجاد طرق مبتكرة للتغلب عليها.

27. **Students' own answer.**

Unit 4 Changing English

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** emoji
2. **d)** formal
3. **c)** frowned
4. **d)** innovators
5. **a)** linguist
6. **c)** necessarily
7. **b)** tones
8. **d)** basic
9. **d)** communication
10. **c)** requires
11. **b)** teenager
12. **d)** warn
13. **c)** adults
14. **c)** advantage
15. **b)** chatted
16. **a)** personal
17. **d)** alert
18. **b)** expression
19. **d)** stay
20. **c)** got
21. **b)** warning
22. **c)** with
23. **a)** taking
24. **b)** pass
25. **c)** frown
26. **b)** primary / **e)** main
27. **a)** tone / **d)** voice
28. **b)** took / **e)** had
29. **b)** everyday / **c)** daily
30. **b)** to / **d)** with

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1. **b)** could make
2. **a)** couldn't have gone
3. **c)** should have
4. **d)** couldn't hear
5. **a)** not to go
6. **c)** to lock
7. **b)** could beat
8. **d)** should have worked
9. **b)** could have gone
10. **d)** could stay
11. **a)** not to touch
12. **b)** ought to have behaved
13. **a)** could have been
14. **d)** not to go
15. **c)** couldn't have worn
16. **b)** should have brought
17. **d)** could have
18. **c)** couldn't remember
19. **a)** couldn't have heard
20. **c)** shouldn't have
21. **b)** could have come
22. **a)** should have said
23. **d)** Could
24. **b)** couldn't
25. **c)** ought to have waited

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. **b)** could have phoned / **e)** should have phoned
27. **a)** I warned my daughter not to walk in dark streets alone.
 b) I warned my daughter to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
28. **b)** shouldn't have gone / **d)** could have gone
29. **a)** managed to / **d)** was able to
30. **b)** could have escaped / **e)** were able to escape

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) gifts
2. d) online
3. c) parcel
4. a) regret
5. a) contact
6. c) meeting
7. b) apply
8. c) got
9. d) couldn't
10. c) could have lent
11. a) couldn't
12. c) should have gone
13. a) couldn't
14. b) ought to have seen
15. d) shouldn't have
16. c) couldn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) hot and dry
2. c) either tiny leaves or no leaves at all.
3. a) remains as a seed and does not emerge from the soil.
4. d) exclude

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Those which can do/live without water for long periods of time.
6. They help to cut down water evaporation.
7. a) emerge b) Rodents
8. Students' own answer.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. بالرغم من أن استخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية ليس مقبولاً فى أى تعلم أو كتابة رسمية فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم/ دردشتهم اليومية مع اصدقائهم.

٢. تعلم اللغات الأجنبية وخاصة اللغة الإنجليزية يوسع الأفق ومجال التعلم. ذلك لأن معظم الأبحاث العلمية والمعلومات على الإنترنت مكتوبة باللغة الإنجليزية.

٣- تؤثر المنافسة فى عصرنا الحديث على كل فرد فى المجتمع وأحيانًا تؤدى إلى أفعال شريرة: فالجشع من أجل المال والسلطة هو أصل الكثير من الجرائم.

٤. اللياقة البدنية والطعام الصحى والوزن المعقول هى معايير ثابتة للصحة الجيدة وهذه الأشياء ينصح بها الأطباء والأبحاث العلمية الطبية.

٥- تعلمنا الرياضة الانضباط وقيمة الوقت وروح الفريق مما يساعدنا على التغلب على كل التحديات وتحقيق النجاح.

٦- معظم الشباب اليوم أقل من المستوى فى الثقافة والمعرفة، وذلك لأنهم يهملون القراءة ومشاهدة البرامج الثقافية.

B) Translate into English:

1. Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries. That's because it is an international language which helps in many educational and entertaining purposes.

2. Everyone should choose the job which suits their abilities and difference with others. They shouldn't only look for a job with a big salary in order to achieve success in life.
3. The crisis of coronavirus showed the importance of cooperation between different countries to solve all serious problems. It also showed the importance of international organisations which regulate/organise the efforts to overcome this virus.
4. The Egyptian champions of individual sports win many medals and trophies. However, they don't receive the same interest and support as team sports which haven't made many great achievements.

4 **Students' own answer.**

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** debate
2. **c)** grandparents
3. **b)** report
4. **d)** partner
5. **c)** section
6. **d)** aim
7. **a)** comment
8. **b)** compared
9. **c)** hobby
10. **b)** images
11. **a)** remain
12. **d)** recorded
13. **d)** results
14. **c)** members
15. **b)** powerful
16. **a)** title
17. **a)** compare
18. **c)** recognisable
19. **a)** for
20. **b)** disagreement
21. **a)** feel
22. **d)** to
23. **d)** took
24. **d)** negligence
25. **b)** give
26. **b)** old / **d)** ancient
27. **c)** important / **e)** powerful
28. **c)** findings / **e)** results
29. **a)** procedure / **d)** process
30. **b)** keep / **e)** stay

Language Exercises (Part 2)

1. **b)** should
2. **c)** shouldn't
3. **a)** could have caught
4. **d)** couldn't
5. **b)** should
6. **c)** could
7. **a)** can't
8. **b)** could have walked
9. **a)** shouldn't
10. **a)** ought to
11. **d)** could have consulted
12. **b)** may
13. **d)** shouldn't
14. **c)** couldn't
15. **b)** ought to
16. **d)** could do
17. **b)** might
18. **c)** shouldn't
19. **b)** might have taken
20. **a)** could have
21. **b)** might
22. **a)** should have started
23. **c)** should
24. **b)** couldn't have finished
25. **d)** oughtn't to

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. **a)** may be / **d)** will be

27. **a)** didn't buy / **c)** regrets not buying

28. **c)** may have left / **e)** might have left

29. **a)** could have passed / **e)** may have passed

30. **d)** might have finished / **e)** could have finished

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** title
2. **a)** procedures
3. **d)** proper
4. **b)** society
5. **c)** conclusion
6. **b)** media
7. **a)** summarised
8. **c)** survey
9. **c)** should
10. **d)** could have taken
11. **c)** might have met
12. **c)** ought
13. **b)** shouldn't
14. **b)** might not
15. **d)** shouldn't
16. **a)** couldn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** She was very angry.
2. **d)** was clever enough to think about everything.
3. **a)** Albert would have asked her difficult questions.
4. **c)** Albert Einstein and his deep thinking.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. He knew that the Earth, other planets, the moon, and the sun are just part of what we call the universe. He knew that the universe is also, etc.
6. **a)** impatiently **b)** figure out
7. Students' own answer.
8. Students' own answer.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- يحتار الخبراء كل الناس من أن يقوموا بنشر معلومات شخصية كثيرة على «الفيسبوك» و«تويتر» لأن ذلك قد يتم استخدامه بشكل سيء من قبل المجرمين والأعداء أيضا.

٢- لدى معظم المشاهير صفحاتهم الخاصة على « الفيسبوك» التي ينشرون بها أخبارهم وصورهم، وهذه يتم متابعتها عن طريق الملايين من الناس في كل أنحاء العالم

٣- الفساد وعدم الانضباط عاملان رئيسيان يؤديان إلى تدهور اقتصادنا، ولهذا تحاول الحكومة محاربتهما.

٤- أثبت الأبطال الذين حصلوا على الميداليات فى الألعاب الأولمبية الأخيرة أن المصريين قادرون على فعل المعجزات بالرغم من الصعوبات الحالية، فهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الإمكانيات/التسهيلات والتشجيع.

٥- لقد أدت النزاعات والحروب فى العالم كله إلى مشكلات عديدة، إحداها مشكلة اللاجئين التى تزيد كل يوم.

٦- التعاون والعمل الجماعى صفتان ضروريتان لنجاح وتقدم أى مجتمع، وهما يجب تعليمهما فى سن مبكرة.

B) Translate into English:

1. Experts warn of children's overuse of the internet. That's because this will result in bad effects on health. Therefore, we should teach them how to rationalize this use.
2. Developing education is one of the most important causes which the government pay attention to. This helps create new generations who are able to face the modern challenges and build a productive society characterized by the quality of 21st century.
3. Friends have a great influence on the life of teenagers. So, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps his friend to succeed in life.
4. The government is trying to find untraditional solutions for the energy problem. So, it increases/widens the establishment of solar energy stations and it started building Dabaa nuclear station.

4 Students' own answer.

King Lear Exercises (Act II, Scene I)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) arrested
2. b) beggar
3. c) disbelief
4. d) faithful
5. c) guards
6. b) inherited
7. a) persuade
8. c) plotting
9. d) pretended
10. a) profits
11. b) rewards
12. d) stab
13. b) port
14. c) duties

Test (4)
Based on Unit (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) interest
2. d) basic
3. c) frowned
4. a) debate
5. d) comment
6. b) gift
7. b) should
8. a) couldn't find
9. d) could smell
10. c) should be done
11. b) couldn't
12. a) can't
13. c) should
14. d) could
15. b) were able to
16. d) it's possible that you left it there.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) Silicate
18. d) After a lot of practice and experience.
19. a) apprentice
20. b) Making glass needs a lot of money.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Sand and catalysts.
22. Cups, bowls, vases and bottles
23. a) 'contract' b) Minimal
24. Students' own answer.
25. **Translate into English:**
 - If/When you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in time of suffering and strength in the time of trouble and a loving person, you will be/ are a really successful person with lots of good morals.
26. **Translate into Arabic:**

 - من الصعب حقًا أن نفهم لماذا يستمتع بعض الناس بالهوايات الخطيرة مثل تسلق الجبال وسباق السيارات؛ فهم بالفعل قد يفقدون حياتهم فى هذه الهوايات.

27. **Students' own answer.**

Unit 5 Being smart online

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** publishes
2. **c)** printed
3. **a)** adapt
4. **d)** task
5. **c)** upload
6. **c)** cookies
7. **d)** reliable
8. **d)** Targeted
9. **c)** upgrade
10. **b)** views
11. **c)** Advertisers
12. **b)** keywords
13. **d)** knowledge
14. **c)** resources
15. **a)** scanned
16. **b)** characters
17. **a)** fake
18. **d)** obvious
19. **b)** go
20. **a)** at
21. **c)** honest
22. **d)** about
23. **b)** application
24. **c)** have
25. **c)** consultative
26. **a)** real / **c)** genuine
27. **b)** do / **d)** write
28. **b)** skimmed / **e)** scanned
29. **c)** put in / **d)** installed
30. **a)** task / **d)** job

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1. **c)** was supposed
2. **b)** seem
3. **a)** 'm supposed
4. **a)** seem
5. **c)** was supposed
6. **b)** seems
7. **d)** was meant
8. **a)** was supposed
9. **c)** seem
10. **a)** was meant
11. **d)** 're supposed
12. **b)** seem
13. **a)** seems
14. **b)** was meant
15. **c)** seems
16. **d)** was meant
17. **b)** 'm supposed
18. **a)** seems
19. **b)** not supposed to
20. **c)** seems
21. **b)** is meant
22. **c)** be influenced
23. **a)** were supposed
24. **b)** is not supposed
25. **c)** was meant

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. **a)** Our guests were meant to come at 7:30, but they were late.
 c) Our guests were supposed to come at 7:30, but they were late.
27. **a)** it's necessary to do so / **e)** We are obliged to do so
28. **a)** it's predictable to do so / **c)** it's forbidden to do so
29. **a)** were supposed / **d)** meant
30. **a)** He was meant to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
 b) He was supposed to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** adapt
2. **b)** followers
3. **a)** subscribe
4. **c)** access
5. **d)** browser
6. **b)** moral
7. **c)** identity
8. **d)** updates
9. **b)** are you supposed
10. **a)** seems
11. **c)** meant
12. **d)** were supposed
13. **c)** seem
14. **b)** obligatory
15. **d)** 'm supposed
16. **a)** seems

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** The ability to make a high-pitched sound that bats use to locate things in the dark.
2. **a)** living or residing
3. **c)** they have great night vision and excellent hearing.
4. **b)** the ability to see

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Being active at night allows them to escape the heat and conserve water.
6. Bats use echolocation and skunks use black fur which sprays a smelly chemical.
7. Of course, it isn't completely safe from being hunted because there are predators that are especially adapted for night hunting.
8. **a)** wander **b)** conserve

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- يجب أن نكون جميعًا حريصين عندما نستخدم الإنترنت فالمجرمون يخترقون معلومات الناس الشخصية وبخاصة عن بطاقاتهم الائتمانية ليستخدموها فى جرائمهم.

٢- بسبب التكنولوجيا أصبح الإعلان علمًا حقيقيًا، وبعض الكليات بالفعل أنشأت أقسامًا جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

٣- تشجع إنجازات محمد صلاح الكبيرة الشباب على العمل بجد أكثر ليصلوا إلى أصعب أحلامهم، كما أنه يعطيهم الأمل فى حياة أفضل.

٤- يمتلئ التاريخ المصرى بالنساء العظيمات المستعدات للتضحية بحياتهن لكى تحصل مصر على مستقبل أفضل؛ لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن نتذكرهن.

٥- دراسة حياة العلماء والكتاب الكبار تظهر أننا يجب علينا جميعًا أن نبذل جهودًا كبيرة للنجاح فى الحياة؛ فكما يقال «لا حصاد/ مكسب بدون ألم».

٦- إن معرض القاهرة للكتاب أحد أهم الأحداث الثقافية فى العالم العربى، فيه الكثير من الأنشطة الثقافية مثل المؤتمرات والندوات.

B) Translate into English:

1. People mustn't believe or share/post all that they read on social media. They are full of rumours which may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.
2. All peoples of the world dream of peace. So, we should all work for ending wars which are spread in many parts of the world especially the Arab world.

3. Television and other mass media have a great effect on shaping the attitudes of new generations. So, they must be used well to direct /guide them to the attitudes which will benefit them and their country.
4. Social networking sites especially Facebook changed the communication ways of people and especially young people. They have become an important part of modern life which young people can do without.

4 Students' own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) addicted
2. d) explained
3. c) highlight
4. b) criticised
5. a) entertained
6. b) experience
7. d) forum
8. a) imagine
9. b) platform
10. d) profile
11. a) sensible
12. b) victims
13. c) employees
14. d) presentations
15. b) ranked
16. a) register
17. d) imagination
18. c) support
19. b) into
20. a) keep
21. c) makes
22. d) pay
23. a) with
24. b) connection
25. a) represent
26. c) employ / e) hire
27. a) site / d) platform
28. b) every / c) each
29. c) develop / e) make
30. c) alike / d) related

Language Exercises (Part 2)

1. c) are supposed
2. d) seems
3. a) mean
4. b) 'm supposed
5. b) is supposed
6. a) to be
7. c) correcting
8. d) are supposed
9. b) seemed
10. a) meant
11. c) are supposed
12. d) seem
13. b) are supposed
14. a) seems
15. b) seem
16. d) meant
17. a) is supposed
18. c) seemed
19. b) 'm supposed
20. a) seem
21. d) is supposed
22. c) seems
23. c) meant
24. b) is supposed
25. c) seems

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. a) It's forbidden to get on the plane without a ticket.
 c) It is against the law to get on the plane without a ticket.
27. b) He is seeming to be innocent.
 d) He doesn't seem to be innocent.
28. b) We didn't mean to interrupt you while you were asleep.
 d) We weren't supposed to interrupt you while you were asleep.
29. a) is having / c) has
30. d) is seeming to be a luxurious one

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) highlighted
2. c) viewpoint
3. c) entertaining
4. b) on
5. d) guide
6. c) symbol
7. a) criticised
8. d) forum
9. a) paying
10. d) was supposed
11. c) seems
12. b) meant
13. d) seems
14. c) meant
15. b) are not supposed
16. d) a means

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) well-educated
2. b) video and television
3. a) not an effective
4. d) self-determining

B) Answer the following questions:

5. It is responsible for the declining interest in reading among the young.
6. He thinks watching something is totally passive.
7. Yes, I agree because ideas of a story are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest.
8. Students' own answer.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- لقد أصبح إدمان التليفون المحمول إحدى المشكلات النفسية التى يعانى منها الشباب، ولدى الأطباء برامج خاصة لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

٢- لا يجب أن تثق فى إعطاء معلوماتك الشخصية والمالية لمواقع غير معروفة؛ فقد يستخدمها المجرمون لسرقة مالك أو شخصيتك.

٣- تعتمد مؤسسة مجدى يعقوب للقلب على العمل الخيرى لتنفيذ مهمتها، ولهذا يجب علينا جميعًا أن نعطيها اهتمامًا كبيرًا ونتبرع بالمال لها.

٤- بدأت الحضارة المصرية منذ آلاف السنين؛ لذلك يطلق على مصر مهد الحضارة.

٥- بالرغم من أن هناك الكثير من الناس الأنانيين والأشرار فى المجتمع هناك أيضًا أناس صادقون يفعلون ما يقتنعون بأنه صحيح.

٦- قد يساعد الآباء الأطفال ذوى مشكلات/إعاقات التعلم على تحقيق النجاح بتشجيع نقاط قوتهم ومعرفة نقاط ضعفهم.

B) Translate into English:

1. Social media are often accused of violating the privacy of their users although they confirm that they are careful about the personal data of all who has an account on them.
2. Medical progress is the most important of man's achievements which led to the increase of his happiness and welfare. It also resulted in the increase of the average age of people in the last few years.
3. As science and technology develop more, psychological problems from which people suffer increase more. Writers deal with these stories and directors deal with them in their movies.
4. Mass media warn young people of illegal immigration to Europe as they may lead to losing their lives as they travel through dangerous ways.

4 Students' own answer.

King Lear Exercises (Act II, Scene iii - Act III, Scene i)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** apologise
2. **c)** cave
3. **b)** disagreement
4. **a)** doubled
5. **b)** went
6. **c)** joke
7. **c)** patience
8. **d)** shelter
9. **a)** spy
10. **c)** turn

Test (5)
Based on Unit (5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** installed
2. **a)** instant
3. **b)** version
4. **c)** supposed
5. **b)** profile
6. **d)** Forum
7. **c)** to cook
8. **d)** seems
9. **a)** attending
10. **c)** wasn't supposed
11. **b)** are meant
12. **b)** have
13. **d)** 's supposed
14. **a)** means
15. **b)** seems
16. **c)** are supposed

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** gravity
18. **d)** the moon shines by itself.
19. **b)** the Earth and the moon
20. **a)** push

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because Earth is bigger than the moon.
22. The light from the sun is reflecting off the moon.
23. The moon.
24. Students' own answer.
25. **Translate into English:**
 - The great national projects which are carried out all over Egypt contribute in solving many of the economic problems and providing job opportunities for young people who wish for a better life.
26. **Translate into Arabic:**

 - يقال إن كثيرًا من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ فى سن المراهقة، لذلك يجب أن يحذر المراهقون من البداية منها.

27. **Students' own answer.**

Unit 6 Learning from our mistakes

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) disappointed
2. c) employers
3. a) office
4. a) treating
5. d) generous
6. d) international
7. a) regrets
8. b) waste
9. c) maps
10. c) alone
11. a) begged
12. b) carols
13. c) fired
14. d) mean
15. c) piles
16. a) sighed
17. c) mistake
18. b) invitation
19. b) mind
20. c) do
21. a) missed
22. d) for
23. a) for
24. c) wasteful
25. a) enemy
26. b) depressed / d) dissatisfied
27. a) free / e) spare
28. b) with / c) among
29. c) scrape / e) scraping
30. a) maintain / e) save

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1. b) would have stayed
2. a) drink
3. d) would go
4. c) 'd known
5. d) will pass
6. a) had offered
7. c) would be
8. c) would have seen
9. a) talk
10. d) would buy
11. c) rises
12. a) tell
13. b) hadn't fallen
14. c) had come
15. d) would have succeeded
16. a) had
17. a) will go
18. b) were
19. c) would have contacted
20. a) will get
21. b) would be
22. d) had been
23. c) would die
24. a) had planned
25. b) buy

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. b) can / d) will be able to
27. a) If you want to buy a good carpet, you should go to Al Hussein Market.
 c) If you want to buy a good carpet, go to Al Hussein Market.
28. b) If we boil water to 100°C, it is evaporated.
 e) If water boils at 100°C, it is evaporated.

29. b) had / would have to give
 c) had had/ would have given
30. b) Ahmed doesn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
 d) It's improbable for Ahmed to find a job as he doesn't live in a big city.

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) assistant
2. d) donations
3. a) logical
4. d) office
5. c) treated
6. b) including
7. c) race
8. a) alone
9. c) gets
10. a) work
11. b) didn't live
12. d) had gone
13. a) would spend
14. b) would understand
15. c) does not sleep
16. d) had asked

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) the prey and the predator
2. a) physical features.
3. d) green
4. b) mimicry

B) Answer the following questions:

5. To blend into the habitat.
6. a) Camouflage makes an animal hard to see.
 b) Mimicry makes it look like something else.
7. Students' own answer.
8. Students' own answer.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. إن السعادة هى أكثر من مجرد شعور جيد ووجه ذى ابتسامة صفراء/مصطنعة، إنما هى الشعور بالاستمتاع بحياتك والرغبة فى الاستفادة القصوى بها.

٢. يعتقد بعض الناس أن المال قد يجعلك سعيدًا وعندما نمر بتجارب ونشترى أشياء بالمال هذا قد يجعلك سعيدًا.

٣- يمكن للأدب أن يلعب دورا حيويًا فى حل الكثير من مشكلات المجتمع، وذلك لأنه إحدى الوسائل المثلى لتصوير هذه المشكلات والبحث عن حل لها.

٤- تؤثر وسائل الإعلام على حياتنا كثيرًا فلقد أصبحت إحدى أدوات التغيير السياسى؛ لذلك تستخدم بشكل واسع فى كل الحملات السياسية.

٥- يمكن اعتبار سن التقاعد وقتًا للراحة لكثير من الناس، ولكن يرغب الكثير من الناس فى الاستمرار فى العمل لأسباب اجتماعية ومالية.

٦- لا يتفق المراهقون عادة مع كبار السن لديهم ولا يرغبون فى أن يثقوا بأسرارهم معهم، ومعظمهم يلجأ إلى أصدقائهم من أجل ذلك.

B) Translate into English:

1. Naguib Mahfouz's stories depicted Egyptian society with all its values and problems at the time when he lived. He won the Nobel Prize because of his great effect on the Arab Literature.
2. The government encourages young people to start their projects and not to wait for governmental jobs. This happens through providing the loans and facilities which help the success of their projects in order to be good citizens in their society.
3. Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world. Society members must work on increasing production and changing their consuming habits to face different crises and the continuous rise in prices.
4. Universities represent the main source of supplying society with all they need of scientists and researchers in different fields. Therefore we must provide all financial support which is necessary for their continuous development.

4 Students' own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** fell
2. **b)** get
3. **d)** lost
4. **b)** hanging
5. **d)** apparently
6. **a)** caption
7. **b)** chat
8. **b)** guess
9. **c)** ignored
10. **d)** improve
11. **d)** memory
12. **c)** amount
13. **b)** leader
14. **d)** pick
15. **b)** relationship
16. **a)** reunion
17. **c)** back
18. **b)** keep
19. **a)** as
20. **b)** organise
21. **d)** with
22. **a)** past
23. **b)** appearance
24. **c)** ignorant
25. **d)** prompt
26. **a)** remembrance / **e)** memorisation
27. **a)** become / **c)** get
28. **d)** mall / **e)** centre
29. **b)** had / **c)** caught
30. **b)** far / **d)** distant

Language Exercises (Part 2)

1. **c)** unless
2. **b)** provided that
3. **c)** Had
4. **a)** Without
5. **c)** In case of
6. **a)** to reappear
7. **a)** as long as
8. **a)** were
9. **b)** knew
10. **c)** Without
11. **a)** But for
12. **b)** have
13. **c)** would you do
14. **a)** could
15. **c)** weren't
16. **a)** in case
17. **a)** But for
18. **b)** hadn't been for
19. **b)** had done
20. **b)** had
21. **d)** would know
22. **c)** had had/would have backpacked
23. **a)** If
24. **c)** Had
25. **c)** In case of

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26. **b)** She did not quit her job and she has enough money.
 e) She imagines leaving her job and not having enough money.
27. **a)** had/ would backpack
 e) had/ could backpack
28. **a)** Unless I were a doctor, I couldn't help you.
 d) If I weren't a doctor, I couldn't help you.
29. **b)** I will lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.
 d) I will lend you my car unless you don't promise to return it today.
30. **b)** would you do / had
 d) would you have done / had had

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** back
2. **a)** fell
3. **c)** ignored
4. **a)** organise
5. **d)** apparently
6. **c)** polite
7. **c)** in
8. **d)** friendship
9. **b)** gets
10. **a)** will
11. **d)** would have failed
12. **c)** would have
13. **d)** were/ could translate
14. **a)** helps
15. **b)** to work
16. **c)** in case

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** the ability to cause change.
2. **d)** convert
3. **a)** potential energy
4. **c)** cooked

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Kinetic energy.
6. Potential energy converts or changes into, kinetic energy.
7. Students' own answer.
8. Students' own answer.

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. إن الصداقة من أجمل الأشياء فى الحياة؛ لأن الأصدقاء يمكن أن يوفروا لك كل المساعدة والدعم لكى تؤدى بشكل أفضل فى الحياة.

٢. يحذر الخبراء من أن استخدام التليفون لساعات طويلة قد يكون له آثار خطيرة علينا؛ فقد يسبب مشكلات جسدية ونفسية.

٣- يمكن أن نحل كثيرًا من مشكلاتنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا أن يدركوا ويغيروا أخطاءهم السيئة. فالآباء والمدارس دور كبير فى ذلك.

٤- تعتبر الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية؛ لأن كل الرياضيين يحاولون الفوز لكى يكرموا بلدهم، لذلك قد تكون الألعاب فقدت معناها الأصلى.

٥- تساعد الاكتشافات العلمية التى تتم فى أى بلد على تنميته وتقدمه، والعلم هو أيضًا القوة التى يمكن أن تدفع عجلة الإنتاج به.

٦- يجب أن تدرب وزارة التربية والتعليم الأطفال على أمان الطعام من خلال حصص الدراسات الاجتماعية فى المرحلة الابتدائية، وذلك سيساعدهم فى حياتهم التالية.

B) Translate into English:

1. There are many disadvantages of technology. Due to young people's attachment to technological social networking such as computers and mobile phones make some of them lose ways of communication with other members of society.
2. It is said that the secret of success in life is that man should be ready when chances come to him. If he doesn't make use of them, they may not come back again. So, you must take all available chances.
3. Unemployment doesn't only affect individuals, but also the country's growth. It has a bad effect on the economic and social growth. So, we must put an end to it.
4. Sport has a lot of benefits. It can improve our mood and relieve the stress. So, many psychologists think that it is the best way to fight depression.

4 Students' own answer.

King Lear Exercises (Act III, Scene ii)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) lightning
2. b) forgive
3. c) hut
4. d) hard-hearted
5. c) straw
6. b) rising
7. a) forced
8. c) homeless
9. b) torch
10. d) horrible

Test (6)
Based on Unit (6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** donations
2. **a)** assistant
3. **d)** including
4. **c)** hanging
5. **b)** mind
6. **a)** on
7. **a)** die
8. **c)** misses
9. **d)** had been
10. **b)** stop
11. **a)** didn't exist
12. **c)** hadn't walked
13. **d)** wake up
14. **c)** would you have done
15. **b)** aren't
16. **a)** could go

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** In the fresh waters of the Amazon River.
18. **a)** a specialty food item
19. **b)** Electric eels come up to the surface to breathe air through their mouths.
20. **d)** harmless

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Three pairs of special organs produce electricity in an electric eel's body.
22. An electric eel's name is misleading because it is not actually an eel; it is a type of fish called a "knife-fish."
23. **a)** Carnivores **b)** nocturnal
24. Students' own answer.
25. **Translate into English:**
 - The Egyptian woman got many of her political and social rights. She holds prominent posts and she has a quota to represent her in the Parliament and Senate House.
26. **Translate into Arabic:**

 - يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود، وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو فيروسات.

27. **Students' own answer.**

Test on Units 4, 5 & 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** frowned
2. **a)** titles
3. **b)** consult
4. **d)** platforms
5. **a)** race
6. **c)** back
7. **a)** to drink
8. **b)** seems
9. **d)** would have made
10. **c)** could have taken
11. **c)** is supposed to
12. **b)** Had
13. **b)** could have been
14. **a)** is supposed to
15. **c)** providing that
16. **b)** couldn't

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** the internet "Advantages and disadvantages".
18. **d)** All of these
19. **a)** hackers
20. **d)** we can't do without the internet but we should be careful when using it.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. I don't think so as technology is advancing all the time.
22. We shouldn't give our accounts to anyone or show our credit cards numbers. They can be used by other people.
23. Legitimate organisations will never request information such as credit cards or account numbers through email. You should also never use public computers or public wireless networks to pay bills, check bank information or any other activity which leaves your
24. Students' own answer.
25. **Translate into English:**

- Speaking more than one foreign language and learning computer skills have become two of the most important qualifications which job markets/workplaces need. This importance has increased with the resort of companies to the internet because of the corona pandemic.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

- لعبت التكنولوجيا دورًا هامًـا فى تغيير أسلوب حياة الناس؛ فهم يقومون بالدردشة وإرسال الإيميلات للناس بدلًا من التحدث إليهم، ويقومون بلعب ألعاب الفيديو بدلًا من ممارسة الرياضة والتمرينات.

27. **Students' own answer.**

Answers to

Final Revision & Tests

Booklet

Final Revision (1)

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) sustainable
2. a) celebrated
3. d) prepared
4. b) crops
5. c) infection
6. b) variety
7. a) traditional
8. d) perform
9. b) agriculture
10. c) out
11. d) innovations
12. a) react
13. a) severe
14. b) techniques
15. c) Livestock
16. d) occasion
17. d) production
18. c) together
19. b) served
20. a) amount
21. c) argument
22. d) available
23. a) bleeding
24. b) boosted
25. c) chemical
26. c) collaboration
27. d) efficiently
28. b) examination
29. c) extracts
30. a) Hydroponics
31. b) immune
32. d) injury
33. c) link
34. a) muscles
35. b) native
36. c) option
37. b) performance
38. d) persuasive
39. d) responsibilities
40. c) solution
41. a) do
42. c) down
43. c) effective
44. d) infection
45. b) tasty
46. a) around
47. b) gets
48. c) severe
49. b) reaction
50. d) take
51. b) place
52. c) productive
53. b) press
54. a) list
55. c) announcement
56. d) kit
57. a) sustainable
58. d) else
59. a) sign
60. c) make

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. Agriculture
2. Nations
3. hunger
4. food
5. member
6. countries

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. types
2. tasty
3. dishes
4. spicy
5. serve
6. menu

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. health
2. situation
3. infection
4. effective
5. hygiene
6. rules

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. bleeding
2. protective
3. injured
4. area
5. remove
6. bandage

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) doesn't have to
2. c) had to
3. a) didn't have to
4. d) must
5. a) had to
6. b) didn't have to
7. d) don't have to
8. d) mustn't
9. a) has to
10. c) had to
11. d) mustn't
12. b) don't need to
13. a) must
14. c) had to
15. b) needn't
16. a) mustn't
17. c) need to
18. d) have to
19. b) have to
20. A) mustn't
21. a) the least
22. c) most intelligent
23. d) the better
24. b) happier
25. c) most frightening
26. d) least expensive
27. a) as tall as
28. b) most inspiring
29. a) more nervous than
30. b) biggest
31. d) as modern as
32. c) most challenging
33. a) older than
34. c) more interesting
35. a) as tall as
36. d) more quickly
37. b) Less
38. a) fewer
39. c) harder
40. d) more
41. a) is going to fall
42. d) will be working
43. a) meets
44. c) will be doing
45. a) will be driving
46. d) are you going to do
47. b) will have
48. b) will be organising
49. c) are going to own
50. c) Will you be going
51. d) is going to hit
52. c) will be leaving
53. b) am having
54. a) opens
55. d) am going to make
56. c) is visiting
57. a) starts
58. c) is going to become
59. d) 'll be using
60. a) is leaving

2 Choose the correct answer :

1. has to
2. had
3. has to
4. be followed
5. must
6. needn't

3 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the adjectives.

1. larger
2. more modern
3. younger
4. friendliest
5. wide
6. cleanest

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. be
2. will
3. will
4. ask
5. am going to tell
6. be having

King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** beauty
2. **b)** deceived
3. **a)** duty
4. **d)** away
5. **b)** guilty
6. **a)** inheritance
7. **c)** loyalty
8. **d)** title
9. **b)** trust
10. **c)** exited
11. **b)** The daughter who loves him best
12. **a)** More than health, beauty and riches
13. **b)** Give his kingdom to his two other daughters
14. **a)** That he has made a bad decision
15. **b)** The King of France
16. **d)** get his father's title and inheritance.
17. **c)** keep the king waiting when he needs something.
18. **a)** coldly
19. **b)** help the king
20. **d)** Goneril complained about his soldiers

Answer the following critical Thinking questions:

Student's own answer.

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** celebrated
2. **a)** traditional
3. **a)** reacted
4. **c)** wise
5. **d)** cell
6. **b)** out
7. **b)** mustn't
8. **c)** don't need to
9. **d)** had to
10. **c)** have to
11. **c)** the largest
12. **b)** the most important
13. **d)** the better
14. **b)** leaves
15. **c)** will be working
16. **d)** will increase

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** one
18. **b)** The person's body temperature goes down
19. **c)** sleepy
20. **d)** certain brain activity.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. We shouldn't consume caffeine late in the day and we should reduce irregular or long daytime naps.
22. 1- Rapid 2- cycle
23. sleep helps you to function properly; sleep helps you to learn; sleep helps you to create new memories; sleep helps you concentrate; and sleep helps you respond quickly.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- With the continuous spread of COVID-19, the Ministry of Education resorted to drawing up/designing a plan to combine school education with online learning so that students can go back to schools this year.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- إن السلام بين الأمم حيوى، فهو يعطى كل بلد الفرصة لتنفيذ خطط التنمية الخاصة بها، كما يوفر المال الذى ينفق على الحروب والأسلحة المدمرة/أسلحة الدمار.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** infection
2. **b)** techniques
3. **c)** together
4. **a)** foolish
5. **b)** electric
6. **d)** tell
7. **c)** don't have to
8. **a)** mustn't
9. **d)** needn't\ must
10. **a)** worst
11. **d)** the best
12. **c)** longer
13. **a)** more complex
14. **c)** is going to explode
15. **d)** will walk
16. **b)** will be sitting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** A special water with chemicals poured onto it
18. **a)** The new recycled items are sold cheaper than the original ones.
19. **c)** factory
20. **d)** scientific

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Soda cans, magazines, cereal boxes, bottles of juice
22. Recycling allows items to continue their lives as something else.
23. Recycling reduces waste. Recycling saves energy.
24. 1- disappear 2- bin

25. **Translate into English:**

- It is said that literature and art are the mirror of society which reflects its civilization and values which develop over the ages. Therefore, the state pays attention to them and tries to provide the necessary support to develop them.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

- يجب أن نكون متفائلين ونفكر دائمًا فى الجوانب الجيدة فى حياتنا، فالتشاؤم هو عدو قاتل يهزم آمالنا ويعوق طموحاتنا.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** perform
2. **a)** severe
3. **d)** production
4. **b)** income
5. **a)** signs
6. **c)** space
7. **c)** need to
8. **b)** must
9. **d)** don't have to
10. **a)** as big as
11. **b)** friendlier
12. **c)** harder
13. **d)** leaves
14. **a)** is going to collapse
15. **c)** will phone
16. **b)** will be having

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** would have more money
18. **a)** money
19. **c)** good health
20. **c)** how much smoking costs the UK

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Smokers cost it money when they don't go to work, on wages that you don't get when you don't go to work, and on work lost at the company when you are sick. When they die, they stop paying taxes.
22. Fire started by cigarettes kills fifteen hundred people yearly and injures another four thousand.
23. 1- injure 2- value
24. The student's own answer.

25. **Translate into English:**

- Many experts warn of the overuse of mobile phones because this will lead to serious social, psychological and health problems especially for children.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

- بالإضافة إلى كونها مصدرًا للدخل القومى تقوى السياحة العلاقات بين أمم العالم، كما تساعد على نشر السلام والحب والتفاهم.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Final Revision (2)

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Abbreviations
2. a) banner
3. d) consulting
4. c) cookies
5. a) downloading
6. b) emoji
7. c) fire
8. d) frowned
9. b) innovator
10. c) misunderstand
11. a) pile
12. d) posted
13. c) reliable
14. b) sighed
15. a) subscribe
16. b) tone
17. d) updated
18. c) upgrade
19. b) views
20. a) beg
21. c) admitted
22. c) basic
23. d) forum
24. b) highlighted
25. c) install
26. a) comment
27. d) expression
28. b) headline
29. c) online
30. a) positive
31. b) procedure
32. c) recognizable
33. d) privacy
34. c) spread
35. b) symbol
36. a) version
37. c) donation
38. b) addicted
39. a) characters
40. d) experiences
41. a) change
42. b) with
43. c) influential
44. d) waste
45. a) memories
46. c) do
47. c) report
48. d) hanging
49. b) get
50. d) keep
51. b) collection
52. c) fallen
53. a) conference
54. b) fake
55. d) on
56. c) consultative
57. a) criticize
58. c) interest
59. a) effective
60. b) treatment

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. rise
2. media
3. abbreviations
4. emojis
5. linguists
6) save

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. post
2. online
3. download
4. privacy
5. passwords
6. website

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. interests
2. debate
3. cons
4. real
5. close
6) hang

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) could see
2. b) should
3. c) could have bought
4. d) to buy
5. a) could
6. d) couldn't
7. a) shouldn't
8. b) not to open
9. d) could
10. c) to know
11. a) not to leave
12. b) could
13. c) could drive
14. d) to arrive
15. a) shouldn't
16. d) couldn't
17. b) not to spend
18. c) could play
19. a) could have helped
20. d) not to swim
21. b) seems
22. d) are supposed
23. a) are meant
24. c) seems
25. d) were supposed
26. c) were supposed
27. a) are meant
28. d) seems
29. b) is meant
30. d) seems
31. c) was I supposed
32. a) is meant
33. c) seem
34. b) is supposed
35. d) means
36. b) seems
37. a) is supposed
38. d) means
39. a) seem
40. c) forbidden
41. d) had been
42. c) were
43. a) is
44. b) in case of
45. d) Knew
46. c) would have joined
47. a) don't exercise
48. b) found
49. a) had
50. d) provided that
51. c) stay
52. d) didn't
53. b) on condition that
54. a) will have to
55. a) were
56. c) wouldn't
57. c) would have passed
58. d) feel
59. a) would happen
60. b) had phoned

2 Choose the correct answer :

1. supposed
2. joined
3. could
4. had
5. should
6. being

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. seems
2. supposed
3. have
4. seems
5. to look
6. meant

4 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the adjectives.

1. weren't
2. wouldn't know
3. hadn't been
4. had posted
5. wouldn't have done
6. become

King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** apologize
2. **a)** disbelief
3. **c)** faithful
4. **d)** forgive
5. **b)** lightning
6. **a)** patience
7. **d)** plotting
8. **c)** pretended
9. **a)** sheltering
10. **c)** straw
11. **d)** To convince his father of Edgar's plot.
12. **a)** beggar
13. **b)** he was in his service.
14. **c)** half
15. **d)** Cordelia
16. **a)** To win his trust.

Answer the following critical Thinking questions:

Student's own answer.

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** download
2. **b)** emoji
3. **c)** tone
4. **d)** persuaded
5. **b)** formal
6. **c)** online
7. **d)** shouldn›t
8. **a)** are supposed
9. **c)** to leave
10. **d)** could
11. **c)** could have meant
12. **a)** seemed
13. **b)** gave
14. **c)** mean
15. **b)** could
16. **d)** will phone

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** winter is the best season of the year.
18. **a)** tilted away from the sun.
19. **a)** leaning
20. **d)** butterflies

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Squirrels and raccoons gather extra food in the fall so they have enough to eat during the

22. 1- Migrate 2- hibernate

23. You can ice skate, place ice hockey, or go fishing on a frozen pond or lake.

24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- The government is working on setting up/ building many youth centres and providing them with modern facilities to make it easier for them to practise sport and spend their free time usefully.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- للتليفزيون ببرامجه المتنوعة أثر كبير على عقول الناس فى كل مكان؛ لذا أصبح وسيلة هامة لتشكيل الرأى العام.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** frowned
2. **d)** post
3. **b)** sigh
4. **c)** upgrade
5. **a)** room
6. **d)** pile
7. **c)** were meant
8. **b)** to read
9. **c)** shouldn't
10. **d)** couldn't
11. **b)** seems
12. **a)** are not supposed
13. **d)** would watch
14. **b)** was meant
15. **a)** may rise
16. **c)** as long as

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** awake
18. **c)** terrifying
19. **a)** happy
20. **d)** clear

B) Answer the following questions:

21. 1- usher 2- miraculously

22. He was burly, kind and clever. He seems to have a lot of experience.

23. I think they felt a lot of pain.

24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- Economists say that attracting foreign investments is one of the most important solutions of the economic problems which we suffer from. This urges the government to offer more facilities for investors.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- يختلف الأفراد فى قدرتهم على فهم الأفكار المعقدة والتأقلم بفاعلية للبيئة؛ ولذلك يجب أن يتم تعليمهم بطرق مختلفة.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** consult
2. **c)** fire
3. **c)** reliable
4. **a)** begging
5. **b)** spy
6. **c)** subscribed
7. **d)** to build
8. **a)** could
9. **a)** ought to
10. **c)** should
11. **c)** seems
12. **b)** is supposed
13. **a)** means
14. **a)** would send
15. **c)** has
16. **c)** would have got

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **d)** voices
18. **b)** history and stories
19. **c)** animal tricksters
20. **a)** advanced

B) Answer the following questions:

21. It's part of their tradition.
22. A character who plays tricks and jokes on others.
23. If they honour the trickster, maybe it won't play tricks on them.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- Nowadays, teachers should keep up with the new methods of education and using modern technology which has become an important part of everyday life.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات الصناعية والزراعية فى صعيد مصر مما يؤدى إلى توفير فرص العمل للمواطنين هناك.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Practice Test

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** prepared
2. **b)** salty
3. **c)** perform
4. **d)** lungs
5. **b)** carols
6. **a)** highlight
7. **d)** don't have
8. **b)** will be talking
9. **b)** didn't have to
10. **a)** most popular
11. **a)** are not supposed
12. **d)** unless
13. **b)** couldn't have liked the food
14. **a)** to stay
15. **c)** will help
16. **a)** fewer

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **d)** Nothing.
18. **c)** 1972.
19. **a)** Light.
20. **c)** be a sustainable food

B) Answer the following questions:

21. The plant produces oxygen, which also puts water into the air.
22. Scientists are interested in this experiment because they think we will be able to learn important lessons about using plants like this in space.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. **Translate into Arabic:**

- يتكون الجهاز المناعى من خلايا وأعضاء فى جسمنا تعمل معًا لتحمينا من العدوى والأمراض والجهاز المناعى يحافظ على صحتنا؛ لأن الناس الذين لديهم جهاز مناعى قوى يمرضون بدرجة أقل غالبًا.

26. **Translate into English:**

- Everybody makes mistakes, but most of us don't learn from their different mistakes. Learning from mistakes is a skill we all should acquire as the person who doesn't learn from his mistakes never succeeds.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) abbreviation
2. a) misunderstood
3. d) updated
4. a) mean
5. b) infection
6. c) crop
7. b) should have phoned
8. a) to open
9. c) had to
10. c) had passed
11. a) the best
12. a) to do
13. d) had apologised
14. b) Could
15. b) are going to increase
16. c) more difficult

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) He lived in a different country.
18. a) It seemed to be good.
19. b) The guidebook did not recommend them.
20. a) From an online guide.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Areas that had not been very interesting in 2003 became very interesting after they were improved.
22. The word "hazardous" in the text means dangerous or risky.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يمكن أن تستفيد من استخدام الإنترنت إذا كنت حريصًا، ولكن لا يجب أن تشارك كلمة السر الخاصة بك مع أى حد، فلو فعلت فسيكون قادرًا على الاطلاع على معلوماتك الخاصة.

26. Translate into English:

- The labour market and the international economy all over the world have been greatly affected by the Corona Pandemic. The daily labour was harmed and many jobs which can be done at home have emerged and online shopping has spread much.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** react
2. **c)** torch
3. **a)** apologise
4. **c)** pretended
5. **b)** posts
6. **c)** tone
7. **a)** mustn't
8. **b)** happier
9. **c)** will be driving
10. **d)** hadn't
11. **a)** seems
12. **c)** must have stolen
13. **b)** am going to paint
14. **b)** more
15. **b)** were
16. **b)** He is difficult to understand

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** be aware of
18. **b)** keeping in touch with
19. **c)** a new informal word in English
20. **d)** easier

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because people have used them in their daily lives.
22. It hasn't changed to make spelling easier.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يمر العالم بالكثير من الجائحات مثل كوفيد-١٩، لذلك يجب أن نتبع قواعد النظافة لتجنب الإصابة/العدوى بهذه الأمراض الخطيرة.

26. Translate into English:

- Home education is one of the ways with which students can learn and acquire knowledge with the help of teachers online. However, this lacks teamwork and don't develop skills.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Final Test

Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** sign
2. **d)** amount
3. **b)** agriculture
4. **a)** linguist
5. **c)** reliable
6. **d)** races
7. **b)** mustn't
8. **a)** has to
9. **d)** seems
10. **a)** less
11. **c)** as
12. **b)** will be staying
13. **a)** to believe
14. **d)** Could
15. **a)** which
16. **c)** haven't had

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** Doing a step-by-step process for studying the world.
18. **c)** making a final statement.
19. **a)** by making observations.
20. **b)** start

B) Answer the following questions:

21. They ask important questions and search for the answers. Sometimes they make amazing discoveries!
22. they are the experiment data
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- أجبـر هجـوم فيروس كورونـا المعروف بـكوفيد-١٩ الحكومات على فرض إجـراءات احترازيـة صارمة؛ حيث قاموا بإغـلاق المدارس والجامعات وأماكن الترفيه، كما قاموا بفرض حظر التجول.

26. Translate into English:

- Because of the big agricultural projects in Egypt in the last few years, Egypt's agricultural products exports to all world countries have greatly increased. This has contributed to the increase in the national income.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** begged
2. **a)** kit
3. **c)** celebrate
4. **d)** sustainable
5. **b)** formal
6. **a)** wasted
7. **c)** had to
8. **d)** have to
9. **a)** spicier
10. **b)** hottest
11. **c)** won't be waiting
12. **a)** could
13. **c)** is supposed
14. **d)** had
15. **a)** I hope not.
16. **b)** do you

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** properly and safely
18. **a)** have working brakes and lights.
19. **c)** accessible
20. **d)** Both A and B.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. we should not try to get on or off a bus while it is still moving. we must not fool around while in the bus.
22. we must look carefully left and right and cross only when it is safe to do so.
23. A suddenly lurch can send us knocking our heads against something hard.
24. I think if we use them carefully, we will be able to use them for a long time. If we use them carelessly, we will never be able to use them again.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إن الغش وسيلة غير أمينة للحصول على النجاح؛ لذلك يتم اتخاذ إجراءات صارمة/ حازمة عن طريق وزارة التربية والتعليم لمنع الغش.

26. Translate into English:

- The crisis of the Novel Corona virus has shown the importance of cooperation between countries to solve the different problems that the world faces. Searching for a vaccine for this virus has become one of its important problems.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** download
2. **c)** fired
3. **b)** profile
4. **b)** severe
5. **c)** articles
6. **a)** livestock
7. **a)** didn't have to
8. **b)** needn't
9. **d)** simpler
10. **b)** will be having
11. **c)** am going to be
12. **d)** mean
13. **a)** gets
14. **c)** to visit
15. **c)** doing
16. **a)** Having found

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** the first climbers to reach the top of Mount Everest
18. **d)** ceremony for crowning a king or queen
19. **a)** in Asia
20. **d)** Edmund P. Hillary and Tenzig Norgay accomplished one of the greatest climbing

B) Answer the following questions:

21. No, we do not know the name of the first person to reach the top. They told reporters they reached the summit together as a team.
22. 1- ascent 2- failed
23. The student's own answer.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- تريح الموسيقى أعصابنا وتجدد طاقاتنا، كما تلهمنا بالشجاعة التى تملؤنا بالأمل وتعالج العقول وتريح الأرواح المضطربة.

26. Translate into English:

- Tourism has an important role in the economy of Egypt. It provides many job opportunities and it is the second earner of foreign currency which Egypt needs.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** basic
2. **b)** spread
3. **c)** employers
4. **a)** scan
5. **c)** techniques
6. **d)** questionnaire
7. **b)** might have won
8. **c)** mustn't
9. **b)** as
10. **d)** will show
11. **a)** could
12. **d)** seem
13. **b)** Should he be
14. **c)** largest
15. **d)** not go
16. **d)** Canada or the United States

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** The explorer's trick to be set free
18. **c)** an eclipse
19. **b)** astronomy
20. **d)** groaned

B) Answer the following questions:

21. The jungle people did not believe him. They laughed and poked sticks at him through the bars of the cage.
22. He knew that there was an eclipse and used it as a trick to be set free.
23. I think they were cruel people or they thought he was going to harm them. Or The student's answer
24. I think he was very clever to make the people give him what he wanted

25. **Translate into Arabic:**

- كثيـر مـن مدننا القديمة لا تناسـب الحياة الحديثة، فهى تتكون من مجموعة متنوعة من المبانى والشـوارع الضيقة، وتمتلئ بعوادم البنزين والضوضاء التى تؤثر على حياة الناس.

26. **Translate into English:**

- Egypt is the gift of the Nile. Without it, Egypt would be a barren desert. Therefore/So, we should keep it and rationalize our consumption of water and this will help us face the crisis of the Renaissance Dam.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** variety
2. **a)** connected
3. **d)** install
4. **b)** mind
5. **b)** fire
6. **a)** privacy
7. **d)** needn't
8. **c)** most difficult
9. **b)** will play
10. **a)** to ride
11. **d)** is supposed
12. **b)** hadn't wasted
13. **c)** will be walking
14. **d)** would look
15. **a)** to going
16. **c)** such a long time

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** Three
18. **a)** All the writer's neighbours are bad.
19. **b)** Praising
20. **d)** the parents' management

B) Answer the following questions:

21. 1- intrude 2- acknowledgement
22. They walk straight past without noticing others. No one of them nod their head . They are not interested in knowing their neighbours.
23. The student's own answer.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يصبح التعليم عبر الإنترنت أكثر شهرة؛ حيث يزيد عدد الناس الذين يستطيعون الدخول على الكمبيوتر والإنترنت، وكان الحل الوحيد للطلاب ليستكملوا دراستهم أثناء أزمة كوفيد١٩.

26. Translate into English:

- Science fiction and action movies achieve great profits all over the world because young people admire them whereas romantic movies has become at the bottom of the office box in many countries of the world.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** bleed
2. **c)** get
3. **d)** evidence
4. **b)** title
5. **a)** consult
6. **b)** character
7. **d)** don't have to
8. **a)** didn't have to
9. **b)** most exciting
10. **d)** reaches
11. **c)** could
12. **b)** means
13. **c)** will give
14. **c)** Had
15. **c)** to driving
16. **a)** enough money to go

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** work values
18. **a)** meeting a deadline
19. **d)** struggle
20. **d)** sickness

B) Answer the following questions:

21. They might accept jobs that don't fit their work values
22. people get nervous and make mistakes.
23. Skillful and cool
24. The student's opinion and giving reasons

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إحدى مشكلاتنا البيئية هى ارتفاع درجة حرارة الأرض، فالأمطار الغزيرة التى شاهدناها مؤخرًا هى تحذير للإنسان لكى يوقف تلويث الغلاف الجوى.

26. Translate into English:

- Egypt gives a great example of religious tolerance through the peaceful co-existence of Muslims and Christians which dates back to hundreds of years. It protected it from sectarian strife over the ages.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** piles
2. **a)** titles
3. **c)** stay
4. **d)** traditional
5. **b)** investing
6. **c)** advantage
7. **a)** needn't go
8. **b)** more tolerant
9. **d)** are you wearing
10. **c)** not to climb
11. **c)** seems
12. **a)** were I to know
13. **b)** the widest
14. **a)** will be playing
15. **b)** to reserve
16. **b)** since I last saw

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** she was violent.
18. **a)** I stopped breathing
19. **b)** did nothing
20. **d)** kind

B) Answer the following questions:

21. She is dressed in a dark dirty sari. She probably has not had a bath for years. Her hair is matted, teeth stained red with betel-nut and eyes blood-shot with the look of madness.
22. He isn't sure what she will do. Also she smells terrible up close.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يجب على كل الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق أهدافها. فالعمل الجماعى مع التسامح ضروريان لنجاح أى مشروع.

26. Translate into English:

- Whatever your future ambition is, you must/should work hard and patiently in order to achieve it. But remember that good planning also helps you with that.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** Targeted
2. **c)** out
3. **b)** record
4. **c)** boosting
5. **d)** respect
6. **a)** rural
7. **a)** longer
8. **b)** have to
9. **c)** will be waiting
10. **b)** should
11. **d)** supposed
12. **a)** hadn't helped
13. **b)** most useful
14. **b)** leaves
15. **c)** come
16. **d)** a three-hour

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** his childhood
18. **a)** Knowledgeable
19. **d)** the things that happened in a past time
20. **c)** hobby

B) Answer the following questions:

21. story books, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that he finds interesting.
22. Through reading, the person can avoid diseases. Also the person does not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the dangerous animals. He/ She can read all about them in a book.
23. 1- cope with 2- informed
24. The student's answer.

25. **Translate into Arabic:**

- فى الماضى كانت التجارة على نطاق صغير، لكن اليوم تطورت وزادت التجارة بشكل كبير حيث تنقل البضائع بسرعة وبأمان.

26. **Translate into English:**

- Many world countries suffer from the problem of refugees whom wars, fights and economic problems force to leave their countries looking for a better life.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** headlines
2. **a)** keep
3. **d)** improved
4. **d)** image
5. **a)** examination
6. **c)** attractive
7. **b)** had to
8. **a)** will have to
9. **d)** greater
10. **c)** will find
11. **a)** to talk
12. **d)** is meant
13. **d)** will you buy
14. **b)** would be
15. **d)** my sister's
16. **a)** as if I were

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** end your life
18. **a)** the electrician
19. **c)** You may slip easily and become bedridden.
20. **d)** sweets

B) Answer the following questions:

21. If used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches it.
22. 1- electrocute 2- scald
23. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas-cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns.
24. Student's own answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إن التربية/التعليم عملية يكتسب بها الناس المعرفة والمهارات والقيم، كما تساعد الناس أن يصبحوا أفرادًا نافعين فى المجتمع، وللآباء والمعلمين المسئولية الرئيسية للتعليم.

26. Translate into English:

- Despite their great benefits, social networking sites/social media sometimes causes the spread of rumours and creating chaos in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental observation on them.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 13

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** original
2. **c)** with
3. **c)** advertisers
4. **a)** memories
5. **c)** linked
6. **b)** course
7. **d)** had to
8. **a)** as
9. **a)** am going back
10. **d)** should
11. **b)** seems
12. **c)** could buy
13. **c)** delicious
14. **d)** will be working
15. **a)** A friend of mine
16. **b)** There must be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** will make humans jobless.
18. **a)** Computers and Robots
19. **c)** Smaller
20. **b)** Robots are mechanical people.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because they were huge.
22. Because computers cannot think or do things on their own.
23. 1- Costly 2- assemble
24. The student's answer.

25. **Translate into Arabic:**

- بالرغم من التحديات التى يواجهها الاقتصاد المصرى، إلا أن هناك تصميمًا على التغلب عليها، ومن المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد نموًا فى السنوات القادمة.

26. **Translate into English:**

- In addition to the marvelous scenery and moderate climate, Egypt has a lot of fascinating ancient and modern architectural works which attract visitors and tourists from all over the world.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 14

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** support
2. **b)** event
3. **c)** available
4. **d)** aim
5. **d)** plot
6. **d)** heating
7. **c)** had to
8. **a)** most enjoyable
9. **b)** begins
10. **d)** to read
11. **c)** is not supposed
12. **b)** hadn't gone
13. **b)** am not going to fail
14. **d)** as
15. **d)** none
16. **c)** since

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** two
18. **a)** Indonesia
19. **d)** stealing
20. **a)** It is looked after by another female elephant

B) Answer the following questions:

21. The elephant gives birth to one young at a time.
22. They live in herds and have the same diet.
23. 1- Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market.
 2- For domestic use, such as tourist attractions.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يلعب التعليم المدرسى دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال؛ لذلك تحاول الحكومات تطويره طوال الوقت.

26. Translate into English:

- Sports have a great effect on fighting different social problems such as crime and violence. They can also reinforce the basic principles of the character of children in addition to their health benefits for all people.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** application
2. **a)** heal
3. **a)** virus
4. **b)** with
5. **d)** forgive
6. **a)** contain
7. **a)** need to
8. **b)** more and more difficult
9. **d)** will be working
10. **b)** should
11. **d)** didn't mean
12. **a)** was
13. **c)** commonest
14. **b)** is cooking
15. **c)** neither
16. **b)** in spite of being

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **d)** Animals
18. **a)** She was against owning a cat at home.
19. **c)** Straight
20. **b)** To have a cat as a pet.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. It was because Sally loved animals.
22. Her mother didn't have a love for animals.
23. She heard a mewing sound
24. It was knocked down by a car.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يعتبر نقص الغذاء أحد أخطر المشكلات التى تهدد العالم، وتسبب المجاعة فى كثير من الدول، وعلى كل الناس أن يعملوا بجد ليجدوا حلولًا لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

26. Translate into English:

- Traditional education is no longer suitable for the new generations and coping up with the continuous development in all fields of life. Therefore/ So, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education especially for the secondary stage.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 16

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** caused
2. **d)** innovators
3. **a)** entertained
4. **b)** got
5. **c)** faithful
6. **a)** immune
7. **d)** must
8. **c)** most expensive
9. **d)** will meet
10. **b)** to do
11. **a)** seems
12. **c)** Had
13. **a)** ends
14. **b)** the fastest of
15. **b)** take them off
16. **c)** that they said

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** smaller units of time
18. **d)** What types of clocks have been invented
19. **a)** dissolve
20. **c)** related to hearing

B) Answer the following questions:

21. I think it would be a mess.
22. Airplanes take off and land according to the clock
23. They work with a system of moving gears. The gears always move at the same speed. Pendulum clocks work with a swinging weight.
24. The student's answer

25. Translate into Arabic:

- أكدت استضافة مصر لكأس الأمم الإفريقية عام ٢٠١٩ على دور مصر البارز فى إفريقيا، كما كانت أيضًا فرصة لإظهار حضارتنا للعالم أجمع.

26. Translate into English:

- The history of the feminist movement in Egypt is full of/ abundant with many great successful models who confirmed women's role and rights such as Nabwiya Musa and Aisha Abdel Rahman.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 17

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** two-week
2. **b)** arrival
3. **a)** algae
4. **c)** on
5. **a)** inheritance
6. **c)** extracted
7. **c)** has got to
8. **d)** harder
9. **b)** is going to rain
10. **c)** should
11. **b)** were supposed
12. **a)** will have
13. **c)** narrower
14. **a)** will enter
15. **d)** usually goes
16. **c)** were woken up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **d)** brain
18. **c)** in straight waves
19. **b)** ourselves
20. **a)** magnify, or make things larger

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time.
22. They bounce directly back to our eyes.
23. because the surface must be smooth and still to create a reflection.
24. Physics

25. Translate into Arabic:

- لا يمتلك الكثيرون المعرفة والوعى بالرعاية الصحية لذلك من دور المتعلمين أن يقوموا بنشر الوعى بهذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الطوارئ الطبية.

26. Translate into English:

- People differ in the kind/type of food they prefer and the way it is cooked and even its ingredients. However, they all agree in the search for the delicious food and the high nutritional value.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 18

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** highlights
2. **b)** appearance
3. **b)** separated
4. **a)** share
5. **b)** guilty
6. **d)** survived
7. **c)** will be cleaning
8. **d)** must be
9. **b)** don't have to
10. **d)** least
11. **c)** will be
12. **a)** mean
13. **c)** would not have given
14. **d)** suggestion
15. **a)** lived
16. **a)** laughing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** She read books
18. **d)** she loved to read
19. **d)** none
20. **a)** the books were selling very well

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because the publisher felt that Sara had the talent to write a novel.

22. Because she wasn't confident she could do it.

23. 1- proud 2- later

24. The student's answer

25. Translate into Arabic:

- للجميع فى المجتمع الحق بأن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته الخاصة، ففى المجتمعات المتحضرة ليس هناك مشكلة أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين، لكن من الضرورى أن نحترم بعضنا البعض.

26. Translate into English:

- With the decrease of the area of agricultural land to be used for other purposes all over the world, it has become necessary for scientists to search for new ways to provide food for the increasing population.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 19

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** lost
2. **c)** section
3. **d)** forum
4. **b)** relationship
5. **d)** away
6. **c)** reacts
7. **b)** had to
8. **c)** prettiest
9. **a)** will be having
10. **a)** to work
11. **d)** are you supposed
12. **b)** does
13. **c)** is going to retire
14. **c)** as good as
15. **b)** went
16. **d)** we were going

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **A)** pulling sleds in the snow.
18. **a)** wild animal
19. **C)** hair
20. **D)** not curly.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Hear and smell
22. 24 years old
23. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend." They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things.
24. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs.
 Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- بالرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعلومات والمعرفة إلا أن الإرهابيون يستخدمونه لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة، كما يساعدهم أيضًا على الوصول للشباب وتجنيدهم لأفعالهم الشريرة.

26. Translate into English:

- Learning foreign languages help us understand the modern cultural and scientific trends.
 It also helps us keep up with the great progress in different scientific and technological ways.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** persuasion
2. **a)** making
3. **b)** Hydroponics
4. **b)** images
5. **d)** deceiving
6. **c)** course
7. **b)** means
8. **c)** must
9. **a)** bigger
10. **c)** is going to slip
11. **b)** could swim
12. **c)** wouldn't have stayed
13. **a)** much tougher
14. **d)** will see
15. **a)** we are being followed
16. **b)** difficulty finding

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **C)** They are wood, cloth, plastic, glass, and metal.
18. **D)** wood
19. **A)** smooth and cool
20. **C)** to compare something

B) Answer the following questions:

21. metal, glass, wood, cloth and plastic
22. wood
23. The student's answer
24. Wood and glass

25. Translate into Arabic:

- التفكير النقدى هو القدرة على التفكير وبعقلانية عما نفعل وما نعتقد، كما يشمل القدرة على تطوير تفكيرك المستقل.

26. Translate into English:

- The new school year represents/is a great challenge with the continuous spread of Corona Virus. Schools and universities open with all the precautionary measures to prevent this serious disease.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

ALADWAA

Gem



English

الصف 2 الثانوى

نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

طبقًا للتعديلات الوزارية

2021 - 2022

Final Tests

Final Test 1

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 20

1. advertising is those advertisements which appear to people out of their interest and activity on the Internet.
 a) Banner **b)** Commercial **c)** Amateur **d)** Targeted
2. Maher spent a lot of time listening to records and just hanging with some friends.
 a) on **b)** in **c)** out **d)** at
3. British Airways has a very good safety Accidents are rare on their flights.
 a) prize **b)** record **c)** revision **d)** medal
4. The advertisement campaign has succeeded in sales of the new product.
 a) pulling **b)** depriving **c)** boosting **d)** discouraging
5. Hossam Hassan has gained much for his successful football career.
 a) disrespect **b)** rudeness **c)** affection **d)** respect
6. At the end of the 17th century, England was still, depending mainly on agriculture.
 a) rural **b)** urban **c)** space **d)** spicy
7. Thanks to the efforts of the police, the terrorist was arrested.
 a) call **b)** ceiling **c)** calling **d)** cell
8. You can use this website in songs for free.
 a) downloading **b)** loading **c)** uploading **d)** overloading
9. It is really impolite to argue your parents. You shouldn't do this.
 a) at **b)** with **c)** about **d)** over
10. I like out with my old friend Samy. He has a great sense of humor.
 a) improving **b)** removing **c)** hurting **d)** hanging
11. The bigger the flat is, the time she takes to clean it.
 a) longer **b)** longest **c)** long **d)** more long
12. I often work at the weekend to get everything done.
 a) mustn't **b)** have to **c)** don't have to **d)** didn't have to
13. I for my results all the next month.
 a) wait **b)** will wait **c)** will be waiting **d)** will be waited
14. Why did you leave the exam room? You have checked your answers more thoroughly.
 a) shouldn't **b)** should **c)** must **d)** oughtn't
15. I'm to give a conference in Cairo tomorrow, but I think I'm going down with flu.
 a) seemed **b)** suppose **c)** seem **d)** supposed
16. I would have been in bad trouble, if she me.
 a) hadn't helped **b)** weren't **c)** is **d)** will be

17 The mobile phone must be one of the inventions of all time.
a) useful **b)** most useful **c)** less useful **d)** more useful

18 We have to hurry. The train in five minutes.
a) has left **b)** leaves **c)** will have left **d)** won't leave

19 I didn't hear you You must have been very quiet.
a) came **b)** to come **c)** come **d)** to coming

20 It took us quite a long time to get here. It was journey.
a) three hours **b)** three hour **c)** a three-hours **d)** a three-hour

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

My hobby is reading. I read story books, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that I find interesting. This hobby got started when I was a little boy. I had always wanted my parents to read fairy tales and other stories to me. Soon they got fed up and tired of having to read to me continually. So as soon as I could, I learned to read. I started with simple ABC books. Soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories. Now I read just about anything that is available.

Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would otherwise not know. I learned about how people lived in bygone days of magic and mystery. I learned about the wonders of the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things of our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, I do not have to catch a disease to know that it can kill me. I know the danger so I can avoid it. Also, I do not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about it in a book.

Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. I am better equipped to cope with living. Otherwise, I would go about ignorantly learning things the hard way. So, I continue to read. Besides being more informed about the world, I also spend my time profitably. It is indeed a good hobby.

21 The writer has liked reading since
a) his graduation **b)** his childhood
c) his marriage **d)** his youth

22 Through reading, the person becomes
a) knowledgeable **b)** available
c) famous **d)** honourable

23 The word "bygone" means
a) the things that will happen in the future
b) the things that happen daily
c) the things that will never happen
d) the things that happened in a past time

24 In addition to helping the person to know many things, reading is a
a) disaster **b)** responsibility
c) hobby **d)** danger

25 The writer likes to read

a) stories
b) magazines
c) newspapers
d) all of the previous

26 Reading can help people medically because

a) readers can avoid diseases through reading about diseases
b) readers can avoid diseases by learning things the hard way
c) readers can avoid diseases through going to jungle
d) readers can catch diseases to know that they can kill

27 According to the passage, people can cope with living through

a) buying books
b) working abroad
c) reading about life facts
d) none of the previous

28 What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

a) Time.
b) Reading.
c) Books.
d) World.

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

The immune system is made up of special organs, cells and chemicals in our bodies. They work together to protect us from infections and diseases.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

الكل يخطئ، لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف يستفيد من أخطائه. إن ارتكاب الأخطاء لا يؤدى بالضرورة إلى نتائج سيئة فالتعلم من الأخطاء مهارة علينا جميعًا اكتسابها.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- Your favourite social networking site.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 2

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story of the president's visit dominated newspaper around the world.
 a) addresses **b)** headquarters **c)** headlines **d)** backlines
2. I couldn't in contact with many of my relatives when I moved to Sharm El Sheikh.
 a) keep **b)** leave **c)** depart **d)** pay
3. She was told to go back to the doctor in two weeks if she hadn't
 a) proved **b)** approved **c)** disapproved **d)** improved
4. Most Arab young people have a/an of the USA as a very rich country.
 a) photo **b)** location **c)** site **d)** image
5. A specialist did a full heart for the patient before the operation.
 a) examination **b)** process **c)** intention **d)** surgery
6. Ahmed Helmy's films are popular because his ideas are to many people.
 a) attract **b)** attraction **c)** attractive **d)** attracted
7. All the tourists admired the of the beaches in Hurghada.
 a) stability **b)** rudeness **c)** beauty **d)** surprise
8. The restaurant owners were by a young man claiming to be the son of a millionaire.
 a) accepted **b)** deceived **c)** honoured **d)** awarded
9. Where do you have to put your hands when you CPR?
 a) prepare **b)** make **c)** perform **d)** act
10. Smoking is very bad for the respiratory system as it affects man's badly.
 a) muscle **b)** cell **c)** surface **d)** lungs
11. We have a ticket with your name on or we couldn't travel.
 a) have to **b)** had to **c)** must **d)** needn't
12. Employees accept the new conditions or they will be dismissed.
 a) will have to **b)** don't have to **c)** needn't **d)** can't
13. The higher the temperature, the the demand for ice cream.
 a) great **b)** greatest **c)** greatly **d)** greater
14. I haven't made up my mind yet. But I think I something nice in my wardrobe.
 a) find **b)** am going to find **c)** will find **d)** am finding
15. The presenter asked the writer about Shakespeare's early life.
 a) to talk **b)** to talking **c)** talking **d)** talk
16. A company's logo to help people easily identify its products.
 a) meant **b)** means **c)** meaning **d)** is meant
17. If you find the shoes that I have told you about, ... them?
 a) you will buy **b)** would you have bought
 c) would you buy **d)** will you buy

18 If we had a map, we able to get out of here.

a) shall be **b)** would be

c) should have been **d)** would have been

19 This isn't my book. It's

a) my sister **b)** from my sister **c)** of my sister's **d)** my sister's

20 They are very kind to me. They treat me their own son.

a) as if I were **b)** as if I would be **c)** as if I had **d)** as I am

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Our home is usually our favourite place to spend time in. However, many accidents occur at home. There are dangerous things in the house and we should be aware of them. Thus, we can avoid unnecessary pain or injury.

Electricity runs many of our home appliances. It is a very useful thing. It is also a very dangerous thing if used carelessly, for it can kill. Electrical sockets and power points are to be handled with utmost care. Young children should never be allowed to go near them. Unless we are very sure of what we are doing, repairs should only be done by a competent electrician. It is only too easy to get electrocuted. Old or faulty appliances should be discarded. If used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches them.

The kitchen has many dangerous things. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns. Flies and rats can contaminate food. Thus, the kitchen is not a place to be careless in. If we are careful and know how to handle things there, then the chance of an accident occurring is lessened.

The biggest danger in a bathroom is when the floor is slippery with water or soap. I have heard of many incidents of people, especially old folks, falling in the bathroom. Sometimes the fall is fatal. Often it leaves the victim bedridden. Utmost care is needed here.

Finally, the medicine cabinet should be inaccessible to young children. Dangerous drugs and pills can look like sweets to these young ones. If taken, the consequences can be disastrous. Other dangers do exist. It is up to us to watch out for them.

21 Although it is a very useful thing, electricity can

a) run factories **b)** end your life

c) make you happy **d)** darken your room

22 If there is something wrong with electricity at home, who should do the repairs?

a) The electrician. **b)** The children.

c) The parents. **d)** The neighbours.

23 Utmost care is needed in the bathroom as

a) there is much electricity in it **b)** hot water can scald your skin

c) you may slip easily and become bedridden **d)** fire can break out at any time

24 Young children may take dangerous drugs and pills thinking that they are

a) milk **b)** medicine

c) fruit **d)** sweets

25 Why should old or faulty appliances be discarded?

a) They are likely to set a fire somewhere or kill someone.
b) They may put out a fire somewhere or save somebody.
c) They are likely to get electrocuted somewhere or start a fire.
d) They can't start a fire somewhere or kill anybody.

26 What is the best title of the passage?

a) Car accidents
b) Home accidents
c) Kitchen accidents
d) Electricity accidents

27 The kitchen is considered a dangerous place as

a) it contains knifes
b) there is hot water
c) there are gas-cylinders
d) all of the previous

28 The synonym of the underlined word "contaminate" is

a) ripen
b) cook
c) pollute
d) eat

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

All over the world, a lot of people are interested in using different means of communication. These means enable them to do various tasks as quickly as they can.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

رغم فوائدها الكثيرة إلا أن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى أحيانًا تتسبب فى نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى فى المجتمع. لذلك يؤيد الكثيرون فرض الرقابة الحكومية عليها.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- The role teachers can play in developing society.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

NLP WWA Gem

Final Test 3

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1 This furniture is still in its condition, so it is valuable.
a) back b) original c) dispensing d) infecting

2 The government must now deal the problem of high unemployment.
a) in b) at c) with d) of

3 Social media have attracted because of their increasing popularity.
a) clerks b) consumers c) advertisers d) rivals

4 In this programme, old soldiers talk about their of the war.
a) memories b) souvenirs c) memorials d) anniversaries

5 The two little sisters arms happily as they walked to school.
a) wrapped b) contacted c) linked d) called

6 My brother is doing a in economics to have a promotion.
a) journey b) course c) search d) grade

7 A is someone who teaches or studies languages.
a) botanist b) chemist c) linguist d) psychiatrist

8 Owning a luxurious house does not mean that they were born into a wealthy family.
a) necessarily b) uselessly c) dangerously d) properly

9 The students must finish the test within the of two hours, no more.
a) location b) area c) space d) region

10 We should all be about the future of our country.
a) positive b) negative c) affirmative d) affective

11 To get a cheap ticket, he book in advance.
a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) needn't d) had to

12 She earns at least as much her brother, and probably more.
a) as b) than c) more d) of

13 This is my last day here. I to England tomorrow.
a) am going back b) go c) will be gone d) won't

14 The results were completely wrong. She have planned the experiment more carefully.
a) must b) might c) shouldn't d) should

15 A lot of students can't answer the maths problem. It difficult.
a) is meant b) seems c) is supposed d) is seemed

16 If I had another 5000 pounds, I a car.
a) would have bought b) could have bought c) could buy d) will buy

17 That chocolate ice cream tastes
a) deliciously b) more deliciously
c) delicious d) the most deliciously

18 Samy has told us that he when we arrive at the station so we will have to get a taxi.
a) is working **b)** works **c)** will work **d)** will be working

19 I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. is getting married.
a) A friend of mine **b)** A friend of me **c)** One my friends **d)** A friend's

20 They live on a busy road. a lot of noise from the traffic.
a) It must have had **b)** There must be
c) It must be **d)** There must have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Computers are machines that can help us in many ways. But they cannot think or do things on their own. Humans have to feed them with information and tell them what to do with it. They can save much time and work. For example, all the information and the office files can be stored in a computer's "memory".

The first computers were huge and costly. They filled up almost the whole floor of large offices. Later, because of the usefulness and demand for computers in business, scientists soon found ways to produce cheaper and smaller computers. They invented chips which made it possible to store more information in less space.

Today, computers are not only cheaper, but also more compact. They can just be placed on top of an ordinary writing table. They can even be carried from place to place easily. Computers are not only used in offices by companies, but they are also used at home, by families who can afford them.

Robots, on the other hand, are not mechanical people. They are only moving parts controlled by a computer. A robot can do the same work for twenty-four hours, and yet, it does not complain or get tired. In Japan and in some places in America, robots are used in factories to assemble cars. As computers become more common businesses and factories, people fear that one day computers and computer-controlled robots will put human workers out of work.

21 Humans fear that one day computers and robots
a) are busier than humans
b) are cleverer than humans
c) will make humans jobless
d) will make humans listen to certain noise

22 The best title for this passage would be
a) Computers and Robots **b)** Old and New Computers
c) Robots are Security Guards **d)** The Electronic Invention

23 Find a word in the passage that has the same meaning as more compact.
a) Huge. **b)** Cheaper.
c) Smaller. **d)** Costly.

24 Which of the following statements in NOT true?
a) Robots are controlled by a computer. **b)** Robots are mechanical people.
c) Robots do not get tired of working. **d)** Robots are used in factories in Japan.

25 The first computers filled up a room because
- **a)** they could store a lot of information.
- **b)** they were huge.
- **c)** they were very expensive.
- **d)** they were useful and demanded in business.

26 Humans have to feed the computers with information
- **a)** so, computers cannot move or do things on their own.
- **b)** because computers are able to think or do things on their own.
- **c)** because computers can save much time and work.
- **d)** because computers cannot think or do things on their own.

27 The underlined word "They" refers to
- **a)** people
- **b)** robots
- **c)** computers
- **d)** places

28 The computer was made smaller
- **a)** because it became more expensive
- **b)** because of the demand for it in business
- **c)** because of globalization
- **d)** because robots are small

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Despite the challenges the Egyptian economy is facing, there is determination to overcome them. The economy is expected to witness a growth in the following years.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

يُعتبر التعليم فى المنزل إحدى الطرق التى يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتساب المعرفة بمساعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت. لذلك توفر الدولة كل سبل الدعم لتمكن الطلاب من المشاركة بفاعلية.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- A country or city you would like very much to visit.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 4

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kareem was thankful for his friends' during his health problems.
 a) support **b)** seduction **c)** neglect **d)** struggle
2. Egypt proved to be good at organising international sporting
 a) accidents **b)** events **c)** incidents **d)** processes
3. There's no room for more books – we've used up all the space.
 a) readable **b)** acceptable **c)** available **d)** proper
4. The Egyptian Food Bank's is to provide food for homeless people.
 a) report **b)** procedure **c)** article **d)** aim
5. A spy is someone who against his country and gives secrets to its enemy.
 a) innovates **b)** suspects **c)** plays **d)** plots
6. The discussions between the two men were simple, but they gradually started up and turning into a quarrel.
 a) warning **b)** cooling **c)** decreasing **d)** heating
7. Egypt its Victory Day on the enemy on the 6th of October.
 a) accepts **b)** rewards **c)** celebrates **d)** reports
8. The Nile is our most important water supply, so we should all try to keep it clean.
 a) believable **b)** noticeable **c)** avoidable **d)** sustainable
9. My new car is a better and more than my last one.
 a) doubtful **b)** distant **c)** reliable **d)** disorganised
10. I believe that people of the world can all work together, regardless of their and religions.
 a) heights **b)** wealth **c)** competitions **d)** races
11. To get there on time, I leave home by 8:30.
 a) mustn't **b)** don't have to **c)** had to **d)** needn't
12. We had a great holiday. In fact, I think it was the I have ever had.
 a) most enjoyable **b)** more enjoyable **c)** enjoyable **d)** less enjoyable
13. Hurry up! The conference in 20 minutes.
 a) will be beginning **b)** begins **c)** won't begin **d)** has begun
14. Ali's mother taught him and encouraged him to become a doctor.
 a) read **b)** to reading **c)** reads **d)** to read
15. She to speak Italian in an English class.
 a) is supposed **b)** is meant **c)** is not supposed **d)** is not seemed
16. If we there, we would never have found what was happening.
 a) didn't go **b)** hadn't gone **c)** haven't gone **d)** weren't
17. I studied a lot for the exam. I
 a) am not failing **b)** am not going to fail **c)** don't fail **d)** won't be failing

18 It's not beautiful a house as I'd imagined.
a) much **b)** more **c)** the **d)** as

19 We couldn't buy anything because of the shops were open.
a) all **b)** nothing **c)** no-one **d)** none

20 We watched TV all evening we didn't have anything better to do.
a) because of **b)** while **c)** since **d)** when

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

The Asian elephant is another type of elephant found in the world, besides the African elephant. They share some similarities. Elephants are social creatures and live in herds. Asian elephants are normally found in countries like India, Indonesia, Malaysia and Myanmar. An adult Asian elephant stands at two to three metres and weighs approximately 5000 kilograms. At birth, it stands at around one metre and weighs approximately 100 kilograms. Like most humans, they give birth to a single baby at a time but the fetus stays much longer in the mother's womb compared to the human baby; 23 months! An Asian elephant has a life span of about 60 years. The diet of an Asian elephant is somewhat similar to African elephants. They feed mainly on vegetation, bark, fruits and flowers.

Living in a herd means that the baby elephant has a large group of adults to look after it, besides its own mother. An orphan elephant is often adopted by another female elephant. As the largest land animal in the world, an elephant requires about 150 kilograms of food and 75-95 litres of water a day. The largest threats to the Asian elephant are poaching and habitat loss. Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market, so large-tusked males are in constant danger of being poached. Elephants are also captured alive for domestic use, such as tourist attractions.

21 There are types of elephants in the world.
a) one **b)** two
c) three **d)** many

22 The Asian elephant can be found in
a) Indonesia **b)** America
c) Australia **d)** Holland

23 The synonym of the word "poaching" is
a) slaughtering **b)** immigrating
c) killing **d)** stealing

24 What happens to an orphan elephant?
a) It is looked after by another female elephant.
b) It is abandoned.
c) It is looked after by the whole herd.
d) It is killed.

25 Elephant are similar to humans in terms of giving birth because
a) the elephant stays little longer in the mother's womb
b) the elephant gives birth to one young at a time.
c) the elephant gives birth at the same weight.
d) the elephant gives birth to one young at a life.

26 African and Asian elephants are similar because

a) they live in herds and have the same diet
b) they are captured alive for domestic use
c) they live in big families and have the same diet
d) their tusks are worth a lot of money

27 Elephants are captured alive because

a) their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market
b) their tusks are sold in supermarkets
c) for domestic use, such as tourist attractions
d) both a and c

28 What is the best title for the passage?

a) Elephants benefits
b) Elephants lives
c) Elephants importance
d) Elephants description

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

School education plays an important role in shaping the character of children. So, the current government encourages continuous development attempts by the Ministry of Education.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

للألعاب الرياضية أثر كبير فى محاربة مشكلات المجتمع المختلفة مثل العنف والجريمة. كما يمكنها تعزيز المبادئ الأساسية لشخصية الأطفال بجانب فوائدها الصحية الكبيرة لكل الناس.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- The role of charitable organisations in helping society.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 5

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the top-selling is Microsoft Office.
 a) apply **b)** applications **c)** applied **d)** applicable
2. This ointment is very strong and it will help the wound.
 a) heal **b)** care **c)** treat **d)** spread
3. Gmail websites must check all mails for any before allowing upload and download.
 a) virus **b)** germ **c)** bacterium **d)** tumour
4. People living in town are not happy the decision to build the nearby nuclear power station.
 a) at **b)** with **c)** over **d)** in
5. I'll never Samy for what he did to my pet cat.
 a) comply **b)** forge **c)** forget **d)** forgive
6. Strong measures are still needed to the COVID-19 epidemic in many countries.
 a) contain **b)** involve **c)** enclose **d)** include
7. We all father not to drive in the storm, but he wouldn't listen to us.
 a) ordered **b)** begged **c)** attacked **d)** delayed
8. My grandmother always keeps a sewing in her handbag.
 a) kit **b)** tool **c)** device **d)** machine
9. The teacher asked students to cooperate together to a certain task.
 a) form **b)** reform **c)** perform **d)** inform
10. We are going to today because my father was promoted!
 a) compete **b)** complete **c)** celebrate **d)** construct
11. Before you buy a house, you consider all the costs.
 a) need to **b)** had to **c)** didn't have to **d)** mustn't
12. It's getting to find a good job.
 a) so more difficult **b)** more and more difficult
 c) more harder **d)** the most difficult
13. He on the garden so we won't see him when we get home.
 a) will work **b)** works **c)** will have worked **d)** will be working
14. The information you sent have included details of courses taken at university.
 a) mustn't **b)** should **c)** shouldn't **d)** may not
15. Pay no attention to Samy's remarks. He to embarrass you.
 a) doesn't seem **b)** doesn't suppose **c)** wasn't meaning **d)** didn't mean
16. I would get up earlier, if there a good reason to.
 a) was **b)** have been **c)** is **d)** had been
17. Scientists claim that oil pollution is now the cause of death among sea birds.
 a) more common **b)** common **c)** commonest **d)** commoner

18 Osama will be working in the garden while Hala
a) will cook **b)** is cooking **c)** was cooking **d)** cooks

19 I asked two people the way to the station, but of them helped me.
a) either **b)** none **c)** neither **d)** both

20 I couldn't sleep very tired. I was working all day yesterday.
a) although being **b)** in spite of being **c)** despite of being **d)** despite I was

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Sally loved animals. All her favourite programs on television were about animals. The same goes for her school supplies and clothes. Her favourite animal was the cat. She had wanted to own a cat since she was eight years old. Unfortunately, her mother's feelings towards animals were the opposite of hers. So, Sally was forbidden to own a cat, but one day, something happened that helped Sally get her wish.

She was on her way to the shop across the street from her house. The traffic was quite heavy that day so she was extremely careful before crossing the road. When she got to the other side, she heard something and went over to the grassy area near the pavement. It was a kitten! It was badly injured and was lying here all curled up and looking very frightened. Sally gently picked it up and went home as quickly as she could.

She told her mother how sorry she felt for the kitten and begged her mother to let her look after it. Seeing how upset Sally was, her mother agreed. After a few weeks with the family, the kitten was soon loved by all and became Sally's pet. Even her mother loved the kitten. And that was how Sally got her wish at last!

21 What shape was on Sally's school supplies and clothes?
a) Trees and nature. **b)** Food.
c) Sportsmen. **d)** Animals.

22 The phrase "were the opposite of hers" means
a) she was against owning a cat at home
b) she liked animals more than her daughter
c) she didn't like her daughter
d) she didn't like to help her daughter

23 The word "....." is the antonym of "curled up".
a) twisted **b)** bowed
c) straight **d)** bent

24 What was Sally's wish?
a) To wear clothes with animals on them. **b)** To have a cat as a pet.
c) To visit the place where animals live. **d)** To make her mother love animals.

25 Sally enjoyed watching programs about animals because
a) she was forbidden to own a cat
b) she loved T.V
c) she had wanted to own a cat
d) she loved animals

26 Sally's mother refuse to allow her to own a cat because

a) she didn't love wild animals **b)** she loved wild animals

c) she didn't love pets **d)** she feared from cats

27 Sally heard when she was near the pavement?

a) dog's sound **b)** mewing sound

c) child's sound **d)** baby's sound

28 What do you think happened to the cat according to the passage?

a) It was knocked down by a car.

b) It was knocked down by another animal.

c) It was left alone and looked very frightened.

d) It was sick.

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Food shortage is one of the most serious problems threatening the world and causing starvation in many countries. All people should work hard to find solutions for this problem.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

لم يعد التعليم التقليدى مناسبًا للأجيال الجديدة ومواكبا للتطور المستمر فى جميع مجالات الحياة الحديثة. لذلك بدأت وزارة التربية والتعليم فى النظام الحديث للتعليم وخاصة فى المرحلة الثانوية.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- A story of a man who conquered great difficulties to reach his ambition.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ONLINEWA Gen

Final Test 6

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flood great problems for the local farmers.
 a) reasoned **b)** applied **c)** caused **d)** shared
2. Bill Gates is one of the greatest of computer technology.
 a) poets **b)** editors **c)** explorers **d)** innovators
3. When we were young, our grandfather's stories us a lot.
 a) entertained **b)** delayed **c)** inspected **d)** trained
4. In time, the new students gained confidence and on with other classmates.
 a) went **b)** got **c)** came **d)** received
5. My mother has always remained to the values she learned as a child.
 a) useless **b)** unaffected **c)** faithful **d)** influenced
6. My father always advises us to be to the power of advertising and not to buy things which we don't need.
 a) immune **b)** respiratory **c)** prohibited **d)** allowed
7. The old man was walking up and down the room, which was a that he was worried.
 a) sign **b)** signal **c)** landmark **d)** note
8. We aren't used to eating a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
 a) inside **b)** down **c)** out **d)** across
9. The new hotel's 200 rooms come in a of sizes; single, double or suites.
 a) property **b)** variety **c)** difference **d)** site
10. The bird is easily because of its bright red feathers.
 a) available **b)** acceptable **c)** recognisable **d)** affectionate
11. I see the head teacher. I want to discuss something with him.
 a) needn't **b)** don't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** must
12. A Mercedes is one of the cars you can buy.
 a) more expensive **b)** expensive **c)** most expensive **d)** little expensive
13. I think I him at entrance B. I can't remember.
 a) will be meeting **b)** am meeting **c)** meet **d)** will meet
14. The teacher wanted her students their homework before the new lesson.
 a) do **b)** to do **c)** doing **d)** to doing
15. Don't speak to the boss now. He to be angry about something.
 a) seems **b)** means **c)** is meant **d)** supposed
16. they had much time, they would have studied better.
 a) If **b)** Were **c)** Had **d)** Have
17. The youth conference in Sharm El-Sheikh next Saturday.
 a) ends **b)** are ending **c)** end **d)** will end

ONLINE MAN Gem

18 I chose this car as my favourite because it's all the ones I have driven.
a) the fastest from **b)** the fastest of **c)** more faster than **d)** the fastest as

19 These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to
a) take off **b)** take them off **c)** take off them **d)** take it off

20 I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything was true.
a) what was said **b)** what they said **c)** that they said **d)** they say

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Clocks are used to measure and show the time. Clocks are used so that people can agree on the time. People use clocks to measure units of time that are shorter than natural units. Natural units are the day, the month, and the year.

The clock is a very old invention. Sundials were used in ancient times. Sundials work by measuring shadows that are cast by the sun. Candle clocks were used a very long time ago. Candle clocks work by measuring the time it takes for the wax to melt Hourglasses are similar to candle clocks because they also measure the time it takes for something to happen. Hourglasses work by measuring the time it takes for sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.

Mechanical clocks appeared in the 13th century in Europe. They work with a system of moving gears. The gears always move at the same speed. Pendulum clocks work with a swinging weight.

The swinging weight is called a pendulum. The pendulum makes the clock parts move. Now people typically use mechanical clocks or digital clocks. Digital clocks show numbers on a screen. The numbers represent the time. Some people use auditory clocks. Auditory clocks use language to tell the time aloud. Computers also use internal clocks in order to work properly.

Clocks are everywhere – in homes, schools, offices, and public places. People go to work and return home according to the clock. School days start and end according to the clock. Airplanes take off and land according to the clock. It is fun to imagine a world without clocks!

21 The clocks are used to measure the
a) smaller units of time **b)** day
c) month **d)** year

22 What is the main idea of the third paragraph?
a) Why clocks are used.
b) How sundials work.
c) How hourglasses are similar to candle clocks.
d) What types of clocks have been invented.

23 The synonym of "melt" is
a) dissolve **b)** harden **c)** solidify **d)** freeze

24 The word "auditory" most closely means
a) related to machines **b)** related to numbers
c) related to hearing **d)** related to the sun

25 The writer believes that it would be a mess if
a) there are a lot of clocks **b)** there are many kinds of clocks
c) there weren't clocks **d)** clocks were bigger in size

26 Airplanes depend on the clock because
- **a)** they take off according to the clock.
- **b)** they land according to the clock.
- **c)** they use clocks to book tickets
- **d)** both a and b

27 Sundials are different from Candle clocks because they
- **a)** work with a system of moving gears.
- **b)** use the daylight.
- **c)** use sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.
- **d)** measure units of time that are shorter than natural

28 What is the main idea of the passage?
- **a)** How different industries and jobs use clocks
- **b)** The description of different kinds of clocks and their importance
- **c)** The history of different kinds of clocks
- **d)** The importance of specific kinds of clocks

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Hosting the African Cup of Nations in 2019 confirmed Egypt's prominent role in Africa. It was also a chance to show our civilisation to the whole world.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

يزخر تاريخ الحركة النسائية فى مصر بالعديد من النماذج الناجحة الكبيرة. من هذه النماذج نبوية موسى وعائشة عبد الرحمن اللتان أكدتا على دور المرأة وحقوقها.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- Some people think that life today is better than the past. State your opinion.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 7

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We spent our journey in a youth hostel that was not expensive.
 a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'
2. Since his at the club, the coach has brought in several star players.
 a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived
3. There were and other seaweed growing on the top layer of the deserted lake.
 a) algae b) palm c) crop d) shrimp
4. The report is based figures from six different cities.
 a) at b) for c) on d) about
5. The title passes by from the queen to the eldest son.
 a) inheritance b) heritage c) loss d) act
6. The tumor in the patient's brain was surgically by a team of top surgeons.
 a) exerted b) tied c) extracted d) healed
7. If our son's illness any worse, we'll call the doctor or take him to hospital.
 a) falls b) gets c) turns d) devises
8. The young doctor is attending a three-day on new treatments of the virus.
 a) conference b) meeting c) interview d) appointment
9. The book is the product of a/an between two writers.
 a) examination b) coherence c) collaboration d) inspection
10. The storm caused damage to the farmer's house and garden which was destroyed.
 a) severe b) gentle c) high d) deep
11. Asmaa have at least eight hours' sleep a night.
 a) needn't b) doesn't have to c) has got to d) mustn't
12. Hossam has been working and harder since he graduated.
 a) hard b) hardest c) hardly d) harder
13. Look at these big black clouds! It
 a) will rain b) is going to rain c) rains d) is raining
14. This medicine went bad. You have kept it in a cool place as the label says.
 a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) mustn't
15. Why are you late? You to be here at 9 o'clock.
 a) seem b) were supposed c) seemed d) mean
16. If he is late, we to go without him.
 a) will have b) have c) would have had d) had
17. There are more accidents on this road because it's than the others.
 a) narrow b) more narrow c) narrower d) the narrowest

18 Next year, no doubt, more people the competition as the prize money increases.
a) will enter
b) are going to be entered
c) are entering
d) will be entering

19 Robert away two or three times a year.
a) is going usually
b) goes usually
c) is usually going
d) usually goes

20 We by a loud noise during the night.
a) woke up
b) are woken
c) were woken up
d) were waking up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Light from the sun or a light bulb moves in straight waves. When the light waves hit an object, they bounce off of it. This action is called reflection. For most objects, the light bounces in many directions at the same time. When this happens, it allows us to see the object. A picture of the object is sent to the brain from the eye. The brain helps us understand what we see.

Light waves also bounce when they hit a smooth, shiny surface. Hitting a surface like a mirror makes the light waves bounce directly back to your eyes. This movement allows you to see yourself. It creates a reflection. You see the objects around it instead of the mirror itself. Anything shiny may act like a mirror when the light hits it. Have you ever seen your face reflected in the rounded side of a pot or pan? You can even see reflections on the surface of water if it is smooth and still. You have probably seen beautiful pictures of mountain scenes. Often the mountains and sky are reflected on the smooth surface of the lake.

Water and glass have a special ability. They can refract, or bend, light. That's why a spoon in a clear glass of water will look bent when it really is not. The ability of glass to refract light has given us some useful products. Eyeglasses help us see clearly. Magnifying glasses enlarge our view of an object.

21 The thing that helps us understand what we see is the
a) light
b) reflection
c) eye
d) brain

22 How does light travel?
a) In black waves.
b) In strange waves.
c) In straight waves.
d) In reflected waves.

23 We can see when the light waves hit a surface like a mirror.
a) the mirror
b) ourselves
c) the light wave
d) our eyes

24 The ability to refract, or bend, light allows us to
a) magnify, or make things larger
b) see ourselves through glasses
c) to see mountains in water
d) see things in the dark

25 We see objects because
a) the light waves can hit them
b) they are smooth and have shiny surface
c) light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time
d) light moves in straight waves

26 How do light waves act when they hit a smooth or shiny surface?

a) They bounce directly back to our faces.
b) They bounce directly back to our eyes.
c) They cause eye's illness.
d) They make light.

27 A lake filled with people boating and swimming doesn't act like a mirror because to create a reflection.

a) the surface must be smooth and still
b) the surface must be sharp and still
c) a picture of an object must be sent to the brain from the eye
d) anything shiny may act like a mirror

28 science specialises in studying light and reflection.

a) Chemistry **b)** Biology
c) Physics **d)** Sociology

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Many people don't have the knowledge or awareness of health care. So, it's the role of educated people to spread awareness about such health issues to face medical emergency.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

يختلـف النـاس فـى نوع الطعام الذى يفضلونه والطريقة التى يتم طهيه بها أو حتى مكوناته. إلا أنهم جميعـًا يتفقون فى البحث عن الطعم اللذيذ والقيمة الغذائية العالية.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- A blog post about the dangers of using social media unwisely.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 8

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This report some of the problems faced by old people after retirement.
 a) perplexes **b)** denies **c)** lightens **d)** highlights
2. The new owners have changed the of the whole building.
 a) appear **b)** appearance **c)** appeared **d)** apparent
3. The child must be from his mother while she receives the radioactive treatment.
 a) united **b)** separated **c)** kept **d)** stayed
4. My little brother always refuses to his toys with any other child.
 a) share **b)** divide **c)** spill **d)** unite
5. I feel really about forgetting my wife's birthday again. She must get upset.
 a) shy **b)** guilty **c)** innocent **d)** proud
6. The old woman her husband by only a few years. Their relation was an amazing one.
 a) kept **b)** dissolved **c)** called **d)** survived
7. The accident victim was from the wounds in her face and hands.
 a) bleeding **b)** paining **c)** relieving **d)** breeding
8. Major changes have taken in the Egyptian society in the last few years.
 a) part **b)** place **c)** apart **d)** down
9. We had a/an with the waiter about the bill as it was very high.
 a) fight **b)** treaty **c)** argument **d)** truce
10. You have to register to be able to post a/an in this website.
 a) comment **b)** mark **c)** emoji **d)** abbreviation
11. I'd like to know who up all the mess after the party because it is not going to be me.
 a) cleans **b)** does clean **c)** will be cleaning **d)** will have cleaned
12. This is a dangerous tour. Children accompanied by an adult.
 a) mustn't be **b)** needn't have been **c)** must **d)** must be
13. We wash these tomatoes. They've already been washed.
 a) must **b)** don't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** have to
14. The expensive holidays are often the best.
 a) less **b)** lesser **c)** little **d)** least
15. Here is the weather forecast. Tomorrow dry and sunny.
 a) is being **b)** will be being **c)** will be **d)** will have been
16. You may be older than me, but that doesn't you're cleverer.
 a) mean **b)** seem **c)** supposed **d)** meaning
17. Had I realised what you intended, I my permission.
 a) wouldn't give **b)** will give **c)** would not have given **d)** won't give

18 We could change the colour, I suppose. This is a/an
a) ability **b)** request **c)** permission **d)** suggestion

19 Galal in Assuit for ten years. Now he lives in Alexandria.
a) lived **b)** has lived **c)** has been living **d)** is living

20 She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help
a) laughing **b)** to laugh **c)** that she laughed **d)** laugh

8

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Being an only child, there was not much that Sara could do when she was alone. Reading her books made her life seem so much more interesting. She read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'. Because of all the reading that she did, her grasp of the English language was so good that no one in her level could ever beat her at it.

Her teachers were all so proud of her. They especially enjoyed her compositions as she had a very good imagination and could write very well. One day, a surprise waited for Sara in school. Her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend of hers who was a book publisher.

The publisher was so impressed with Sara's writing that he offered Sara the chance to write her own novel. Sara wasn't so sure at first whether she had the talent to write a novel. But with her teacher's encouragement she agreed. A few months later, Sara's book was published and put on sale. They sold like hotcakes! Everyone was proud of her and Sara discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author.

Sara received a "pat on the back" from friends, family, or coworkers. She continued develop her style of writing and her own personal sense of pride and accomplishment.

21 What did Sara do to make her life more interesting?
a) She wrote books. **b)** She read books.
c) She wrote compositions. **d)** She wrote novels.

22 Sara was called 'bookworm' because
a) she kept worms in her books
b) she liked worms
c) she liked to read books about worms
d) she loved to read

23 How many brothers and sisters does Sara have?
a) One. **b)** Two. **c)** Three. **d)** None.

24 The phrase "sold like hotcakes" means
a) the books were selling very well
b) the books were sold together with hotcakes
c) the books were hot like cakes when sold
d) the books were sold near a bakery selling hotcakes

25 The publisher wanted to publish Sara's work because
a) she read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'
b) she had a real talent in writing novel
c) she had no talent in writing short stories
d) her teachers were all so proud of her

26 Sara was reluctant to write the novel at first because

a) she was confident she could do it

b) she discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author

c) she wasn't confident she could do it

d) her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend

27 What is the best title of this passage?

a) Sara's life story. **b)** Publisher's story.

c) Sara's hobby. **d)** Sara's novel.

28 The writer believes that the role of the family is important because it

a) helps in decreasing their children's talents

b) helps in improving their children's talents

c) helps in changing their children's desires

d) helps in changing their children's minds

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Everyone in society has the right to have their own opinions and beliefs. In civilised societies, there is no problem to be different from the others, but it's a must to respect each other.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

تناقصت مساحة الأرض الزراعية لاستخدامها فى أغراض أخرى فى كل أنحاء العالم. أصبح لزامًا على العلماء البحث عن طرق جديدة لتوفير الغذاء للعدد المتزايد من السكان.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- The reasons why people travel abroad.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

EL-NAWA Gem

Final Test 9

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young man a lot of weight when he was ill.
 a) missed **b)** lost **c)** won **d)** earned
2. The frozen-foods is in the back area of the shop.
 a) college **b)** centre **c)** section **d)** sale
3. The club provides a for people who share an interest in history.
 a) home **b)** view **c)** seminar **d)** forum
4. Egypt has always had a good with the neighbouring countries.
 a) debate **b)** relationship **c)** argument **d)** quarrel
5. The publishing company is giving a free diary with tomorrow's newspaper.
 a) into **b)** off **c)** on **d)** away
6. It is known that iron with water and air to produce rust.
 a) refers **b)** rejects **c)** reacts **d)** reforms
7. The teacher at the naughty student and asked him to sit down.
 a) smiled **b)** smelled **c)** signed **d)** frowned
8. More details about the new invention will be on the website tomorrow.
 a) passed **b)** delivered **c)** spread **d)** posted
9. The charity thanked the businessman for the generous to help the poor.
 a) request **b)** expense **c)** donation **d)** cost
10. The athlete was given the VIP after winning gold for her country at the Olympics.
 a) treat **b)** treatment **c)** treated **d)** treatable
11. She drink two cups of coffee in the morning before she felt really awake.
 a) has to **b)** had to **c)** must **d)** mustn't
12. She was not as intelligent as the others, but she was the
 a) more pretty **b)** most pretty **c)** prettiest **d)** pretty
13. They dinner at seven. It's best to call later.
 a) will be having **b)** will have **c)** are going to have **d)** have
14. Most teachers encourage their students harder.
 a) to work **b)** work **c)** working **d)** to working
15. When to take your next exams?
 a) supposed you **b)** you supposed **c)** you are supposed **d)** are you supposed
16. If she well in her exams, she will go to college in October.
 a) did **b)** does **c)** had done **d)** will do
17. Mr. Kareem early before he reaches 60. He mentioned it at the meeting recently.
 a) is retiring **b)** will be retiring **c)** is going to retire **d)** will have retired

18 His results are not his colleague's. He needs to study more.

a) so good like **b)** to good like **c)** as good as **d)** so good than

19 I'm not going to bed now. I'm not tired. If I to bed now, I wouldn't sleep.

a) go **b)** went **c)** had gone **d)** am going

20 The police officer stopped us and asked us where

a) were we going **b)** are we going **c)** we are going **d)** we were going

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

There are wild dogs and pet dogs. Pet dogs are helpers and friends to people. There were no pet dogs 15,000 years ago. Men and women learned how to work with dogs. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend".

They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things. There are many colours of dogs. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs. A dog's fur can be short or long. Dogs have curly hair or straight fur. There are very small dogs.

They are only 6-8 inches tall. There are very big dogs. They are about 3 feet tall. Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well. All dogs can hear well. They can hear sounds that people cannot hear. They can hear high sounds and low sounds. They can hear sound very far away. All dogs can smell very well. They can smell 40 times better than humans! Dogs live 5 to 13 years, but some dogs live much longer. One dog lived to be 24 years old!

21 Dogs helped people go to North America by

a) pulling sleds in the snow **b)** helping with farming

c) helping find things **d)** none of the previous answers

22 The best antonym for pet is

a) wild animal **b)** domestic animal

c) large animal **d)** friendly animal

23 A dog's fur is the dog's

a) nose **b)** eyes

c) hair **d)** ears

24 Straight hair is

a) curly **b)** long

c) brown **d)** not curly

25 According to the passage, all dogs do well in

a) hearing **b)** smelling

c) swimming **d)** both a and b

26 The age of the oldest dog reaches to

a) 24 years old **b)** 20 years old

c) 13 years old **d)** 15,000 years old

27 Dogs are useful animals because

a) they have many colours

a) they helped humans travel by pulling sleds in the snow

a) there are wild dogs and pet dogs

a) they can play and do nothing for men and women

28 The writer mentions that some dogs can't well

a) hear b) run

c) smell d) see

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Although the internet becomes the most important means for knowledge, terrorists use it to spread their evil beliefs. It helps them find young people to enlist them for their violent actions.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية وخاصة اللغة الإنجليزية على فهم الاتجاهات العلمية والثقافية الحديثة. بالإضافة إلى أنه يمكننا من مواكبة التطور الكبير فى مجالات العلوم والتكنولوجيا المختلفة.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- The role of art in enhancing our social values.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWWA Gem

Final Test 10

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can achieve much by than by using force. This is the modern approach.
 a) persuade **b)** persuasion **c)** persuasive **d)** persuaded
2. The young architect is noises about starting his own business.
 a) making **b)** doing **c)** replying **d)** applying
3. is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
 a) Dermatitis **b)** Hydroponics **c)** Astronomy **d)** Botany
4. Some archaeologists discovered some of deer and hunters dating back to prehistoric time on French cave walls.
 a) photos **b)** images **c)** accounts **d)** decryptions
5. The car agency was accused of the customer about the condition of the car.
 a) accepting **b)** awarding **c)** honouring **d)** deceiving
6. The ship was forced to change its main during the storm.
 a) road **b)** technique **c)** course **d)** coarse
7. It is believed that taking care of people's health will certainly lead to an increase of in all fields.
 a) invention **b)** consumption **c)** destruction **d)** production
8. Nurses are taught how to CPR as part of their first-aid course.
 a) do **b)** make **c)** design **d)** operate
9. I have read only some from the newspaper because I had no time.
 a) addresses **b)** experiments **c)** headlines **d)** extracts
10. Mona really wasting her time on that film; it was very boring.
 a) pleases **b)** affects **c)** regrets **d)** rejoices
11. Your flat has been robbed! This that you have to report to the police.
 a) seems **b)** means **c)** meant **d)** is meant
12. You come and visit us soon. It would be so nice to see you again.
 a) have to **b)** needn't **c)** must **d)** mustn't
13. My dog is than the other dogs in the neighbourhood.
 a) bigger **b)** the biggest **c)** big **d)** biggest
14. There is a banana skin lying just a few metres in front of her. Oh dear! She!
 a) is slipping **b)** will slip **c)** is going to slip **d)** slips
15. He by the time he was four.
 a) won't swim **b)** could swim
 c) should swim **d)** mustn't have swum
16. We at home if it hadn't rained.
 a) would stay **b)** would have stayed **c)** wouldn't have stayed **d)** won't stay

ONLINE Gen

17 In the last few months, competition has become

a) much tougher
b) more tough
c) more tougher
d) much more tougher

18 A: Can we meet at 10:00 outside the station? B: Okay. I you there.

a) will be seeing
b) see
c) will have seen
d) will see

19 There's somebody walking behind us. I think

a) we are being followed
b) we are following
c) we are being following
d) we are followed

20 I had no a place to stay in. In fact, it was surprisingly easy.

a) trouble to find
b) difficulty finding
c) difficulty to find
d) trouble find

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

To : jim62@hrdtt.com
From : tdbusiness@hrdtt.com
Subject : A thank you message

Dear Mr. Jim Shaffer, on behalf of our entire team at our company, we would like to take this opportunity to thank you sincerely for taking out so much time and effort in meeting us last Monday. Our meeting was very enlightening and we all had a very good experience.

The meeting helped us to communicate and understand your company's goals and objectives. It also helped us a great deal to learn about the various kinds of development projects that are presently undergoing in your company.

We also hope that you liked our small presentation. We thank you sincerely for the business you brought to us. And I hope that we both reach great heights in the near future. Thanks for your help and support. We ensure that we will do our best to deliver outstanding results. As per the discussion, I have attached in this email a rough project plan for our next venture. Thank you once again for the wonderful meeting.

Yours sincerely,
Robert Spooner Senior Vice President

21 When did the team meet Mr. Jim?

a) next Monday
b) last Monday
c) last month
d) upcoming Monday

22 What does the underlined word "enlightening" mean?

a) useless
b) fruitless
c) fruitful
d) harmful

23 The outcome of the meeting is that the team became

a) able to communicate with each other
b) familiar with the marketing skills
c) familiar with development plans
d) aware with the goals of the company

24 The team prepared before the meeting to be shown.

a) a project plan
b) a small business
c) a small presentation
d) a meeting agenda

25 Which of the following is NOT mentioned in the email?

a) the time of the meeting
b) the attendees of the meeting
c) the purpose of the email
d) the time of the next meeting

26 The email contains

a) attached thank you letter
b) attached project plan
c) attached development plan
d) attached small presentation

27 The team promised to

a) meet Mr. Jim's expectation
b) to create outstanding venture
c) to achieve great results
d) both a and c

28 This email is a one.

a) formal
b) informal
c) direct
d) indirect

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Critical thinking is the ability to think clearly and rationally about what to do or what to believe. It includes the ability to develop your own independent thinking.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

كانت مصر من أوائل الدول فى الشرق الأوسط التى وفرت لقاح كوفيد- ١٩ لمواطنيها. وقد عددت من مصادر الحصول على الأنواع المختلفة منه كما إنها وفرته بالمجان.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- How can education help in solving many social problems in Egypt?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALNAWAH Gem

ALADWAA

Gem



English

الصف 2 الثانوى

إجابات نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

2021 - 2022

Answers To Final Tests

Final Test (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** Targeted
2. **c)** out
3. **b)** record
4. **c)** boosting
5. **d)** respect
6. **a)** rural
7. **d)** cell
8. **a)** downloading
9. **b)** with
10. **d)** hanging
11. **a)** longer
12. **b)** have to
13. **c)** will be waiting
14. **b)** should
15. **d)** supposed
16. **a)** hadn't helped
17. **b)** most useful
18. **b)** leaves
19. **c)** come
20. **d)** a three-hour

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** his childhood
22. **a)** knowledgeable
23. **d)** the things that happened in a past time
24. **c)** hobby
25. **d)** all of the above
26. **a)** Readers can avoid diseases through reading about diseases
27. **c)** Reading about life facts
28. **b)** Reading

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

يتكون جهاز المناعة من أعضاء وخلايا ومواد كيميائية خاصة في أجسامنا. إنهم يعملون معًا لحمايتنا من العدوى والأمراض.

30. **Translate into English:**

Everyone makes mistakes, but most of us don't know how to benefit from their mistakes. Making mistakes does not necessarily lead to bad results. Learning from mistakes is a skill we all have to acquire.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** headlines
2. **a)** keep
3. **d)** improved
4. **d)** image
5. **a)** examination
6. **c)** attractive
7. **c)** beauty
8. **b)** deceived
9. **c)** perform
10. **d)** lungs
11. **b)** had to
12. **a)** will have to
13. **d)** greater
14. **c)** will find
15. **a)** to talk
16. **d)** is meant
17. **d)** will you buy
18. **b)** would be
19. **d)** my sister's
20. **a)** as if I were

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** end your life
22. **a)** the electrician
23. **c)** You may slip easily and become bedridden.
24. **d)** sweets
25. **a)** They are likely to set a fire somewhere or kill someone.
26. **b)** Home accidents
27. **d)** All of the previous
28. **c)** pollute

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

يهتم الكثير من الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم باستخدام وسائل اتصال مختلفة. هذه الوسائل تمكنهم من القيام بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

30. **Translate into English:**

Despite their great benefits, social networking sites/social media sometimes cause the spread of rumours and creating chaos in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental observation on them.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** original
2. **c)** with
3. **c)** advertisers
4. **a)** memories
5. **c)** linked
6. **b)** course
7. **c)** linguist
8. **a)** necessarily
9. **c)** space
10. **a)** positive
11. **d)** had to
12. **a)** as
13. **a)** am going back
14. **d)** should
15. **b)** seems
16. **c)** could buy
17. **c)** delicious
18. **d)** will be working
19. **a)** A friend of mine
20. **b)** There must be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **c)** will make humans jobless.
22. **a)** Computers and Robots
23. **c)** Smaller
24. **b)** Robots are mechanical people.
25. **b)** they were huge.
26. **d)** Because computers cannot think or do things on their own.
27. **b)** robots
28. **b)** because of the demand for it in business

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

بالرغم من التحديات التى يواجهها الاقتصاد المصرى فإن هناك تصميمًا على التغلب عليها ومن المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد نموا فى السنوات القادمة.

30. **Translate into English:**

Homeschooling is one of the ways in which students can learn and gain knowledge with the help of online teachers, so the state provides all means of support to enable students to participate effectively.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** support
2. **b)** events
3. **c)** available
4. **d)** aim
5. **d)** plots
6. **d)** heating
7. **c)** celebrates
8. **d)** sustainable
9. **c)** reliable
10. **d)** races
11. **c)** had to
12. **a)** most enjoyable
13. **b)** begins
14. **d)** to read
15. **c)** is not supposed
16. **b)** hadn't gone
17. **b)** am not going to fail
18. **d)** as
19. **d)** none
20. **c)** since

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** two
22. **a)** Indonesia
23. **c)** killing
24. **a)** It is looked after by another female elephant.
25. **b)** The elephant gives birth to one young at a time.
26. **a)** They live in herds and have the same diet.
27. **d)** Both a and c
28. **b)** Elephants lives

29. Translate into Arabic:

يلعب التعليم المدرسى دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال لذلك تحاول الحكومات تطويره طوال الوقت. تشجع الحكومة الحالية محاولات التطوير المستمرة التى تقوم بها وزارة التربية والتعليم.

30. Translate into English:

Sports have a great effect on fighting different social problems such as crime and violence. They can also reinforce the basic principles of the character of children in addition to their health benefits for all people.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** applications
2. **a)** heal
3. **a)** virus
4. **b)** with
5. **d)** forgive
6. **c)** enclose
7. **b)** begged
8. **a)** kit
9. **c)** perform
10. **c)** celebrate
11. **a)** need to
12. **b)** more and more difficult
13. **d)** will be working
14. **b)** should
15. **d)** didn't mean
16. **a)** was
17. **c)** commonest
18. **b)** is cooking
19. **c)** neither
20. **b)** in spite of being

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **d)** Animals
22. **a)** She was against owning a cat at home.
23. **c)** Straight
24. **b)** To have a cat as a pet.
25. **d)** she loved animals
26. **c)** She didn't love pets.
27. **b)** mewing sound
28. **a)** It was knocked down by a car.

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

يعتبر نقص الغذاء أحد أخطر المشكلات التى تهدد العالم وتسبب المجاعة فى كثير من الدول، وعلى كل الناس أن يعملوا بجد ليجدوا حلولًا لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

30. **Translate into English:**

Traditional education is no longer suitable for the new generations and coping up with the continuous development in all fields of life. Therefore/So, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education especially for the secondary stage.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** caused
2. **d)** innovators
3. **a)** entertained
4. **b)** got
5. **c)** faithful
6. **a)** immune
7. **a)** sign
8. **c)** out
9. **b)** variety
10. **c)** recognisable
11. **d)** must
12. **c)** most expensive
13. **d)** will meet
14. **b)** to do
15. **a)** seems
16. **c)** Had
17. **a)** ends
18. **b)** the fastest of
19. **b)** take them off
20. **c)** that they said

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **a)** smaller units of time
22. **d)** What types of clocks have been invented?
23. **a)** dissolve
24. **c)** related to hearing
25. **c)** there weren't clocks
26. **d)** both a and b
27. **a)** work with a system of moving gears.
28. **b)** The description of different kinds of clocks and their importance

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

أكدت استضافة مصر لكأس الأمم الإفريقية عام ٢٠١٩ على دور مصر البارز فى إفريقيا كما كانت أيضًا فرصة لإظهار حضارتنا للعالم أجمع.

30. **Translate into English:**

The history of the women's movement in Egypt is full of many successful models. Among these models are Nabawiya Musa and Aisha Abdul Rahman who emphasised the role of women and their rights.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (7)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** two-week
2. **b)** arrival
3. **a)** algae
4. **c)** on
5. **a)** inheritance
6. **c)** extracted
7. **b)** gets
8. **a)** conference
9. **c)** collaboration
10. **a)** severe
11. **c)** has got to
12. **d)** harder
13. **b)** is going to rain
14. **c)** should
15. **b)** were supposed
16. **a)** will have
17. **c)** narrower
18. **a)** will enter
19. **d)** usually goes
20. **c)** were woken up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **d)** brain
22. **c)** In straight waves
23. **b)** ourselves
24. **a)** magnify, or make things larger
25. **c)** light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time.
26. **b)** They bounce directly back to our eyes.
27. **d)** the surface must be smooth and still
28. **c)** Physics.

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

لا يمتلك الكثيرون المعرفة والوعى بالرعاية الصحية لذلك من دور المتعلمين أن يقوموا بنشر الوعى بهذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الطوارئ الطبية.

30. **Translate into English:**

People differ in the type of food they prefer, the way it is cooked, or even its ingredients. However, they all agree in the search for delicious taste and high nutritional value.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** highlights
2. **b)** appearance
3. **b)** separated
4. **a)** share
5. **b)** guilty
6. **d)** survived
7. **a)** bleeding
8. **b)** place
9. **c)** argument
10. **a)** comment
11. **c)** will be cleaning
12. **d)** must be
13. **b)** don't have to
14. **d)** least
15. **c)** will be
16. **a)** mean
17. **c)** would not have given
18. **d)** suggestion
19. **a)** lived
20. **a)** laughing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** She read books
22. **d)** She loved to read
23. **d)** none
24. **a)** the books were selling very well
25. **b)** she had a real talent in writing novel
26. **c)** she wasn't confident she could do it.
27. **d)** Sara's novel
28. **b)** helps in improving their children's talents

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

لـكل فـرد فى المجتمع الحق بـأن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته الخاصة، ففى المجتمعات المتحضرة ليس هناك مشـكلة أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين لكن من الضرورى أن نحترم بعضنا.

30. **Translate into English:**

The area of agricultural has decreased all over the world because it's used for other purposes. Scientists have to find new ways to feed the growing population.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test (9)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** lost
2. **c)** section
3. **d)** forum
4. **b)** relationship
5. **d)** away
6. **c)** reacts
7. **d)** frowned
8. **d)** posted
9. **c)** donation
10. **b)** treatment
11. **b)** had to
12. **c)** prettiest
13. **a)** will be having
14. **a)** to work
15. **d)** are you supposed
16. **b)** does
17. **c)** is going to retire
18. **c)** as good as
19. **b)** went
20. **d)** we were going

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **a)** pulling sleds in the snow
22. **b)** domestic animal
23. **c)** hair
24. **d)** not curly
25. **d)** both a and b
26. **a)** 24 years old
27. **b)** they helped humans travel by pulling sleds in the snow
28. **d)** see well.

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

بالرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعلومات والمعرفة فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونه لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة كما يساعدهم أيضًا على الوصول للشباب وتجنيدهم لأفعالهم الشريرة.

30. **Translate into English:**

Learning foreign languages, especially English helps us understand modern scientific and cultural trends. In addition, it enables us to keep pace with the great development in the various fields of science and technology.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (10)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** persuasion
2. **a)** making
3. **b)** Hydroponics
4. **b)** images
5. **d)** deceiving
6. **c)** course
7. **d)** production
8. **d)** operate
9. **c)** headlines
10. **c)** regrets
11. **b)** means
12. **c)** must
13. **a)** bigger
14. **c)** is going to slip
15. **b)** could swim
16. **c)** wouldn't have stayed
17. **a)** much tougher
18. **d)** will see
19. **a)** we are being followed
20. **b)** difficulty finding

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** last Monday
22. **c)** fruitful
23. **d)** aware with the goals of the company
24. **c)** a small presentation
25. **d)** the time of the next meeting
26. **b)** attached project plan
27. **d)** both a and c
28. **a)** formal

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

التفكير النقدى هو القدرة على التفكير بعقلانية فيما نفعل وما نعتقد كما يشمل القدرة على تطوير تفكيرك المستقل.

30. **Translate into English:**

Egypt was one of the first countries in the Middle East to provide a COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. There are many sources of obtaining different types of it, and it also provided it free of charge.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.